







THE LIBRARY
OF
THE UNIVERSITY
OF CALIFORNIA

PRESENTED BY
PROF. CHARLES A. KOFOID AND
MRS. PRUDENCE W. KOFOID



Pro. J. C.

CAPTAIN COOK

G420
C63
1806

CONTENTS.

FIRST VOYAGE.

CHAP. I.

An account of Captain Cook—The departure of the Endeavour from Plymouth—Her passage to the island of Madeira—A description of its natural curiosities and trade—A particular account of Funchiale, the capital of Madeira—The passage from Madeira to Rio de Janeiro—An account of this capital of the Portuguese dominions in South America, and of the circumjacent country—Incidents that happened while the Endeavour lay in the harbour of Rio de Janeiro. Page 1

CHAP. II.

The departure of the Endeavour from Rio de Janeiro—Her passage from the entrance of the streight of Le Maire—The inhabitants of Terra del Fuego described—Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander ascend a mountain in search of plants—An account of what happened to them in this excursion—The Endeavour passes through the streight Le Maire—An account of her passage, and a further description of the inhabitants of Terra del Fuego—An account of Cape Horn, and the newly discovered islands—An account of their figure and appearance—The inhabitants described; with a narrative of the various incidents during the course, and on the Endeavour's arrival among them. 19

CHAP. III.

The Endeavour arrives at Otaheite, or George the Third's Island—An account of several incidents during his stay in this island—Excursions in the woods—Visits from several of the chiefs—The music of the natives, and their manner of burying their dead—Other excursions and incidents, both on board and on shore—First interview with Oberea, the supposed queen of the island—The quadrant stolen, and the consequences—A visit to Tootahah, an Indian chief—A wrestling match described—European seeds are sown—The Indians give our people names. 27

CHAP. IV.

An extraordinary visit—Divine service attended by the natives of Otaheite—An uncommon sight—Tubourai Tamaide found guilty of theft—A relation of what happened at the fort, when observing the transit of Venus—A description of an Indian funeral—Preparations made for leaving the island—An account of their departure, and the behaviour of the natives on this occasion. 38

CHAP. V.

An historical and descriptive account of Otaheite—Of the island and its productions—Of the inhabitants, their dress, dwellings, manner of living, diversions and diseases. 51

CHAP. VI.

The endeavour continues her voyage—Visits the island in the neighbourhood of Otaheite—An account of several incidents, and of various particulars relative to the inhabitants—The passage of the Endeavour from Oteroah to New Zealand—Events on going ashore, and incidents while the ship was in Poverty Bay—The country described—Excursions to Cape Turnagain, and return to Tolaga—The inhabitants described, and a narrative of what happened while we were on that part of the coast—The range from Tolaga to Mercury Bay—Incidents that happened on board the Endeavour and ashore—A description of the country—Sails from Mercury Bay to the Bay of Islands—Description of the Indians on the banks of the Thames—Interview and skirmishes with the natives—Range from the Bay of Islands round North Cape 54

CHAP. VII.

The Endeavour continues her voyage to Queen Charlotte's Sound—Transactions in the Sound—A shocking custom of the inhabitants—The coast of Admiralty Bay described—The departure of the Endeavour from New Zealand, and other particulars—An account of New Zealand, the inhabitants, and customs. 76

CHAP. VIII.

Passage from New Zealand to Botany Bay in New Holland—Various incidents related—A description of the country, and its inhabitants—Sails from Botany Bay to Trinity Bay—Her dangerous situation in her passage from Trinity Bay to Endeavour River. 86

CHAP. IX.

The ship refitted—Transactions during that time—The country and its inhabitants described—The range from Endeavour River to the extremity of the country—The Endeavour departs from New South Wales—That country and people described 98

CHAP. X.

The Endeavour continues her voyage from New South Wales to New Guiney—An account of incidents upon landing there—Proceeds from New Guiney to the island of Savau—Its produce and inhabitants—Run from Savau to Batavia—Transactions while the Endeavour was refitting at this place. 110

CHAP. XI.

An account of Batavia, and its various productions—The Endeavour sails from Batavia to the Cape of Good Hope—The Cape and St. Helena described—Remarks on the Hottentots—The Endeavour returns to England, and anchors in the Downs on Wednesday, June 12, 1771. 129

~~~~~  
SECOND VOYAGE.

## CHAP. I.

*The Resolution and Adventure take their departure from Deptford—Touch at the island of St. Jago—Pursue their voyage to the Cape of Good Hope—Departure from the Cape—Continue their voyage in search of a southern continent—Sequel of this search—Separation from the ships, and the arrival of the Resolution in Dusky Bay.* 171

## CHAP. II.

*A narrative of what happened in Dusky Bay—Interview with the natives—Sails to Charlotte's Sound—Is there joined by the Adventure—Transactions in this place—Captain Furneaux's narrative—The ships proceed to the island of Otaheite, and their arrival there—Are in a critical situation.* 186

## CHAP. III.

*State of the island—Customs of the natives—Passage from Ulitea to the Friendly Isles—Hervey's Island discovered—Incidents at Middleburgh—The two ships arrive at Amsterdam—Incidents that happen during their stay at that island.* 211

## CHAP. IV.

*The Resolution and Adventure continue their voyage from Amsterdam—Proceed from Queen Charlotte's Sound—An interview with the inhabitants—The final separation of the two ships—Transactions and incidents in Queen Charlotte's Sound—The inhabitants discovered to be cannibals—The Resolution departs from the Sound, and proceeds in search after her consort—Course of the Resolution in search of the supposed continent; and the methods pursued to explore the Southern Pacific Ocean—Arrives at Easter Island, and transactions there, &c.* 222

## CHAP. V.

*The Resolution sails from Easter Island to the Marquesas—Departs from the Marquesas, with an account of the inhabitants, &c.—The Resolution leaves Otaheite—Her arrival at the island Huaheine—Various incidents related—The ship proceeds to Ulitea—Incidents during her stay, and the character of Oedidee.* 228

## CHAP. VI.

*Departure of the Resolution from Ulietea—Incidents at Savage Island—Passage from Savage Island to Rotterdam—Transactions at this place, and the insolence of the natives—An account of the people in Turtle Island—Transactions while there, and ferocious behaviour of the inhabitants—The Resolution continues her course from Port Sandwich—Steers in a direction for Sandwich Island, in order to discover the southern extremity of the Archipelago—Hostile behaviour of the natives of Sandwich Isle—More new islands discovered.* 245

## CHAP. VII.

*New Caledonia discovered—The Resolution is obliged to depart from Caledonia—Continues her voyage to New Zealand—She arrives at Queen Charlotte's Sound—An account of incidents while the ship lay there.* 260

## CHAP. VIII.

*The departure of the Resolution from New Zealand—Her passage from thence to Terra del Fuego—The run from Cape Deseada to Christmas Sound—The Resolution departs from Christmas Sound—Doubles Cape Horn—Her passage through Streight Le Maire, and round Staten Island—Departs from Staten Island—The island of Georgia discovered, and a descriptive account of the same.* 269

## CHAP. IX.

*The Resolution continues her course—Newland and Saunders Isles discovered—Conjectures, and some reasons that there may be land about the south pole—The Resolution alters her course to the east—Proceedings till her arrival at the Cape of Good Hope—Sails for the Isle Fayal, and returns to England—Captain Furneaux's narrative, from the time the Adventure was separated from the Resolution, to her arrival in England, including the report of Lieutenant Burney, concerning the untimely death of her boat's crew, who were murdered by some of the natives of Queen Charlotte's Sound.* 321

~~~~~

THIRD VOYAGE.

CHAP. I.

Captain Cook's departure from England—Junction with the Discovery at the Cape of Good Hope—Passage to Prince Edward's Island—Arrival at Van Dieman's Land—Interview with the natives—Arrival at Queen Charlotte's Sound—Particulars of the horrid massacre of the Adventure's boat's crew—Departure from Queen Charlotte's Sound. 322

CHAP. II.

Refreshments obtained at Wenooa-ette—Singularity in the natives of Hervey's Island—Rich submarine grotto at Palmerston's Island—Arrival at the Friendly Islands—Amiable character of the natives—Description of their persons—Transactions with the natives—Captain Clerke's expedient to prevent their depredations—Opinions of the Islanders of a volcano—Different entertainments exhibited by the English and the natives—Curious mode of shaving—Visit of Poulaho, king of the Friendly Islands—Poulaho's inanimate viceroy—Offering to their deity to deprecate death—Departure from the Friendly Islands.

349

CHAP. III.

Island of Toobouai discovered—Arrival at Otaheite—Omai's reception—Interview with Waheladooda, the chief of Tiaraboo—Omai's imprudent conduct—Girls dressed to bring a present—Omai's war canoe—Otoo's present and message to the king of Great Britain—Departure from Otaheite, and visit to Eimeo—Conclusion of the history of Omai, and of the two New Zealand youths.

363

CHAP. IV.

Arrival at Ulietea—Intelligence from Omai—Desertion from the ships—The chief's family confined on that account—Conspiracy to seize the captains Cook and Clerke—Deserters brought back—Christmas Island and the Sandwich Islands discovered, &c. &c.

380

CHAP. V.

Curious marine phenomena—Arrival at Nootka Sound—Inter-course with the natives—Description of their persons—Their general dispositions, and their eagerness to possess iron and other metals.

394

CHAP. VI.

Discovery of Cook's River—Reflections on this discovery—Possession taken of the country and river in his Majesty's name—A beautiful bird described—Conjectures concerning a Russian letter brought on board by one of the natives—Picturesque appearance of a volcano—Second visit from a native—Providential escape—Arrival at the island of Oonalashka, and intercourse with the natives.

412

CHAP. VII.

Return to the southward—Burney's Island—Pass the eastern cape of Asia—Description and situation of it—Arrival at Norton Sound—Interview with the natives—Description of the Russian settlement at Oonalashka—Mowee and Orwhyhee, two of the Sandwich Islands, discovered—The natives refuse to drink sugar-cane beer.

426

CHAP. VIII.

Description of Karakooa Bay—Ceremonies at the landing of Captain Cook—Arrival of Terreeoboo, king of the island—Visit from the king, and returned by Captain Cook—Terreeoboo's magnificent present—The ships leave the island—The Resolution damaged in a gale, and obliged to return—Death of Captain Cook. 441

CHAP. IX.

Death of Captain Cook, with an account of the transactions at the island of Owhyhee, subsequent to the death of Captain Cook—Captain Clerke's departure from Owhyhee—Arrival at Atooi—Final departure from the Sandwich Islands—Description of the natives, and treatment of their women. 454

CHAP. X.

Return to Kamtschatka—Death of Captain Clerke—An account of his services—Anchor in the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul—Funeral of Captain Clerke—Departure from Awatska Bay—Captain King sent to Canton—Arrived at the Cape of Good Hope—At the Orkneys; and at the Nore—Concluding reflections. 515

APPENDIX.

Commencement and progress of the operations for forming a Colony at Port Jackson and Norfolk Island; interspersed with incidental occurrences 529



CAPTAIN COOK'S

Voyages round the World.

~~~~~

## CHAP. I.

*An account of Captain Cook—The departure of the Endeavour from Plymouth—Her passage to the island of Madeira—A description of its natural curiosities and trade—A particular account of Funchiale, the capital of Madeira—The passage from Madeira to Rio de Janeiro—An account of this capital of the Portuguese dominions in South America, and of the circumjacent country—Incidents that happened while the Endeavour lay in the harbour of Rio de Janeiro.*

WHEN merit bursts through the clouds of original indigence, when genius and abilities gain the palm of reward, the biographer becomes animated with his subject, and feels the social sympathies expand within his breast.

Distinguished as this country is for its able navigators, it acquires no inconsiderable accession of fame from boasting the name of Cook, whose three principal voyages we are now about to detail in an unbroken series.

This able and amiable man was born at Marton, in Cleveland, a village about four miles from Great Ayton, in Yorkshire, on the 27th of October, 1728. His father, who lived in the humble station of a farmer's servant, married a woman in the same

sphere of life with himself; and both were noted in their neighbourhood for their honesty, sobriety, and industry, qualities which reflect a lustre on the lowest ranks.

When our navigator was about two years old, his father and family removed to Great Ayton, and was appointed to superintend a considerable farm belonging to the late Thomas Scottowe, Esq. known by the name of Airyholm.

As the father long continued in this trust, the son, of course, followed the same servile employment, as far as his tender years would admit. His early education appears to have been very slender; but at the age of thirteen we find him put under the tuition of Mr. Pullen, who taught a school at Ayton, where he learned the rudiments of arithmetic and book-keeping, and is said to have shewn a remarkable facility in acquiring the science of numbers.

About the beginning of 1745, when young Cook was seventeen years old, his father bound him apprentice to Mr. William Sanderson, for four years, to learn the grocery and haberdashery business, at Snaith, a populous fishing town about ten miles from Whitby. But as he evinced a strong partiality for a maritime life, for which his predilection was probably strengthened by the situation of the place, and the company with which, it is probable, he associated, after a year and a half's servitude, on some trivial disagreement with his master, he obtained a release from his engagements, and determined to follow the bent of his inclination.

While he continued at Snaith, according to Mr. Sanderson's account, he discovered a maturity of judgment, and a quickness in calculations beyond his years.

In July 1746, he was bound apprentice to Messrs. Walkers, of Whitby, for the term of three years, which he served to the full satisfaction of his masters. His first voyage was on board the ship *Freelove*, burden about four hundred and fifty tons, chiefly employed



employed in the coal trade from Newcastle to London.

In May 1748, his master ordered him home to assist in rigging and fitting for sea a fine new ship, named the *Three Brothers*, of six hundred tons. This was designed to improve him in his profession, and to qualify him for a better birth, when his servitude should expire. After two coal voyages in this vessel, she was taken into the service of government, and sent as a transport to Middleburgh, to convey some troops to Dublin. These being landed at their destination, another corps was taken on board, and brought to Liverpool. From thence the ship proceeded for Deptford, where she was paid off in April, 1749. The remaining part of the season Cook served on board her in the Norway trade.

Being honourably released from his engagements, he next entered on board a ship employed in the Baltic trade, and performed several voyages of no great importance, during the two following years. In 1752, his old master promoted him to be mate of one of his ships, called the *Friendship*, in which capacity he acted for some time, with so much credit to himself and satisfaction to the owners, that it is said, he was offered the place of captain. This, however, he declined, and fortunate was it for his country he did so.

In the spring of 1755, hostilities commenced between Great-Britain and France. As press-warrants had been issued, Mr. Cook, who then lay in the river Thames, afraid of being pressed, resolved, if possible, to conceal himself; but afterwards reflecting on the difficulty of this, he adopted the resolution of entering as a volunteer in the royal navy, "having a mind," as he expressed himself, "to try his fortune in that way."

In pursuance of this design, he repaired to a house of rendezvous at Wapping, and entered on board the *Eagle*, a sixty gun ship, at that time commanded by Captain Hamer. To this ship Captain, afterwards

Sir Hugh Palliser, being appointed in October following, Cook's diligence and attention to the duties of his profession did not escape the notice of that intelligent commander, and he met with every encouragement compatible with his humble station.

Cook's merit having been blazoned among his connections and friends in his native country, some of them generously interested themselves in his behalf, and procured a letter of recommendation to his captain from Mr. Osbaldeston, member of parliament for Scarborough, in which it was requested he would point out in what manner they could contribute to his promotion.

Captain Palliser did full justice to Cook's character, and suggested, that a master's warrant might, perhaps, be procured for him, by which he would be put in a situation suited to his talents, and be enabled to reflect credit on those who honoured him with their patronage.

In consequence of this, interest was made for a master's warrant, which he obtained to the *Grampus* sloop, in May 1759; but this appointment did not take place, as the former master unexpectedly returned. In a few days, however, he was made master of the *Garland*; but here too he was disappointed, for, on enquiry, it was found that the ship had already sailed. At last, he was appointed to the *Mercury*, which was destined for North America, under the command of Sir Charles Saunders, who, in conjunction with General Wolfe, was then engaged in the memorable siege of Quebec.

During that signal transaction, it was found necessary to obtain the soundings of the river St. Lawrence, directly opposite to the French camp at Montmorency and Beauport. As this was universally esteemed to be a dangerous and difficult service, and as Cook's sagacity and intrepidity were now well known, Captain Palliser recommended him for the undertaking; and in the choice that was made the service was not injured. Cook executed his office in the  
completest



completest manner, and to the entire satisfaction of his superiors. He did not, however, effect this without great risk. Being engaged in this pursuit for several successive nights, he was at last discovered by the enemy, who sent a number of canoes filled with Indians to surround him, and he had no other alternative but to make for the Isle of Orleans, where he was so closely pursued, that he had scarcely leaped from the bow of the boat, before the Indians entered by the stern, and carried her off in triumph.

There is little reason to believe, that before this period Cook had used a pencil, or was acquainted with the principles of drawing; but such was the vigour of his mind, and his aptitude for the acquisition of knowledge, that he soon mastered every object to which he applied; and notwithstanding the disadvantages under which he laboured, he furnished the admiral with as complete a draught of the channel and its soundings, as could have been furnished by the most expert surveyor in peace and by day-light.

Our navigator performed another service, not less important, and which redounds equally to his honour. The navigation of the river St. Lawrence is both difficult and dangerous, and was then particularly so to the English, who were strangers in that quarter. The admiral, therefore, who had conceived a very favourable opinion of Mr. Cook's abilities, appointed him to survey the river below Quebec, which he also executed with the same diligence and ability he had displayed on the former occasion.

This chart of the river, when completed, was published, with soundings and directions for safely navigating it; and so great was the accuracy observed, that it has superseded all other surveys.

After the conquest of Canada, so glorious to every person who had a share in it, Mr. Cook was appointed master of the *Northumberland*, under Lord Colvill, on the 2d of September, 1759. In this ship his lordship continued the following winter as commodore, at Halifax; and Cook's conduct, in his

new

new station, did not fail, as well as on former occasions, to gain him the friendship and esteem of his commander.

Sensible that he was now in the road to promotion, he shewed a laudable desire to qualify himself to adorn his profession, by devoting his leisure hours to the study of such branches of knowledge as reflect a lustre on naval life. At Halifax he first read Euclid's Elements, and studied astronomy. The books he was able to procure, were few indeed; but application and perseverance supplied many deficiencies, and enabled him to make a progress, which a man of less genius could not attain under much superior advantages.

He received a lieutenant's commission on the 1st of April, 1760, and daily advanced in the career of glory. In September, 1762, he assisted at the recapture of Newfoundland, after which the English fleet remained some time at Placentia, in order to put that place into a better state of defence. During this period, Mr. Cook had another opportunity of displaying his diligence, and manifesting his zeal in the service of his country: he surveyed the harbour and heights of that place, and, by this means, attracted the notice of Captain, afterwards Admiral Graves, who was at that time governor of Newfoundland. Captain Graves having entered into conversation with him, found him possessed of such intelligence and judgment, that he conceived a very favourable opinion of his abilities in general, and his nautical skill in particular; and in cultivating a longer acquaintance with him, was still more and more prepossessed in his favour.

Endowed with a vigorous and active mind, and stimulated, perhaps, by the success that had attended his past labours, and the hopes of future promotion, Cook continued to display the most unremitting assiduity to make himself acquainted with the North American coast, and to facilitate its navigation; while the esteem which Captain Graves had justly conceived



conceived for him, was heightened by the concurrent testimonies of approbation, which all the officers, under whom he had served, so freely paid him.

Toward the close of 1762, Lieutenant Cook returned to England, and on the 21st of December he married at Barking, in Essex, a young lady of the name of Batts, whom he tenderly loved, and who had every claim to his warmest affection and esteem. It is said, that Cook had been godfather to this lady, and that he declared at that time his wish for their future union. If this anecdote is true, it is a singular instance of the firmness of his character, and the strength of his attachment. His situation in life, however, and the high and important services to which he was called, did not suffer him to enjoy, without interruption, that matrimonial felicity which both parties seem to have been so well qualified to taste.

On the conclusion of the war in 1763, Captain Graves was again sent out as governor of Newfoundland; and as that island was considered of great commercial importance, and had been a principal object of contention between Great-Britain and France, the governor obtained, at his pressing solicitation, an establishment for the survey of its coasts; and Lieutenant Cook was appointed to carry this plan into execution. He, therefore, went out with his friend the governor; and having surveyed the small islands of St. Pierre and Miquelon, which, by treaty, had been ceded to France; after the business was finished he returned to England, at the close of the season.

In the beginning of the following year, he accompanied his former patron, Sir Hugh Palliser, who had been appointed governor of Labradore and Newfoundland, and prosecuted his surveys of the coasts as before.

For this employment, Cook was, by the unanimous voice of the best judges, deemed extremely well qualified; and the charts which he afterwards published, reflect

reflect the highest credit on his abilities. He also explored the interior of Newfoundland, in a much more accurate manner than had ever been done before; and by penetrating into the heart of the country, discovered several large lakes, the position of which he exactly ascertained. In this service he appears to have been occasionally engaged till 1767. However, we find him with Sir William Burnaby, on the Jamaica station, in 1765; and that officer having occasion to send dispatches to the governor of Yucatan, relative to the log cutters in the bay of Honduras, Lieutenant Cook was selected for that mission, and he performed it in a manner that entitled him to the approbation of the admiral. A relation of this voyage and journey was published in 1769, under the title of "Remarks on a Passage from the River Balise, in the Bay of Honduras, to Merida, the capital of the Province of Yucatan, in the Spanish West Indies, by Lieutenant Cook."

That our navigator had, by this time, made a considerable proficiency in practical astronomy, is evident from a short paper, drawn up by him, which was inserted in the seventh volume of the Philosophical Transactions, entitled, "An observation of an Eclipse of the Sun at the Island of Newfoundland, August 5, 1766, with the Longitude of the Place of Observation deduced from it." This observation was made at one of the Burgeo islands, near Cape Ray, in latitude 47 deg. 36 min. 19 sec. on the south-west extremity of Newfoundland; and Cook's paper having been communicated to Mr. Witchell, he compared it with an observation made on the same eclipse by Professor Hornsby, and thence computed the difference of longitude of the places of observation, making proper allowance for parallax, and the prolate spheroidal figure of the earth. That Cook was now accounted an able mathematician, the admission of this paper into the Philosophical Transactions, and the notice that was taken of it, will sufficiently verify

For



For the present reign it was reserved to carry the spirit of enterprise to its fullest extent, and to direct it to the accomplishment of the noblest purposes. As soon as the return of peace gave an opportunity for promoting the interests of science, by enlarging the bounds of discovery, two voyages were projected by his present majesty, which were performed by Captains Byron, Wallis, and Carteret; and before the two latter gentlemen returned; a third was resolved on, the principal object of which was the improvement of astronomy.

It having been long before calculated; that the planet Venus would pass over the Sun's disk in 1769, it was judged that the most proper place for observing this phenomenon, would be either at the Marquesas; or at one of those islands to which Tasman had given the several appellations of Amsterdam, Rotterdam, and Middleburgh; but which are now better known under the general name of the Friendly Isles. This being a matter of much importance in the science of astronomy, the Royal Society, with a laudable zeal for its advancement, presented a memorial to his majesty, requesting, among other things, that a vessel might be fitted out at the expence of government, to convey proper persons to observe this transit at one of the places already mentioned.

The petition being readily complied with, and orders having been given by the lords commissioners of the admiralty to provide a vessel for that purpose; on the third of April, Mr. Stephens, the secretary to the board, informed the society that every thing was expediting according to their wishes.

Mr. Dalrymple was originally fixed on to superintend this expedition: a man eminent in science, a member of the Royal Society, and who had already distinguished himself respecting the geography of the Southern Ocean. As this gentleman had been regularly bred to the sea, he insisted on having a brevet commission, as captain of the vessel, before he would undertake the employ. Sir Edward Hawke, who

then presided at the admiralty board, violently opposed this measure; and being pressed on the subject, declared, that nothing could induce him to give the sanction of his name to such a commission.

Both parties were inflexible; and it was, therefore, thought expedient to look out some other person to conduct the expedition. Accordingly, Mr. Stephens having recommended Lieutenant Cook, and this recommendation being strengthened by the testimony of Sir Hugh Palliser, who was well acquainted with Cook's merit and abilities for the discharge of this office, he was appointed to this distinguished post by the lords commissioners, and promoted to the rank of lieutenant of the royal navy, on the 25th of May, 1768.

This appointment having taken place, Sir Hugh Palliser was commissioned to provide a vessel adapted for such a voyage. After examining a great number of ships, then lying in the Thames, in conjunction with Cook, of whose judgment he entertained the highest opinion, they at last fixed on the *Endeavour*, a vessel of three hundred and seventy tons, which had been built for the coal trade.

In the interim, Captain Wallis having returned from his voyage round the world, and having signified to the Royal Society, that Port Royal Harbour in King George's Island, now called *Otaheite*, would be the most convenient place for observing the transit, his opinion was adopted, and the observers were ordered to repair thither.

Mr. Charles Green, the coadjutor of Dr. Bradley, the astronomer royal, was nominated to assist Captain Cook in conducting the astronomical part of the undertaking; and he was accompanied also by Joseph Banks, Esq. the present president of the Royal Society, whose baronetage, to which he has been since raised, reflects honour on his sovereign and the order. This friend of science, at an early period of life, possessed of an opulent fortune, and zealous to apply it to the best ends, embarked on this tedious and hazardous enterprise,



enterprise, animated by the wish alone of improving himself, and enlarging the bounds of knowledge. He took two draughtsmen with him, and had likewise a secretary and four servants in his retinue.

Dr. Solander, an ingenious and learned Swede, who had been appointed to a place in the British Museum, and was an adept in natural philosophy, likewise joined the expedition. Possessed of the enthusiasm with which Linnæus inspired his disciples, he braved danger in the prosecution of his favourite studies, and being a man of erudition and capacity, he added no small eclat to the voyage in which he embarked.

Though the principal intention of this expedition was to observe the transit of Venus, it was thought proper to make it comprehend other objects also. Captain Cook, was, therefore, directed, after he had accomplished his main business, to proceed in making farther discoveries in the South Seas, which now began to be explored with uncommon resolution.

The complement of the Endeavour consisted of eighty-four persons. She was victualled for eighteen months, and ten carriage and twelve swivel guns, with abundance of ammunition, and all manner of stores were taken on board.

Being completely fitted for sea, Captain Cook sailed from Deptford on the 30th of July 1768, and on the 13th of August anchored in Plymouth Sound, from which, after a few days stay, they proceeded to sea.

The first land they made, after their leaving the Channel, was on the second of September, when Cape Finisterre and Cape Ortugal, in Spain, both came in view. They arrived on the 13th at Madeira, and anchored in Fonchial Road. Here unfortunately they lost Mr. Weir, the master's mate, who, in heaving the anchor, fell overboard and was drowned.

This island has a beautiful appearance from the sea, those parts of hills which present themselves being covered with vines.

The only article of trade is wine, which is made by pressing the juice out in a square wooden vessel. The persons employed, having taken off their stockings and jackets, get into it, and with their elbows and feet press out as much of the juice as they can. In like manner the stalks, being tied together, are pressed under a square piece of wood by a lever, with a stone fastened to the end of it.

There are no wheel carriages of any sort, nor have the people any thing that resembles them, except a hollow board, or sledge, upon which those wine vessels are drawn, that are too big to be carried by hand.

Nature has been very liberal in her gifts to Madeira. The inhabitants are not without ingenuity, but they want industry. The soil is very rich, and there is such a variety in the climate, that there is scarcely any article, either of the necessities or luxuries of life, which cannot be cultivated in the island. Pine apples and mangoes grow almost spontaneously in the town, and great variety of fruit upon the hills. Corn is also very large and plenty. The beef, mutton, and pork, are remarkably good.

Foncho, which is fennel in Portuguese, gave name to the town of Fonchial. It is seated at the bottom of a bay; indifferently built, the streets narrow, and very wretchedly paved. In the churches there are great numbers of ornaments, with pictures and images of saints, for the most part indifferently executed. A better taste prevails in some of the convents, particularly that of the Franciscans, where simplicity and neatness unite. The infirmary does honour to the architect, and is the most capital edifice in the whole place.

There are many very high hills; Pico Ruiyo is near five thousand one hundred feet in height, perpendicularly from its base. The inhabitants are computed to be between seventy and eighty thousand; and the revenue arising from the customs, is supposed to amount to twenty or thirty thousand pounds sterling per annum.



On the 19th of September we sailed from Madeira, and on the 21st we saw the islands called the Salvages, northward of the Canaries. The principal of these was about five leagues to the south half west. On the 23d the Peak of Teneriffe bore west by south half south. The height of this mountain is 15,379 feet, which is about 148 yards less than three miles.

On the 7th of October Mr. Banks went out in a boat, and caught what our sailors call a Portuguese man of war; together with several shell fishes, which are always found floating upon the water.

On the 26th, we crossed the line with the usual ceremonies; and as provisions by this time began to grow short, we resolved to put into the harbour of Rio de Janeiro; and on the 8th of November we saw the coast of Brazil. We stood off along shore till the 12th, having in view successively Cape Thomas, and an island just without Cape Frio, and then made sail for Rio de Janeiro on the 13th in the morning.

On the 14th Captain Cook went on shore, and obtained leave to furnish the ship with provisions; but this permission was clogged with the conditions of employing an inhabitant as a factor, and of sending a soldier in the Endeavour's boat every time she came from shore to the vessel. To these uncivil terms the Captain made many objections; but the viceroy was determined to insist on them, neither would he permit Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander to remain on shore, nor suffer the former to go up the country to collect plants. Captain Cook conceiving from these and other marks of jealousy, that the viceroy thought they were come to trade, used all his endeavours to convince him to the contrary; and acquainted him, that they were bound to the South Seas, to observe the transit of Venus over the disk of the sun, an object of great consequence to the improvement of navigation; but the viceroy by his answer seemed ignorant of the phenomenon. An officer was now appointed to attend the Captain, which order he was desired to understand as an intended compliment; however, when  
he

he would have declined such a ceremony, the viceroy very politely forced it upon him.

Dr. Solander and Mr. Banks were not a little chagrined on hearing that they would not be permitted to reside on shore, and still more so when they understood that they were not even allowed to quit the ship; for the viceroy had ordered, that the Captain only, with such sailors as were required by their duty, should come on shore. However, they attempted to go on shore, but were stopped by the guard-boat; yet several of the crew, without the knowledge of the centinel, let themselves down by a rope from the cabin window into the boat about midnight, and drove away with the tide, till they were out of hearing. They afterwards landed on an unfrequented part of the country, and were treated by the inhabitants with great civility.

Captain Cook, uneasy with the restrictions of the viceroy, remonstrated with him; but the latter would return no other answer but that the king his master's orders must be obeyed. The captain thus repulsed, and much displeased, resolved to go no more on shore, rather than, whenever he did so, to be treated as a prisoner in his own boat; for the officer who was so polite as to accompany him, constantly attended him, both to and from the shore. Two memorials were now drawn up and presented to the viceroy, one written by the Captain, and the other by Mr. Banks: but the answers returned were by no means satisfactory. Several papers passed between them and the viceroy to no good purpose; from whence the captain thought it necessary, in order to vindicate his own compliance, to urge the viceroy to an act of force in the execution of his orders. For this purpose he sent Lieut. Hicks with a packet, giving him his orders not to admit of a guard in his boat. As this gentleman was resolved to obey his captain's commands, the officer of the guard-boat did not oppose him by force, but acquainted the viceroy with what had happened, on which the lieutenant was sent away with the packet unopened.

When



When he returned, he found a guard of soldiers placed in the boat and insisted on their quitting it. Whereupon the officer seized the boat's crew, and conducted them under an escort to prison, and the lieutenant was sent back to the ship guarded. When the captain was informed of this transaction, he wrote to the viceroy to demand his boat and her crew, inclosing the memorial which Mr. Hickshis lieutenant had brought back. These papers he sent by a petty officer, to avoid continuing the dispute concerning the guard, which must have been kept up by a commissioned officer. An answer was now promised by the viceroy; but before this could arrive, the long boat, which had four pipes of rum on board, was driven windward, (the rope breaking that was thrown from the ship,) together with a small skiff that was fastened to the boat: Immediate orders were given for manning the yawl, which being dispatched accordingly with proper directions, returned, and brought the people on board the next morning; from whom Captain Cook learned that the long-boat having filled with water, they had brought her to a grappling, and quitted her, and falling in with a reef of rocks on her return, they were forced to cut the fastenings of Mr. Banks's little boat and sent her adrift. The captain now dispatched another letter to his excellency, wherein he informed him of the accident, desired he would assist him with a boat to recover his own; and, at the same time, renewed his demand of the delivery of the pinnace and her crew. The viceroy granted the request, but in his answer to the captain's remonstrance, suggested some doubts that he entertained, whether the Endeavour was really a king's ship, and also accused the crew of smuggling. Captain Cook, in his reply, said, that he was willing to shew his commission, adding, if any attempt should be made to carry on a contraband trade, he requested his excellency would order the offender to be taken into custody. The dispute being thus terminated, Mr. Banks attempted to elude the vigilance of the guard, which he found means

means to do, and got safe on shore on the 26th in the morning. He took care to avoid the town, and passed the day in the fields, where he could best gratify his curiosity. Mr. Banks found the country people inclined to treat with him civilly, and was invited to their habitations. But it was afterwards heard, that search had been making for this gentleman when absent. He and Dr. Solander therefore resolved to run no more risques in going on shore, while they remained at this place.

On the 1st of December, having taken in water and provisions, we got, with leave from the viceroy, a pilot on board; but the wind prevented us from putting to sea. A Spanish packet from Buenos Ayres, bound for Spain, arriving the next day, the captain of her with great politeness offered to take our letters to Europe. The favour was accepted, and Captain Cook delivered into his hands a packet for the secretary of the Admiralty, containing copies of all the papers that had passed between him and the viceroy, leaving the duplicates with his excellency.

On the 5th we weighed anchor, and towed down the bay, but were stopped at Santa Cruz, the principal fortification, the order from the viceroy, to let us pass, by an unaccountable negligence, not having been sent; so that it was not till the 7th that we got under sail. When we had passed the fort, the guard-boat left us, and our pilot was discharged. Of the town and neighbouring country we shall give the following description:

Rio de Janeiro was probably so called because discovered on the festival of St. Januarius, from whence we may suppose the river Januarius took its name, and also the town, which is the capital of the Portuguese in America. This town is situated on the west side of the river, from which it is extended about three quarters of a mile. The ground whereon it stands is a level plain. It is defended on the north side by a hill, that extends from the river, having a small plain, which contains the suburbs and the king's dock.



dock. The houses in general are of stone, and two stories high ; its circuit is about three miles ; and appears to be equal in size to the largest country towns in England. The streets are straight and of a convenient breadth ; and the principal street is near 100 feet in width. The churches are richly ornamented, and there is more religious parade in this place than in any of the popish countries in Europe. But the inhabitants may pay their devotion at the shrine of any saint ; for a small cupboard, having a glass window, and in which is one of the tutelary gods, is placed almost before every house, and a lamp is kept constantly burning, lest the old proverb should be verified, " Out of sight, out of mind." Before these saints the people pray and sing with such vehemence, that in the night they were distinctly heard by our sailors on board the ship.

The inhabitants of Rio de Janeiro are exceeding numerous, and consist of Portuguese, Negroes, and Indians, which last were the original natives of the country. The township of Rio is but a small part of the Capitanea, or province ; yet it is said to contain 37,000 white people, and 629,000 blacks, many of whom are free, making together 966,002, in the proportion of 17 to 1.

The military is composed of twelve regiments of regular troops, six being Portuguese, and six Creoles, and twelve regiments of provincial militia. The inhabitants are servilely submissive to the regulars, and it has been said, that if any of them should omit the compliment of taking off his hat when he meets an officer, he would be immediately knocked down. But the subordination of the officers to the viceroy is equally mortifying, for they are obliged to wait three times a day to know or receive his commands : the answer frequently is, " There is nothing new."

In Rio de Janeiro the gentry keep their chaises, which are drawn by mules ; the ladies however use a sedan chair, boarded before and behind, with curtains on each side, which is carried by two negroes,

on a pole connected with the top of the chair, by two rods, coming from under its bottom, one on each side, and reaching to the top. The women in general, are more ready to grant amorous favours than those of any other civilized parts of the world. As soon as the evening began, females appeared at the windows on every side, who distinguished such of the men as best pleased their fancies by throwing down nosegays; and Dr. Solander and two other gentlemen received so many of these love-tokens, that they threw them away by hat-fulls.

This place is very useful for ships that are in want of refreshment. The harbour is safe and commodious, and distinguished by a remarkable hill, in the shape of a cone, at the west point of the bay. The entrance is not wide, but is easy, from the sea breeze which prevails from noon to sun-set, for any ship to enter before the wind. Provisions, except wheaten bread and flour, are easily procured. Beef, both fresh and jerked, may be bought at two-pence farthing a pound, but is very lean. Mutton is scarce to be produced. Hogs and poultry are dear. Garden stuff and fruit are in abundance. Rum, sugar, and molasses are all excellent, and to be had at reasonable prices.

The air is seldom immoderately hot, as the sea breeze is generally succeeded by a land wind. The seasons are divided into dry and rainy, though their commencement of late has been irregular and uncertain; but at this time the rain had just begun, and fell in heavy showers during our stay.



## CHAP. II.

*The departure of the Endeavour from Rio de Janeiro.—Her passage from the entrance of the streight of Le Maire.—The inhabitants of Terra del Fuego described.—Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander ascend a mountain in search of plants.—An account of what happened to them in this excursion.—The Endeavour passes through the Streight Le Maire.—An account of her passage, and a further description of the inhabitants of Terra del Fuego.—An account of Cape Horn, and the newly discovered islands.—An account of their figure and appearance.—The inhabitants described; with a narrative of the various incidents during the course, and on the Endeavour's arrival among them.*

ON the 8th of December, 1768, having procured necessary supplies, we took our departure from Rio de Janeiro; and on the 9th an amazing number of atoms were taken out of the sea. They were of a yellowish colour, and a few of them were more than the fifth part of an inch long. The sea was tinged in such a manner with these equivocal substances, as to exhibit broad streaks of a similar colour for near a mile in length, and several yards in breadth.

On the 11th we hooked a shark. It proved to be a female. When opened we took six young ones out of it, five of which were alive, and swam briskly in a tub of water. On the 30th we ran fifty leagues through vast numbers of land insects; some in the air, and others upon the water. At this time we judged ourselves to be nearly opposite to the bay called Sands Fond, (with bottom) where it is supposed that the continent of America is divided by a passage.

On the 3d of January, 1769, we saw the appearance of land, in lat. 47 deg. 17 min. south, and long. 61 deg. 29 min. 45 sec. west, which we mistook for Pepy's Island. In appearance it so much resembled

land, that we bore away for it ; and it was three hours before we were convinced that it was one of those deceptions which sailors call a fog bank. On the 11th after having passed Falkland's Island, we saw the coast of Terra del Fuego, at the distance of about four leagues from the west to south-east by south.

On the 14th we entered the Streight of Le Maire, but were afterwards driven out again with such violence (the tide being against us) that the ship's bowsprit was frequently under water. At length we got anchorage in a small cove, on the east of Cape St. Vincent, the entrance to which our Captain named St. Vincent's Bay.

Dr. Solander and Mr. Banks went on shore, where having continued four hours, they returned about nine in the evening, with above an hundred different plants and flowers, of which none of the European botanists had taken any notice, near this bay.

On the 18th we came to an anchor in twelve fathom water, upon coral rocks, at the distance of about a mile from the shore. At this time two of the natives came down upon the beach, as if they expected that the strangers intended to land, but as there was no shelter there, the ship got under sail again, and the Indians retired disappointed. The same afternoon we came into the Bay of Good Success, and the vessel coming to an anchor, the captain went on shore, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, in order to search for a watering place, and discourse with the Indians. These gentlemen had not proceeded above one hundred yards before the captain, when two of the Indians that had seated themselves rose up, and threw away the small sticks they held in their hands, as a token of amity. They afterwards returned to their companions, who had remained at some distance behind them, and made signs to their guests to advance, whom they received in a friendly, though uncouth manner. In return for their civility, some ribbands and beads were distributed among them. Thus a sort of mutual confidence was established, and the rest of the English joined the party, the Indians conversing with them in  
their



their way, in an amicable manner. Captain Cook and his friends took three of them to the ship, dressed them in jackets, and gave them bread and other provisions, part of which they carried on shore with them ; but they refused to drink rum or brandy, making signs that it burned their throats, as their proper drink was water. One of these people made long and loud speeches, but no part of them was intelligible to any of us. Another stole the covering of a globe, which he concealed under his garment, that was made of skin. After having remained on board about two hours, they returned on shore, Mr. Banks accompanying them. He conducted them to their companions, who seemed no ways curious to know what their friends had seen, and the latter were as little disposed to relate, as the former were to enquire. None of these people exceeded five feet ten inches in height, but their bodies appeared large and robust, though their limbs were small. They had broad flat faces, high cheeks, noses inclining to flatness, wide nostrils, small black eyes, large mouths, small, but indifferent teeth, and straight black hair, falling down over their ears and foreheads, the latter being generally besmeared with brown and red paints, and, like all the original natives of America, they were beardless, their garments were the skins of seals and guanicoes, which wrapped round their shoulders. The men likewise wore on their heads a bunch of yarn, which fell over their foreheads, and was tied behind with the sinews or tendons of some animals. Many of both sexes were painted on different parts of their bodies with red, white, and brown colours, and had also three or four perpendicular lines pricked across their cheeks and noses. The women had a small string tied round each ankle, and each wore a flap of skin fastened round the middle. They carried their children upon their backs, and were generally employed in domestic labour and drudgery.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, attended by their servants, set out from the ship on the 16th, with a design of going into the country as far as they could that day, and return in the evening. Having entered a wood, they

they ascended a hill through a pathless wilderness till the afternoon. After they had reached what they took for a plain, they were greatly disappointed to find it a swamp, covered with birch, the bushes interwoven and so inflexible that they could not be divided; however they stepped over them, but were up to the ankles in boggy ground. Before they had got over this swamp, an accident happened that greatly disconcerted them. Mr. Buchan, one of the draughtsmen whom Mr. Banks had taken with him, fell into a fit. It was absolutely necessary to kindle a fire, and such as were most fatigued remained to assist him; but Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Mr. Monkhouse proceeded, and attained the spot they had in view, where they found a great variety of plants that gratified their curiosity. On returning to their company, amidst the snow, which fell in great abundance, they found Mr. Buchan much recovered. They had previously sent Mr. Monkhouse and Mr. Green back to him and those that remained with him, in order to bring them to a hill which was conjectured to lie in a better tract for returning to the wood, and which was accordingly fixed on as a place of rendezvous.

Dr. Solander having often passed over mountains in cold countries, was sensible, that extreme cold, when joined with fatigue, occasions a drowsiness that is not easily resisted; he therefore intreated his friends to keep in motion, however disagreeable it might be to them. His words were, "Whoever sits down will sleep, and whoever sleeps will wake no more."—Every one seemed accordingly armed with resolution; but, on a sudden, the cold became so very intense as to threaten the most dreadful effects. It was now very remarkable, that the Doctor himself, who had so forcibly admonished and alarmed his party, was the first that insisted to be suffered to repose. In spite of the most earnest intreaties of his friends, he lay down amidst the snow, and it was with difficulty that they kept him awake. One of the black servants also became weak and faint, and was on the point of following this bad example. Mr. Buchan was therefore detached with a party to make a fire at the  
first



first commodious spot they could find. Mr. Banks and four more remained with the Doctor and Richmond, the black, who with the utmost difficulty were persuaded to come on; and when they had traversed the greatest part of the swamp, they expressed their inability of going any farther. When the black was told if he remained there he would soon be frozen to death, his reply was, that he was so much exhausted with fatigue, that death would be a relief to him. Dr. Solander said, he was not unwilling to go, but that he must first take some sleep, still persisting in acting contrary to the opinion which he himself had delivered to the company. Thus resolved, they both sat down, supported by some bushes, and in a short time fell asleep. Intelligence came from the advanced party, that a fire was kindled about a quarter of a mile farther on the way. Mr. Banks then awakened the Doctor, who had already almost lost the use of his limbs, though it was but a few minutes since he sat down; nevertheless he consented to go on, but every measure taken to relieve the black proved ineffectual. He remained motionless, and they were obliged to leave him to the care of a sailor, and the other black servant, who appeared to be the least hurt by the cold, and they were to be relieved as soon as two others were sufficiently warmed, to fill their places. The Doctor, with much difficulty, was got to the fire; and as to those who were sent to relieve the companions of Richmond, they returned without having been able to find them. What rendered the mortification still greater, was, that a bottle of rum (the whole stock of the party) could not be found, and was judged to have been left with one of the three that were missing.

A fall of snow continuing for near two hours, there now remained no hopes of seeing the three absent persons again. At one o'clock a great shout was heard at a distance, which gave inexpressible satisfaction to every one present. Mr. Banks and four others went forwards and met the sailor, who had just strength enough to walk. He was immediately sent to the fire, and they proceeded to seek the other two. They found Rich-  
mon

mond upon his legs, but incapable of moving them ; the other black was lying senseless on the ground. Our endeavours to bring them to the fire were fruitless ; nor was it possible to kindle one upon the spot, on account of the snow ; so that there remained no alternative, but to leave the two unfortunate negroes to their fate. Briscoe, another servant to Mr. Banks, in particular, began to lose his sensibility. At last they reached the fire, and passed the night in a very disagreeable manner.

The party that set out from the ship, consisted of twelve ; two of these were already judged to be dead ; it was doubtful whether the third would be able to return on board, and Mr. Buchan, a fourth, seemed to be threatened with a return of his fits.

At day-break on the 17th, nothing presented itself to the view all around but snow, which covered alike the trees and the ground ; and the blasts of wind were so frequent and violent, that their journey seemed to be rendered impracticable, and they had reason to dread perishing with cold and famine. About six in the morning, they were flattered with hopes of being delivered, by discovering the sun through the clouds, which gradually diminished. Before their setting out, messengers were dispatched to the unhappy negroes ; but returned with the news of their death.

Hunger prevailing over every other consideration, induced our travellers to divide the small remainder of their provisions, and to set forward on their journey about ten in the morning. To their great astonishment and satisfaction, in about three hours they found themselves ashore, and much nearer to the ship than their most sanguine expectations could have suggested. When they looked back upon their former rout from the sea, they found, that instead of ascending the hill, in a direct line, they had made a circle almost round the country. On their return, these wanderers received such congratulations from those on board, as can more easily be imagined than expressed.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went on shore again on the 20th of this month, landing in the bottom of the bay,



bay, where they collected a number of shells and plants hitherto unknown. After having returned from dinner, they went to visit an Indian town, about two miles up the country, the access to which, on account of the mud, was difficult. When they approached the town, two of the natives came out to meet them, who began to shout in their usual manner. They afterwards conducted Mr. Banks and the Doctor to their town. This town was inhabited by a tribe of about fifty men, women, and children. Their bows and arrows were constructed with neatness and ingenuity, being made of wood highly polished; and the point, which was either glass or flint, very skilfully fitted. The natives here did not shew any surprise at the sight of fire arms, but appeared to be well acquainted with their use. It is likely that the spot on which the Doctor and Mr. Banks met them, was not a fixed habitation, as their houses did not seem as if they were erected to stand for any long time, and they had no boats or canoes about them. They did not appear to have any form of government, or any ideas of subordination. They seemed to be the very outcasts of men, and a people that passed their lives in wandering in a forlorn manner over dreary wastes; their dwelling being a thatched hovel, and their clothing scarcely sufficient to keep them from perishing with cold, even in these climates. Their only food was shell fish, which, on any one spot, must soon be exhausted; nor had they the rudest implement of art, nor even so much as was necessary to dress their food. Those who can be happy in such a situation, can only be so, because they have not a due feeling of their misery.

We observed in this place sea-lions and dogs, and no other quadrupeds; nevertheless it is probable there are other kinds of animals in the country. A great variety of plants were found by the Doctor and Mr. Banks.

On Sunday, January 22, having got in our wood and water, we sailed out of the bay, and continued our course through the streight; and in passing this, notwithstanding the description which some voyagers have given of Terra del Fuego, we did not find that it had,

agreeable to their representations, such a forbidding aspect. Nine miles westward of Cape St. Diego, the low point that forms the north entrance of the streight of Le Maire, are three hills, called the Three Brothers; and on Terra del Fuego is another hill, in the form of a sugar loaf, which stands on the west side, not far from the sea. We had not this difficulty mentioned in the history of Lord Anson's voyage, in finding where the streight of Le Maire lies.

The streight of Le Maire is bounded on the west by Terra del Fuego, and on the east by the west end of Staten island, and is nearly five leagues in length, nor less in breadth. The bay of Good Success is seated about the middle of it, on the side of Terra del Fuego, which presents itself at the entrance of the streight from the northward; and the south end of it may be distinguished by a land mark, resembling a road from the sea to the country. It affords good anchorage, and plenty of wood and water.

January the 26th, we took our departure from Cape Horn, and the farthest southern latitude we made was 60 deg. 10 min. and our long. was then 74 deg. 30 min. west. Cape Horn is situated in 55 deg. 53 min. south latitude, and 68 deg. 13 min. west long. The weather being calm, Mr. Banks sailed in a small boat to shoot birds, when he killed some shear-waters and albatrosses. At this time we found ourselves to be 12 deg. to the westward, and three and a half to the northward of the streight of Magellan, having from the east entrance of the streight, been 33 days in sailing round Cape Horn.

March 1st, we found ourselves both by observation and the log in lat. 38 deg. 44 min. south, and 110 deg. 33 min. west longitude, a concurrence very singular in a run of 660 leagues; and which proved, that no current had affected the ship in her course; and it was likewise concluded, that we had not come near land of any considerable extent; for currents are always found at no great distance from the shore. On the 25th, a marine, about twenty, threw himself overboard, on account of a quarrel about a piece of seal skin, which he  
took



took by way of a frolic; but being charged with it as a theft, he took the accusation so much to heart, that in the dusk of the evening he threw himself into the sea, and was drowned.

On the 4th of April, about ten o'clock A. M. Peter Briscoe, servant to Mr. Banks, discovered land to the south, at the distance of about three or four leagues. Captain Cook immediately gave orders to haul for it, when we found an island of an oval form, having a lagoon or lake in the centre, that extended over the greater part of it. The surrounding border of land was low and narrow in many places, especially towards the south, where the beach consisted of a reef of rocks. Several of the natives were discovered on shore; they appeared to be tall, with heads remarkably large, which probably some bandage might have increased. Some of these people were seen a-breast of the ship, holding poles or pikes of twice their own height. They appeared also naked; but when they retired, on the ship's passing the islands, they put on a light coloured covering. Our captain called this place Lagoon Island. It lay in 18 deg. south lat. and 139 west longitude.

### CHAP. III.

*The Endeavour arrives at Otaheite, or George the Third's Island—An account of several incidents during his stay in this island—Excursions into the woods—Visits from several of the chiefs—The music of the natives, and their manner of burying their dead—Other excursions and incidents, both on board and on shore—First interview with Oberea, the supposed queen of the island—The quadrant stolen, and the consequences—A visit to Tootahah, an Indian chief—A wrestling match described—European seeds are sown—The Indians give our people names.*

ON the 11th of April we made Otaheite, or, as Capt. Wallis had named it, King George the Third's Island. The calms prevented our approaching it till the morning, when a breeze sprung up, and several canoes

were seen making towards the ship. Few of them, however, would come near, and those who did, could not be persuaded to come on board. They had brought with them young plantains and branches of trees, which were hauled up the ship's side, and, by their desire, were stuck in conspicuous parts of the rigging, as tokens of peace and friendship. We then purchased their commodities, consisting of cocoa-nuts, bananas, bread-fruit, apples, and figs, which were very acceptable to the crew. On the evening of the same we opened the north-west point of the isle, to which the Dolphin's people had given the name of York Island. We lay off and on all night, and in the morning of the 13th we entered Port Royal Harbour, in the island of Otaheite, and anchored within half a mile of the shore. Many of the natives came off immediately in their canoes, and brought with them bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, apples, and some hops, which they bartered for beads and other trinkets with the ship's company.

Among those who came on board the Endeavour, was an elderly man, named Owhaw, known to Mr. Gore, and others who visited this island with Capt. Wallis. Owhaw being considered by our gentlemen as a very useful man, they studied to please him, and to gratify all his wishes. As our continuance in George's island was not likely to be very short, certain rules were drawn up to be observed by every person on board, for the better establishing a regular trade with the natives. The substance of these rules were,

“That in order to prevent quarrels and confusion, every one of the ship's crew should endeavour to treat the inhabitants of Otaheite with humanity, and by all fair means to cultivate a friendship with them. That no officer, seaman, or other person, belonging to the ship, except such only who were appointed to barter with the natives, should trade, or offer to trade for any kinds of provisions, fruit, or other produce of the island, without having express leave so to do. That no person should embezzle, trade, or offer to trade with any part of the ship's stores ; and that no sort of iron, or any thing



thing made of iron, nor any sort of cloth, or other useful article in the ship, should be given in exchange for any thing but provision." These necessary rules were signed by Captain Cook, and, being his orders, to the non-observance of them were annexed certain penalties, besides the punishment according to the usual custom of the navy.

When the bark was properly secured, Captain Cook, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, went on shore, with a party under arms, and their friend the old Indian. They were received by some of the natives with awe and reverence, who exchanged the tokens of peace, and offered to conduct them to a spot of ground, which would be more convenient for them to occupy, than where they had landed. On their way, the English made the Indians some presents, which the latter very thankfully received. They now took a circuit of about four miles through groves of bread fruit and cocoa-trees. Intermingled with these were the dwellings of the natives, which consisted of huts without walls. In the course of their journey they found but few fowls or hogs, and understood, that none of their conductors, nor any of the people they had hitherto seen, were persons of rank in the island. Those of our crew who had been before at Otaheite, were likewise of opinion, that the queen's residence had been removed, as no trace of it was now to be discovered.

Next day, in the morning, before they could leave the ship, several canoes came about her filled with people, whose dress denoted them to be of the superior class. Two of these came on board, and each of them fixed upon a friend: one of them chose Mr. Banks, and the other Captain Cook. The ceremonials consisted of taking off their clothes in great part, and putting them upon their adopted friends. This compliment was returned by our gentlemen presenting them with some trinkets. They then made signs for their new friends to go with them to the place of their abode; and the latter being desirous of being acquainted with the people, and finding out a more convenient harbour, accepted the invitation,

invitation, and went with them, accompanied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Captain Cook, and others. We all landed in two boats at the distance of three miles, among a great number of the natives, who conducted us to a large habitation, where we were introduced to a middle-aged man, named Tootahah. When we were seated, he presented to Mr. Banks a cock, a hen, and a piece of perfumed cloth, which compliment was returned by a present from Mr. Banks. We were then conducted to several other large dwellings, wherein we walked about with great freedom. The ladies, so far from shunning, invited, and even pressed us to be seated, by frequently pointing to the mat upon the ground.

Walking afterwards along the shore, we met, accompanied by a great number of natives, another chief, named Tubourai Tamaide, with whom we settled a treaty of peace, in the manner before described. This chief gave us to understand, that he had provisions at our service, if we chose to eat, which he produced, and we dined heartily upon bread-fruit, plantains, and fish. During this visit, Tomio, the chief's wife, placed herself upon the same mat with Mr. Banks, close by him; but as she was not young, nor appeared ever to have possessed many charms, this gentleman paid little attention to her; and Tomio received an additional mortification, when Mr. Banks beckoned to a pretty girl, who came and placed herself by him. The princess was somewhat chagrined at this preference being given to her rival. This whimsical scene was interrupted by an event of a more serious nature: Dr. Solander having missed his opera-glass, a complaint was made to the chief, which interrupted the convivial party. The complaint was enforced by Mr. Banks starting up and striking the butt-end of his musket against the ground, which struck the Indians with such a panic, that all of them ran precipitately out of the house, except the chief, and a few others of the superior class. That no disadvantageous notions might be entertained of them on account of this circumstance, the chief observed, with an air of great probity, that the place which the Doctor had mentioned



mentioned on this occasion, was not within his district, but he would send to the chief of it, and endeavour to recover it; adding, that if this could not be done, he would make the Doctor compensation, by giving him as much new cloth as should be thought equal to the value. The case however was brought in a little time, and the glass itself soon after. After this adventure was amicably terminated, we returned to the ship about six in the evening.

On Saturday the 15th, in the morning, several of the chiefs came on board, bringing with them hogs, and other refreshments, in exchange for which they received linen, beads, and other trinkets; but some of them took the liberty of stealing the lightning chain. This day the captain, attended by Mr. Banks, and some of the other gentlemen, went on shore, to fix on a proper spot to erect a fort for their defence, during their stay on the island, and the ground was accordingly marked out for that purpose: a great number of the natives looking on all the while, and behaving in the most peaceable and friendly manner.

Mr. Banks and his friends having seen few hogs and poultry in their walks, they suspected that they had been driven up the country; for which reason they determined to penetrate into the woods; the tent being guarded by a petty officer and a party of marines. On this excursion several of the natives accompanied the English. While the party were on their march, they were alarmed by the discharge of two pieces fired by the guard of the tent. Owhaw having now called together the captain's party, dispersed all the Indians, except three, who, in token of their fidelity, broke branches of trees, according to their custom, and whom it was thought proper to detain. When they returned to the tent, they found that an Indian having snatched away one of the centinels' muskets, a young midshipman, who commanded the party, was so imprudent as to give the marines orders to fire, which were obeyed, and many of the natives were wounded; but this did not satisfy them, as the offender had not fallen, they

they therefore pursued him, and revenged the theft by his death. This action, which was equally inconsistent with policy and humanity, could not but be very displeasing to Mr. Banks; but as what had passed could not be recalled, nothing remained but to endeavour to accommodate matters with the Indians. Accordingly he crossed the river, where he met an old man through whose mediation several of the natives were prevailed on to come over to them, and to give the usual tokens of friendship,

Mr. Banks, on the 17th, had the misfortune to lose Mr. Buchan. The same day they received a visit from Tubourai Tamaide, and Tootahah. They brought with them some plantain branches, and till these were received, they would not venture on board. They bartered some bread-fruit and a hog, which was ready dressed, for nails, with the English.

Tubourai Tamaide visited Mr. Banks at his tent on Wednesday the 19th, and brought with him his wife and family. He afterwards asked that gentleman to accompany him to the woods. On their arrival at a place where he sometimes resided, he presented his guests with two garments, one of which was of red cloth, and the other was made of fine matting; having thus clothed Mr. Banks, he conducted him to the ship, and staid to dinner with his wife and son.

On the 22d we were entertained by some of the musicians of the country, who performed on an instrument somewhat resembling a German flute, but the performer blew through his nostril instead of his mouth, and others accompanied this instrument, singing only one tune.

On the 24th, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander made an excursion into the country, and found it level and fertile along the shore, for about two miles to the eastward; after which the hills reached quite to the water's edge; and farther on, they ran out into the sea. Having passed these hills, which continued about three miles, we came to an extensive plain, abounding with good habitations, and the people seemed to enjoy a considerable share of property. This place was rendered still more agreeable  
by



by a wide river issuing from a valley, and which watered it. We crossed this river, when perceiving the country to be barren, we resolved to return.

On the 25th, in the evening, several of the gentlemen's knives were missing; Mr. Banks, who had lost his among the rest, accused Tubourai Tamaide of having taken it, which, as he was innocent, occasioned him a great deal of unmerited anxiety. He made signs, while the tears started from his eyes, that if he had ever been guilty of such a theft as was imputed to him, he would suffer his throat to be cut. But though he was innocent, it was plain, from many instances, that the natives of this island were very much addicted to thieving; though Mr. Banks's servant had mislaid the knife in question, yet the rest were produced in a rag by one of the natives.

When the guns, on the 26th, which were six swivels, had been mounted on the fort, the Indians seemed to be in great trouble, and several of the fishermen removed, fearing, notwithstanding all the marks of friendship which had been shewn to them by our people, they should, in a few days, be fired at from the fort; yet the next day, being the 27th, Tubourai Tamaide came with three women and a friend of his, who was a remarkable glutton, and after dinner returned to his own house in the wood. In a short time after he came back to complain to Mr. Banks of a butcher, who had threatened to cut his wife's throat, because she would not barter a stone hatchet for a nail. It appearing clearly that the offender had infringed one of the rules enjoined by the captain for trading with the natives, he was flogged on board in their sight.

On the 28th, Terapo, one of Tubourai Tamaide's female attendants, came down to the fort in the greatest affliction, the tears gushing from her eyes. Mr. Banks seeing her full of lamentation and sorrow, insisted upon knowing the cause, but instead of answering, she struck herself several times with a shark's tooth upon her head, till an effusion of blood fol-

lowed, while her distress was disregarded by several other Indians, who continued laughing and talking with the utmost unconcern. After this she gathered up some pieces of cloth, which she had thrown down to catch the blood, and threw them into the sea, as if she wished to prevent the least trace or mark of her absurd behaviour. She then bathed in the river, and, with remarkable cheerfulness, returned to the tent, as if nothing extraordinary had happened.

Mr. Molineux, master of the Endeavour, seeing a woman whose name was Oberea, he declared she was the same person whom he judged to be the queen of the island when he was there with Captain Wallis. The eyes of every one were now fixed on her, of whom so much had been said by the crew of the Dolphin. With regard to her person, she was tall and rather large made; she was about forty years of age, her skin white, and her eyes had great expression in them: she had been handsome, but her beauty was now upon the decline. Many presents were made her, particularly a child's doll, which she viewed very attentively. Captain Cook accompanied her on shore, and when we landed, she presented him with a hog, and some plantains, in return for his presents, which were carried to the fort in procession, Oberea and the captain bringing up the rear. In their way they met Tootahah, who no sooner saw the doll, than he discovered strong symptoms of jealousy, nor could any method be found of conciliating his friendship, but that of complimenting him with a baby also. A doll was now preferable to a hatchet, but a very short time taught the Indians the superior value of iron, which, on account of its usefulness, prevailed over every other consideration.

On the 29th, near noon, Mr. Banks paid a visit to Oberea, but was informed that she was asleep under the awning of her canoe; and, going to call her up, was surprised at finding her in bed with a young fellow, a discovery which caused him to retire rather disconcerted; but he soon understood that a commerce



merce of this fort was by no means considered as scandalous, the ladies frequently courting the men to amorous dalliance, of which they made no secret ; and as to young Obadee, found in bed with the queen, he was well known by every one to be the object of her lascivious hours. The queen soon got up, and dressed herself to wait upon Mr. Banks, and, after having, as a token of her particular regard, put on him a suit of fine cloth, they proceeded together to the tents. In the evening Mr. Banks visited Tubourai Tamaide. He was astonished to find this chief and his family all in tears, and not being able to discover the cause, he soon took leave of them. Upon his return, the officers told him, that Owhaw had foretold, that the guns would be fired within four days, and as this was the eve of the third day, they were alarmed at the situation they judged themselves to be in. As we were apprehensive of ill consequences from this prepossession, the centinels were doubled at the fort, and we thought it necessary to keep under arms.

On the 30th, Tomio came in great haste to our tent, and taking Mr. Banks by the arm, told him that Tubourai Tamaide was dying, owing to somewhat that had been given him by our people, and intreated him instantly to go to him. Accordingly Mr. Banks went and found the Indian very sick. He had been vomiting, and had thrown up a leaf which they said contained some of the poison. Mr. Banks having examined the leaf, found it was nothing but tobacco, which the Indian had begged of some of the ship's company.

The matter, however, appeared in a very serious light to Tubourai Tamaide, who really concluded from the violent sickness he suffered, that he had swallowed some deadly drug, the terror of which, no doubt, contributed to make him yet more sick. While Mr. Banks was examining the leaf, he looked up to him, as if he had been just on the point of death. But when the nature of the dreadful poison was found out, he only ordered him to drink of cocoa-nut milk, which

soon restored him to health, and he was as chearful as before the accident happened.

On the 1st of May, Captain Cook having produced an iron adze, which was made in imitation of the stone ones used by the natives, shewed it to Tootahah, as a curiosity. The latter snatched it up, and insisted on having it; and though he was offered the choice of any of the articles in the chests which were opened before him, yet he would not accept of any thing in its stead.

May 2d, we took the astronomical quadrant and some of the instruments on shore that afternoon; and, to our great surprise, when we wanted to make use of the quadrant, the next day, it was not to be found; a matter which was looked upon as the more extraordinary, as a centinel had been placed the whole night within a few yards of the place where it was deposited. A strict search was made in and about the fort, and a reward offered in order to obtain it again. But this proving fruitless, Mr. Banks and some other gentlemen set out for the woods, where they thought they might get some tidings of what was stolen. In their way they met with Tubourai Tamaide and some of the natives. This chief was made to understand by signs, that they had lost the quadrant, and that as some of their countrymen must have taken it, they insisted upon being shewn the place where it was concealed. Having proceeded a few miles together, after some enquiry, Tubourai Tamaide was informed who the thief was, and it was found that he was then at a place about four miles distant. As they had no fire-arms but a brace of pistols, not caring to trust themselves so far from the fort, a message was dispatched to Captain Cook, requesting him to send out a party to support them. The Captain accordingly set out with a party properly armed, after having laid an embargo upon all the canoes in the bay.

In the mean time, Mr. Banks and Mr. Green proceeded on their way, and at the place which had been mentioned, were met by one of Tubourai Tamaide's  
own



own people, bringing with him part of the quadrant ; the case and the other parts of the instrument were recovered soon afterwards, when it was found that it had received no real injury, though it had been taken to pieces.

When they returned in the evening, they were much surprised to find Tootahah under confinement in the fort, while a croud of natives surrounded the gate, discovering marks of the greatest anxiety for the fate of their chief. The occasion of this detention originated from the conduct of the Indians : alarmed at Captain Cook's having gone up the country with an armed party, most of the natives left the fort that evening, and one of the canoes attempted to quit the bay. The lieutenant who commanded on board the ship, having it in charge not to suffer any canoe to depart, sent a boat to detain her, but she no sooner approached, than the Indians jumped into the sea. Tootahah being of the number, was taken up, and sent by the lieutenant to the officer that commanded at the fort, who concluded he should do right to detain him prisoner, while the poor chief thought of nothing but being put to death, till Captain Cook caused him to be returned, to the great joy of his countrymen.

On the 3d, provisions were extremely scarce, as the markets continued to be ill supplied on the account already mentioned ; and it was not without some difficulty that Mr. Banks got a few baskets of bread-fruit. However, some time afterwards, having produced some nails to barter for provisions, we got twenty cocoa-nuts and some bread-fruit, for one of the smallest size, so that we soon had plenty of these articles, though no hogs.

On the 10th in the forenoon, Oberea paid us a visit, accompanied by Obadee, presenting us with a hog and some bread-fruit. This was the first visit we had received from this lady, since the loss of our quadrant, and the confinement of Tootahah. By this time our forge was set up, which afforded a new subject

ject of admiration to the Indians, and to Captain Cook an additional opportunity of conferring obligations on them, by permitting the smith to convert the old iron, which they were supposed to have procured from the Dolphin, into different kinds of tools. Oberea produced as much iron as would have made for her another axe; this she requested to have done; but the lady could not be gratified in this particular, upon which she brought a broken axe, desiring it might be mended. The axe was mended, and to all appearance she was content.

On the 11th we sowed, in ground properly prepared, seeds of melons, and other plants, but none of them came up except mustard. Mr. Banks thought the seeds were spoiled by a total exclusion of fresh air, they having all been put into small bottles, and sealed up with rosin.

#### CHAP. IV.

*An extraordinary visit—Divine service attended by the natives of Otaheite—An uncommon sight—Tubourai Tamaide found guilty of theft—A relation of what happened at the fort, when observing the Transit of Venus—A description of an Indian funeral—Preparations made for leaving the island—An account of their departure, and the behaviour of the natives on this occasion.*

ON the 12th of this month (May) an uncommon ceremony was performed by some of the natives. As Mr. Banks was sitting in his boat, trading with them as usual, some ladies, who were strangers, advanced in procession towards him. The rest of the Indians on each side gave way, and formed a lane for the visitors to pass, who coming up to Mr. Banks, presented him with some parrot's feathers, and various kinds of plants. Tupia, who stood by Mr. Banks, acted as the master of the ceremonies, and receiving the branches, which were brought at six different times,

times, laid down in the boat. After this some large bundles of cloth were brought, consisting of nine pieces, divided into three parcels, one of the women, called Oorattooa, who appeared to be the principal, stepping upon one of them, pulled up her clothes as high as her waist, and then, with an air of unaffected simplicity, turned round three times. This ceremony she repeated, with similar circumstances, on the other two parcels of cloth; and the whole being then presented to Mr. Banks, the ladies went and saluted him; in return for which extraordinary favours, he made them such presents as he thought would best please them.

On Sunday the 14th, divine service was performed at the fort. Tubourai Tamaide and his wife were present, but though they behaved with much decency, they made no enquiries with respect to the ceremonies. The day thus began with acts of devotion, but concluded with those of lewdness exhibited among the natives by way of entertainment.

On Monday the 15th, Tubourai Tamaide was detected in having committed a theft. Mr. Banks had a good opinion of this chief, but, when his honesty was put to the test, a basket of nails, left in the corner of the tent proved irresistible. He confessed the fact of having stolen four nails, but when restitution was demanded, Tamaide said the nails were at Eparre. High words passed on the occasion, and in the end, the Indian produced one of the nails, and was to be forgiven on restoring the rest; but his virtue was not equal to the task, and he withdrew himself, as usual, when he had committed any offence.

On the 25th, Mr. Banks seeing Tubourai Tamaide, and his wife Tomio at the tent for the first time since the former had been detected in stealing the nails, he endeavoured to persuade him to restore them, but in vain. As our gentlemen treated him with a reserve and coolness, which he could not but perceive, his stay was short, and he departed in a very abrupt manner; nor could our surgeon the next morning persuade



persuade him to effect a reconciliation by bringing down the nails.

At this time the preparations were made for viewing the transit of Venus, and two parties were sent out to make observations from different spots, that in case of failing in one place they might succeed in another. They employed themselves for some time in preparing their instruments, and instructing those gentlemen who were to go out, in the use of them; and on Thursday, the 1st of June, they sent the long-boat with Mr. Gore, Mr. Monkhouse (the two observers) and Mr. Sporing, with proper instruments, to Emayo. Others were sent to find out a spot that might answer the purpose, at a convenient distance from their principal station.

The party that went towards Emayo, after rowing the greater part of the night, having hailed a canoe, were informed of a place, by the Indians on board, which was judged proper for their observatory, where they accordingly fixed their tents. It was a rock that rose out of the water about 140 yards from the shore.

Saturday the 3d (the day of the transit) Mr. Banks, as soon as it was light, left them, in order to go and get fresh provisions on the island. This gentleman had the satisfaction to see the sun rise without a cloud. The king, whose name was Tarraro, came to pay him a visit, as he was trading with the natives, and brought with him Nunna his sister. As it was customary for the people in these parts to be seated at their conferences, Mr. Banks spread his turban of India cloth, which he wore as a hat, upon the ground, on which they all sat down. Then a hog and a dog, some cocoa-nuts, and bread-fruit, were brought, being the king's present, and Mr. Banks sent for an adze, a shirt, and some beads, which were presented to his majesty, who received them with apparent satisfaction. Afterwards the king, his sister, and three beautiful females, their attendants, returned with Mr. Banks to the observatory, where he shewed them  
the

the transit of Venus, when the planet was upon the sun, and acquainted them, that to view in that situation was the cause of his undertaking a voyage to those remoter parts. According to this gentleman's account, the produce of this island is nearly the same with that of Otaheite; the people also resembled those of that island; he had seen many of them upon it who were acquainted with the nature of trading articles. The parties that were sent out to make their observations on the transit, had good success in their undertaking; though they differed rather more than might have been expected in their account of the contact.

Mr. Green's account was as follows :

|                                                                 |   |   |   |    |    |           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|---|---|---|----|----|-----------|
| The first external contact                                      | - | - | 9 | 25 | 4  | } Morn.   |
| The first internal contact, or total<br>emersion,               | - | - | 9 | 44 | 4  |           |
| The second internal contact, or be-<br>ginning of the emersion, | - | - | 3 | 14 | 8  | } Aftern. |
| The second external contact, or<br>total emersion,              | - | - | 3 | 32 | 10 |           |

Latitude of the observatory 17 deg. 29 min. 15 sec. south; —longi-  
tude, 149 deg. 32 min. 30 sec. west from Greenwich.

While the gentlemen and officers were busied in viewing the transit, some of the ships company having broke into the store-room, took the liberty of stealing a quantity of spike-nails. After a strict search, the thief was found out; he had, however, but few of the nails in his possession; but he was ordered to receive two dozen of lashes; by way of example.

On the 4th, an old female of some distinction dying, gave us an opportunity of observing the ceremonies used by these islanders in disposing of the dead bodies of their people. In the front of the square space, a sort of stile was placed where the relations of the deceased stood to give token of their grief. There were under the awning some pieces of cloth, whereon were the tears and blood of the mourners, who used to wound themselves with a shark's tooth upon these occasions. Four temporary houses were erected at a small distance, in one of which remained some of the relations of the deceased; the chief mourner resided

in another ; and was dressed in a particular manner, in order to perform a certain ceremony. When the corpse is rotten, the bones are buried near the spot. Concerning the ceremony we are about to speak of, the following is the account we have of it, which may not be unentertaining to the reader. It was performed on the 10th, and Mr. Banks was so desirous of being present, that he agreed to take a part in it, when he was informed that he could not be a spectator on any other condition.

He went accordingly in the evening, to the place where the body was to be deposited, where he was met by the relations of the deceased, and was afterwards joined by several other persons. Tubourai Tamaide was the principal mourner, whose dress was whimsical, though not altogether ungraceful. Mr. Banks was obliged to quit his European dress, and had no other covering than a small piece of cloth that was tied round his middle ; his body was blacked over with charcoal and water, as were the bodies of several others, and among them some females, who were no more covered than himself. The procession then began, and the chief mourner uttered some words which were judged to be a prayer, when he approached the body, and he repeated these words as he came up to his own house. They afterwards went on, by permission, towards the fort. It is usual for the rest of the Indians to shun these processions as much as possible ; they accordingly ran into the woods in great haste as soon as they came in view.

From the fort the mourners proceeded along the shore, crossed the river, then entered the woods, passing several houses, which became immediately uninhabited, and during the rest of the procession, which continued for half an hour, not an Indian was visible. Mr. Banks filled an office that they called Nineveh, and there were two others of the same character. When none of the other natives were to be seen, they approached the chief mourner, saying, Imatara ; then those who had assisted at the ceremony bathed in the  
river,



river, and resumed their former dress. Such was this uncommon ceremony, in which Mr. Banks performed a principal part, and received applause from Tubourai Tamaide, the chief mourner. What can have introduced among these Indians so strange a custom as that of exposing their dead above ground, till the flesh is consumed by putrefaction, and then burying their bones, it is, perhaps, impossible to guess; nor is it less difficult to determine, why the repositories of their dead should be also places of worship.

On the 12th, the Indians having lost some of their bows and arrows, and strings of plaited hair, a complaint was made to the Captain. The affair was enquired into, and the fact being well attested, the offenders received each two dozen of lashes.

On the 14th, in the night, an iron coal-rake for the oven, was stole; and many other things having at different times been conveyed away, Captain Cook judged it of some consequence to put an end, if possible, to such practices, by making it their common interest to prevent it. He had already given strict orders, that the centinels should not fire upon the Indians, even if they were detected in the fact; but many repeated depredations determined him to make reprisals.

A few days after, twenty-seven of their double canoes with sails arrived, containing cargoes of fish; these the captain seized, and then gave notice, that unless the rake, and all the other things that had been stolen, were returned, the vessels should be burnt. The menaces produced no other effect than the restitution of the rake, all the other things remaining in their possession. The captain, however, thought fit to give up the cargoes, as the innocent natives were in great distress for want of them, and in order to prevent the confusion arising from disputes concerning the property of the different lots of goods which they had on board.

On the 19th, in the evening, while the canoes were still detained, Oberea and several of her attend-

ants paid us a visit. She came from Tootahah's palace, in a double canoe, and brought with her a hog, bread-fruit, and other presents, but not a single article of the things that had been stolen ; these she said had been taken away by her favourite Obadee, whom she had beaten and dismissed. She seemed, however, conscious that her story did not deserve credit, and appeared at first much terrified ; though she surmounted her fears with great fortitude, and was desirous of sleeping with her attendants in Mr. Banks's tents ; but this being refused, she was obliged to pass the night in her canoe. The next morning Oberea returned, putting herself wholly in our power, when we accepted of her presents, which she doubtless thought, and justly too, the most effectual means to bring about a reconciliation.

On June the 26th, Captain Cook setting out in the pinnace with Mr. Banks, sailed to the eastward, with a design of circumnavigating the island. They went on shore in the forenoon, in a district in the government of Ahio, a young chief, who at their tents had frequently been their visitant. Afterwards they proceeded to the harbour where M. Bougainville's vessel lay, and the spot where he pitched his tent.

Coming to a large bay, when the English gentlemen mentioned their design of going to the other side, their Indian guide said he would not accompany them, and also endeavoured to dissuade the Captain and his people from going ; observing, " That the country was inhabited by people who were not subject to Tootahah, and who would destroy them all." Notwithstanding, they resolved to put their designs into execution, loading their pistols with ball ; so at last he ventured to go with them. Having rowed till it was dark, they reached a narrow isthmus, which severed the island in two parts, and these formed distinct governments. However, as they had not yet got into the hostile part of the country, it was thought proper to go on shore to spend the night, where Ooratova, the lady who had paid her compliments in so extraordinary

ordinary a manner at the fort, provided them with a supper, and they proceeded for the other government in the morning.

They afterwards landed in the district of a chief called Maraitata. These people gave the Captain a very good reception, sold them a hog for a hatchet, and furnished them with provisions. Though the country was apparently fertile, very little bread-fruit was to be found here, a nut called ahee furnishing the principal subsistence of the inhabitants.

Being fatigued with their journey, they went on board their boat, and landed in the evening on an island which was called Otooareite, to seek for refreshment. Mr. Banks going into the woods for this purpose, when it was dark, could discover only one house, wherein he found some of the nuts before mentioned and a little bread-fruit. There was a good harbour in the southern part of this island, and the surrounding country appeared to be extremely fruitful.

When they left the place, the chief piloted them over the shoals. In the evening they opened the bay on the north-west side of the island, which answered to that on the south-east in such a manner as to intersect it at the isthmus. Several canoes came off here, and some beautiful women, giving tokens that they should be glad to see them ashore, they readily accepted the invitation. They met with a very friendly reception from the chief, whose name was Wiverou, who gave directions to some of his people to assist them in dressing their victuals, which were now very plentiful, and they supped at Wiverou's house, in company with Mathiabo. Part of the house was allotted for them to sleep in, and soon after supper they retired to rest. Mathiabo having borrowed a cloak of Mr. Banks, under the notion of using it as a coverlet when he lay down, made off with it, without being perceived either by that gentleman or his companions. However, news of the robbery being presently brought them by one of the natives, they set out in pursuit of Mathiabo, but had proceeded only a very little



little way before they were met by a person bringing back the cloak, which the chief had given up rather through fear than from any principle of honesty. On their return, they found the house quite deserted; and about four in the morning, the centinel gave the alarm that the boat was missing. Captain Cook and Mr. Banks were greatly astonished at this account, and ran to the water-side; but though it was a clear star-light morning, no boat was to be seen. Their situation was now extremely disagreeable. The party consisted of no more than four, having with them only one musket and two pocket pistols, without a spare ball or a charge of powder.

After having remained some time in a state of anxiety arising from these circumstances, of which they feared the Indians might take advantage, the boat, which had been driven away by the tide, returned; and Mr. Banks and his companions had no sooner breakfasted than they departed. This place is situated on the north side of Tiarrabou, the south-east peninsula of the island, about five miles east from the isthmus, with an harbour equal to any in those parts. It was fertile and populous, and the inhabitants everywhere behaved with great civility.

On Friday the 30th, they arrived at Otahorou, where they found their old acquaintance Tootahah, who received them with great civility, and provided them a good supper, and convenient lodging; and though they had been so shamefully plundered the last time they slept with this chief, they spent the night with the greatest security, none of their clothes nor any other article being missing the next morning. They returned to the fort at Port-Royal harbour on the 1st of July, having discovered the island, including both peninsulas, to be about 100 miles in circumference.

On the 3d, Mr. Banks made an excursion, in order to trace the river up the valley to its source, and to remark how far the country was inhabited along the banks of it. He took Indian guides with him, and

and after having seen houses for about six miles, they came to one which was said to be the last that could be met with. The master presented them with coconuts and other fruits, and they proceeded on their walk, after a short stay. They often passed through vaults formed by rocky fragments in the course of their journey, in which, as they were told, benighted travellers sometimes took shelter. Pursuing the course of the river about six miles farther, they found it banked on both sides by rocks almost 100 feet in height, and nearly perpendicular; a way, however, might be traced up these precipices, along which their Indian guides would have conducted them, but they declined the offer, as there did not appear to be any thing at the summit which could repay them for the toil and dangers of ascending it.

Mr. Banks sought in vain for minerals among the rocks, which were naked almost on all sides, but no mineral substances were found. The stones everywhere exhibited signs of having been burnt, which was the case of all the stones that were found while we staid at Otaheite, and both there and in the neighbouring islands the traces of fire were evident in the clay upon the hills.

On the 4th, a great quantity of the seeds of water-melons, oranges, limes, and other plants, brought from Rio de Janeiro, were planted on each side of the fort, by Mr. Banks, who also plentifully supplied the Indians with them, and planted many of them in the woods.

By this time they began to think of making preparations to depart; but Omao and Oberea, and their son and daughter, visited them before they were ready to sail. The son of Waheatua, chief of the south-east peninsula, was also here at the same time; and they were favoured with the company of the Indian who had been so dexterous as to steal the quadrant, as before related. The carpenters being ordered to take down the gates and pallisadoes of the fort, to be converted into fire-wood, one of the natives stole the  
staple

staple and hook of the gate ; he was pursued, in vain, but the property was afterwards recovered, and returned to the owners by Tubourai Tamaide.

Before their departure, two circumstances happened which gave Captain Cook some uneasiness. The first was, that two foreign sailors having been abroad, one of them was robbed of his knife, which as he was endeavouring to recover, he was dangerously hurt with a stone by the natives, and his companion also received a slight wound in the head. The offenders escaped, and the Captain was not anxious to have them taken, as he did not want to have any disputes with the Indians.

Between the 8th and 9th, two young marines one night withdrew themselves from the fort, and in the morning were not to be met with. Notice having been given the next day that the ship would sail that or the ensuing day ; as they did not return, Captain Cook began to be apprehensive that they designed to remain on shore ; but as he was apprised, in such a case no effectual means could be taken to recover them without running a risque of destroying the harmony subsisting between the English and the natives, he resolved to wait a day in hopes of their returning of their own accord. But as they were still missing on the 10th in the morning, an enquiry was made after them, when the Indians declared, that they did not propose to return, having taken refuge among the mountains, where it was impossible for them to be discovered ; and added, that each of them had taken a wife. In consequence of this, it was intimated to several of the chiefs that were in the fort with the women, among whom were Tubourai Tamaide, Tomio, and Oberea, that they would not be suffered to quit it till the deserters were produced. They did not shew any signs of fear or discontent, but assured the Captain the marines should be sent back. In the mean time, Mr. Hicks was dispatched in the pinnace to bring Tootahah on board the ship, and



and he executed his commission without giving any alarm.

Night coming on, Captain Cook thought it not prudent to let the people, whom he had detained as hostages, to remain at the fort ; he therefore gave orders to remove them on board, which greatly alarmed them all, especially the females, who testified the most gloomy apprehensions by floods of tears. Capt. Cook escorted Oberea and others to the ship ; but Mr. Banks remained on shore with some Indians, whom he thought it of less importance to detain. In the evening, one of the marines was brought back by some of the natives, who reported that the other and two of our men who went to recover them, would be detained while Tootahah was confined. Upon this, Mr. Hicks was dispatched in the long boat, with a strong body of men, to rescue the prisoners ; at the same time the captain told Tootahah, that it was incumbent on him to assist them with some of his people, and to give orders in his name, that the men should be set at liberty ; for that he would be expected to answer for the event. Tootahah immediately complied, and this party released the men without opposition.

On the 11th, about seven in the morning, they returned, but without the arms, which had been taken from them when they were made prisoners ; these, however, being restored soon after, the chiefs on board were allowed to return, and those who had been detained on shore, were also set at liberty. On examining the deserters, it appeared that the Indians had told the truth, they having chosen two girls, with whom they would have remained in the island. At this time, the power of Oberea was not so great as it was when the Dolphin first discovered the island. Tupia, whose name has been often mentioned in this voyage, had been her prime minister. He had a knowledge of navigation, and was thoroughly acquainted with the number, situation, and inhabitants of the adjacent islands. This chief had often expressed a desire to go with us when we continued our voyage.

On the 11th in the morning he came on board, with a boy about twelve years of age, his servant, named Taiyota, and requested the gentlemen on board to let him go with them. As we thought he might be useful to us in many particulars, we unanimously agreed to comply with this request. Tupia then went on shore for the last time to bid farewell to his friends, to whom he gave several baubles, as parting tokens of remembrance.

Mr. Banks, after dinner, being willing to obtain a drawing of the Moraia, which Tootahah had in his possession at Eparre, Captain Cook accompanied him thither in the pinnace, together with Dr. Solander. They immediately, upon landing, repaired to Tootahah's house, where they were met by Oberea and several others. A general good understanding prevailed. Tupia came back with them, and they promised to view the gentlemen early the next day, as they were told they should then sail.

On the 13th, these friendly people came very early on board, and the ship was surrounded with a vast number of canoes, filled with Indians of the lower sort. Between eleven and twelve we weighed anchor; and, notwithstanding all the little misunderstandings between the English and the natives, the latter, who possessed a great fund of good nature and much sensibility, took their leave, weeping in an affectionate manner. As to Tupia, he supported himself through this scene with a becoming fortitude. Tears flowed from his eyes, it is true, but the effort he made to conceal them, did him additional honour. He went with Mr. Banks to the mast-head, and waving his hand took a last farewell of his country. Thus we departed from Otaheite, after a stay of just three months.

## CHAP. V.

*An historical and descriptive account of Otaheite—Of the island and its productions—Of the inhabitants, their dress, dwellings, manner of living—Diversions, and disease.*

**P**ORT Royal bay, in the island of Otaheite, we found to be within half a degree of its real situation; and point Venus, the northern extremity of this island, and the eastern part of the bay, lies in 144 deg. 30 min. longitude. A reef of coral rocks surround the island, forming several excellent bays, among which, and equal to the best of them, is Port Royal. The most proper ground for anchoring is on the eastern side of the bay. The shore is a fine sandy beach, behind which runs a river of fresh water, very convenient for a fleet of ships. The face of the country is very uneven. It rises in ridges that run up into the middle of the island, where they form mountains, which may be seen at the distance of sixty miles. The only parts of the island that are inhabited, are the low lands, lying between the foot of the ridges and the sea. The houses do not form villages, but are ranged along the whole border. Before them are little groups of plantain trees, which furnish them with cloth. According to Tupia's account, this island could furnish above 6000 fighting men. The produce is bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, bananas, sweet potatoes, yams, jumbu, a delicious fruit, sugar-cane, the paper mulberry, several sorts of figs, with many other plants and trees, all which the earth produces spontaneously.

The people in general are of a larger make than the Europeans. The males are mostly tall and robust, and the women above the size of our English ladies. Their natural complexion is of a fine clear olive, their skin delicately smooth and soft. Their faces in general are handsome, and their eyes full of sensibility. Their teeth are remarkably white and regular, and their breath is entirely free from any disagreeable smell.



They clothe themselves in cloth and matting of various kinds: the first they wear in fine, the latter in wet weather. The women of a superior class wear three or four pieces. One, which is of considerable length, they wrap several times round their waist, and falls down to the middle of the leg. Two or three other short pieces, with a hole cut in the middle of each, are placed on one another, and their heads coming through the holes, the long ends hang before and behind, both sides being open, by which means they have the free use of their arms.

The men's dress is very similar, differing only in this instance, and one part of the garment, instead of falling below the knees, is brought between the legs. This dress is worn by all ranks of people, the only distinction being quantity in the superior class. The boys and girls go quite naked; the first till they are seven or eight years old; the latter till they are about five or six.

The natives of Otaheite seldom use their houses but to sleep in, or to avoid the rain, as they eat in the open air. Their clothes serve them for a covering in the night. We saw houses that are general receptacles for the inhabitants of a district, many of them being more than 200 feet in length, 40 in breadth, and 70 or 80 feet high.

Their cookery consists chiefly in baking, the manner of doing which has been noticed. When a chief kills a hog, he divides it equally among his vassals. When the bread-fruit is not in season, cocoa-nuts, bananas, and plantains, are substituted in their stead. They bake their bread-fruit in a manner which renders it somewhat like a mealy potatoe. Of this three dishes are made, by beating them up with bananas, plantains, or sour paste, which is called by them mahie.

The chief eats generally alone, unless when visited by a stranger. Not having known the use of a table, they sit on the ground, and leaves of trees spread before them serve as a table cloth. They then begin their meals with the ceremony of washing their mouths and hands; after which they eat a handful of bread-fruit and fish, dipt in salt water alternately, till the whole is consumed,

consumed, taking a sip of salt water between almost every morsel. The bread-fruit and fish is succeeded by the second course. During this time a soft fluid of paste is prepared from the bread-fruit, which they drink out of cocoa-nut shells: this concludes the meal, and their hands and mouths are again washed as at the beginning.

One of the worst customs of the people of Otaheite is, that which several of the principal people of the island have adopted, of uniting in an association, wherein no woman confines herself to any particular man, by which means they obtain a perpetual society. The members have meetings wherein the men amuse themselves with wrestling, and the women dance the timorodee, in such a manner as is most likely to excite the desires of the other sex, and which were frequently gratified in the assembly. A much worse practice is the consequence of this. If any of the women prove with child, the infant is destroyed, unless the mother's natural affection should prevail with her to preserve its life, which, however, is forfeited unless she can procure a man to adopt it. And where she succeeds in this, she is expelled from the society, being called Whannownow, which signifies the bearer of children, by way of reproach.

Soon after our arrival at Otaheite, we were apprised of the natives having the French disease among them. The islanders call it by a name expressive of its effects, observing, that the hair and nails of those who were first infected by it, fell off, and the flesh rotted from the bones, while their countrymen, and even nearest relations, who were unaffected, were so much terrified at its symptoms, that the unhappy sufferer was often forsaken by them, and left to perish in the most miserable condition.

## CHAP. VI.

*The Endeavour continues her voyage—Visits the islands in the neighbourhood of Otaheite—An account of several incidents, and of various particulars relative to the inhabitants—The passage of the Endeavour from Oteroah to New Zealand—Events on going ashore, and incidents while the ship was in Poverty Bay—The country described—Excursions to Cape Turnagain, and return to Tolaga—The inhabitants described: and a narrative of what happened while we were on that part of the coast—The range from Tolaga to Mercury Bay—Incidents that happened on board the Endeavour and ashore—A description of the country—Sail from Mercury Bay to the Bay of islands—Description of the Indians on the banks of the Thames—Interview and skirmishes with the natives—Range from the Bay of Islands round North Cape.*

ON the 13th of July, 1769, after leaving the island of Otaheite, we continued our course, with clear weather and a gentle breeze, and were informed by Tupia, that four islands which he called Huaheine, Ulieta, Otaha, and Bolabola, were at the distance of about one or two days sail; and that hogs, fowls, and other refreshments, very scarce on board, were to be got there in great abundance. On the 15th, we made but little way, on account of the calms which succeeded the light breezes. Tupia often prayed to his god Tane, for a wind, and boasted of his success, which indeed he took care to insure, by never applying to Tane, till he saw a breeze so near, that he knew it must reach the ship before his prayer was concluded.

On the 16th, we sounded near the north-west part of the island of Huaheine, but found no bottom at 70 fathoms. Several of the canoes put off; but the Indians seemed fearful of coming near the bark till the sight of Tupia removed their apprehensions. They then came  
along



along side, and the king of the island, with his queen, came on board. They seemed surprised at every thing that was shewn them, but made no enquiries after any thing but what was offered to their notice. After some time they became more familiar; and the king, whose name was Oree, as a token of amity, proposed exchanging names with Captain Cook, which was readily accepted.

Having anchored in a small harbour, we went on shore with Mr. Banks and some other gentlemen, accompanied by the king and Tupia. As soon as we landed, Tupia uncovered himself as low as the waist, and desired Mr. Monkhouse to do the same. Being seated, he now began a speech, or prayer, which lasted about twenty minutes; the king, who stood opposite to him, answering in what seemed set replies. During this harangue, Tupia delivered, at different times, a handkerchief, a black silk neck-cloth, some plantains, and two bunches of feathers, all which we carried on board. These ceremonies were considered as a kind of ratification of a peace between us and the king of Huahine.

On the 17th, we went again on shore, and made an excursion into the country, the productions of which greatly resembled those of Otaheite; the rocks and clay seemed, indeed, more burnt: the boat houses were curious, and remarkably large. The level part of the country affords the most beautiful landscapes that the imagination can possibly form an idea of.

On the 19th, we offered the natives some hatchets, for which we procured three very large hogs. As we intended to sail in the afternoon, king Oree, and others of the natives came on board to take their leave. Capt. Cook presented to Oree, a pewter plate, stamped with this inscription, "His Britannic Majesty's ship Endeavour, Captain Cook commander, 16th of July, 1769." We gave him also some medals, resembling our English coin, which he promised to keep, in order to remember us.

On the 20th, by the direction of Tupia, we anchored in a bay, formed by a reef, on the north side of the island.

island. Two canoes soon came off from the shore, and the natives brought with them two small hogs, which they exchanged for some nails and beads. The captain, Mr. Banks, and other gentlemen, now went on shore, accompanied by Tupia, who introduced them with the same kind of ceremonies that had taken place on their landing at Huaheine; after which Captain Cook took possession of this and the three neighbouring islands, Huaheine, Otaha, and Bolabola, in the name of his Britannic Majesty.

On the 21st, the master was sent to inspect the southern part of the island, and a lieutenant was dispatched in the yawl to sound the harbour where the Endeavour lay. While the captain went in the pinnace, to take a view of that part of the island which lay to the northward, Mr. Banks and the gentlemen went again on shore, trading with the natives, and searching after the productions and curiosities of the country.

The hazy weather and brisk gales prevented us from getting unders ail till the 24th, when we put to sea, and steered northward within the reef, towards an opening, at the distance of about six leagues, in effecting which we were in danger of striking on a rock, the man who sounded, crying out on a sudden, "two fathoms," which could not but alarm us greatly; but either the master was mistaken, or the ship went along the edge of a coral rock, many of which in the neighbourhood of these islands are as steep as a wall.

The bay where the Endeavour lay at anchor, called Oopoa, is capacious enough to hold a great number of shipping, and secured from the sea by a reef of rocks. Its situation is off the easternmost part of the island.—The provisions consist of cocoa-nuts, yams, plantains, and a few hogs and fowls. The country round about the place where we landed, was not so plentiful as at Otaheite or Huaheine. The southernmost opening in the reef, or channel into the harbour, by which we entered, is a little more than a cable's length wide; it lies off the easternmost point of the island, and may be found by a small woody island, which lies to the south-east of it,

it, called Oatara; north-west from which are two other islets called Opururu and Tamou. Between these is the channel through which we went out of the harbour, and it is a full quarter of a mile wide.

On the 25th, we were within a league or two of the island of Otoha; but could not get near enough to the land, the wind having proved contrary. In the morning, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went in the long boat with the master, in order to sound a harbour on the east side of the island, which they found safe and convenient. We then went on shore, and purchased a large quantity of plantains, and some hogs and fowls. The produce of this island was much the same with that of Ulieta, but seemed to be more barren.

We then made sail to the northward, and at eight o'clock on the 29th, we were under the high peaks of Bolabola. We found the island inaccessible in this part. On the 30th, we discovered an island which Tupia called Maurua, but said it was small, surrounded by a reef, and without commodious harbour, but inhabited, and nearly yielded the same produce as the adjacent islands. In the afternoon, finding ourselves to windward of some harbours that lay on the west side of Ulieta, we intended to put into one of them, in order to stop a leak which had sprung in the powder room. The wind being right against us, we plied on and off till the afternoon of the 1st of August, when we came to an anchor in the entrance of the channel, which led into one of the harbours.

On Wednesday the 2d, when the tide turned, we came into a proper place for mooring, in 28 fathom. Many of the natives came off, and brought hogs, fowls, and plantains, which were purchased upon moderate terms. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went on shore, and spent the day very agreeably; the natives shewed them great respect, being conducted to the houses of the chief people. In one house, they observed some very young girls, dressed in the neatest manner, who kept their places, waiting for the strangers to accost them; these girls were the most beautiful the gentlemen had ever seen.



In one of these houses we were entertained with a dance. The performer put upon his head a large piece of wicker-work, about four feet long, of a cylindrical form, covered with feathers, and edged round with shark's teeth. With this head-dress, he began to dance with a slow motion ; frequently moving his head so as to describe a circle with the top of his wicker-cap, and sometimes throwing it so near the faces of the by-standers as to make them jump back ; this they considered as an excellent piece of humour, and it always produced a hearty laugh, when practised upon any of the English gentlemen.

On Saturday the 5th, some hogs and fowls, and several large pieces of cloth, many of them being fifty or sixty yards in length, together with a quantity of plantains, and cocoa-nuts, were sent to Captain Cook, as a present from the Earee Rahie of the island of Bolabola, accompanied with a message, importing that he was then on the island, and intended waiting on the captain.

On the 6th, the king of Bolabola did not visit us agreeable to his promise ; his absence, however, was not in the least regretted, as he sent three young women to demand something in return for his present. After dinner, we set out to pay the king a visit on shore. As this man was the Earee Rahie of the Bolabola men, who had conquered this, and were the dread of all the neighbouring islands, we were greatly disappointed, instead of finding a vigorous, enterprising young chief, to see a poor feeble old dotard, half blind, and sinking under the weight of age and infirmities. He received us without either that state or ceremony which we had hitherto met with among other chiefs.

On Wednesday the 9th, having stopped a leak, and taken on board a fresh stock of provisions, we sailed out of the harbour : and though we were several leagues distant from the island of Bolabola, Tupia earnestly intreated Captain Cook, that a shot might be fired towards it ; which, to gratify him, the captain complied with. It was supposed to have been intended by Tupia as a mark of his resentment against the inhabitants of that place,

place, as they had formerly taken from him large possessions which he held in the island of Ulieta, of which island Tupia was a native, and a subordinate chief, but was driven out by these warriors.

Being detained longer at Ulieta in repairing the ship than we expected, we did not go on shore at Bolabola; but after giving the general name of the Society Islands, to the islands of Huahcine, Ulieta, Bolabola, Otaha, Maurua, which lie between the latitude of 16 deg. 10 min. and 18 deg. 55 min. south; we pursued our course standing southerly for an island, to which we were directed by Tupia, at above 100 leagues distant. This we discovered on the 13th, and were informed by him it was called Obiterea.

On the 14th, we stood in for land, and saw several of the inhabitants coming along the shore. One of the lieutenants was dispatched in the pinnace to sound for anchorage, and to obtain what intelligence could be got from the natives concerning any land that might go farther to the south. Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Tupia, went with the lieutenant in the boat. When they approached the shore, they observed that the Indians were armed with long lances. A number of them were soon drawn together on the beach, and two jumped into the water, endeavouring to gain the boat, but she soon left them, and some others that had made the same attempt, far enough behind her. Having doubled the point where they intended to land, they opened a large bay, and saw another party of the natives standing at the end of it, armed like those whom they had seen before. Preparations were then made for landing, on which a canoe full of Indians made off towards them. Observing this, Tupia received orders to acquaint them that the English did not intend to offer them violence, but meant to traffic with them for nails, which were produced. Thus informed, they came along-side the boat, and took some nails that were given them, being seemingly well pleased with the present. Yet, a few minutes after, these people boarded the boat, designing to drag her on shore; but some muskets being discharged

over their heads, they leaped into the sea, and having reached the canoe, put back with all possible expedition, joining their countrymen, who stood ready to receive them. The boat immediately pursued the fugitive, but the crew finding the surf extremely violent, did not venture to land there, but coasted along shore to try if they could not find a more convenient place.

Soon after the canoe got on shore, a man opposite the boat flourished his weapon, calling out at the same time with a shrill voice, which was a mark of defiance, as Tupia explained it to the English.—Not being able to find a proper landing-place, they returned, with an intention to attempt it where the canoe went on shore; whereupon another warrior repeated the defiance: his appearance was more formidable than that of the other. When he thought fit to retire, a grave man came forward, to ask Tupia several questions, relating to the place from whence the vessel came, as who were the persons on board? whither they were bound? &c. After this, it was proposed that the people in the boat should go on shore and trade with them, if they would lay aside their weapons; but the latter would not agree to this, unless the English would do the like. As this proposal was by no means an equal one, when it was considered that the hazard must, for many reasons, be greater to the boat's crew than the Indians; and as perfidy was dreaded, it was not complied with. Besides, since neither the bay which the Endeavour entered, nor any other part of the island, furnished good harbour or anchorage, it was resolved not to attempt landing any more, but to sail from hence to the southward.

On the 15th, we sailed from this island with a fine breeze; but on the 16th it was hazy, and we bore away for what resembled very high peaks of land. The weather clearing up, we were convinced of our mistake, and resumed our course accordingly. Land was discovered at west by north, on the 7th of October, and in the morning of the 8th, we came to an anchor opposite a small river, not above half a league from the coast.

Captain



Captain Cook, Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and some other gentlemen, having left the pinnace at the mouth of the river, proceeded a little further up, when we landed, leaving the yawl to the care of some of our boys, and went up to a few small houses in the neighbourhood. Some of the natives that had concealed themselves in the neighbourhood, took advantage of our absence from the boat, and rushed out, advancing and brandishing their long wooden lances. On this, our boys dropped down the stream. The cockswain of the pinnace then fired a musketoon over their heads, but it did not prevent them from following the boat, in consequence of which he levelled his piece, and shot one of them dead on the spot. Struck with astonishment at the death of their companion, the others remained motionless for some time, but as soon as they recovered from their fright, retreated to the woods with the utmost precipitation. The report of the gun brought the advanced party back to the boat, and both the pinnace and yawl returned immediately to the ship.

On the 9th, a great number of natives were seen near the place where the gentlemen in the yawl had landed the preceding evening, and the greatest part of them appeared to be unarmed. The long-boat, pinnace, and yawl, being manned with marines and sailors, Captain Cook and Tupia went on shore, and landed on the opposite side of the river, over against a spot where several Indians were sitting on the ground. They immediately started up, and began to handle their weapons, each producing either a long pike, or a kind of truncheon made of stone, with a string through the handle of it, which they twisted round their wrists. Tupia was directed to speak to them in his language; and we were greatly surprised to find that he was well understood, the natives speaking in his language, though in a different dialect. Their intentions at first appeared to be very hostile, brandishing their weapons in the usual threatening manner, upon which a musket was fired at some distance: the ball happened to fall into the water, at which they appeared rather terrified, and desisted from

from their menaces. Having now drawn up the marines, we advanced nearer to the side of the river. Tupia, again speaking, informed them of our desire to traffic with them for provisions: to this they consented, provided we would go over to them to the other side of the river. The proposal was agreed to, upon condition that the natives would quit their weapons; but the most solemn assurances of friendship could not prevail with them to make such a concession. Not thinking it prudent, therefore, to cross the river, we, in our turn, intreated the Indians to come over to us, and after some time prevailed on one of them so to do. He was presently followed by others. They did not appear to value beads and iron, which we offered in the way of barter, but proposed to exchange their weapons for ours, which being objected to, they endeavoured to snatch our arms from us, but being on our guard, from the information given us by Tupia, that they were still our enemies; and Tupia, by our direction, gave them to understand, that any further offers of violence would be punished with instant death. One of them, nevertheless, had the audacity to snatch Mr. Green's dagger when his back was turned to them, and retiring a few paces flourished it over his head; but his temerity cost him his life; for Mr. Monkhouse fired a musket, and he instantly dropped. Soon after, though not before we had discharged our pieces, they retreated slowly up the country, and we returned to our boat.

The behaviour of the Indians, added to our want of fresh water, induced Captain Cook to continue his voyage round the bay, with a hope of getting some of the natives aboard, that by civil usage he might convey through them a favourable idea of us to their countrymen, and thereby settle a good correspondence with them. An event occurred which, though attended with disagreeable circumstances, promised to facilitate this design. Two canoes appeared, making towards land, and Captain Cook proposed intercepting them with our boats. One of them got clear off, but the Indians in the other finding it impossible to escape, began to attack

tack our people in the boats with their paddles. This compelled the Endeavour's people to fire upon them, when four of the Indians were killed, and the other three, who were young men, jumped into the water, and endeavoured to swim ashore; they were, however, taken up, and conveyed on board. At first they discovered all the signs of fear and terror, thinking they should be killed; but Tupia, by repeated assurances of friendship, removed their apprehensions, and they afterwards eat heartily of the ship's provisions. Having retired to rest in the evening, they slept very quietly for some hours, but about midnight their fears returning, they appeared in great agitation, frequently making loud and dismal groans. Again the kind caresses and friendly promises of Tupia, operated so effectually, that they became calm, and sung a song, which at the dead of the night had a pleasing effect. The next morning, after they were dressed according to the mode of their country, and were ornamented with necklaces and bracelets, preparations were made for sending them to their countrymen, at which they expressed great satisfaction; but finding the boat approaching Captain Cook's first landing-place, they intimated that the inhabitants were foes, and that after killing their enemies, they always eat them.

The captain, nevertheless, judged it expedient to land near the same spot, which he accordingly did, with Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Tupia; resolving at the same time to protect the youths from any injury that might be offered them. These had scarcely departed on their return to their friends, when two large parties of Indians advanced hastily towards them; upon which they again flew to us for protection. When the Indians drew near, one of the boys discovered his uncle among them, and a conversation ensued across the river, in which the boy gave a just account of our hospitality, and took great pains to display his finery.

A short time after this conversation, the uncle swam across the river, bringing with him a green bough, a token of friendship, which we received as such, and several presents were made them. Notwithstanding the presence



presence of this relation, all three of the boys, by their own desire, returned to the ship ; but as the captain intended to sail the next morning, he sent them ashore in the evening, though much against their inclination. They informed us of a particular kind of deer upon the island.

On the 11th, at six o'clock in the morning, we weighed and set sail, in hopes of finding a better anchoring place, Captain Cook having given the bay the name of Poverty Bay. In the afternoon we were becalmed ; and several canoes full of Indians came off from the shore, who received many presents, and afterwards bartered even their clothes, and some of their paddles, so eager were they of European commodities. The Indians were armed with bludgeons made of wood, and of the bone of a large animal : they were contrived for close fighting.

Having finished their traffic, they set off in such a hurry, that they forgot three of their companions, who remained on board all night. These testified their fears and apprehensions, notwithstanding Tupia took great pains to convince them they were in no danger ; and about seven o'clock the next morning, a canoe came off with four Indians on board. It was at first with difficulty the Indians in the ship could prevail on those in the canoe to come near them, and not till after the former had assured them, that the English did not eat men.

On the 12th, several Indians came off in a canoe, and at times appeared to be peaceably inclined, but at others to menace hostilities, brandishing their lances, and other hostile gestures. A four-pounder loaded with grape shot, was therefore ordered to be fired, but not pointed at them. This had the desired effect, and made them drop a-stern.

On Friday the 13th, in the morning, we made for an inlet, but finding it not sheltered, stood out again ; and were chased by a canoe filled with Indians, but the Endeavour out-sailed them. She pursued her course round the bay, but could not find an opening. Nine canoes  
full

full of Indians came from the shore, and five of them, after having consulted together, pursued the Endeavour, apparently with a hostile design. Tupia was desired to acquaint them, that immediate destruction would ensue, if they persevered in their attempts; but words had no influence, and a four-pounder with grape shot was fired. They were terrified at this sort of reasoning, and went away faster than they came.

On the 20th, we anchored in a bay two leagues to the north of the Foreland. To this bay we were invited by the natives in canoes, who behaved very amicably, and pointed to a place where they said we should find plenty of fresh water. We determined here to get some knowledge of the country, though the harbour was not so good a shelter from the weather as we expected.—Two chiefs, whom we saw in the canoes, came on board; they were dressed in jackets, the one ornamented with tufts of red feathers, the other with dog-skins. We presented to them linen and some spike nails, but they did not value the last so much as the inhabitants of the other islands.

Towards the evening we went on shore, accompanied by the captain and Dr. Solander. We were courteously received by the inhabitants, who did not appear in numerous bodies, and in other instances were scrupulously attentive not to give offence. We made them several small presents, and in this agreeable tour round the bay, we had the pleasure of finding two streams of fresh water. We remained on shore all night, and the next day Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander discovered several large birds, among which were quails and large pigeons.—Many stages for drying fish were observed near where we landed, and some houses with fences. We saw dogs with pointed ears, and very ugly. Sweet potatoes, like those which grow in America, were found. The cloth plant grows spontaneous. In the neighbouring vallies the lands were laid out in regular plantations; and in the bay we bought plenty of crabs, cray fish, and horse-mackarel, larger than those on the English coasts. The low lands were planted with cocoas; the hollows with

gourds ; but as to the woods, they were almost impassible on account of the number of supple-jacks which grew there. We went into several houses belonging to the natives, and met with a very civil reception ; and, without the least reserve, they shewed us whatever we desired to see. At times we found them at their meals, which our presence never interrupted. At this season fish constituted their chief food ; with which they eat, instead of bread, roots of a kind of fern ; these, when roasted upon a fire, are sweet and clammy : in taste not disagreeable, though rather unpleasant, from the number of their fibres. They have doubtless in other seasons of the year an abundance of excellent vegetables.

The women of this place paint their faces with a mixture of red ochre and oil, which, as they are very plain, renders them in appearance more homely. This kind of daubing being generally wet upon their cheeks and foreheads, was easily transferred to those who saluted them, as was frequently visible upon the noses of our people. The young ones, who were complete coquets wore a petticoat, under which was a girdle, made of the blades of grass strongly perfumed, to which was pendant a small bunch of leaves, of some fragrant plant. The faces of the men were not in general painted ; but they were daubed with dry red ochre from head to foot, their apparel not excepted. Though in personal cleanliness they were not equal to our friends at Otaheite, yet in some particulars they surpassed them : for their dwellings were furnished with privies, and they had dunghills upon which their offals and filth were deposited. Among the females chastity was lightly esteemed. They resorted frequently to the watering-place, where they freely bestowed every favour that was requested. An officer meeting with an elderly woman, he accompanied her to her house, and having presented her with some cloth and beads, a young girl was singled out, with whom he was given to understand he might retire. Soon after an elderly man, with two women, came in as visitors, who with much formality, saluted the whole company, after the custom of the place, which is by gently joining the tips



tips of their noses together. On his return, which was on Saturday the 21st, he was furnished with a guide, who, whenever they came to a brook or rivulet, took him on his back, to prevent his being wet. Many of the natives were curiously tatowed; an old man in particular, was marked on the breast with curious figures. These Indians at night dance in a very uncouth manner, with antic gestures, lolling out their tongues, and making strange grimaces. In their dances, old men as well as the young ones, are capital performers.

On the 22d, in the evening, we weighed anchor and put to sea; but the wind being contrary, we stood for another bay, a little to the south, called by the natives Tolaga, in order to complete our wood and water, and to extend our correspondence with the natives. We found a watering-place in a small cove a little within the south point of the bay, which bore south by east, distant about a mile. Several canoes with Indians on board, trafficked with us very fairly for glass bottles.

On Monday the 23d, in the afternoon, we went on shore, accompanied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and the captain. We examined and found the water extremely good; also plenty of wood, and the natives shewed us as much civility as those from whom we had lately departed. At this watering-place we set up an astronomical quadrant, and took several solar and lunar observations. In our walks through the vales, we saw many houses uninhabited, the natives residing chiefly in sheds, or the ridges of the hills, which are very steep. The hills are clothed with beautiful flowering shrubs, intermixed with a number of tall stately palms, which perfume the air, making it perfectly odoriferous. We met with various kinds of edible herbage in great abundance, and many trees which produced fruit fit to eat. Sweet potatoes and plantains are cultivated near the houses.

On our return, we met an old man, who entertained us with the military exercise of the natives, which is performed with patoo-patoo and the lance. The former has been already mentioned, and is used as a battle-

axe ; the latter is 18 or 20 feet in length, and made of extreme hard wood, and sharpened at each end. A stake was substituted for a supposed enemy. The old warrior first attacked him with his lance, advancing with a most furious aspect. Having pierced him, the patoo-patoo was used to demolish his head, at which he struck with a force which would at one blow have split any man's skull : from whence we concluded no quarter was given by these people to their foes in time of action.

The natives in these parts are very numerous. They are tolerably well shaped, but lean and tall. Their faces resemble those of the Europeans. Their noses are aqualine, their eyes dark coloured, their hair black, which is tied up to the top of their heads, and the men's beards are of a moderate length. Their tatowing is done very curiously, in various figures, which make their skin resemble carving ; it is confined to the principal men, the females and servants using only red paint, with which they daub their faces, which otherwise would not be disagreeable.

On the 25th, we set up the armourer's forge on shore for necessary uses, and got our wood and water without the least molestation from the natives, with whom we exchanged glass bottles and beads for different sorts of fish.

On the 27th, Captain Cook and Dr. Solander went to inspect the bay, when the doctor was not a little surprised to find the natives in the possession of a boy's top, which they knew how to spin by whipping it, and he purchased it out of curiosity. Mr. Banks was during this employed in attaining the summit of a steep hill, that had previously engaged their attention, and near it he found many inhabited houses. When the gentlemen met at the watering-place, the inhabitants sang their war-song, which was a strange melody of shouting and grimace, at which the women assisted. The next day, Captain Cook and other gentlemen went upon the island at the entrance of the bay, and met with a canoe that was 67 feet in length, six in breadth, and four in height ; her bottom, which was sharp, consisted of  
three

three trunks of trees, and the sides and head were curiously carved.

Their huts are built under trees, their form is an oblong square, the door low on the side, and the windows are in the ends; reeds covered with thatch, compose the walls; the beams of the caves, which come to the ground, are covered with thatch; most of the houses had been deserted, through fear of the English, upon their landing. There is a great variety of fish in the bay, shell and cray-fish are very plentiful, some of the latter weigh 12 pounds.

Sunday, October the 29th, we set sail from this bay. It is situated in latitude 38 deg. 22 min. south, four leagues to the north of Gable End Foreland; there are two high rocks at the entrance of the bay, which form a cove very good for procuring wood and water. This is a very hilly country, though it presents the eye with an agreeable verdure, various woods, and many small plantations. Mr. Banks found a great number of trees in the woods quite unknown to Europeans; the fire-wood resembled the maple tree, and produced a gum of a whitish colour; other trees yielded a gum of a deep yellow green. The only roots were yams and sweet potatoes, though the soil appears very proper for producing every species of vegetables.

On Monday the 30th, sailing to the northward, we fell in with a small island about a mile distant from the north-east point of the main, and this being the most eastern part of it, the captain named it East Cape, and the island East Island; it was but small, and appeared barren. The Cape is in latitude 37 deg. 42 min. 30 sec. south. Having doubled the Cape, many villages presented themselves to view, and the adjacent land appeared cultivated. In the evening of the 30th, Lieutenant Hicks discovered a bay, to which his name was given. Next morning about nine, several canoes came off from the shore with a number of armed men, who appeared to have hostile intentions. Before these had reached the ship another canoe, larger than any that had yet been seen, full of armed Indians, came off, and made



made towards the Endeavour, with great expedition. The captain now judging it expedient to prevent, if possible, their attacking him, ordered a gun to be fired over their heads. This not producing the desired effect, another gun was fired with ball, which threw them into such consternation, that they immediately returned faster than they came.

On the 1st of November, not less than between 40 and 50 canoes were seen, several of which came off as before, threatening to attack the English. One of their chiefs flourished his pike, and made several harangues, seeming to bid defiance to those on board the vessel.— At last, after repeated invitations, they came close along side; but instead of shewing a disposition to trade, the haranguing chief uttered a sentence, and took up a stone which he threw against the ship, and immediately after seized their arms. A piece of cloth, however, happening to attract their eyes, they began to be more mild and reasonable. A quantity of cray-fish, muscles, and congereels was now purchased. No fraud was attempted by this company of Indians, but some others that came after them, took goods from the vessel without making proper returns. Yet, when these savages began to traffick with the sailors, they renewed their frauds; and one of them was bold enough to seize some linen that was hung to dry, and run away with it. In order to induce him to return, a musket was fired over his head, but this not answering the end, he was shot in the back with small shot, yet he still persevered in his design.

In consequence of their behaviour, though they made no preparations to attack the vessel, the captain gave orders to fire a four-pounder, which passed over them; but its effects on the water terrified them so much, that they retreated with precipitation to the shore.

In the afternoon, about two o'clock, we discovered a pretty high island to the west. Some time after, perceiving other rocks and islands in the same quarter, but not being able to weather them before night came on, we bore up between them and the main land. In the evening, a double canoe, built after the same fashion as those

those of Otaheite, came up, when Tupia entered into a friendly conversation with the Indians, and was told that the island, close to which we lay, was called Mowtohora.

The next morning, being the 2d, a number of canoes appeared, and one, which proved to be the same that pelted us the night before, came up. After conversing with Tupia, and behaving peaceably about an hour, they complimented us with another volley of stones.— We returned the salute by firing a musket, which made them instantly take to their paddles. Between ten and eleven we sailed between a low flat island and the main land.

On the 3d, we passed the night near a small island, which Captain Cook named the Mayor. We now sailed towards an inlet that had been discovered, and having anchored in seven fathom water, the ship was soon surrounded by a number of canoes, and the people on board them did not seem disposed for some time to commit any acts of hostility.

On the 4th, at day break, no less than twelve canoes made their appearance, containing near two hundred men, armed with spears, lances, and stones, who seemed determined to attack the ship, and would have boarded her, had they known on what quarter they could best have made their attack. While they were paddling round her, which kept the crew upon the watch in the rain, Tupia, at the request of the captain, used a number of dissuasive arguments to prevent their carrying their apparent designs into execution : but we could not pacify them by the fire of our muskets ; they then laid aside their hostile intentions, and began to trade ; yet they could not refrain from their fraudulent practices ; for after they had fairly bartered two of their weapons, they would not deliver up a third, for which they had received cloth, and only laughed at those who demanded an equivalent. The offender was wounded with small shot ; but his countrymen took not the least notice of him, and continued to trade without the least discomposure.

On

On the 5th, in the morning, the Indians came off to the ship again, who behaved much better than they had done the preceding day. An old man in particular, named Tojava, testified his prudence and honesty, to whom, and a friend with him, the captain presented some nails, and two pieces of English cloth. Tojava informed us that they were often visited by freebooters from the north, who stripped them of all they could lay their hands on, and at times made captives of their wives and children: and that being ignorant who the English were upon their first arrival, the natives had been much alarmed, but were now satisfied of their good intentions.

On the 8th, we were visited by several canoes, in one of which was Tojava, who, descrying two canoes, hastened back to the shore, apprehending they were freebooters; but finding his mistake, he soon returned; and the Indians supplied us with as much excellent fish as served the whole ship's company. This day a variety of plants were collected by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander.

On the 10th, Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and the captain, went in boats to inspect a large river that runs into the bay. They found it broader some miles within than at the mouth, and intersected into a number of streams, by several small islands, which were covered with trees. At the mouth of the river there was good anchorage in five fathom water. Great plenty of oysters were procured from a bed which had been discovered, and they proved exceedingly good.

On the 18th, we steered between the main and an island which seemed very fertile. Several canoes filled with Indians, came alongside, and the Indians sang their war-song; but the Endeavour's people paying them no attention, they threw a volley of stones; and then paddled away; however, they presently returned their insults. Tupia spoke to them, making use of his old arguments, that inevitable destruction would ensue if they persisted; they answered by brandishing their weapons, intimating, that if the English durst come ashore, they would destroy them all. Tupia still continued in



in expostulating with them, but to no purpose, and they soon gave another volley of stones ; but upon a musket being fired at one of their boats, they made a precipitate retreat. We cast anchor in 23 fathom water in the evening, and early the next morning sailed up an inlet.

On the 22d, early in the morning, we made sail, and kept plying till the flood obliged us once more to come to an anchor. The captain and Dr. Solander went on shore to the west, but made no observations worth relating. After the gentlemen departed, the ship was surrounded with canoes, which kept Mr. Banks on board, that he might trade with the Indians, who bartered their arms and clothes for paper, taking no unfair advantages. But though they were in general honest in their dealings, one of them took a fancy to a half-minute glass, and being detected in secreting the same, it was resolved to give him a smatch of the cat-o'-nine-tails. The Indians interfered to stop the current of justice, but being opposed, they got their arms from the canoes, and some of the people in them attempted to get on board. Mr. Banks and Tupia now coming upon deck, the Indians applied to Tupia, who informed them of the nature of the offender's intended punishment, and that he had no influence over Mr. Hicks, the commanding officer. They appeared pacified, and the criminal received not only a dozen, but afterwards a good drubbing from an old man, who was thought to be his father. The canoes immediately went off, the Indians saying, they should be afraid to return again on board.

On the 23d, the weather still continuing unfavourable, and the wind contrary, we kept plying down the river, anchoring between the tides, and at the north-west extremity of the Thames. Not being able to approach land, we had but a distant view of the main, for a course of near thirty miles. The country seemed to be thinly inhabited ; the natives are well made, strong, and active ; their bodies are

painted with red ochre, and their canoes, which are well constructed, were ornamented with carved work.

On the 27th, we found ourselves within a mile of many small islands, laying close under the main, at the distance of twenty-two miles from Cape Brett. Here we lay about two hours, during which time several canoes came off from the islands, which we called Cavalles, the name of some fish which we purchased of the Indians. These people were very insolent, using many frantic gestures, and pelting us with stones. Nor did they give over their insults, till some small shot hit one who had a stone in his hand.

On the 29th, having weathered Cape Brett, we bore away to leeward, and got into a large bay, where we anchored on the south-west side of several islands, and suddenly came into four fathoms and a half water. Upon sounding, we found we had got upon a bank, and accordingly weighed, and dropped over it, and anchored again in ten fathoms and a half, after which we were surrounded by 33 large canoes, containing near three hundred Indians, armed. Some of them were admitted on board, and Captain Cook gave a piece of broad cloth to one of the chiefs, and some small presents to the other. They traded peaceably for some time, being terrified at the fire-arms, with the effects of which they were not unacquainted; but whilst the captain was at dinner, on a signal given by one of the chiefs, all the Indians quitted the ship, and attempted to tow away the buoy; a musket was now fired over them, but it produced no good effect; small shot was then fired at them, but it did not reach them. A musket loaded with ball, was therefore ordered to be fired, and Otegoowgoow (son of one of the chiefs) was wounded in the thigh by it, which induced them immediately to throw the buoy overboard. The captain, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, landed up the island, and the Indians in the canoes soon after came on shore. The gentlemen were in a small cove, and were presently surrounded by near 400 armed Indians; but the captain, not suspecting

suspecting any hostile design on the part of the natives, remained peaceably disposed. The gentlemen marching towards them, drew a line, intimating that they were not to pass it: they did not infringe upon the boundary for some time; but at last, they sang the song of defiance, whilst a party attempted to draw the Endeavour's boat on shore: these signals for an attack being immediately followed by the Indians breaking in upon the line, the gentlemen judged it time to defend themselves, and accordingly the captain fired his musket, loaded with small shot, which was seconded by Mr. Banks's discharging his piece, and two of the men followed his example. This threw the Indians into confusion, and they retreated, but were rallied again by one of the chiefs, who shouted and waved his patoo-patoo. The doctor now pointed his musket at this hero, and hit him: this stopped his career, and he took flight with the other Indians. They were now at too great a distance for a ball to reach them, but these operations being observed from the ship, she brought her broadside to bear, and by firing over them, soon dispersed them. The Indians had in this skirmish two of their people wounded, but none killed: peace being thus restored, the gentlemen began to gather celery and other herbs; but suspecting some of the natives were lurking about with evil designs, they repaired to a cave at some small distance. Here they found the chief, who had that day received a present from the captain; he came forth with his wife and brother, and solicited their clemency.

In the afternoon, the English rowed to another part of the island, when landing, and gaining an eminence, they had a very agreeable and romantic view of a great number of small islands, well inhabited and cultivated.

On the 15th of December, in the morning, we weighed anchor, but were soon becalmed, and a strong current setting towards the shore, we were driven in with such rapidity, that we expected every



moment to be run upon the breakers, which appeared above water, not more than a cable's length distance ; and we were so near the land, that Tupia, who was totally ignorant of the danger, held a conversation with the Indians, who were standing on the beach. We were happily relieved from this alarming situation by a fresh breeze suddenly springing up from the shore.

On the 25th, we stood to the southward, but had no land in sight, and were twenty leagues to the westward of North Cape. At mid-night it blew a storm from the east, accompanied with heavy showers of rain, which compelled us to bring the ship to, under her main-sail. The gale continued till Thursday the 28th, when it fell about two o'clock in the morning ; but at eight increased to a hurricane, with a prodigious sea. At noon the gale somewhat abated, but had still heavy squalls. On the 29th, we wore, and stood to the north-west. On the 31st, we tacked, and stood to the westward. We were now to the nearest land about three leagues, and had somewhat more than forty fathom water.

## CHAP. VII.

*The Endeavour continues her voyage to Queen Charlotte's Sound—Transactions in the Sound—A shocking custom of the inhabitants—The coast of Admiralty Bay described—The departure of the Endeavour from New Zealand, and other particulars—An account of New Zealand, the inhabitants, and customs.*

**J**ANUARY the 1st, 1770, we tacked and stood to the eastward : at noon, we stood to the westward ; found our lat. to be 34 deg. 37 min. south ; our distance from the Three Kings ten or eleven leagues. On the third, we saw land ; it was high and flat beyond the reach of the naked eye.

On the morning of the 4th, we stood along shore. The coast appeared sandy, barren, and inhospitable.

Steering

Steering northward, on the 6th we saw land again, which we supposed to be Cape Maria. We continued steering east till the 9th, when we were off a point of land which Captain Cook named Woody Head.

On the 15th, we steered for an inlet, it being almost calm, the ship was carried by a current within a cable's length of the shore ; but by the assistance of the boats she got clear. At three, we anchored in a very safe cove on the north-west side of the bay, and unmoored in eleven fathom water. In passing the point of the bay, we observed an armed centinel on duty, who was twice relieved ; and now four canoes came off, for the purpose, as we imagined, of reconnoitring ; for none of the Indians would venture on board, except an old man who seemed of elevated rank. His countrymen expostulated with him, laid hold of him, and took great pains to prevent his coming aboard, but they could not divert him from his purpose. We received him with the utmost civility. Tupia and the old man joined noses, according to the custom of the country, and having received several presents, he retired to his associates, who began to dance and laugh. Whether their expressions of joy were tokens of enmity or friendship, we could not determine. Captain Cook and other gentlemen went on shore, where they met with a fine stream of excellent water.

On the 16th, three canoes came off with a number of Indians, who brought several of their women with them, which circumstance was thought to be a favourable presage of their peaceable disposition ; but they soon convinced us of our mistake, by attempting to stop our long boat ; upon which Captain Cook had recourse to the old expedient of firing shot over their heads, which intimidated them for the present : they soon gave fresh proofs of their treacherous designs, for one of them snatched at some paper from our market-man, and missing it, put himself in a threatening attitude ; whereupon some shot was fired, which wounded him in the knee ; but Tupia still continued

continued conversing with his companions, making enquiries concerning their traditions respecting the antiquities of their country. He also asked them if they had ever seen a ship so large as the Endeavour? they replied they had not, nor never heard that such a vessel had been on their coast.

The women, who accompanied the men in their canoes, wore a head-dress; it was composed of black feathers, tied in a bunch on the top of the head, which greatly increased their height. The captain, Mr. Banks, and the doctor, visited a cove about a mile from the ship. There was a family of Indians who were greatly alarmed at the approach of these gentlemen, all running away except one; but upon Tupia's conversing with him, the others returned. They found by the provisions of this family, that they were cannibals, there being several human bones that had been lately dressed and picked, and it appeared that a short time before, six of their enemies having fallen into their hands, they killed four, and eat them, and that the other two were drowned in endeavouring to make their escape.

On the 29th, we were visited by Topoa, in company with other Indians, who behaved very civilly. During the time the bark was preparing for sea, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander often went on shore. Capt. Cook also made several observations on the coast to the north-west, and perceived many islands, forming bays, in which there appeared good anchorage for shipping. Returning to the ship, we met with many of the natives, of whom we purchased a small quantity of fish.

On the 30th, some of our people, who were sent out early in the morning to gather celery, met with about twenty Indians, among whom were five or six women, whose husbands had lately been made captives. They sat down upon the ground together, and cut many parts of their bodies in a most shocking manner, with shells, in testimony of their excessive grief. But what made the horrid spectacle more terrible,



rible, was, that the male Indians who were with them, paid not the least attention to it, but with the greatest unconcern imaginable, employed themselves in repairing their huts. This day, the carpenter having prepared two posts, they were set up as memorials, being inscribed with the date of the year, the month, and the ship's name. Captain Cook then gave something to every one present, after which he honoured this inlet with the name of Queen Charlotte's Sound. After taking leave of the natives, Topoa attended us in his canoe to the ship, and returned home after dinner.

On the 31st, having taken in our wood and water, we dispatched one party to make brooms, and another to catch fish. Towards the close of the evening, we had a strong gale from the north-west, with such heavy showers, that our sweet little warblers on shore began to suspend their wild notes, with which till now, they had constantly serenaded us during the night, affording us a pleasure not to be expressed.

On the 1st of February, the gale increased to a storm, with heavy gusts from the main land, which obliged us to let go another anchor. Towards night they became more moderate, but the rain poured down with such impetuosity, that the brooks at our watering-place overflowed its banks, and carried away, to our loss, ten casks full of water.

On the 5th, we got under sail, but the wind soon falling, we came again to anchor a little above Motuara. This day Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went again on shore in search of natural curiosities, and by accident met with a very amiable Indian family, among whom was a widow, and a pretty youth about ten years of age. The woman mourned for her husband according to the custom of the country, with tears of blood. The mother and son were sitting upon mats, the rest of the family of both sexes, about seventeen in number, sat round them. This family seemed the most intelligent of any Indians we had hitherto conversed with, which made us regret our  
late

late acquaintance with them ; for had we fallen into their company before, we should probably have gained more information from them in one day, than we had been able to acquire during our whole stay upon the coast.

Monday the 6th, the Endeavour sailed out of the bay, which, from the savage custom of eating human flesh, we called Cannibal Bay. We bent our course to an opening in the east ; and when in the mouth of the streight, were becalmed in latitude 140 south, and 110 deg. 45 min. west longitude. The land about this sound, which we saw at the distance of 20 leagues, consists entirely of high hills and deep vallies, well stored with excellent timber fit for all purposes. The number of inhabitants are about 400. They are poor, and their canoes without ornaments. On our arrival, they were much pleased with our paper ; but when they knew it would be spoiled by the wet, they would not have it.

On the 17th, we weighed anchor, and a fresh breeze with a tide of ebb, hurried us through the streight with great swiftness. In passing it, we thought it safest to keep to the north-east shore, for on this side we saw nothing to fear. In the afternoon three canoes came off, having several Indians on board.—These made a good appearance, and there was no difficulty in persuading them to come on board, when a mutual exchange of presents took place. One old man was tatowed in a remarkable manner ; he had likewise a red streak across his nose, and his head and beard were very white. His garment was made of flax. Teeth and green stones decorated his ears, and we concluded from his deportment, that he was a person of distinguished rank, and these people withdrew highly satisfied with the presents that they had received.

On the 9th of April, we discovered an island called Eahienomauwee. About sixty Indians, in double canoes, came within a stone's throw of the ship on the 14th. As they surveyed her with surprise,

Tupia

Tupia endeavoured to persuade them to come nearer, but this they could not be prevailed on to do. On this account, the island was denominated the island of Lookers-on.

On the 4th of March, several whales and seals were seen; and on the 9th, we saw a ledge of rocks, and soon after another ledge at three leagues distance from the shore, which we passed in the night to the northward, and at day-break observed the others under our bows, which was a fortunate escape; and in consideration of our having been so nearly caught among these, they were denominated the Traps.

On the 16th, we passed a point which consisted of high red cliffs, and received the name of Cascade Point, on account of several small streams which fell down it. In the morning of the 18th, the vallies were observed covered with snow, as well as the mountains, which seemed to have fallen the night before, when we had rain at sea. Thus we passed the whole north-west coast of Tovy Poenamoo, which had nothing worthy our observation but naked and barren rocks covered with snow, some of which we conjectured might have remained there since the creation. From this uncomfortable country we determined to depart, having sailed round the whole country by the 27th of this month.— And it was now resolved by a council of war to steer for the coast of New Holland, in the course of their return by the way of the East Indies.

On the 31st, we took our departure from an eastern point of land, to which we gave the name of Cape Farewel, calling the bay out of which we sailed, Admiralty Bay. We called a bay between the island and Cape Farewel, Blind Bay, which was supposed to have been the same that was called Murderers' Bay by Tasman, the first discoverer of New Zealand; but though he named it Staten Island, thinking to take possession of it, yet, being attacked by the Indians, he never went on shore to effect his purpose. This coast, now more accurately examined, is discovered to consist of two islands.



They are situated between the 34th and 35th deg. of south latitude, and between 181 deg. and 194 deg. west longitude. The northern island is called Eahienomauwee, and the southern is named Tovy Poenamoo by the natives. The former, though mountainous in some places, is stored with wood, and in every valley there is a rivulet. The soil in those vallies is light, but fertile and well adapted for the plentiful productions of all the fruits, plants, and corn of Europe.

Tovy Poenamoo is barren and mountainous, and appeared to be almost destitute of inhabitants.

In New Zealand is only one shrub or tree, which produces fruit, which is a kind of berry almost tasteless; but they have a plant which answers all the uses of hemp and flax. This plant is found both in high and low grounds, in dry mould, and deep bogs; but as it grows largest in the latter, that seems to be its proper soil.

The natives are as large as the largest Europeans. Their complexion is brown, but little more so than that of a Spaniard. The women possess not that delicacy which distinguishes the European ladies; but their voice distinguishes them from the men.

The inhabitants of New Zealand are as modest and reserved in their behaviour and conversation as the politest nations of Europe. The women, indeed, were not dead to the softest impressions; but their mode of consent was in their idea as harmless as the consent to marriage with us, and equally binding to the stipulated time. If any of the English addressed one of their women, he was informed, that the consent of her friends must be obtained, which usually followed on his making a present. This done, he was obliged to treat his temporary wife as delicately as we do in England.

A gentleman who sailed in the Endeavour, having addressed a family of rank, received an answer, of which the following is an exact translation: "Any of these young ladies will think themselves honoured by your addresses, but you must first make me a present, and you must then come and sleep with us on shore, for day-  
light

light must by no means be a witness of what passes between you."

Their dress is formed of the leaves of the flag, split into slips, which are interwoven and made into a kind of matting, the ends, which are seven or eight inches in length, hanging out on the upper side. One piece of this matting being tied over the shoulders, reaches to the knees; the other piece being wrapped round the waist falls almost to the ground. These two pieces are fastened to a string, which, by means of a bodkin of bone, is passed through, and tacks them together. The men wear the lower garment only at particular times.

The ears of both sexes are bored, and the holes stretched so as to admit a man's finger. The ornaments of their ears are feathers, cloth, bones, and sometimes bits of wood: a great many of them made use of the nails which were given them by the English, for this purpose, and the women sometimes adorned their ears with white down of the albatross, which they spread before and behind, the whole in a large bunch. They likewise hung to their ears by strings, chissels, bodkins, the teeth of dogs, and the teeth and nails of their deceased friends. The arms and ancles of the women are adorned with shells and bones, or any thing else through which they can pass a string. We saw one man who had the gristle of his nose perforated, and a feather passed through it, projecting over each cheek.

These people shew less ingenuity in the structure of their houses, than in any thing else belonging to them; they are 16 to 24 feet long, 10 or 12 wide, and 6 or 8 in height. The frame is of slight sticks of wood, and the walls and roof are of dry grass, pretty firmly compacted. The door is only high enough to admit a person crawling on hands and knees. There is a square hole near the door, serving both for window and chimney, near which is the fire-place.

The Indians use axes, adzes, and chissels, with the last they likewise bore holes. Their chissels are made of jasper, or the bone of a man's arm; their axes and adzes of hard black stone. They use their small jasper

tools till they are blunted, and then throw them away, having no instrument to sharpen them with.

Their tillage is excellent, owing to the necessity they are under of cultivating, or running the risque of starving. At Tegadoo their crops were just put into the ground, and the surface of the field was as smooth as a garden; the roots were ranged in regular lines, and to every root their remained a hillock. A long narrow stake, sharpened to an edge at the bottom, with a piece fixed across a little above it, for the convenience of driving it into the ground with the foot, supplies both the place of plough and spade.—The soil being light, their work is not very laborious, and with this instrument alone they will turn up ground of six or seven acres in extent.

Their warlike weapons are spears, darts, battle-axes, and the patoo-patoo. Whether they fight in boats or on shore, the battle is hand to hand, so that they must make bloody work of it. They trust chiefly in the patoo-patoo, which is fastened to their wrists, by means of a strong strap, that it may not be wrested out of their hands. They have a kind of staff of distinction, which is carried by the principal warriors. It is formed of a whale's rib, quite white, and adorned with carving, feathers, and the hair of dogs.

As to the religion of these people, they acknowledge one Supreme Being, and several subordinate deities. Their mode of worship we could not learn, nor was any place proper for that purpose seen.—There was indeed a small square area, encompassed with stones, in the middle of which hung a basket of fern roots on one of their spades. This they said was an offering to their gods, to obtain from them a plentiful crop of provisions. They gave the same account of the origin of the world, and the production of mankind, as our friends in Otaheite. Tupia, however, seemed to have much more deep and extensive knowledge of these subjects than any of the people of this island; and when he sometimes delivered a long discourse, he was sure of a numerous audience, who



who heard him with remarkable reverence and attention.

With regard to the manner of disposing of their dead, we could form no certain opinion. The southern district said, they disposed of their dead by throwing them into the sea. We saw, however, not the least sign of any grave or monument; but the body of many among the living, bore the marks of wounds, in token of grief for the loss of their friends and relations.

Before we close the account of New Zealand, we beg leave to observe, that hitherto our navigation has been very unfavourable to the supposition of a southern continent. The navigators who have supported the positions upon which this is founded, are Tasman, Juan Fernandes, Hermite, Quiros, and Rogewin; but the track of the Endeavour has totally subverted all their theoretical arguments. Upon a view of the chart it will appear, that a large space extends quite to the tropics, which has not been explored by us nor any other navigators; yet we believe there is no cape of any southern continent, and no southern continent to the northward of 40 deg. south. Of what may lie farther to the southward of 40 deg. we can give no opinion; yet are far from discouraging any future attempts after new discoveries: for a voyage like this may be of public utility. Should no continent be found, new islands within the tropics may be discovered. Tupia, in a rough chart of his own drawing, laid down no less than seventy-four; and he gave us an account of above one hundred and thirty, which no European vessel has ever yet visited.

## CHAP. VIII.

*Passage from New Zealand to Botany Bay, in New Holland—Various incidents related—A description of the country and its inhabitants—Sails from Botany Bay to Trinity Bay—Her dangerous situation in her passage from Trinity Bay to Endeavour River.*

ON the 31st of March, 1770, we sailed from Cape Farewel, having fine weather, and a fair wind.—This cape lies in lat. 40 deg. 33 min. S. and in 186 deg. W. longitude. We steered west with a fresh gale till the 2d of April, when, by observation, we found our latitude to be 40 deg. and our longitude from Cape Farewel 2 deg. 31 min. W. On the 17th, we had fresh gales, with squalls, and dark weather in the morning; and in the afternoon a hard gale and a great sea, which obliged us to run under our fore-sail and mizen all night.

On the 18th, in the morning, we were visited by a pintado bird, an infallible sign that land was near, which we discovered at six o'clock in the morning of the 19th, four or five leagues distant. To the southernmost point in sight, we gave the name of Point Hicks. On the following day we had a distant view of the country, which was in general covered with wood, and interspersed with several small lawns. It appeared to be inhabited, as smoke was seen in several places. On the 22d, we were so near the shore, as to see several of the inhabitants on the coast, who were of a dark complexion, if not perfect negroes. The trees on this island were both tall and large, but we saw no place fit to give shelter, even for a boat.

On the 27th, we saw several of the inhabitants walking along the shore, four of them carrying a canoe on their shoulders, but as they did not attempt to come off to the ship, the captain took Messrs. Banks and Solander, and Tupia, in the yawl, to that part of the shore where they saw the natives, near which four canoes lay close

close in land. The Indians sat on the rocks till the yawl was a quarter of a mile from the shore, and then they ran away into the woods. The surf beating violently on the beach, prevented the boat from landing; the gentlemen were therefore obliged to make what observations they could at a distance. They saw a great number of cabbage trees on shore.

At five in the evening, they returned to the ship, and a light breeze springing up, we sailed to the northward, where we discovered several people on shore, who, on our approach, retired to an eminence, soon after which two canoes arrived on the shore, and four men, who came in them, joined the others. The pinnace having been sent a head to sound, arrived near the spot where the Indians had stationed themselves, on which one of them hid himself among the rocks, near the landing place, and the others retreated farther up the hill. The pinnace keeping along shore, the Indians walked near in a line with her; they were armed with long pikes, and, by various signs and words, invited the boat's crew to land. The ship having come to an anchor, we observed a few huts, in which were some of the natives. We anchored opposite a village of about eight houses, and observed an old woman and three children come out of a wood; they were met by three smaller ones, all of whom, as well as the woman, were quite naked.

Having formed a design of landing, we manned the boats, and took Tupia with us, but had no sooner come near the shore, than two men advanced, as if to dispute our setting foot on land. They were each of them armed with different kinds of weapons. They called out aloud, warra warra wai! the meaning of it Tupia did not understand. The captain threw them beads, nails, and other trifles, which they took up, and seemed pleased with. He then made signals that he wanted water, and used every possible means to convince them that no injury was intended. They made signs to the boat's crew to land, on which we put the boat in, but had no sooner done so, than the two Indians came again to oppose us. A musket was fired between them,  
on



on the report of which, one of them dropped a bundle of lances, which he immediately snatched up again in great haste. One of them threw a stone at the boat, on which the captain ordered a musket loaded with small shot, to be fired, which wounding the eldest of them in the legs, he retired hastily to one of the huts that stood at some little distance.

The people in the boats now landed, imagining that the wound which this man had received, would put an end to the contest. In this, however, we were mistaken, for he immediately returned with a kind of shield, with two holes in it to see through. They now advanced with great intrepidity, and both discharged their lances, but did not wound any of us. Another musket was fired at them, on which they threw another lance, and then took to their heels.

We now went up to the huts, in one of which we found the children, who had secreted themselves behind some bark. We looked at them, but left them without its being known we had seen them, and having thrown several pieces of cloth, ribbands, beads, and other things, into the hut, we took several of their lances, and then re-embarked in the boat.

We now sailed to the north point of the bay, and found plenty of fresh water. On taking a view of the hut where we had seen the children, we had the mortification to find that every Indian had fled, and that they had left all their presents behind them. The captain now went in the pinnace to inspect the bay, and saw several of the natives, who all fled as he approached them. Some of the men having been sent to get wood and water, they no sooner went on board to dinner, than the natives came down to the place, and examined the casks with great attention, but did not offer to remove them. When the people were on shore in the afternoon, about twenty of the natives, alarmed, advanced within a trifling distance of them, and then stopped, while two of their number approached still nearer. Mr. Hicks, the commanding officer on shore, went towards them, with presents in his hands, and endeavoured, by every possible

possible means, to assure them of his friendly intentions, but to no purpose, for they retired before he came up to them.

On the 30th, the natives came down to the huts before it was light, and were repeatedly heard to shout very loud, and soon after day-break they were seen on the beach, but quickly retired about a mile, and kindled several fires in the woods. This day some of the ship's crew being employed in cutting grass at a distance from the main body, while the natives pursued them, but stopping within fifty or sixty yards of them, they shouted several times, and retreated to the woods. In the evening they behaved exactly in the same manner, when the captain followed them alone and unarmed, for some time, but they still retired as he approached.

On May 1st, the south point of the bay was named Sutherland Point, one of the seamen, of the name of Sutherland, having died that day, and been buried on shore; and more presents were left in the huts, such as looking-glasses, combs, &c. but the former ones had not been taken away. Making an excursion about the country, we found it agreeably variegated with wood and lawn. The country might be cultivated without cutting down one of them. The grass grows in large tufts, almost close to each other. In this excursion, we met with many places where the inhabitants had slept without shelter, and one man, who ran away the moment he beheld us. More presents were left in their huts, and at their sleeping places, in hopes of producing a friendly intercourse. We saw the dung of an animal which feeds on grass, and traced the foot-steps of another, which had claws like a dog, and was about the size of a wolf: also the track of a small animal, whose foot was like that of a mole.

The woods abound with a vast variety of beautiful birds, among which were cockatoos, and paroquets, which flew in large flocks. The second lieutenant, Mr. Gore, having been with a boat in order to drudge for oysters, saw some Indians, who made signs for him to come on shore, which he declined: having finished

his business, he sent the boat away, and went by land with a midshipman, to join the party that was getting water. In their way, they met with more than twenty of the natives, who followed them so close as to come within a few yards of them; Mr. Gore stopped, and faced them, on which the Indians stopped also; and when he proceeded again, they followed him; but they did not attack him, though they had each man a lance. The Indians coming in sight of the water casks, stood at the distance of a quarter of a mile, while Mr. Gore and his companions reached their shipmates in safety. Three of the waterers now advanced towards the Indians, but observing they did not retire, they very imprudently turned about, and retreated hastily: this apparent sign of cowardice inspired the savages, who discharged four of their lances at the fugitives, which flying beyond them, they escaped unhurt. At this instant the captain came up with Messrs. Banks and Solander, and Tupia advancing, made signs of friendship; but the natives would not stay their coming up to them.

On the following day, they went again on shore, where many plants were collected by Dr. Solander, and Mr. Banks. They saw several parties of the Indians, who all ran away on their approach. Tupia having learnt to shoot, frequently staid alone to shoot parrots, and the Indians constantly fled away from him with as much precipitation as from the English. On the 3d, fourteen or fifteen Indians, in the same number of canoes, were engaged in striking fish within half a mile of the watering-place.

The captain landing on shore, found several of the Indians walking about, who immediately retreated to their canoes, and rowed off. They went up the country, where they found the soil to be a black mould, which appeared to be calculated for the production of any kind of grain. They saw some of the finest meadows that were ever beheld, and met with a few rocky places, the stone of which is sandy, and seemed to be admirably adapted for building. In the woods, they found a tree bearing cherries, if shape and colour may entitle



entitle them to that name, the juice of which was agreeably tart. They now returned to their boat, and seeing a fire at a distance, rowed towards it ; but the Indians fled at their coming near them.

On the 6th of May, we sailed from Botany Bay, and at noon were off a harbour, which was called Port Jackson, and in the evening near a bay, to which we gave the name of Broken Bay. The next day, at noon, the northernmost land in sight, projecting so as to justify the calling it Cape Three Points. On the 9th, we passed a rocky point, which was named Point Stephens. Next day saw smoke in several places on shore, and in the evening discovered three remarkable high hills, which the captain named the Three Brothers. They lie in latitude 31 deg. 40 min. and may be seen 14 leagues from the shore.

On the 15th, in the morning, by the assistance of our-glasses, we discerned about a score of Indians, each loaded with a bundle, which we imagined to be palm leaves for covering their houses. We traced them for more than an hour, during which time they took not the least notice of the ship ; at length they left the beach, and were lost behind a hill, which they gained by a gentle ascent. At noon, in lat. 28 deg. 37 min. 30 sec. south, and in 206 deg. 30 min. west longitude, the captain discovered a high point of land, and named it Cape Byron.

On the 18th, in the morning, we descried a point so unequal, that it looked like two small islands under the land, and was therefore called Double Island Point. At noon, by help of glasses, discovered some sands, which lay in patches of several acres. We observed they were moveable, and that they had not been long in their present situation ; for we saw trees half buried, and the tops of others still green. At this time two beautiful water-snakes swam by the ship, in every respect resembling land-snakes, except that their tails were flat and broad, probably to serve them instead of fins in swimming.

On the 22d, at six in the morning, by help of our glasses, when a-breast of the south point of a large bay, in which the captain intended to anchor, we discovered that the land was covered with palm nut trees, none of which we had seen since we quitted the islands within the tropic. On the 23d, early in the morning, Captain Cook, attended by several gentlemen, and Tupia, went on shore to examine the country. The wind blew so fresh, and we found it so cold, that being at some distance from the shore, we took with us our cloaks. We landed a little within the point of a bay, which led into a large lagoon, by the side of which grows the true mangrove, such as is found in the West Indies, as it does also on some bogs, and swamps of salt water which we discovered.

On the 24th, we made sail out of the bay, and on the day following were a-breast of a point, which being immediately under the tropic, the captain named Cape Capricorn; on the west side, we saw an amazing number of large birds, resembling the pelican, some of which were near five feet high. We anchored in twelve fathom water, having the main land and barren islands all round us.

On the 29th, we stood between the range of almost barren islands and the main land, which appeared mountainous. We had here very shallow water, and anchored in sixteen feet, which was not more than the ship drew. Mr. Banks tried to fish from the cabin windows, but the water was too shallow. The ground indeed was covered with crabs, which greedily seized the bait, and held it till they were above water. These crabs were of two kinds, one of a very fine blue, with a white belly, and the other marked with blue on the joints, and three brown spots on the back.

On June the 1st, we got under sail, and our lat. by observation was 21 deg. 29 min. south. We had quite opened the western inlet, which we have distinguished by the name of Bread Sound. At eight in the evening we anchored in eleven fathom, with a sandy bottom, about two leagues from the main land.

On

On the 2d, we got under sail, and discovered a point of land, which we called Cape Conway. The land about Cape Conway forms a most beautiful landscape, being diversified with hills and dales. By the help of our glasses we discovered two men and a woman on the island, and a canoe, with an outrigger like those of Otaheite.

On the 8th, we stood away for the northernmost point in sight, to which we gave the name of Point Hillock. At six in the evening we were abreast of a point of land, which we named Cape Sandwich. We now ranged northward along the shore, towards a cluster of islands, on one of which was 40 or 50 men, women, and children, standing together, all stark naked, and looking at the ship with a curiosity never observed among these people before. At noon, our lat. by observation, was 17 deg. 59 min. and we were a-breast of the north point of Rockingham Bay. This boundary of the bay is formed by an island of considerable height, which we distinguished by the name of Dunk Isle.

Sunday the 10th, was remarkable for the dangerous situation of the Endeavour. As no accident remarkably unfortunate had befallen us, during a navigation of more than 1300 miles, upon a coast every where abounding with the most dangerous rocks and shoals, no name of distress had hitherto been given to any cape or point of land which we had seen. But we now gave the name of Cape Tribulation, to a point we had just seen farthest to the northward, because here we became acquainted with misfortune. The cape lies in lat. 16 deg. 6 min. S. and 214 deg. 31 min. W. longitude.

At six in the evening we shortened sail, and hauled off close upon a wind, to avoid the danger of some rocks which were seen a-head, and to observe whether there were any islands in the offing, as we were near the lat. of those islands said to have been discovered by Quiros. We had got into 21 fathom water, when suddenly we fell into 12, 10, and 8 fathom, in a few minutes. Every man was instantly ordered to his station, and were upon the point of anchoring, when on a sudden,  
we



we had again deep water, so that we thought all danger at an end, concluding that we had sailed over the tail of some shoals. We had 21 fathoms and upwards before ten o'clock, and this depth continuing some time, the gentlemen, who had hitherto been upon duty, retired to rest; but in less than an hour, the water shallowed at once from 20 to 17 fathoms, and before soundings could be taken, the ship struck upon a rock, and remained immoveable. Every one was instantly on deck, with countenances fully expressive of the horrors of our situation. Knowing we were not near shore, we concluded that we were upon a rock of coral, the points of which are sharp, and the surface so rough, as to grind away whatever it rubbed against, even with the gentlest motion. All the sails, being immediately taken in, and our boats hoisted out, we found that the ship had been lifted over the ledge of a rock, and lay in a hollow within it. Finding the water was deepest astern, we carried out the anchor from the starboard quarter, and applied our whole force to the capstan, in hopes to get the vessel off, but in vain. She beat so violently against the rock, that the crew could scarcely stand on their legs. Our best chance of escaping seemed now to be by lightening her; but having struck at high water, we should have been in our present situation after the vessel should draw as much less water as the water had sunk; our anxiety abated a little, on finding that the ship settled on the rocks as the tide ebbed, and we flattered ourselves, that if the ship should keep together till the next tide, we might have some chance of floating her. We therefore instantly started the water in the hold, and pumped it up. The decayed stores, oil-jars, casks, ballast, six guns, and other things, were thrown overboard in order to get at the heavier articles; and in this business we were employed till day-break, during which time not an oath was sworn, so much were the minds of the sailors impressed with a sense of their danger.

On the 11th, at day-light, we saw land at eight leagues distance, but not a single island between us and the main, on which part of the crew might have been landed,

landed, while the boat went on shore with the rest; so that the destruction of the greater part of us would have been inevitable had the ship gone to pieces. As we expected high water about eleven o'clock, every thing was prepared to make another effort to free the ship, but the tide fell so much short of that in the night, that she did not float by 18 inches, though we had thrown overboard 50 tons weight: we therefore renewed our toil, and threw overboard every thing that could possibly be spared; as the tide fell, the water poured in so rapidly, that we could scarce keep her free by the constant working of two pumps. Our only hope depended on the midnight tide, and preparations were accordingly made for another effort to get the ship off. The tide began to rise at five o'clock, when the leak likewise increased to such a degree, that two pumps more were manned but only one of them would work; three, therefore kept going till nine o'clock, at which time the ship righted; but so much water had been admitted by the leak, that we expected she would sink as soon as the water should bear her off the rock. Our situation was deplorable beyond description, almost all hope being at an end. We knew that when the fatal moment should arrive, all authority would be at an end. The boats were incapable of conveying all on shore, and dreaded a contest for the preference as more shocking than the shipwreck itself: yet it was considered, that those who might be left on board, would eventually meet with a milder fate than those who, by gaining the shore, would have no chance but to linger out the remains of life among the rudest savages in the universe, and in a country where fire-arms would barely enable them to support themselves in a most wretched situation.

At ten minutes after ten the ship floated, and was heaved into deep water, when we were happy to find that she did not admit more water than she had done before; yet, as the leak had for a considerable time gained on the pumps, there was now three feet nine inches water in the hold. By this time, the men were so worn by fatigue of mind and body, that none of them  
could

could pump above five or six minutes at a time, and then threw themselves, quite spent, on the deck, amidst a stream of water which came from the pumps. Between the inside lining of the ship's bottom, and the outside planking, there is a space of about 17 inches. The man who had hitherto taken the depth of water at the well, had taken it no farther than the ceiling, but being now relieved by another person, who took the depth of the outside plank, it appeared by this mistake, that the leak had suddenly gained upon the pumps, the whole difference between the two planks. This circumstance deprived us of all hopes, and scarce any one thought it worth while to labour: but the mistake was soon discovered; and the joy arising from such unexpected good news, inspired the men with so much vigour, that before eight in the morning, they had pumped out considerably more water than they had shipped. We now talked of nothing but getting the ship into some harbour, and set heartily to work to get in the anchors; one of which, and the cable of another, we lost; but these were now considered as trifles. Having a good breeze from sea, we got under sail at eleven o'clock, and steered for land. As we could not discover the exact situation of the leak, we had no prospect of stopping it within-side of the vessel; but on the 12th, the following expedient, which one of the midshipmen had formerly seen tried with success, was adopted. We took an old studding sail, and having mixed a large quantity of oakum and wool, chopped small, it was stitched down in handfuls on the sail, as lightly as possible, the dung of sheep, and other filth being spread over it. Thus prepared, the sail was hauled under the ship by ropes, which kept it extended till it came under the leak, when the suction carried in the oakum and wool from the surface of the sail. This experiment succeeded so well, that instead of three pumps, the water was easily kept under with one.

We had hitherto no farther view than to run the ship into some harbour, and build a vessel from her materials, in which we might reach the East Indies; but we



we now began to think of finding a proper place to repair her damage, and then pursue our voyage on its original plan. At six in the evening, we anchored seven leagues from the shore, and found that the ship made 15 inches water an hour during the night; but as the pumps could clear this quantity, we were not uneasy. In the morning we passed two islands, and called them Hope Islands, because the reaching of them had been the object of our wishes. In the afternoon, the master was sent out in a boat, to sound and search for a harbour where the ship might be repaired, and we anchored at sun-set, in four fathoms water, three miles from the shore. One of the mates being sent out in the pinnace, returned at nine o'clock, reporting, that he had found such a harbour as was wanted, at the distance of two leagues.

On the 13th, at six o'clock, we sailed, having previously sent the boat a-head to point out the shoals that we saw in our way. We soon anchored about a mile from the shore, when the captain went out, and found the channel very narrow, but the harbour better adapted to our present purpose, than any place we had seen in the course of the voyage. As it blew very fresh this day, we could not venture to run into the harbour, but remained at anchor the two succeeding days, in the course of which we observed four Indians on the hills, who stopped and made three fires.

Our men, by this time, began to be afflicted with the scurvy; and our Indian friend Tupia, was so ill with it, that he had livid spots on both legs. The wind continued fresh till the 17th, and then we resolved to push in for the harbour, and twice ran the ship aground; the second time she struck fast, on which we took down the booms, fore-yard, and fore-top masts, and made a raft on the side of the ship; and as the tide happened to be rising, she floated at one o'clock. We soon got her into the harbour, where she was moored along the side of a beach, and the anchors, cables, &c. were immediately taken out of her.

## CHAP. IX.

*The ship refitted—Transactions during that time—The country and its inhabitants described—The range from Endeavour River to the extremity of the country—The Endeavour departs from South Wales—That country and people described.*

ON the 18th, in the morning, we erected a tent for the sick, who were brought on shore as soon as it was ready for their reception. We likewise built a stage from the ship to the shore, and set up a tent to hold the provisions and stores that were landed the same day. The boat was now dispatched in search of fish for the refreshment of the sick, but she returned without getting any; but Tupia employed himself in angling, and lived entirely upon what he caught, and recovered his health very fast.

On the 19th, the smith's forge was set up, and the armourer prepared the necessary iron-work for the repair of the vessel. The officers' stores, ballast, water, &c. were likewise ordered out, in order to lighten the ship. On the 20th, as we were removing the coals, the water rushed in, near the fore-mast, about three feet from the keel; so that it was resolved to clear the hold entirely; which being done on the 22d, we warped the ship higher up the harbour, to a station more proper for laying her ashore, in order to stop the leak.

Early in the morning, the tide having left her, we proceeded to examine the leak, when it appeared that the rocks had cut through four planks into the timbers, and that three other planks were damaged. In these breaches not a splinter was to be seen, the whole being smooth as if cut away by an instrument: but it was the will of an Omnipotent Being, that the vessel should be preserved by a very singular circumstance: for though one of the holes was large enough to have sunk her, even with eight pumps constantly at

at work, yet this inlet to our destruction was partly stopped up, by a fragment of the rock being left sticking therein. We found likewise some pieces of oakum, wood, &c. had got between the timbers, and stopped those parts of the leak that the stone had left open. Exclusive of the leak, great damage was done to various parts of the ship's bottom. While the smiths were employed in making nails and bolts, the carpenters began to work on the vessel; and some of the people were sent on the other side of the river to shoot birds for the sick. They found a stream of fresh water, and several of the inhabitants of the island.

On the 24th, Mr. Gore and a party of men that set out with him, procured a bunch or two of wild plantains, and a few palm cabbages, for the refreshment of the sick: the repairs of the ship on the starboard side having been finished the preceding day, the carpenters now began to work under her larboard bow; and being examined abaft, it appeared she had received very little injury in that quarter. On the 26th, the carpenter was engaged in caulking the ship, and the men in other necessary business; and on the 27th, the armourer continued to work at the forge, and the carpenter on the ship, while the captain made several hauls with the large net, and caught such a quantity, that two pounds and a half were distributed to each man; and plenty of greens had been gathered, which, when boiled with peas, made an excellent mess.

On the 1st of July, all the crew had permission to go on shore, except one from each mess. Some of our people who went up the country, gave an account of their having seen several animals, and a fire about a mile up the river. On the 3d, the master, who had been sent in the pinnace, returned, and reported, that he had found a passage out at sea, between shoals which consisted of coral rocks, many whereof were dry at low water.



He found cockles so large, that one of them was more than sufficient for two men; likewise plenty of other shell-fish, of which he brought a supply to the ship, in his return to which he had landed in a bay where some Indians were at supper; but they instantly retired, leaving some eggs by a fire for dressing them. This day we made another attempt to float the ship, and happily succeeded at high water; when we found that by the position she had lain in, one of her planks was sprung, so that it was again necessary to lay her ashore. An alligator swam by her several times at high water.

Wednesday the 4th, was employed in trimming her upon an even keel, warping her over, and laying her down on a sand-bank, on the south side of the river; and on the next she was again floated, and moored off the beach, in order to receive the stores on-board. This day, the 6th, Mr Banks sailed up the river, to make an excursion up the country, and returned on the 8th. Having followed the course of the river, they found it at length contracted into a narrow channel, bounded by steep banks, adorned with trees of a most beautiful appearance, among which was the bark tree. The land was low, and covered with grass, and seemed capable of being cultivated to great perfection.

Going in pursuit of game, we saw four animals, two of which were chased by Mr. Banks's greyhound, but they greatly outstripped him in speed, by leaping over the long thick grass, which incommoded the dog in running. It was observed of the animals that they bounded forward on two legs, instead of running on four. Having returned to the boat, they proceeded up the river, till it contracted to a brook of fresh water, but in which the tide rose considerably. Having stopped to pass the night, we saw at some distance a smoke, on which three of us approached it, but the Indians were gone. The tide favouring us in the morning, we lost no time in getting back to the ship.

The next day, the second lieutenant came on shore, and soon after saw four Indians, in a small canoe. The captain now determined to take notice of these people, as the most likely way to be noticed by them. This project answered; two of them came within musket-shot of the vessel, where they conversed very loud; in return, the people on board shouted, and made signs of invitation. The Indians gradually approached, with their lances held up; not in a menacing manner, but as if they meant to intimate that they were capable of defending themselves. They came almost along-side, when the captain threw them cloth, nails, paper, &c. which did not seem to attract their notice; at length, one of the sailors threw a small fish, which so pleased them that they hinted their designs of bringing their companions, and immediately rowed for shore. In the interim, Tupia and some of the crew landed on the opposite shore.

The four Indians now came quite along-side the ship, and having received farther presents, landed where Tupia and the sailors had gone. They had each two lances, and a stick with which they threw them. Advancing towards the English, Tupia persuaded them to lay down their arms, and sit by him, which they readily did. Others of the crew now going on shore, the Indians seemed jealous, lest they should get between them and their arms; but care was taken to convince them that no such thing was intended, and more trifles were presented to them. The crew staid with them till dinner-time, and then made signs of invitation for them to go to the ship and eat; but this they declined, and retired in their canoe.

These men were of the common stature, with very small limbs: their complexion was of a deep chocolate, their hair black, either lank or curled, but not of the woolly kind; the breasts and upper lip of one of them were painted with streaks of white, which he called *carabanda*, and some of their bodies painted red.

red. Their teeth were white and even, their eyes bright, and their features rather pleasing; their voices musical, and they repeated several English words with great readiness.

The next morning, the visit of three of these Indians was renewed, and they brought with them a fourth, whom they called Yaparico, who appeared to be a person of some consequence. The bone of a bird, about six inches long, was thrust through his nose. These people being all naked, the captain gave one of them an old shirt, which he bound round his head like a turban. They brought a fish to the ship, which was supposed to be in payment for that given them the day before: after staying some time with apparent satisfaction, they suddenly leaped into their canoe, and rowed off, from a jealousy of some of the gentlemen, who were examining it.

On the 12th, three Indians visited Tupia's tent, and after remaining some time, went for two others, whom they introduced by name. Some fish was offered them, but they seemed not much to regard it; after eating a little, they gave the rest to Mr. Banks's dog. On the 14th, Mr. Gore shot one of the animals above-mentioned. It chanced to be a young one, weighing more than 38 pounds, but when they are full grown, they are as large as a sheep. The skin of this beast, which is called Kangaroo, is covered with short fur, and is of a dark mouse-colour; the head and ears are somewhat like those of a hare; this animal was dressed for dinner, and proved to be fine eating. The ship's crew fed on turtle almost every day, finer than those eaten in England, owing to their being killed before their natural fat was wasted, and their juices changed.

On the 17th, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went with the captain into the woods, and saw four Indians in a canoe, who went on shore, and walked up without sign of fear. They accepted some beads, and departed, intimating that they did not choose to be followed. The natives being now become familiar



liar with the ship's crew, one of them was desired to throw his lance; which he did with such dexterity and force, that though it was not above four feet from the ground at the highest, it penetrated deeply into a tree at the distance of fifty yards. The natives now came on board the ship, and were well pleased with their entertainment.

On the 19th, we saw several of the women, who as well as the men, were quite naked. We were this day visited by ten Indians, who seemed resolved to have one of the turtles that was on board, which they repeatedly made signs for, and being as repeatedly refused, they expressed the utmost rage and resentment: one of them in particular, having received a denial from Mr. Banks, he stamped, and pushed him away in a most violent manner. At length they laid hands on two of the turtles, and drew them to the side of the ship where the canoe lay, but the sailors took them away. They made several similar attempts, but being equally unsuccessful, they leaped suddenly into their canoe, and rowed off. At this instant, the captain, with Mr. Banks, and five of the seamen, went on shore, where many of the crew were employed. One of the Indians snatched a fire-brand from under a pitch-kettle, and running to the windward of what effects were left on shore, set fire to the grass, which burned rapidly, scorched a pig to death, burned a part of the smith's forge, and would have destroyed a tent of Mr. Banks's, but some people came from the ship just time enough to get it out of the way of the flames. In the mean while, the Indians went to a place where the fishing nets lay, and a quantity of linen was laid out to dry, and there again set fire to the grass, in spite of all persuasion, and even threats. A musket, loaded with small shot, was fired, and one of them being wounded, they ran away, and this second fire was extinguished: but the other burned far into the woods.

The Indians still continuing in sight, a musket was fired with ball, the report only of which sent them  
out

out of sight; but their voices being heard in the woods, the captain, with a few people, went to meet them. Both parties stopped when in sight of each other; at which time an old Indian advanced, and spoke aloud to his companions, who placed their lances against a tree, and came forward in a friendly manner. When they came up to us, we returned the darts we had taken, and perceived, with great satisfaction, that this rendered the reconciliation complete. Having received from us some trinkets, they walked amicably towards the coast, intimating by signs, that they would not fire the grass again.

On the 20th, our ship being ready for sea, the master was sent in search of a passage to the northward but could not find any; while the captain sounded and buoyed the bar. This day we saw not any Indians; but the hills, for many miles, were on fire, which at night made an appearance truly sublime.

On the 24th, one of the sailors, who with others had been sent to gather kale, having strayed from the rest, fell in with four Indians at dinner. He was at first much alarmed, but had prudence enough to conceal his apprehensions; and sitting down by them, gave them his knife, which having examined, they returned. He would have left them, but they seemed disposed to detain him, till, by feeling his hands and face, they were convinced he was made of flesh and blood like themselves. They treated him with great civility, and having kept him about half an hour, they made signs that he might depart. When he left them, not taking the direct road to the ship, they came from the fire, and shewed him the nearest way; from whence we concluded, that they knew from whence he came.

Mr. Banks having gone on shore in search of plants, found the cloth that had been distributed among the natives, lying in a heap, as useless lumber. Indeed, they seemed to set very little value upon any thing  
we

we had, except our turtle, a commodity we were least inclined and able to spare.

On the 29th, we got the anchor up, and made all ready to put to sea. A boat was sent out to ascertain what water was upon the bar; when returned, the officer reported, that there was only 13 feet, which was six inches less than the ship drew. We therefore this day gave up all hopes of sailing. On the 30th, we had fresh gales and hazy weather, till Tuesday the 31st, at three in the morning, when the weather became more moderate. During all the time, the pinnace and yawl continued to play the net and hook with tolerable good success, bringing in at different times a turtle, and from 2 to 300 weight of fish.

On the 4th of August, we once more got under sail, and put to sea. We stood off E. by N. with the pinnace a-head to keep sounding. About noon we came to an anchor, when the harbour from whence we had sailed bore S. 70 W. distant about five leagues. The captain here named the northernmost point of land in sight, Cape Bedford, and the harbour we had quitted, Endeavour River. Our lat. by observation, was 15 deg. 32 min. S.

Endeavour River is only a small bar harbour, which runs in a winding channel three or four leagues in land. The depth of water for shipping, is not more than a mile within the bar, and only on the north side. The provisions we procured in this harbour consisted of turtle, oysters of different sorts, cavalhe, flat-fish, skate, or ray fish, purslain, wild beans, and cabbage palms. The soil of the hills, though stony, produces coarse grass, besides wood; that of the vallies is in general well clothed, and has the appearance of fertility. The trees are of various sorts, of which the gum trees are the most common. On each side of the river are mangroves, which in some parts extend a mile within the coast.

On the 4th, Captain Cook went up to the mast-head to look at some dangerous shoals, several of which we saw above water. This day, such a quan-



tity of fish was caught, as allowed a dividend of two pounds to each man. During the six following days, we attempted to sail between the shoals and breakers, by which we were every way surrounded. On the 10th, we were between a head land and three islands, which had been discovered the preceding day.

On the 11th, early in the morning, Mr. Banks and Captain Cook went to visit the largest of the three islands, and having gained the summit of the largest hill, they beheld a reef of rocks, whereon the sea broke in a frightful manner; but the hazy weather preventing a perfect view, they lodged under a bush during the night, and next day seeing what had the appearance of a channel between the reefs, one of the mates was sent out in the pinnace to examine it; and at noon returned, having found 15 and 23 fathoms of water. While busy in this survey, Mr. Banks was attentive to his favourite pursuit, and collected many plants he had not seen before. This island, visible at twelve leagues distance, and in general barren, we found to be about eight leagues in circumference. There are some sandy bays and low land on the N. W. side, which is covered with long grass, and trees of the same kind with those on the main; lizards of a very large size also abounded, some of which we took. We found also fresh water in two places; one running stream, close to the sea, was a little brackish; the other was a standing pool, perfectly sweet.

On our return to the ship, the captain named this place the Lizard Islands, on account of our having seen no other animals but lizards. When returning, we landed on a low sandy island, upon which were birds of various kinds. We took a nest of young eagles, and therefore called the place Eagle Island.

On the 12th, the officers held a consultation, and we were unanimous in opinion, that it would be best to quit the coast altogether, till we could approach it with less danger; in consequence of which concurrent

rent opinion, we sailed on the 13th, and got through one of the channels in the reef, happy at finding ourselves once more in the open sea, after having been surrounded by dreadful shoals and rocks for near three months. We had now sailed above 1000 miles, during which run we had been obliged to keep sounding, without the intermission of a single minute; a circumstance, which, it is supposed, never happened to any ship but the Endeavour.

On the 4th, we anchored, and by observation, our lat. was 13 deg. 46 min. S. and at this time we had no land in sight. On the 15th, we steered a westerly course, in order to get sight of land, that we might not overshoot the passage, if a passage there was between this land and New Guiney. Early in the afternoon, we had sight of land, which had the appearance of hilly islands, but it was judged to be part of the main, and we saw breakers between the vessel and the land, in which there was an opening; to get clear we set all our sails, and stood to the northward till midnight, and then went on a southward tack for about three miles, when the breeze died away to a dead calm. When day-light came on, we saw a dreadful surf break at a vast height, within a mile of the ship, towards which the rolling waves carried her with great rapidity. Thus distressed, the boats were sent a-head to tow, and the head of the vessel was brought about, but not till she was within 100 yards of the rock, between which and her nothing was left but the chasm, and which had risen and broke to a wonderful height on the rock; but in the moment we expected instant destruction, a breeze, hardly discernible, aided the boats in getting the vessel in an oblique direction from the rock. The hopes, however, afforded by this providential circumstance, were destroyed by a perfect calm, which succeeded in a few minutes; yet the breeze once more returned, before we had lost the little ground which had been gained. At this time a small opening was seen in the reef, and a young officer being

sent to examine it, found that its breadth did not much exceed the length of the ship, but that there was smooth water on the other side of the rocks. Animated by the desire of preserving life, we now attempted to pass the opening; but this was impossible, for it having become high water in the interim, the ebb tide rushed through it with amazing impetuosity, carrying the ship about a mile from the reef, and she soon reached the distance of near two miles by the help of the boats.

When the ebb-tide was spent, the tide of flood again drove the vessel very near the rocks, so that our prospect of destruction was renewed, when we discovered another opening, and a light breeze springing up, we entered it, and were driven through it with a rapidity that prevented the ship from striking against either side of the channel. The ship now came to an anchor, and our men were grateful for having regained a station, which they had been very lately most anxious to quit. The name of Providence Channel, was given to the opening through which the ship had thus escaped the most imminent dangers.

On the 17th, the boats went out to fish, and met with great success, particularly in catching cockles, some of which were of such an amazing size, as to require the strength of two men to remove them.—Mr. Banks likewise succeeded in his search for rare shells, and different kinds of coral.

On the 21st, we sailed through a channel, in which was a number of shoals; and gave the name of York Cape to a point of the main land which forms the side of the channel. In the afternoon, we anchored between some islands, and observed, that the channel now began to grow wider; we perceived two distant points, between which no land could be seen, so that the hope of having at length explored a passage into the Indian sea, began to animate every breast; but, to bring the matter to a certainty, the captain took a party, and, accompanied by the gentlemen,



tllemen, they landed on an island, on which they had seen a number of Indians, ten of whom were on a hill, one of them carrying a bow and a bundle of arrows, the rest armed with lances. Three of these Indians stood on shore, as if to oppose the landing of the boat, but they retired before it reached the beach.

The captain and his company ascended a hill, from whence they had a view of near 40 miles, in which space there was nothing that threatened to oppose their passage, so that the certainty of a channel seemed almost indubitable. Previous to their leaving the island, Captain Cook displayed the English colours, and took possession of all the country, from the 38th deg. of south lat. to the present spot, by the name of New South Wales, for the king of Great Britain.

The next morning we saw three naked women collecting shell-fish on the beach; and weighing anchor, named it Cape Cornwall, to the extreme point of the largest island on the north-west side of the passage; some low islands near the middle of the channel receiving the name of Wallis's Isles; soon after which the ship came to an anchor, and the long-boat was sent out to sound. Towards evening we sailed again, and the captain landed with Mr. Banks, on a small island, frequented by immense numbers of birds, the majority of which being boobies, the place received the name of Booby Island.

We were now advanced to the northern extremity of New Holland, and had the satisfaction of viewing the open sea to the westward. The N. E. entrance of the passage is formed by the main land of New Holland, and by a number of islands, which took the name of the Prince of Wales's Islands, and which captain Cook imagines may reach to New Guinea; these islands abound with trees and grass, and were known to be inhabited, from the smoke that was seen ascending in many places.

New South Wales is a much larger country than any hitherto known and not deemed a continent, being larger than all Europe, which is proved by the Endeavour's having coasted more than 2000 miles, even if her tract were reduced to a straight line. Northward of the lat. of 33 deg. the country is hilly, yet not mountainous; but to the south of that lat. it is mostly low and even ground. The hills in general are diversified by lawns and woods, and many of the vallies abound with herbage, though, on the whole, it cannot be deemed a fertile country.

## CHAP. X.

*The Endeavour continues her voyage from South Wales to New Guiney—An account of incidents upon landing there—Proceeds from New Guiney to the island Savau—Its product and inhabitants—Run from Savau to Batavia—Transactions while the Endeavour was refitting at this place.*

ON the 23d of August, 1770, after leaving Booby Island, we had light airs till five o'clock, when it fell calm, and we came to an anchor in eight fathom water, with a soft sandy bottom. On the 24th, soon after the anchor was weighed, we got under sail, steering N. W. and in a few hours one of the boats a-head made the signal for shoal-water. We instantly brought the ship to, with all her sails standing; and a survey being taken of the sea around her, it was found that she had met with another narrow escape, as she was almost encompassed with shoals, and she must have struck before the boat's crew had made the signal, if she had been half the length of a cable on either side. In the afternoon, we made sail with the ebb-tide, and got out of danger before sun-set, and brought to for that night.

On the 26th, it was the captain's intention to steer N. W. but having met with those shoals, altered our course, and soon got into deep water. On the 27th, pursued

pursued our voyage, shortening sail at night, and tacking till day-break of the 28th, when we steered due N. in search of New Guiney. At this time our lat. by observation, was 8 deg. 52 min. S. We here observed many parts of the sea covered with a kind of scum, to which our sailors gave the name of spawn.

Land having been this day discovered from the mast-head, we stood off and on all night, and at day-break sailed towards it with a brisk gale. Between six and seven in the morning we had sight of a small low island, at about a league from the main, in lat. 80 deg. 13 min. S. and in long. 221 deg. 25 min. W. and it had already been distinguished by the names of Bartholomew and Whermoyesen. It appeared a very level island, clothed with trees. The boats were sent out to sound, the water being shallow; but as the ship in sailing two leagues, had found no increase in its depth, signals were made for the boats to return on board. We then stood out to sea till midnight, tacked, and stood in for morning.

On the 30th, when about four leagues distant, we had sight of it, and its appearance was still flat and woody. We now held a northward course, scarcely within sight of land, and as the water was just deep enough to navigate the vessel, many unsuccessful attempts were made to bring her near enough to get on shore: it was therefore determined to land in one of the boats, while the ship kept plying off and on. In consequence of this resolution,

On September the 3d, Captain Cook, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, attended by the boat's crew, and Mr. Banks's servant, set off from the ship in the pinnace, being in all twelve persons, well armed. We rowed directly to the shore, but when come within 200 yards of it, found the water so shallow, that we were obliged to leave the boat in care of the sailors, and wade to land. We had no sooner reached the shore, than we saw several prints of human feet on the sand, below high water mark, from whence it



was evident that the natives had been there. We walked by the side of a wood, and came to a grove of cocoa-nut trees, not far from which was a shed or hut, which had been covered with leaves, and near it lay a number of fresh shells of the fruit. Having now advanced a quarter of a mile from the boat, three Indians rushed out of the wood with a hideous shout, at about the distance of 100 yards, and as they ran towards us, the foremost threw something out of his hand, which flew on one side of him, and burnt exactly like gun-powder, but made no report; and the others threw their lances at us. No time was to be lost; we discharged our pieces, loaded with small shot only, which we imagine they did not feel, for without retreating, they cast a third dart: we therefore loaded with ball, and fired a second time. It is probable some of them were wounded, as they all took to their heels immediately.

We improved this interval, in which the destruction of the natives was no longer necessary to our defence, and with all expedition returned to our boat.— In the way we perceived signals on board, and more Indians were coming down in a body; and before we got into the water, we perceived several of them coming round a point at the distance of about 500 yards. When they saw us, they halted, and seemed to wait till the main body should join them. They continued in this station, without giving us any interruption, while we entered the water, and waded towards the boat. We now took a view of them at our leisure. They made much the same appearance as the New Hollanders, being nearly of the same stature, and having their hair short cropped. They were also, like them, stark naked. During this time they were shouting at a distance, and letting off their fires, which seemed to be discharged by a short piece of stick, probably a hollow cane; this being swung sideways, produced fire and smoke like that occasioned by a musket. The crew on board the ship saw this strange appearance, and thought that the natives  
had

had fire-arms. Those who went out in the boat, had rowed a-breast of them, fired some muskets above their heads, the balls of which being heard by the natives rattling among the trees, they retired very deliberately, and our people in the boat returned to the ship. This place is in lat. 6 deg. 15 min. S.

September the 3d, we made sail to the westward, being resolved to spend no more time upon this coast; but before we got under sail, some of the officers strongly urged the captain to send a party of men on shore, to cut down the cocoa-nut trees, for the sake of the fruit. This Captain Cook, with equal wisdom and humanity, peremptorily refused, as unjust and cruel; sensible that the poor Indians, who could not brook even the landing of a small party on their coast, would have made a vigorous effort to defend their property had it been invaded; consequently many must have fallen a sacrifice on their side, and perhaps some of our own people.—“I should, (says Captain Cook) have regretted the necessity of such a measure, if I had been in want of the necessaries of life; and certainly it would have been highly criminal when nothing was to be obtained but two or three hundred green cocoa-nuts; which would at most procure us mere transient gratification. I might indeed have proceeded farther along the coast to the northward, or westward, in search of a place where the ship might have lain so near the shore, as to cover the people with her guns when they landed; but this would have obviated only part of the mischief, and though it might have secured us, it would probably in the very act have been fatal to the natives. Besides, we had reason to think that before such a place could have been found, we should have been carried so far to the westward as to have been obliged to go to Batavia, which was another reason for making the best of our way to that place, especially as no discoveries could be expected in seas which had been already navigated, and where every coast had been laid down by the Dutch geographers.”

On the 8th, we passed two small islands, on one of which Captain Cook would have landed, but having only ten fathom of water, the ground being also rocky, and the wind blowing fresh, we might have endangered the safety of the ship. We now sailed at a moderate rate till the next morning at three o'clock; after which we had no ground with 120 fathoms. Before noon we had sight of land, which was conjectured to be either the Arrou Islands, or Timor Laoet. We were now in lat. 9 deg. 37 min. S. and in long. 233 deg. 54 min. W. We stood off and on during the night; and on the 12th, we saw a number of fires and smoke in several places, from whence it was conjectured that the place was well peopled. The land and sea breezes being very slight, we continued in sight of the island for two days, when it was observed that the hills reached in many places quite to the sea-coast, and where that was not the case, there were large and noble groves of cocoa-nut trees, which ran about a mile up the country, at which distance, great numbers of houses and plantations were seen; the plantations were surrounded with fences, and extended nearly to the summits of the most lofty hills; yet, neither the natives nor cattle were seen on any of them, which was thought a very extraordinary circumstance.

On the 16th, we had sight of the little island called Rotte; and the same day saw the island Semau, at a distance to the southward of Timor. The island of Rotte is chiefly covered with bushy wood without leaves, but there are a number of fan palm trees on it, growing near the sandy beaches; and the whole consist of alternate hills and vallies. The island of Semau is not so hilly as Timor, but resembles it greatly in other respects. At ten o'clock this night a dull reddish light was seen in the air, many parts of which emitted rays of a brighter colour, which soon vanished, and were succeeded by others of the same kind. This phenomenon, which reached about ten degrees above the horizon, bore a considerable resemblance to the Aurora Borealis, only that the rays of light which it emitted had no tremulous



malous motion : it was surveyed for two hours, during which time its brightness continued undiminished. As the ship was now clear of all the islands which had been laid down in such maps as were on board, we made sail during the night, and were surprised the next morning at the sight of an island to the W. S. W. which we flattered ourselves was a new discovery. Before noon we had sight of houses, groves of cocoa-nut trees, and large flocks of sheep. This was a welcome sight to people whose health was declining for want of refreshment, and it was instantly resolved to attempt the purchase of what we stood so much in need of. The second lieutenant was immediately dispatched in the pinnace, in search of a landing-place ; and he took with him such things as it was thought might be acceptable to the natives.—During Mr. Gore's absence, the people on board saw two men on horseback upon the hills, who frequently stopped to take a view of the vessel. The lieutenant soon returned with an account that he had entered a little cove, near which stood a few houses ; that several men advanced and invited him to land ; and that they conversed together as well as they could by signs.

The lieutenant not being able to find any place in which the ship might come to anchor, he was dispatched again with money and goods to buy such necessaries as were immediately wanted for the sick. Dr. Solander attended the lieutenant, and during their absence, the ship stood off and on the shore. Soon after the boat had put off, two other horsemen were seen from the ship, one of whom had a laced hat on, and was dressed in a coat and waistcoat of the fashion of Europe. These men rode about on shore taking little notice of the boat, but regarding the ship with the utmost attention. As soon as the boat reached the shore, some other persons on horseback, and many on foot, hastened to the spot, and it was observed that some cocoa-nuts were put into the boat, from whence it was concluded, that a traffic had commenced with the natives. A signal being made from the boat that the ship might anchor

in a bay at some distance, she immediately bore away for it. When the lieutenant came on board, he reported, that he could not purchase any cocoa-nuts, as the owner of them was absent, and that what he had brought, were given him, in return for which he had presented the natives with some linen. The method by which he learned that there was a harbour in the neighbourhood, was by the natives drawing a kind of rude map on the sand, on which the harbour, and a town near it, was represented; it was likewise hinted to him, that fruit, fowl, hogs, and sheep, might be there obtained in great abundance. He saw several of the principal inhabitants of the island, who had chains of gold about their necks, and wore fine linen. The word Portuguese being frequently repeated by the Indians, it was conjectured that some natives of Portugal were in the island, and one of the boat's crew being of that kingdom, he spoke to the islanders in his own language, but soon found that they had only learned a few words, of which they did not know the meaning. While the natives were endeavouring to represent the situation of the town near the harbour, one of them, in order to be more particular in directions, informed the English, that they would see something, which he endeavoured to describe by placing his fingers across each other; and the Portuguese sailor took it for granted, that he could mean nothing but a cross. When the boat's crew were on the point of returning to the ship, the gentleman who had been seen on horseback in the dress of Europe came down to the beach; but the lieutenant did not think it proper to hold a conference with him, because he had left his commission on board the ship.

When the ship had entered the bay, in the evening, according to the directions received, an Indian town was seen at a distance; upon which a jack was hoisted on the fore-top mast head; presently afterwards three guns were fired, and Dutch colours were hoisted in the town; the ship, however, held on her way, and came to an anchor at seven in the evening. The colours being seen hoisted on the beach the next morning, the  
captain

captain concluded that the Dutch had a settlement on the island; they therefore dispatched the second lieutenant to acquaint the governor, or other principal resident, who they were, and that the ship had put in for necessary refreshments. The lieutenant having landed, he was received by a kind of guard of something more than twenty Indians, armed with muskets, who, after they had taken down their colours from the beach, proceeded without the least military order; and thus escorted him to the town, where the colours had been hoisted the preceding evening. The lieutenant was now conducted to the Raja, or king of the island, to whom, by means of a Portuguese interpreter, he made known his business. The Raja said, he was ready to supply the ship with the necessary refreshments, but that he could not trade with any other people than the Dutch, with whom he was in alliance, without having first obtained their consent; he added, however, that he would make application to the Dutch agent, who was the only white man among them. To this agent, whose name was Lange, and who proved to be the person that was seen from the ship in the European dress, a letter was dispatched, and in a few hours he came to the town, behaved politely to the lieutenant, and told him he might buy what he thought proper of the inhabitants of the island. This offer being freely made, and readily accepted, the Raja and Mr. Lange intimated their wishes to go on board the ship, and that two of the boat's crew might be left as hostages for their safe return. The lieutenant gratified them in both these requests, and took them on board just before dinner was served. It was thought that they would have sat down without ceremony, but now the Raja intimated his doubts, whether, being a black, they would permit him to sit down with them. The politeness of the officers soon removed his scruples, and the greatest good humour and festivity prevailed among them. As Dr. Solander and another gentleman on board, were tolerable proficient in Dutch, they acted as interpreters between Mr. Lange and the officers, while some of the  
sailors,



sailors, who understood Portuguese, conversed with such of the Raja's attendants as spoke that language. Our dinner consisted chiefly of mutton, which, when the Raja had tasted, he requested of us an English sheep, and the only one we had left was presented him. Our complaisance in this particular, encouraged the king to ask for an English dog, and Mr. Banks politely gave him his greyhound. A spying-glass was also put into his hand, Mr. Johan Christopher Lange having intimated that such a present would be very acceptable. Our visitors now informed us that the island abounded with buffaloes, sheep, hogs, and fowls, plenty of which should be driven down to the shore the next day. This put us all in high spirits, and the liquor circulated rather faster than either the Indians or the Saxon could bear; but they had, however, the resolution to express a desire to depart, before they were quite intoxicated. When they came upon deck, they were received in the same manner as when they came aboard, by the marines under arms; and the raja expressing a desire to see them exercise, his curiosity was gratified. They fired three rounds. The king observed them with great attention, and appeared much surprised at the regularity and expedition of their manœuvres. They were dismissed with many presents, and on their departure, were saluted with nine guns.

Our gentlemen, on their arrival at the town, tasted their palm wine, which was the fresh juice of the trees, unfermented. It had a sweet, but not disagreeable taste, and hopes were entertained that it might contribute to recover our sick of the scurvy.

On the 19th, Captain Cook, attended by several gentlemen, went on shore to return the raja's visit; but their principal intention was to purchase the cattle and fowls, which they had been assured the preceding day should be driven down to the beach. We were greatly chagrined at finding no steps had been taken to fulfil this promise: however, we proceeded to the house of assembly, which, with a few other houses, built by the Dutch East India Company, are distinguished from  
the

the rest, by having two pieces of wood, resembling a pair of cow horns, fixed at each end of the roof; and these we concluded to be what the Portuguese sailors construct into crosses, from the Indian having crossed his fingers when he was describing the town. At the house of assembly, we saw Mr. Lange and the raja, whose name was A Madocho Lomi Djara, surrounded by many of the principal people; captain Cook having informed them that he had loaded his boat with goods, which he wished to exchange for necessary refreshments, permission was given him to land them. We now endeavoured to make an agreement for the hogs, sheep, and buffaloes, which were to be paid for in cash; but this business was no sooner hinted, than Mr. Lange took his leave, having first told the captain that he had received a letter from the governor of Concordia, in Timor, the contents of which should be disclosed at his return. As the morning was now far advanced, and we had no provisions on board, we requested the raja's permission to buy a small hog and some rice, and to order his people to dress the dinner for us. He very obligingly replied, that if we would eat victuals dressed by his subjects, which he could scarcely suppose, he would do himself the honour of entertaining us. A dinner being thus procured, the captain sent off his boat to bring liquors from the ship. It was ready about five o'clock, and after we were seated on mats, which were spread on the floor, it was served in six and thirty baskets. We were then conducted by turns to a hole in the floor, near which stood a man with water in a vessel, made of the leaves of the fan palm, who assisted us in washing our hands. This done, we returned to our places, and expected the king. Having waited some time, we enquired the reason of his absence, and were informed that the person who gave the entertainment never partook of it with his guests, but that the raja was ready to come and taste of what was provided, if we entertained a thought that the victuals were poisoned. We declared that we did not harbour any such suspicion

suspicion, and desired that the custom of the country might not be violated on our account. The pork and rice were excellent, and the broth not to be despised; but the spoons made of leaves, were so small, that few of us had patience to use them. We did not drink our wine at the place where we had dined; and the remains of the dinner we left to the seamen and servants.

When we thought the wine had so far operated as to open the heart, we took an opportunity to enquire after the buffaloes and sheep, of which we had not in all this time heard a syllable, though they were to have been at the beach early in the morning. Mr. Lange, the Saxon Dutchman, now began to communicate to us the contents of the letter, which he pretended to have received from the governor of Concordia, and wherein he said instructions were given, that if the ship should touch at this island, and be in want of provisions, she should be supplied; but he was not to permit her to remain longer than was necessary; nor were any large presents to be made to the natives of low rank. It is probable that the whole of this story was a fiction; and that by precluding our liberality to the natives, the Saxon Dutchman hoped more easily to draw all the presents of any value into his own pocket. In the evening we were informed, that only a few sheep had been brought to the beach, which had been driven away before our people could procure money from the ship to pay for them.

Vexed at being thus disappointed in purchasing the chief articles most wanted, we remonstrated with Mr. Lange, who now found another subterfuge. He said, had we gone down to the beach, we might have bought what we pleased; but the natives were afraid of being imposed on by our seamen with counterfeit money.—We could not but feel some indignation against a man who had concealed this, being true; or alledged it, being false. Captain Cook repaired immediately to the beach, but no cattle were to be seen, nor any near at hand to be bought. The raja, indeed, had given a more plausible reason for our disappointment: he said, the



the buffaloes being far up in the country, there had not been time to bring them down to the beach.

On the 20th, Dr. Solander went ashore with Captain Cook, and while the former went up to the town to speak to Lange, the captain remained on the beach with a view of purchasing provisions. Here he met with an old Indian, who, as he appeared to have some authority, we called him the Prime Minister. The captain presented him with a spying-glass; but only a small buffalo was offered to be sold. The price was five guineas, nearly twice its real value. Three, however, were offered, which the dealer thought a good price; but said, he must acquaint the king with what had been bid before he could strike the bargain. A messenger was immediately dispatched to the raja, and on his return, brought word, that no less than five guineas would be taken for the buffalo. The captain absolutely refused to give the sum demanded, which occasioned the sending away a second messenger; and during his absence, Dr. Solander was seen coming from the town, followed by above a hundred men, some of whom were armed with muskets, and others with lances. Upon enquiring into the meaning of this hostile appearance, the doctor informed us, that the people would not trade with us, because we had refused to give them more than half the value for their commodities; and that we were not to expect permission to trade upon any terms longer than this day.

A native of Timor, whose parents were Portuguese, came down with this party, and delivered to the captain what was pretended to be the order of the raja, and which was in substance the same that Lange had told Dr. Solander; but it was afterwards discovered that this man was a confidant of Lange's in the scheme of extortion. The English gentlemen had at the same time no doubt, but that the supposed order of the raja was a contrivance of these men, and while they were debating how to act in this critical juncture, anxious to bring the affair to speedy issue, the Portuguese began to drive away such of the natives as had brought palm-syrup

syrup and fowls to sell, and others who were now bringing sheep and buffaloes to the market. At this juncture, Captain Cook happened to look at the old man who had been distinguished by the name of prime minister, imagined that he saw in his features a disapprobation of the present proceedings; and, willing to improve the advantage, he grasped the Indian's hand, and gave him an old broad sword. This well-timed present produced all the good effects that could be wished; the prime minister was enraptured at so honourable a mark of distinction, and brandishing his sword over the head of the impertinent Portuguese, he made both him and a man who commanded the party, to sit down behind him on the ground. The whole business was now accomplished; the natives, eager to supply whatever was wanted, brought their cattle in for sale, and the market was soon stocked. Captain Cook purchased of the natives some hundred gallons of palm-syrup, a small quantity of garlick, a large number of eggs, some limes and coconuts, thirty dozen of fowls, three hogs, six sheep, and nine buffaloes. Having obtained these articles, we now prepared for sailing from this place.

The island of Savu is situated in 10 deg. 35 min. S. lat. and 237 deg. 30 min. W. long. The harbour in which the ship lay was called Seba. The island produces tobacco, cotton, betel, tamarinds, limes, oranges, mangoes, Guiney corn, rice, callevances, and melons. A small quantity of cinnamon was seen, and some European herbs, such as garlick, fennel, celery, and marjoram.

The people of this island are below the middle stature; their hair is black and straight. The men are well formed and sprightly, and their features differ much from each other; the women, on the contrary, have all one set of features, are very short, and broad built. The men have silver pincers hanging by strings round their necks, with which they pluck out the hairs of their beards. The dress of the men consists of two pieces of cotton cloth, one of which is bound round the middle, and the lower edge of it being drawn pretty tight between the legs, the upper edge is left loose,

so as to form a kind of pocket, in which they carry knives and other things; the other piece being passed under the former on the back of the wearer, the ends of it are carried over the shoulders, and tucked into the pocket before. The women drew the upper edge of the piece round the waist tight, while the lower edge, dropping to the knees, made a kind of petticoat: the other piece of cloth is fastened across the breast, and under the arms.

As to the food of these people, they eat all the tame animals to be found in the island; but they prefer the hog to all others; the next to this they admire horse-flesh; to which succeeds the buffalo; then poultry: they prefer cats and dogs to goats and sheep. Fish is not eaten but by the poor, nor by them except when their business requires them to be upon the beach; and then each man has a light casting net, which is girt round his body, and with this he takes any small fish that comes in his way.

On the 21st of September, we got under sail, and bent our course westward. At four in the afternoon, in lat. 10 deg. 38 min. S. and lon. 238 deg. 28 min. W. we discovered a small low island. In the evening of the 23d, we got clear of the islands: and on the 28th, we steered all day N. W. with a view of making the land of Java; and on the 30th, Captain Cook took into his possession the log-book and journals, at least all he could find of the officers, petty officers, and seamen, whom he strictly enjoined to secrecy with respect to where they had been. At seven in the evening, we had thunder and lightning, and about eleven, by the light of the flashes, we saw the west end of Java.

On the 2d of October, we were close in with the coast of Java, in fifteen fathom water, along which we stood. In the forenoon a boat was sent ashore, in order to procure some fruit for Tupia, who was at this time extremely ill. Our people returned with four cocoa-nuts and some plantains, for which they had paid a shilling; but some herbage for the cattle the Indians gave our seamen, and assisted them to cut it.



We now made but very little way till night, when the land breeze springing up, we sailed to the E. S. E. and in the following day came to an anchor in the road of Batavia. At this place we found a number of large Dutch vessels, the Harcourt East Indiaman from England, which had lost her passage to China, and two ships belonging to the private trade of our India company. The Endeavour had no sooner anchored, than a ship was observed, with a broad pendant flying, from which a boat was dispatched to demand the name of the vessel, with that of the commander, &c. To these enquiries, Captain Cook gave such answers as he thought proper, and the officer who commanded the boat departed.

The captain now dispatched an officer to the governor of the town, to apologize for the Endeavour's not saluting; for he had but three guns proper for the purpose except swivels, and he was apprehensive that they would not be heard. The ship was so leaky, that she made about nine inches water in an hour; part of the false keel was gone; one of her pumps was totally useless, and the rest so much decayed, that they could not last long. The officers concurring in opinion, that the ship could not safely put to sea again in this condition, the captain resolved to solicit permission to heave her down; but as he learned that this must be done in writing, he drew up a petition, and had it translated into Dutch.

On the 10th, the captain and the rest of the gentlemen went on shore, and applied to the English resident at Batavia; this gentleman, whose name was Leith, received his countrymen in the politest manner, and entertained them at dinner with great hospitality. Mr. Leith informed us, that a public hotel was kept in town, by order of the Dutch governor, at which place merchants and other strangers were obliged to lodge, and that the landlord of the hotel was bound to find them warehouses for their goods, on condition of receiving ten shillings on every hundred pounds of their value; but as the Endeavour was a king's ship, her  
officers

officers and the other gentlemen might reside where they thought proper.

In the afternoon, Captain Cook attended the governor-general, who received him politely, and told him to wait on the council the next morning, when his petition should be laid before him, and every thing he solicited should be granted.

On the 11th, Captain Cook waited on the gentlemen of the council, who informed him that all his requests should be complied with. In the interim, the other gentlemen made a contract with the master of the hotel, to furnish them and their friends with as much tea, coffee, punch, and tobacco, as they might have occasion for, and to keep them a separate table, for nine shillings a day English money.

Our Indian friend Tupia, had hitherto continued on board, on account of his disorder, which was of the bilious kind, yet he persisted in refusing every medicine that was offered him. Mr. Banks sent for him on shore, in hopes that he might recover his health.—While in the ship, he was exceedingly listless and low spirited, but he no sooner entered the town, than he seemed as if reanimated. The houses, the carriages, streets, people, and a multiplicity of other objects, wholly new to him, produced an effect like the supposed power of fascination.

About this time we had procured an order to the superintendant of the island of Ourust, where the ship was to be repaired, to receive her there, and by one of the ships that sailed for Holland, an account was sent to Mr. Stephens, secretary to the Admiralty, of our arrival at this place. Here the captain found an unexpected difficulty in procuring money for the expences that would be incurred by refitting the Endeavour: private persons had neither the ability nor inclination to advance the sum required; he therefore sent a written application to the governor himself, who ordered the Shebander to supply the captain with what money he might want out of the company's treasury.

On the 18th, we ran down to Ourust, and laid the ship along-side of the wharf on Cooper's island, in order to take out her stores. In a little more than nine days, we began to experience the fatal effects of the climate and situation. Tupia sunk on a sudden, and grew every day worse and worse. Tayeto his boy, was seized with an inflammation on his lungs. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander were attacked by fevers, and the two servants of the former became very ill; in short, almost every person on board and ashore fell sick in a few days, owing, as we imagined, to the low swampy situation of the place.

On the 26th, we erected a tent for the sick. Tupia, of whose life we began to despair, desired to be removed to the ship, in hopes of breathing a freer air; however, this could not be done, as she was unrigged, and preparing to be laid down at the careening place; but on the 28th, Mr. Banks conveyed him to Cooper's island, and, as he seemed pleased with the spot near which the ship lay, a tent was pitched for him.

On the 5th of November, after many unavoidable delays, the ship was laid down, and the same day Mr. Monkhouse, our surgeon, fell a sacrifice to this fatal country. Dr. Solander was just able to attend his funeral, but Mr. Banks in his turn was confined to his bed. The power of disease, from the pestiferous air of the country, daily gaining strength, several Malay servants were hired to attend the sick, but they had so little sense either of duty or humanity, that the patient was obliged frequently to get out of bed to seek them.

On the 9th, our Indian boy Tayeto, paid the debt of nature, and Tupia was so affected at the loss, that it was doubted whether he would survive it till the next day.

Dr. Solander and Mr. Banks were now so worn down by their disorders, that the physicians declared they had no chance for recovery, but by removing into the country. In consequence of this advice, a house



house was hired for them; at the distance of about two miles from the town, which belonged to the master of the hotel, who engaged to supply them with provisions, and the use of slaves. As they had already experienced the unfeeling inattention of these fellows to the sick, they bought each of them a Malay woman, who, from the tenderness of their sex, made them good nurses. While these gentlemen were taking measures for the recovery of their health, they received an account of the death of Tupia, who sunk at once after the loss of his boy, Tayeto, whom he loved with the tenderness of a parent: they were both buried in the island of Edam.

On the 14th, the bottom of the ship was thoroughly repaired, and much to Captain Cook's satisfaction, who bestowed great encomiums on the officers and workmen at the marine-yard; in his opinion, there is not one in the world, where a ship can be laid down with more convenient speed and safety, nor repaired with more diligence and skill.

At this time Captain Cook was taken ill. Mr. Sporing also, and a sailor who attended Mr. Banks, were seized with the deadly intermittents, and only ten of the ship's company, were capable of doing duty. Yet notwithstanding these perplexing obstacles, though harassed by a contagious disease, and alarmed by frequent deaths, we proceeded in rigging the ship, and getting water and necessary stores on board: the stores were easily obtained and shipped, but the water we were obliged to procure from Batavia, at the rate of six shillings and eight-pence a leager, or one hundred and fifty gallons.

On the 25th, in the night, there fell such a shower of rain, as even all of us had cause to remember. The water poured through every part of Mr. Banks's house, and the lower apartments admitted a stream sufficient to turn a mill. As this gentleman was now greatly restored in health, he went to Batavia the following day, and was surprised to see that the inhabitants had hung their bedding to dry. About the 26th of this month

month the monsoons set in; it blows in the day-time from the N. or N. W. and from the S. W. during the night; previous to this, there had been violent showers of rain for several nights.

The ship being repaired, the sick people received on board her, and the greater part of her water and stores taken in, she sailed from Ourust on the 8th of December, and anchored in the road of Batavia: twelve days were employed in receiving the remainder of her provisions, water, and other necessaries, though the business would have been done in much less time, but that some of the crew died, and the majority of the survivors were so ill, as to be unable to give their assistance.

On the 24th, Captain Cook took leave of the governor, and some other gentlemen, who had distinguished themselves by the civilities they shewed him; but at this juncture an accident occurred, that might have produced consequences by no means desirable. A Batavian deserted from a vessel, and entered himself on board the Endeavour. The captain of the Dutch ship having made application to the governor claiming the delinquent as a subject of the States-General, the governor issued his order for the restoration of the man; when this order was given to him, he said, that the man should be given up if he appeared to be a Dutchman. As the captain was at this time on shore, he gave the Dutch officer a note to the lieutenant, to deliver the deserter on the condition above-mentioned.

On the following day, the Dutchman waited on Captain Cook, informing him that the lieutenant had absolutely refused to give up the seaman, saying he was an Irishman, and of course a subject of his Brittannic Majesty; Captain Cook applauded the conduct of his officer, and added, that it could not be expected that he should deliver up an English subject. The Dutch officer then said, he was authorised, by the governor, to demand the fugitive as a Danish subject, adding, that his name was entered in the ship's

ship's books as having been born at Elsinour. The Dutchman now took his leave, and he had not been long gone before the captain received a letter from the lieutenant on board, containing full proof that he was an English subject. This letter, the captain carried to the Shebander, desiring him to lay it before the governor, and to inform him, that the man should not be delivered upon any terms whatever. This spirited conduct on the part of Captain Cook, had the desired effect; and thus the matter ended.

This day the captain, attended by Mr. Banks and the other gentlemen who had hitherto lived in the town, repaired on board the ship, which got under sail the next morning. The Endeavour was saluted by the fort, and by the Elgin East Indiaman, which then lay in the road, but soon after these compliments were returned, the sea-breeze setting in, they were obliged to come to anchor. Since the arrival of the ship in Batavia road, every person belonging to her had been ill, except the sail-maker, who was more than 70 years old, yet this man got drunk every day while we remained there. We buried seven of our people at Batavia, viz. Tupia, and his boy, three of the sailors, the servant of Mr. Green, and the surgeon; and at the time of the vessel's sailing, forty of the crew were sick, and the rest so enfeebled by their late illness, as to be scarcely able to do their duty.

## CHAP. XII.

*An account of Batavia, and its various productions—  
The Endeavour sails from Batavia to the Cape of  
Good Hope—The Cape and St. Helena described—  
Remarks on the Hottentots—The Endeavour returns  
to England, and anchors in the Downs, on Wednes-  
day, June 12, 1771*

**B**ATAVIA, situated in 6 deg. 10 min. S. lat. and 106 deg. 50 min. E. long. from the meridian of Greenwich, is built on the bank of a large bay, about twenty miles from the streight of Sunda, on the north



side of the island of Java, on a low boggy ground. There are several small rivers, which rise 40 miles up the country. There are wide canals of nearly stagnated water in almost every street, and as the banks of the canals are planted with trees, they appear at first very agreeable; but these trees, and canals combine to render the air pestilential. Some of the rivers are navigable more than thirty miles up the country; and the Dutch appear to have chosen this spot to build the town on, for the sake of water carriage, in which convenience Batavia exceeds every place in the world, except the towns of Holland.

The new church in Batavia is a fine piece of building, and the dome of it may be seen far off at sea. This church is illuminated by chandeliers of the most superb workmanship, and has a fine organ: most of the other public buildings are ancient, constructed in an ill taste, and give a very complete idea of Dutch clumsiness.

Batavia is encompassed by a river of shallow water, the stream of which is very rapid; within this river, which is of different widths in various places, is an old stone wall, much decayed in many places, and within the wall is a canal, wider in some places than in others, so that there is no entering the gates of the town but by crossing two draw-bridges; there are but few on the ramparts, and no persons are permitted to walk there. There is a kind of citadel, or castle, in the N. E. corner of the town, the walls of which are both broader and higher than they are in other parts; it is furnished with a number of large guns, which command the landing-place.

Apartments are provided in this castle for the governor-general and all the council; and in case of a siege, they have orders to retire thither. In the castle are likewise a number of store-houses, in which the effects belonging to the company are deposited. The company have in their possession large quantities of gunpowder, which is kept in different places, that the lightning may not destroy the whole stock at once;

once ; a great number of cannon are likewise laid up within the castle. There are a great many forts built in different parts of the country, several miles distant from Batavia, most probably erected to keep the natives in subjection ; and besides these there are a number of fortified houses, each mounting eight guns, which are so stationed as to command the canals, and the roads on the borders. There are houses of this kind in many parts of the island of Java, and the other islands in its neighbourhood, of which the Dutch have obtained possession. The Chinese having rebelled against them in the year 1704, all their principal houses were demolished by the cannon of one of these fortified houses, which is in the town of Batavia, where, likewise, there are a few more of them.

The fruits of this country are near forty in number, and of some of these there are several kinds. Pine-apples grow in such abundance, that they may be purchased for the value of an English farthing. The sweet oranges are good of their kind, but dear at particular times. The shaddocks of the West Indies, called here pamplemooses, have an agreeable flavour. Lemons are very scarce, but limes are altogether plentiful, and sold at little more than two-pence a score. There are many kinds of oranges and lemons, but none of them excellent. Of mangoes there are plenty. Of bananas, there are an amazing variety of sorts, some of which being boiled, are eaten as bread, while others are fried in a batter, and are a nourishing food : but of the numerous sorts of fruit, three only are fit to be eaten : one indeed is remarkable, because it is filled with seeds, which are not common to the rest. Grapes are sold from one shilling to eight-pence a pound, though they are far from being good. Tamarinds are cheap and plentiful. The cocoa-nut is plentiful in this country, and there are several kinds of this fruit, the best of which is very red between the shell and the skin.

In this country sweet scented flowers are plentiful, many species of which being entirely unknown, are worth remarking. The combang tonquin, and combang carenassi, are particularly fragrant flowers, which bear scarcely any resemblance to any of those flowers with which we are acquainted. They are very small, and seem to be of the dog's-bane species. The camunga, which is more like a bunch of leaves than a flower, is of a singular smell, but very grateful. The bon tanjong, is of a pale yellow cast, and has a very agreeable smell; it is about an inch and an half in circumference, and consists of pointed leaves, which gives it the appearance of a star. There is also an extraordinary kind of flower called fundal malam, which signifies the intriguer of the night. This flower has no smell in the day-time, but as night comes on, it has a very fragrant scent, and is very much like the English tuberoses. These flowers being made into nosegays of different shapes, or strung upon thread, are carried through the street for sale on an evening.

A plant called the pandang is produced here, the leaves of which being shred small, and mixed with other flowers, the natives of both sexes fill their cloaths and hair with this mixture, which they likewise sprinkle on their beds, and sleep under this heap of sweets, a thin piece of chintz being their only covering.

Formerly the only spice that grew on the island of Java was pepper. A considerable quantity is brought from hence by the Dutch, but very little of it is made use of in the country. The inhabitants prefer Cayan pepper, and are fond of cloves and nutmeg, but these first are too dear to be commonly used. Near the island of Amboyna are some little isles, on which the cloves grow, and the Dutch were not easy till they all became their property. Scarcely any other nutmegs are found but on the island of Banda, which however furnishes enough for all the nations that have a demand for that commodity. There are but few  
nutmeg-



nutmeg-trees on the coast of New Guinea. The island of Java, of which we have already spoken, produces horses, buffaloes, sheep, goats, and hogs. The sort of horses said to have been met with here when the country was first discovered, appeared to be nimble animals, though small, being generally seldom above thirteen hands high. The horned cattle of this country are different from those of Europe. They are quite lean, but of a very fine grain. The Chinese and the natives of Java eat the buffalo flesh, which the Dutch constantly refuse, being impressed with a strange idea that it is feverish. The sheep are hairy like goats, and have long ears: they are mostly found to be tough and ill-tasted. There happening to be a few from the Cape of Good Hope at Batavia, some of them were purchased at the rate of one shilling a pound.

In this country, palm-wine and arrack are very plentiful. Of the former, there are three sorts; the first of which is drank in a few hours after it is drawn from the tree, and is moderately sweet; the second and third sorts are made by fermentation, and by putting several sorts of herbs and roots into the liquor.

In Java the religion of Mahomet is professed, for which reason the natives do not make use of wine publicly, but in private they will not refuse it. They also chew opium, whose intoxicating qualities prove its recommendation to the natives of India.

Some of the Indians are very rich, keep a great number of slaves, and live, in all respects, according to the custom of their countries, while others are employed to carry goods by water; and others again subsist by fishing. The oranslams, or believers of the faith, feed principally on boiled rice, mixed with a small quantity of dried shrimps and other fish, which are imported from China, and a little of the flesh of buffaloes and chickens; they are fond of fruit, of which they eat large quantities, and with the flour of the rice they make several sorts of pastry.

When

When a marriage is to be solemnized among them, all the gold and silver ornaments that can be procured, are borrowed to deck out the young couple, who, on these occasions, never fail to make the most splendid appearance; sumptuous entertainments are given by those who can afford them, which continue twelve or fourteen days, and frequently more, during all which time the women take care that the bridegroom shall not visit his wife privately, though the wedding takes place previous to the festival.

On the 27th of December early in the morning, we weighed, left the harbour of Batavia, and stood out to sea. On the 29th, after much delay by contrary winds, we weathered Pulo Paré, and stood for the main. On the same day, we passed a small island between Batavia and Bantam, called Man-eater's island. On Sunday the 30th, we weathered Wapping and Pulo Babi islands, and the next day, being the 31st, we stood over to the Sumatra shore.

On the 1st of January, we steered for the Java shore, and continued our course, as the wind permitted us, till three o'clock in the afternoon of the 5th, when we cast anchor on the south-east side of Prince's island, in eighteen fathom water, in order to recruit our stores, and procure refreshments for the sick, many of whom were much worse than they were at our departure from Batavia. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, accompanied by the captain and other gentlemen, went on shore. We met upon the beach some Indians, by whom we were conducted to their king.—Having exchanged a few compliments with this person, we entered upon business; but in settling the price of turtle, could not agree. Upon this, we took leave, the Indians dispersed, and we proceeded along shore in search of a watering-place. We happily succeeded in finding a very convenient one, and had reason to believe, with care in filling, it would prove agreeable to our wishes.

On our return, some Indians, who remained with a canoe upon the beach, sold us three turtles, but,  
we

we were obliged to promise, that we would not tell the king. On the 6th, we renewed with better success, our traffic for turtle. About noon the Indians lowered their demands slowly, insomuch, that before the evening they accepted our stipulated price, and we had turtle in plenty.

Mr. Banks, in the evening, paid a visit to the king, by whom he was received very graciously at his palace in the middle of a rice field, notwithstanding his majesty was busily employed in dressing his own supper. The day following the Indians resorted to the trading-place with fowls, fish, monkies, small deer, and some vegetables; but no turtle appeared till the next day, after which some were brought to market every day while we staid there, but the whole quantity together was not equal to that we bought the day after our arrival.

On the 11th, Mr. Banks having received intelligence from a servant he had hired at Batavia, that the Indians of this island had a town situated near the shore, to the westward, he determined to go in search of the same. With this view he set out in the morning, accompanied by the second lieutenant; and apprehending his visit might not be agreeable to the natives, he told such of them as he met, that he was in search of plants. Having come to a place where there were three or four houses, they met with an old man, of whom they ventured to make a few enquiries concerning the town. He would have persuaded them, that it was at a great distance; but perceiving that they proceeded forward, he joined company, and went on with them. The old man attempted several times to lead them out of the way, though without success; but when at length they came within sight of the houses, he entered cordially into their party, and conducted them into the town, the name of which is Samadang. It consists of about 400 houses, and is divided by a brackish river into two parts, one called the old, and the other the new town. When they had entered the former, they were



were accosted by several Indians whom they had seen at the trading-place, and one of them undertook to carry them over to the new town, at 2d. per head. The bargain being made, they embarked in two small canoes, placed along-side each other, and lashed together, to prevent their over-setting. They landed safely, though not without some difficulty; and when they came to the new town, the people shewed them every mark of cordial friendship, shewing them the houses of their king and principal people. Few of the houses were open at this time, the inhabitants having taken up their residence in the rice-grounds, to defend their crops against the birds and monkeys, who without this necessary caution would destroy them.

When their curiosity was satisfied, they hired a large sailing-boat for two rupees, value 4s. which conveyed them to the bark time enough to dine upon one of the small deer, weighing only 40lb. which proved to be exceeding good and savoury food. In the evening we again went on shore, to see how our people went on, who were employed in wooding and watering, when we were told, that an axe had been stolen. Application was immediately made to the king, who, after some altercation, promised that the axe should be restored in the morning; and it was accordingly brought us by a man, who pretended, that the thief, afraid of a discovery, had left it at his house in the night.

On the 13th, having completed our wood and water, Mr. Banks took leave of his majesty, to whom he had made several trifling presents, and at parting, gave him two quires of paper, which he graciously accepted. During their conversation, the king enquired why the English did not touch at the island as they had used to do. Mr. Banks replied, that the reason was, as he supposed, because they found a deficiency of turtle, of which there not being enough to supply one ship, many could not be expected; and to supply this defect, Mr. Banks advised his majesty  
to

to breed cattle, buffaloes, and sheep; but he did not seem disposed to adopt this prudent measure.

On the 14th, we had got on board a good stock of fresh provisions, consisting of turtle, fowl, fish, two species of deer, one about the size of a sheep, the other not bigger than a rabbit; also cocoa-nuts, plantains, limes, and other vegetables. The deer, however, served only for present use, for we could seldom keep one of them alive more than twenty-four hours.

On the 15th, we weighed, with a light breeze at N. E. and stood out to sea. We took our departure from Java Head, which is in lat. 6 deg. 49 min. S. and in long. 253 deg. 12 min. W.

In the month of February, we held on our course and made the best of our way for the Cape of Good Hope; but now the fatal seeds of disease, our people had imbibed at Batavia, began to appear, with the most alarming symptoms, in dysenteries and slow fevers. Our situation in a short time was truly deplorable, and the ship was little better than an hospital, in which those who did duty were too few to attend those who were confined to their hammocks. Many of these were in the last stage of the destructive disorder; and almost every night we committed a body to the sea. Mr. Banks was among the number of the sick, and for some time we despaired of his life. In the course of six weeks, we buried Mr. Sporing, a gentleman of Mr. Banks's retinue; Mr. Parker, his natural history painter: Mr Green, the astronomer; the boatswain; the carpenter and his mate; Mr. Monkhouse, the midshipman; our jolly sail-maker and his assistant; the cook; the corporal of the marines; two of the carpenter's crew; a midshipman, and nine sailors: in all twenty-three persons, besides seven at Batavia.

On the 15th of March, we brought the ship to an anchor off the Cape of Good Hope. Captain Cook repaired immediately to the governor, who cheerfully promised him every refreshment the country afforded;

on which a house was hired for the sick, and it was agreed they should be lodged and boarded for 2s. each man per day.

At the time the Endeavour lay at the Cape of Good Hope, the Houghton Indiaman sailed for England. She had buried near forty of her crew, and when she left the Cape, had many of her hands in a helpless condition, occasioned by the scurvy. Other ships likewise experienced a proportionable loss by sickness; so that our sufferings were comparatively light, considering that we had been near three times as long.

We continued at the Cape till the 13th of April, in order to recover the sick, procure stores, and to do some necessary work upon the ship and rigging. When this was finished, we got all the sick on board, several of whom were still in a dangerous state; and on the 14th, having taken leave of the governor, we unmoored and got ready to sail.

The history of Caffraria is well known in Europe, and a description of the Cape of Good Hope has been given by most of our circum-navigators: yet, we think an account of this country will be acceptable to our numerous readers; and they will meet with some particulars which fell under our observation, that have either been wholly omitted, or misrepresented in other narratives.

The Cape of Good Hope, which is in the most southern part of Africa, was first discovered A. D. 1493, by Bartholomew Diaz, admiral of a Portuguese fleet, who, on account of the boisterous weather he met with when near it, distinguished it by the name of Cabodos totos Tormentos, or the Cape of all Plagues; since which, no place in the universe had been more spoken of. The reason why it has so much attracted the attention of mariners of all nations, is, their being under the necessity of frequently calling there for water and other refreshments, and also of doubling it in their voyage to the East-Indies. But John, king of Portugal, not liking the name which his admiral had



had bestowed upon it, changed it to that of Cabode Bona Esperanca, the "Cape of Good Hope," which appellation it has ever since retained.

Neither Diaz, nor his successor Vasco de Gama, though they saw the Cape, thought proper to land: but in 1498, the Portuguese admiral, Rio del Infanta, was the first who ventured on shore; and from his report, Emanuel, king of Portugal, determined to establish a colony; but the Portuguese having taken it into their heads that the inhabitants of the Cape were cannibals, were too much afraid of being devoured, to obey their sovereign in making the settlement he intended: however, some time after, another body of those timid adventurers made good their landing, under the conduct of Francis d'Almeyda, a viceroy of Brasil, when the Portuguese were shamefully defeated by the scarce armed, and unwarlike natives. The viceroy and fifty of his men being killed in the engagement, the remainder retired with precipitation to their ships. The Portuguese determined to be revenged; but not having magnanimity enough to shew a becoming resentment, they contrived a most inhuman and cowardly expedient.

About two years after, touching at the Cape, they landed with all the appearance of amity, accompanied with strong professions of friendship, and, under this mask, brought with them a large cannon loaded with grape-shot. The unsuspecting natives, overjoyed by the gift of so great a treasure, began to drag it away by the means of two large ropes, which had been previously fastened to the muzzle. Great numbers laid hold of the ropes, and many others went before by way of triumph, when the treacherous Portuguese firing off the cannon, a prodigious slaughter ensued, as most of the people stood within the range of the shot. Many were killed, several wounded; and the few who escaped, abandoned with the utmost precipitation the fatal present.

About the year 1600, the Dutch began to touch at the Cape, in their way to and from the East-

Indies; and becoming annually more sensible of the importance of the place, they effected a settlement in 1650, which since that time had risen to great power and opulence, and been of essential service to that nation. M. Van Ricbeck, a surgeon, in his return from India, observing the conveniency of the place for a settlement, and laying before the Dutch East-India Company a plan of its advantages, the scheme was approved, and the projector appointed governor. This adventurer sailing with four ships to the Cape, entered into a negociation with the people, who, in consideration of fifty thousand guilders, or four thousand three hundred and seventy-five pounds sterling, agreed to yield up to the Dutch a considerable tract of country round the Cape. Van Ricbeck, in order to secure his new purchase, immediately erected a strong square fort, laid out a large garden, and planted it with a great variety of the productions from Europe, that he might render the place as commodious and agreeable as possible.

Having thus successfully founded a settlement, the Dutch company proposed, in order the more effectually to establish it, that every man who would settle three years at the Cape, should have an inheritance of sixty acres of land, provided that during that space he would so improve his estate, as to render it sufficient to maintain himself, and contribute somewhat towards the maintenance of the garrison; and at the expiration of the time, he might either keep possession of it, or sell it, and return home. Induced by these proposals, many went to seek their fortunes at the Cape, and were furnished on credit with cattle, grain, plants, utensils, &c. The planters, however, at length grew weary of their habitations for want of conjugal society: therefore, the governor of the company, to prevent their leaving the place, provided them with wives from the orphan-houses, and other charitable foundations. In process of time they greatly increased, and spread themselves farther up the country, and along the coast, till they occupied all the  
lands

lands from Sandanna Bay, round the southern point of Africa, to Nossel Bay, on the E. and afterwards purchased Terra de Natal, in order to extend their limits still farther.

On the first settlement of the Dutch at the Cape, all the Hottentot tribes did not acquiesce in the sale of the country to foreigners; for the Gunyemains dissented from the agreement of the others, and, in 1659, disputed the possession of the purchased territories with the Dutch. They always made their attacks in boisterous weather, as thinking the fire-arms then of less use and efficacy; and upon these occasions, they would murder indiscriminately all the Europeans they could meet, burn down their houses, and drive away their cattle. But the Hottentots themselves at length growing tired of the war, one hundred of them, belonging to one nation, came unarmed to the Dutch fort, with a present of thirteen head of fine cattle, in order to sue for peace. This, it may be imagined, was readily granted by the Dutch, who were heartily sick of a contest in which themselves were such great losers, without reaping any advantages from it.

The land over the Cape, which constitutes the peninsula formed by Table Bay on the N. and False Bay on the S. consists of high mountains, altogether naked and desolate: the land behind these to the E. which may be considered as the isthmus, is a plain of vast extent, consisting almost wholly of a light kind of sea sand, which produces nothing but heath, and is utterly incapable of cultivation.

Cape Town is the only one the Dutch have built here, and it consists of about 1000 houses, neatly built of brick, whited in general on the outside. They are covered only with thatch, for the violence of the S. E. winds would render any other roof inconvenient and dangerous. The streets are broad and commodious, crossing each other at right angles. The houses in general have pleasant gardens behind, and neat courtyards before them.

The



The town extends from the sea-shore to the company's garden, spreading along Table Bay. The fort is in a valley at a small distance, its form pentagonal; it commands the landing-place, and is garrisoned by 200 soldiers. The governor's store-houses are within it; other officers besides himself have apartments here, as well as 600 servants. The hospital for sick seamen is of essential use to the Dutch fleets in going to and returning from India.

What is most to be admired at the Cape, is the company's gardens, where they have introduced almost all the fruits and flowers that are found in the other three quarters of the globe; most of which are improved, and flourish more than they did in their respective climates; and the garden is watered with springs that fall down from Table Mountain, just above them. — Apples and pears are planted here, with grapes of Asia, as well as those of Europe. Here are also lemons, oranges, citrons, figs, Japan apples, and a great variety of other fruits.

Notwithstanding the natural sterility of the climate, industry has supplied this place with all the necessities, and even luxuries of life, in the greatest profusion. The bee and mutton are excellent, though the oxen and sheep are natives of the country. Good butter is made from the milk of cows, but cheese is inferior to ours. Here are hogs, and a great variety of poultry; also goats, but these last are never eaten. Hares are to be found exactly like those in Europe; likewise many kinds of antelopes; quails of two sorts, and buzzards, all well flavoured.

The fields produce European wheat and barley; the gardens European vegetables; fruit of all kinds, besides plantains, guavas, jambu, and other Indian fruits. The vineyards also produce wines of various sorts, but not equal to those of Europe, except the Constantia, which is made genuine only at one vineyard, about ten miles distant from the town. — There is another vineyard near it, where wine is made,

made, and called by the same name, but it is greatly inferior.

There are great numbers of domestic animals in the various colonies and settlements at the Cape, and the woods and mountains abound with wild beasts.—The horses, which were brought originally from Persia, are of a bay or chesnut colour, but rather small. Among the wild beasts, the elephant claims the first place. The rhinoceros is of a dark ash colour, and has a snout like a hog. At the Cape, wolves are of two kinds; the one resembles a sheep-dog, and is spotted like a tyger; the other is like an European wolf.

Lions, tygers, leopards, &c. also abound here, and are so troublesome, that the person who kills one of either sort, is rewarded with twenty-five florins, or fifty shillings. The flesh of the lion is esteemed equal to venison, and the fat much valued. Here are much larger buffaloes than in Europe.

We saw here elks five feet high, with horns a foot long. Another singular animal is that called the stink-box, from its offensive smell both living and dead. Wild cats are of several sorts. The first, the Dutch call the civet cat, not that it is really the animal of that name, but because of the fine scent of the skin. The next the tyger cat, from its being spotted like a tyger. The third the mountain cat, which resembles those of Europe. The fourth is the blue cat, having a fine tinge, with a beautiful red list down its back.

Many jackalls, ermines, baboons, monkeys, &c. are found about the Cape, and frequently do great mischief in the gardens. The porcupine is very common, and its flesh esteemed delicious. There are two sorts of wild asses, one of which is a beautiful creature, called the zebra, and is liker to an horse than an ass; its legs are fine, has a twisted tail, round fleshy haunches, and a smooth skin. The females are white and black, and the males white and brown.—The colours are streaked in an admirable manner, so  
as

as to appear to a distant beholder, as if covered with ribbons.

A great variety of birds and fowls are found at the Cape, both wild and tame. Here are three sorts of eagles; namely, 1. The bone-breaker, which feeds on tortoises, to obtain the flesh of which, it uses this singular method: having carried the tortoise aloft in the air, it drops it upon some hard rock, by which means the shell is broken, and the eagle can come easily at its prey. 2. The dung-eagle, which tears out the entrails of animals to subsist on, and though not bigger than a goose, is strong and voracious. 3. The duck-eagle, so called because it feeds principally upon ducks.

But of all the numerous birds that are to be found here, the flamingo is one of the most singular. It has a long neck, and is larger than a swan: the legs are remarkably long, and of an orange tawney, and the feet are like those of a goose: the bill contains blue teeth, with black points; the head and neck are entirely white; the upper part of the wings are of a bright flame colour, and the lower black.

Now we come to speak of agriculture, for the Hot-tentots in general detest the very idea of cultivation, and would sooner starve than till the ground, so greatly are they addicted to sloth and indolence. The working of the plough is here so laborious from the stiffness of the soil, that it frequently requires twenty oxen to one plough. The sowing season is in July, and the harvest about Christmas. The corn is not threshed with a flail, but trod out by horses and oxen, on an artificial floor made of cow-dung, straw, and water, which, when mixed together, cements, and soon becomes perfectly hard. It is laid in an oval form. The cattle are confined by halters, which run from one to the other, and the driver stands in the middle, where he exercises a long stick to keep them continually to a quick pace. By this method, half a dozen horses will do more in one day than a dozen men can in a week.

The



The women in general are very handsome: they have fine clear skins, and a bloom of colour that indicates a purity of constitution, and high health. They make the best wives in the world; both as mistresses of a family and mothers, and there is scarcely a house that does not swarm with children.

There are sixteen Hottentot nations, which inhabit this southern promontory. The stature of the Hottentot men is from five to six feet high; their bodies are proportionable, and well made; they are seldom either too fat or lean, and scarce ever any crooked or deformed persons amongst them, any farther than they disfigure their children themselves, by flattening and breaking the gristles of their noses, looking on a flat nose as a beauty. Their heads, as well as their eyes, are rather of the largest: their lips are naturally thick; their hair black and short like the negroes, and they have exceeding white teeth.

The women are much less than the men; and what is most remarkable in them, is a callous flap or skin that falls over the pudenda, and in a manner conceals it. The report of which usually excites the curiosity of the European sailors to visit the Hottentot villages near the Cape, where a great many of those ladies, on seeing a stranger, will offer to satisfy their curiosity for a halfpenny, before a crowd of people.

When a Hottentot brings a son into the world, there is great rejoicing; but the first thing they do with the child, is to daub it all over with cow-dung; then they lay it before the fire, or the sun, till the dung is dried: after which they rub it off, and wash the child with the juice of certain herbs, laying it in the sun, or before the fire again, till the liquor is dried in; after which they anoint the child from head to foot with butter, or sheep's fat melted, which is dried in as the juice was; and this custom of anointing their bodies with fat, they retain afterwards as long as they live. After the child has been thus smeared and greased, the mother gives it what name she thinks proper, which is usually the name of some wild beast, or domestic animal. When the wo-

man is well again, and able to leave her hut, she rubs herself with cow-dung: and this filthy daubing is by these delicate people termed a purification. Being thus perfumed, and elegantly decorated with sheep's guts, she is permitted to go abroad, or to see company at home.

If the woman has twins, and they are girls, the man proposes it to the kraal, that he may expose one of them either upon pretence of poverty, or that his wife has not milk for them both; and in this they indulge one another; they do the same when they have a boy and a girl, but always preserve the boys, though they happen to have two at a birth. The exposed child is carried to a distance from the kraal; and if they can find a cave or hole in the earth, that some wild beast has made, they put the child alive into it; and then having stopped up the mouth of the den with stones or earth, leave it there to starve.

They do not deal thus, however, as has been observed, by their male children; on the birth of a boy, they kill a bullock, and if they have twins, two bullocks; and make an entertainment for all the neighbourhood, who congratulate the parents on their good fortune; and, as with us, the greatest rejoicings are on the birth of the first son.

At the age of eighteen, the male Hottentots being deemed men, are admitted into the male society: the men of the village squat down, and form a circle, as is usual upon public occasions; the youth squats down without the circle, at some distance. The oldest man of the kraal then rises from the circle, and, having obtained the general consent for the admission of a new member, he goes to the youth, acquaints him with the determination of the men of the kraal, and concludes his harangue with some verses, which admonish him to behave like a man for the future.

The youth being then daubed with foot and fat, and sprinkled with urine, is congratulated by the company in general in a kind of chorus, which contains the following wishes: that good fortune may attend him, that he may live long, and thrive daily;

that

that he may soon have a beard, and many children, till it is universally allowed he is a useful man to the nation. A feast concludes the ceremony, but the youth himself is not permitted to participate of any part thereof till all the rest are served.

Having been thus admitted into the male society, it is expected that he should behave ill to women in general, and to his mother in particular, in order to evince his contempt of every thing feminine. Indeed it is usual for a youth, as soon as admitted, to go to his mother's hut, and cudgel her heartily, for which he is highly applauded by the whole kraal; and even the suffering parent herself admires him for his spirit, and protests that the blows do not give her so much pain, as the thoughts of having brought such a mettlesome son into the world affords her pleasure. The more ill treatment he gives his mother, the more esteem he obtains; and every time he strikes her she is in the highest raptures, and thanks Providence for having blessed her with such a spirited child.

The Hottentots are exceeding superstitious, and fond of divination. In order to know the fate of a sick person, they slay a sheep alive; after having its skin entirely taken off, if the poor animal is able to get up and run away, it is deemed a propitious omen; but, on the contrary, if the excruciating pain kills it, they imagine that the patient will certainly die, and accordingly give him up entirely to nature, without taking any further care of him.

Whatever they believe of departed souls, they have no notion either of heaven or hell, or of a state of rewards or punishments; this is evident from the behaviour of a dying Hottentot, and those about him; neither he or his friends offer up any prayers to their gods for the salvation of his soul; or mention the state of departed souls, or their apprehensions of his being happy or miserable after death: however, they set up terrible howlings and shriekings when the sick man is in his last agonies; and yet these very people are frequently guilty of murdering their ancient parents, as well as their innocent children; for when the father



of a family is become perfectly useless and superannuated, he is obliged to assign over his stock of cattle, and every thing else he has in the world, to his eldest son; and in default of sons, to his next heir male: after which, the heir erects a tent or hut in some unfrequented place, a good distance from the kraal or camp he belongs to; and, having assembled the men of the kraal, acquaints them with the condition of his superannuated relation, and desires their consent to expose him in the distant hut; to which the kraal scarce ever refuse their consent. Whereupon a day being appointed to carry the old man to the solitary tent, the heir kills an ox, and two or three sheep, and invites the whole village to feast and be merry with him; and at the end of the entertainment, all the neighbourhood come and take a formal leave of the old wretch, thus condemned to be starved or devoured by wild beasts: then the unfortunate creature is laid upon one of their carriage oxen, and carried to his last home, attended to the place where he is to be buried alive, by most of his neighbours. The old man being taken down, and set in the middle of the hut provided for him, the company return to their kraal, and he never sees the face of a human creature afterwards; they never so much as enquire whether he was starved to death, or devoured by wild beasts: he is no more thought of, than if he had never been. In the same manner they deal with a superannuated mother; only as she has nothing she can call her own, she has not the trouble of assigning her effects to her son. Whenever the Hottentots are upbraided with this unparalleled piece of barbarity, they reply, it would be much greater cruelty to suffer an old creature to languish out a miserable life, and to be many years a dying, than to make this quick dispatch with them; and that it is out of their extreme tenderness they put an end to the lives of these old wretches; all the argument in the world against the inhumanity of the custom, can make no impression on them: and indeed, as long as the Dutch have resided at

at the Cape, they have not been able to break them of one single custom, or prevail with them to alter any part of their conduct, how barbarous or absurd soever; and it seems, the captain of a kraal is not exempted from seeing his funeral solemnized in this manner, while he is alive, if he happens to become useless. And this leads us to treat of such funerals as are solemnized after the person is really dead.

The sick man, having resigned his breath, is immediately bundled up, neck and heels together, in his sheep-skin mantle, exceeding close, so that no part of the corpse appears: then the captain of the kraal, with some of the seniors, search the neighbouring country for some cavity in a rock, or the den of a wild beast, to bury it in, never digging a grave, if they can find one of these within a moderate distance. After which, the whole kraal, men and women, prepare to attend the corpse, seldom permitting it to remain above ground more than six hours. When all things are ready, all the neighbourhood assemble before the door of the deceased, the men sitting down on their heels in one circle, and resting their elbows on their knees (their usual posture) as the women do in another: here they clap their hands, and howl, crying, Bo, bo, bo; (i. e. father) lamenting their loss. The corpse being then brought out on that side the tent, where the person died, and not at the door, the bearers carry him in their arms to the grave, the men and women follow it in different parties, but without any manner of order, crying all the way, Bo, bo, bo! and wringing their hands, and performing a thousand ridiculous gestures and grimaces, which is frequently the subject of the Dutchmen's mirth; it being impossible, it is said, to forbear laughing at the antic tricks they shew on such an occasion. Having put the corpse into the cavity prepared for it, they stop up the mouth of it, with ant hills, stones, and pieces of wood, believing the ants will feed on the corpse, and soon consume it. The grave being stopped up, the men and women rendezvous again before the tent of the deceased, where they repeat their howling, and frequently call upon the name of their  
their

their departed friend: after which two of the oldest men get up; and one of them going into the circle of the women, urine upon every one of the company; and, where the kraals are so very large, that two cannot find water enough for this ceremony, they double or treble the number. Then the old men go into the tent of the deceased; and, having taken up some ashes from the fire-place, they sprinkle them upon the bodies of the people, blessing them as they go; and, if the deceased was a person of distinction, this is acted over again several days. But we should have remembered, that the ceremony always concludes with an entertainment. If the deceased had any cattle, a sheep is killed on the occasion; and the caul being powdered with buchu, is tied about the heir's neck, who is forced to wear it while it rots off, which is no great penance, all stinks being perfumes to a Hottentot. All the relations also wear the cauls of sheep about their necks; which it seems is their mourning, unless the children of the deceased are so poor, that they cannot kill a sheep; and then they shave their heads in furrows of about an inch broad, leaving the hair on of the same breadth between every furrow.

It is not an easy matter to come at an Hottentot's religious notions; he is sparing of his words, and laconic in his answers upon all occasions; but when religious topics are introduced, he generally conceals his sentiments in silence. Some on this account have doubted whether the Hottentots have any religion at all; but the most intelligent among the Dutch at the Cape positively affirm, that they believe in a Supreme Being, whom they stile Gounya Taquoa, or a God of Gods, and fancy that his place of residence is beyond the moon. They allow Gounya Taquoa is a humane benevolent being, yet they have no mode of worshipping him; for which they give this reason, "That he cursed their first parents for having greatly offended him, on which account their posterity have never from that time paid him adoration." They believe that the moon is an inferior visible god, and the representative of the high and invisible: that she has the direction of the weather



weather: and therefore they pray to her when it is unseasonable. They never fail to assemble and worship this planet at the new and full moon, let the weather be never so bad; and though they distort their bodies, grin, and put on very frightful looks, crying and howling in a terrible manner, yet they have some expressions that shew their veneration and dependence on this inferior deity; as ‘Mutschi Atze, I salute you; you are welcome; Cheraqua kaka chori Ounqua, grant us pasture for our cattle and plenty of milk.’ These and other prayers to the moon they repeat, frequently dancing and clapping their hands all the while; and, at the end of every dance, crying, Ho, ho, ho, ho! raising and falling their voices, and using abundance of odd gestures, that appear ridiculous to European spectators; and which no doubt, made them at first, before they knew any thing of their language, conclude, that this could not be the effect of devotion, especially when the people themselves told them, it was not an act of religion, but only intended for their diversion. They continue thus shouting, singing and dancing, with prostrations on the earth, the whole night, and even part of the next day, with some short intervals, never resting, unless they are quite spent with the violence of the action; and then they squat down upon their heels, holding their heads between their hands, and resting their elbows on their knees; and, after a little time, they start up again, and fall to singing and dancing in a circle as before, with all their might.

The Hottentots also adore a fly about the bigness of a hornet, called by some the golden beetle; whenever they see this insect approach their kraal, they all assemble about it, and sing and dance round it while it remains there, strewing over it the powder of buchu, by botanists called spiræm; which when it is dried and pulverized, they always powder themselves with it at festivals. They strew the same powder also over the tops of their tents, and over the whole area of the kraal, as a testimony of their vindication for the adored fly.

fly. They sacrifice also two sheep as a thanksgiving for the favour shewn their kraal, believing they shall certainly prosper after such a visit: and, if this insect happens to light upon a tent, they look upon the owner of it for the future as a saint, and pay him more than usual respect. The best ox of the kraal also is immediately sacrificed, to testify their gratitude to the little winged deity, and to honour the saint he has been pleased thus to distinguish: to whom the entrails of the beast, the choicest morsel in their opinion, with the fat and the caul is presented; and the caul being twisted like a rope, the saint ever after wears it like a collar round his neck day and night, till it putrifies and rots off; and the saint only feasts upon the entrails of the beast, while the rest of the kraal feed upon the joints, that are not in so high esteem among them: with the fat of the sacrifice also the saint anoints his body from time to time, till it is all spent; and, if the fly lights upon a woman she is no less revered by the neighbourhood, and entitled to the like privileges. It is scarce possible to express the agonies the Hottentots are in, if any European attempts to take or kill one of these insects, as the Dutch will sometimes seem to attempt, to put them in a fright: they will beg and pray, and fall prostrate on the ground, to procure the liberty of this little creature, if it falls into a Dutchman's hands; they are on such an occasion, in no less consternation than the Indians near Fort St. George, when the kite with a white head, which they worship, is in danger. If a soldier takes one of these alive, and threatens to wring the neck of it off, the Indians will gather in crowds about him, and immediately collect the value of a shilling or two, to purchase the liberty of the captive bird they adore. But to return to the Hottentots: they imagine if this little bird should be killed, all the cattle would die of diseases, or be destroyed by wild beasts; and they themselves should be the most miserable of men, and look upon that kraal to be doomed to some imminent misfortune, where this animal seldom appears

The Hollanders have sent several reverend divines to the Cape as missionaries, who have spared no pains to bring the Hottentots off from their idolatry, and induce them to embrace Christianity ; even their covetousness and ambition have been applied to, and temporal rewards offered them, on condition of their being instructed in the principles of Christianity. But no motives whatever, whether those relating to this or another state, have yet been able to make the least impression on any one of them : they hold fast and hug their ancient superstitions, and will hear of no other religion. The reason that they neither imitate the Europeans in their building, planting or clothing, is because they imagine themselves to be religiously obliged to follow the customs of their ancestors ; and that, if they should deviate from them in the least of these matters, it might make way for a total change of their religion and manners, which they cannot think of without abhorrence. One of the Dutch governors at the Cape, bred up an Hottentot from his infancy, obliging him to follow the fashions and customs of the Europeans, to be taught several languages, and be fully instructed in the principles of the Christian religion, clothing him handsomely, and treating him, in all respects, as a person for whom he had a high esteem ; and let him know, that he designed him for some beneficial and honourable employment. The governor afterwards sent him a voyage to Batavia, where he was employed, under the commissary his friend, for some time, till that gentleman died ; and then he returned to the Cape of Good Hope : but, having paid a visit to the Hottentots of his relations and acquaintance, he threw off all his fine clothes, bundled them up, and laid them at the governor's feet, and desired he would give him leave to renounce his Christianity, and live and die in the religion and customs of his ancestors ; only begged the governor would give him leave to keep the hanger and collar he wore for his sake ; which while the governor was deliberating with himself upon, scarce believing the fellow to be in earnest, the young Hottentot took the opportunity



tunity of running away, and never came to the Cape afterwards, thinking himself extremely happy that he had exchanged his European clothes for a sheep skin, and the rest of the Hottentots' dress and ornaments: the English East India company, we are informed, made the like experiment, bringing over two of that nation hither, whom they clothed decently after the European manner, and used them, in all respects, with the greatest goodness and gentleness, hoping, by that means to be better informed of the condition of their country, and whether it might be worth the while to make a settlement there: but the two Hottentots only learnt English enough to bewail their misfortune in being brought from their country and their friends; and, after two years trial of them, being again set on shore at the Cape, they immediately stripped off their European clothes, and, having taken up the sheep mantle again, rejoiced beyond measure for their happy escape from the English.

The poor Hottentots sometimes employ themselves in making arms, viz. bows and arrows, lances and darts, bartering them with the rich for cattle, to begin the world with: others get elephants teeth, and what they do not use in making rings and ornaments for themselves, are generally disposed of, it is thought, to the Portuguese, and other Europeans who touch at Terra de Natal, and other parts of the eastern or western coast.

The Hottentots sell very few teeth to the Dutch; though it is manifest they kill abundance of elephants: they supply the Hollanders however with cattle, and take wine, brandy or tobacco, in return; and an ox may be purchased of them for a pound of tobacco, and a large sheep for half a pound.

As to coin, the reader will conclude they have none; nor do they ever see any, unless some small pieces of money the Dutch sometimes give them for their wages at the Cape; and it must not be forgot, that the Hottentots find abundance of ostrich eggs in the sand, which they barter with the sea-faring men, that touch at the Cape, for brandy and tobacco; every sailor almost  
being

being proud of bringing home one of these egg shells to his friends, after he has fried and eaten the yolk, which makes a large pancake, and is pretty good food, but rather of the strongest.

Their butchers are said to be great artists in their way, and to handle a knife as dextrously as an anatomist : having tied the hind and fore legs of a sheep, they throw the creature on his back, and with cords two of them extend it to its full stretch, while a third rips it up ; so that all the entrails appear : then, with one hand, he tears the guts from the carcase, and with the other stirs the blood, avoiding, as much as he can, the breaking any of the blood-vessels about the heart ; so that the sheep is a long time a dying : in the mean time he gives the guts to another, who just rids them of the filth, and rinses them in water, and part of them are boiled and eaten amongst them, before the sheep is well dead : having scooped the blood out of the body of the animal with their hands or sea shells, they cut the rest of the guts in small pieces, and strew them in the blood, which is the Hottentots' favourite dish. An ox also is killed in the same barbarous manner ; being thrown upon his back, and his legs extended with cords, he is ripped up, and his guts taken out first ; in which cruel operation the beast is half an hour a dying : they separate the parts with great exactness, dividing the flesh, the bones, the membranes, muscles, veins, and arteries, and laying them in several parcels, every thing entire. The bones also are taken out of the flesh, and laid altogether in such order, that they might be easily formed into an exact skeleton : these they boil by themselves, and get the marrow out of them, with which they anoint their bodies. Of the sheep skin, as has been observed already, they make a mantle, if it be large ; but, if it is small, they cut it into thongs, to adorn their women's legs : and the hide of an ox serves either to cover their tents, or to make girts or straps of, with which they bind their baggage on their carriage oxen when they decamp ; and, if they have no other use for their ox-hides, they lay them by, and eat them when they want other food.

They have another artificer, who is both fell-monger and taylor: that is, he dresses skins after their way, and then makes them into mantles: he takes a sheep skin just flayed off, and, rubbing it well with fat, the skin becomes tough and smooth; and if it be for one of his countrymen, he rubs it over also with fresh cow-dung, and lays it in the sun till it is dry: then he rubs it with fat and cow-dung again; which he repeats several times, till it becomes perfectly black, and stinks so that no European can bear it; and then, with a little shaping and sewing, it is a complete mantle for a Hottentot; but, if it be dressed for a Dutchman, he only rubs the skin well with fat, which secures the wool from coming off. If he be to dress an ox's hide, he rubs the hairy side with wood ashes; then sprinkling it with water, rolls it up, and lays it a day or two in the sun; which expedient effectually brings off the hair; this skin is then well greased, stretched out, and dried again, when it is deemed good leather.

Their smiths do not only fashion their iron, but melt it from the ore: they find plenty of iron stones in several parts of their country; and having got a heap of these, they put them into a hole in the ground, heated and prepared for the purpose: then they make a fire over the stones, which they supply with fuel, and keep it up till the iron melts; and then it runs into another hole, which they make for a receiver, a little lower than the first: as soon as the iron in the receiver is cold, they break it to pieces with stones; and, heating the pieces again in other fires, beat them with stones, till they shape them into the heads of lances, darts, arrows, and bows, and such weapons as they use; for they scarce ever form any other utensils, but arms of this metal: they get the hardest flat stone, according to Monsieur Vogel, and, laying the iron upon it, as upon an anvil, beat it with another round stone, which serves them for a hammer; then they grind it upon the flat stone, and polish it as nicely as any European artificer could do with all his tools: they have some copper ore too, which they melt in like manner: but they make only toys and ornaments



ornaments for their dress of this metal : nor, indeed, do they ever work in iron, but when they want weapons. They would never labour, if their necessities did not sometimes compel them to it : but, when they do, no people work harder, or more indefatigably ; for they never leave a piece of work till they have finished it.

The ivory-turner makes the ivory rings that are worn ornamentally about the arms ; and considering that his only tool is a common clasp knife which he procures from the Dutch, the workmanship has great merit.

The potter, or maker of earthen vessels, is another art ; but this, it seems, they are all dextrous at, every family making the pots and pans they want. For these they use only the earth of ant-hills, clearing them of all sand and gravel ; after which they work it together with bruised ants eggs, that are said to constitute an extraordinary cement. When they have moulded these materials into a kind of paste, they take as much of them as will make one of their pots, and fashion it by hand upon a flat stone, making it of the form of a Roman urn ; then they smooth it within and without very carefully, not leaving the least roughness upon the surface ; and, having dried it in the sun two or three days, they put the pot into a hole in the ground, and burn it by making a fire over it ; and, when they take it out, it appears perfectly black : every family also make their own mats, with which they cover their tents or huts ; but this is chiefly the business of the women : they gather the flags and rushes by the river side, and weave or plat them into mats so closely it is said, that neither the weather or light can penetrate them.

The last artificer we shall mention is the rope-maker, who has no better materials than such flags and rushes as the mats are made of ; and yet they appear almost as strong as those made of hemp : the Dutch, at the Cape, buy and use them in plowing, and in draught-carriages.

As

As to the way of travelling here, the natives all travel on foot, except the aged and infirm ; and these are carried on their baggage oxen. As there are no inns or places for refreshment, the travelling Hottentot calls at the kraals in his way, where he meets with a hearty welcome from his countrymen, who endeavour to shew their hospitality to strangers, whether of their own country or of Europe. Such indeed is the general urbanity of these people, and their strict integrity when any confidence is placed in them, that when the Hollanders travel either on foot or horseback, if they cannot reach an European settlement, they also call at the kraals of the Hottentots, where they are complimented with a hut, and such provisions as they have ; or they may lie in the area of the kraal, in the open air, if they please, and the weather be good ; and here they are secure, both from robbers and wild beasts ; for the Bushis banditti on the mountains are dangerous, as they give no quarter ; but the Hottentot nations in general hold them in abhorrence, and unanimously concur in seizing and punishing them upon all occasions.

Their language is very inarticulate and defective ; one word signifies several things, the definitive meaning being determined by the manner of pronouncing ; and the pronunciation is so harsh and confused, that they seem to stammer in all they speak. Hence, though they are easily taught to understand other languages, they can seldom be brought to speak them with any degree of intelligibility.

We shall here subjoin a small Hottentot vocabulary, for the satisfaction of the curious ; khauna, signifies a lamb ; kgou, a goose ; bunqvaa, trees ; knomm, to hear ; quaqu, a pheasant ; tkaka, a whale ; horri, beasts in general ; knabou, a fowling-piece ; qua-arah, a wild ox ; unqua, the arms ; quienkha, to fall ; likhane, a dog ; konkequa, a captain ; quas, the neck ; quan, the heart ; kgoyes, a buck or doe ; tikquoa, a god ; komma, a house ; khoaa, a cat ; kowkuri, iron ; konkerey, a hen ; thoukou, a dark night ; tkoume, rice ; ghoudie, a sheep ; toya, the wind ; tikaa, a valley ;  
tkanonklau,

tkaononklau, gunpowder ; kamkamma, the heart ; quaouw, thunder ; duckatere, a duck, kamma, water ; quayha, an afs ; naew, the ears ; kirri, a stick ; nombha, the beard ; ka-a, to drink ; duriesfa, an ox ; lek-kaa, an ox of burden ; ounvie, butter ; houteo, a sea-dog ; bikgua, the head ; kamma, a stag ; konquil, a pigeon ; anthuri, to-morrow ; kou, a tooth ; khamouna, the devil ; hakqua, a horse ; koo, a son ; kammo, a stream ; tika, grass ; toqna, a wolf ; koanqua, the mouth ; khou, a peacock ; gona, a boy ; gois, a girl ; khoakamma, a baboon ; kerhanehou, a star ; mu, an eye ; tquassouw, a tyger.

The Hottentots have only ten numerical terms, which they repeat twice to express the multiplication of the first term, and three times to express the remultiplication of the latter. Their terms are : q'kui, one ; k'kam, two ; kouna, three ; kakka, four ; koo, five ; nanni, six ; kounko, seven ; khissi, eight ; khaffi, nine ; ghissi, ten.

Thus have we given a circumstantial and full account of the Cape, its inhabitants, productions, and adjacent country ; from whence the French at Mauritius, are supplied by the Dutch with salted beef, biscuit, flour, and wine : the provisions for which the French contracted this year were five hundred thousand lb. weight of salt beef, four hundred thousand lb. of flour, four hundred thousand lb. of biscuit, and one thousand two hundred leaguers of wine. We have only to add to this account a few observations on the bay and garrison. The former is large, safe, and exceeding convenient. It is indeed open to the N. W. winds, but they seldom blow hard ; yet as they sometimes occasion a great sea, the ships moor N. E. and S. W. The S. E. winds blow frequently with great fury, but their direction being right out of the bay, prevents them from being dangerous. For the convenience of landing and shipping goods, a wharf of wood is run out near the town, to a proper distance. Water is conveyed in pipes to this wharf, and many large boats and hoys are kept by the company to carry stones and provisions to and from the



the shipping in the harbour. This bay is covered by a small fort on the E. side of the town, and close to the beach; and is also defended by several outworks and batteries extending along the shore, as well on this side the town as the other; nevertheless they are by their situation exposed to the shipping, and in a manner defenceless against an enemy of any force, by land. As to the garrison, this consists of eight hundred regular troops, besides militia of the country, in which last is comprehended every man able to bear arms. By signals they can alarm the country in a very short time, and when they are made, the militia is to repair immediately to their place of rendezvous in the town.

On the 14th of April, in the morning, we weighed, stood out of the bay, and anchored at five in the evening under Penguin, or Robin island. Here we lay all night, and being prevented from sailing by the wind, the captain dispatched a boat to the island for a few trifling articles, which we had omitted to take in at the Cape; when our people drew near the shore, they were warned by the Dutch not to land at their peril. At the same time six men armed with muskets, paraded upon the beach. The commanding officer in the boat did not think it prudent to risk the lives of the men on account of a few cabbages, and therefore returned without them to the ship.

To this island the Dutch at the Cape banish such criminals as are not thought worthy of death, for a certain number of years, according to the nature of their crimes. They are employed as slaves in digging lime-stones, which, though scarce upon the continent, is here in great abundance. A Danish ship touched at this island, having been refused assistance at the Cape, and sending her boat on shore, overpowered the guard, and then took as many of the criminals as were necessary to navigate her home; for she had lost great part of her crew by sickness. To this incident we attributed our repulse, concluding, that the Dutch, to prevent a similar rescue of their prisoners, had ordered their garrison at

this place, not to suffer any boat of foreign nations to land the crew, and come ashore.

On the 25th we put to sea, and about four o'clock in the afternoon died our master, Mr. Robert Molineux, a youth of good parts, but unhappily for his own self-preservation, too much addicted to intemperance, a habit we would caution all those who undertake long voyages to avoid, if they have any regard to personal safety. We now continued our voyage without any other remarkable incident, and on the 29th we crossed our first meridian, having circumnavigated the globe from E. to W. and consequently lost a day, for which, upon correcting our reckoning at Batavia, we made an allowance. On the 1st of May, we came to anchor at break of day, before James's Fort, in the island of St. Helena, and as we proposed to refresh here, Mr. Banks employed his time in visiting the most remarkable places, and in surveying every object worthy of notice.

St. Helena is situated in the Atlantic ocean, in 6 deg. W. long. and 16 S. lat. almost in the midway between Africa and America, being 1200 miles distant from the former, and 1800 from the latter. It was so named by the Portuguese, who discovered it on St. Helen's day. This island is thirty-six miles long, eighteen broad, and about sixty-one in circumference. It is the summit of an immense mountain rising out of the sea, and of a depth unfathomable at a small distance round it. It may be discerned at sea, at above twenty leagues distance, and looks like a castle in the middle of the ocean, whose natural walls are of that height, that there is no scaling them. The small valley, called Chapel-valley, in a bay on the east side of it, is defended by a battery of 40 or 50 great guns, planted even with the water, and the waves dashing perpetually on the shore, make it difficult landing even here.

There is also another little creek, where two or three may land at a time, but this is defended by a battery of five or six guns, and rendered inaccessible.

No anchorage is found any where about the island, but at Chapel-valley bay, and as the wind always sets from the S. E. if a ship overshoots the island ever so little, she cannot recover it again. The seat of volcanoes has been found to be the highest part of the countries in which they are found. Hecla is the highest hill in Iceland, and the Peak of Teneriffe is known to be the covering of the subterraneous fire. These are still burning : but there are other mountains which bear evident marks of fire that is now extinct : among these is St. Helena, where the inequalities of the ground, and its external surface, are evidently the effects of the sinking of the earth, and that this was caused by the subterraneous fire, is equally manifest, from the stones, or some of them, especially those from the bottom of the vallies, are burnt almost to cinders.

This island, as the Endeavour approached it on the windward side, appeared like a rude heap of rocks, bounded by precipices of an amazing height, and consisting of a kind of stone, which shews not the least sign of vegetation. Sailing along shore, we came near the huge cliffs, that seemed to overhang the ship. At length we opened Chapel-valley, which resembles a trench, and in this valley we discovered the town. The sides of it are naked as the cliffs next the sea, but the body is slightly clothed with herbage. In its present cultivated state, such appeared the island to us, and the first hills must be passed before the country displays its verdure, or any other marks of fertility.

In Chapel-valley, a little beyond the landing-place, is a fort where the governor resides, with the garrison, and the town stands just by the sea side. The greater part of the houses are ill built. The church, which was originally a mean structure, is in ruins, and the market-place nearly in the same condition. The town consists of about forty or fifty buildings, constructed after the English fashion, whither the people of the island resort when any shipping appear, as  
well



well to assist in the defence of the island, as to entertain the seamen if they are friends: for the governor has always sentinels on the highest part of the island, to the windward, who give notice of the approach of all shipping, and guns are thereupon fired, that every man may resort to his post. It is impossible for an enemy to approach by sea in the night-time, and if discovered the day before, preparations are speedily made for his reception.

Notwithstanding the island appears a barren rock on every side, yet on the top it is covered with a fine layer of earth, producing grain, fruits, and herbs of various kinds; and the country after we ascended the rocks, is diversified with rising hills and plains, plantations of fruit trees and kitchen gardens, among which the houses of the natives are interspersed, and in the open fields are herds of cattle grazing, some of which are fatted to supply the shipping, and the rest furnish the dairies with milk, butter, and cheese. Hogs, goats, turkeys, and all manner of poultry, also abound, and the seas are well stored with fish. But amidst all this affluence, the people have neither bread nor wine of their own growth; for though the soil is proper for wheat, yet the rats that harbour in the rocks, and cannot be destroyed, eat up all the seed before the grain is well out of the ground: and though their vines flourish, and produce them grapes enough, yet the latitude is too hot for making wine. This they have therefore from the Canaries, the Madeiras, or the Cape, as well as their flour and malt. Their very houses are some of them brought from Europe ready framed, there being no timber on the island, trees not taking deep root here, on account of the rock that lies so near the surface: however, they have underwood enough for necessary uses. Besides grapes, they have plantains, bananas, figs, lemons, and such other fruits as hot countries usually produce.

In the year 1701, there were upon the island about 200 families, most of them English, or descended from

English parents. Every family has a house and plantation on the higher part of the island, where they look after their cattle, fruits, and kitchen garden. They scarce ever come down to the town, unless it be to church, or when the shipping arrive, when most of the houses in the valley are converted into punch-houses, or lodgings for their guests, to whom they sell their poultry, and other commodities: but they are not suffered to purchase any merchandise of the ships that touch here.

Whatever they want of foreign growth or manufacture, they are obliged to buy in the company's warehouse, where twice every month they may furnish themselves with brandy, European or Cape wines, Batavia arracks, malt, beer, sugar, tea, coffee, china and japan ware, linen, calicoes, chintz, muslins, ribbands, woollen cloth, and stuffs, and all manner of clothing; for which they are allowed six months credit. Among the very few native productions of this island must be reckoned ebony, though the trees are now nearly extinct. Pieces of this wood are frequently found in the vallies of a fine black colour, and hardness almost equal to iron; these pieces, however, are so short and crooked, that no use can be made of them.

There are a few insects here, but upon the tops of the highest ridges a species of snail is found, which has probably been there since the original creation of their kind. It is indeed very difficult to conceive how any thing not formed here, or brought hither by the diligence of man, could find its way to a place so severed from the rest of the world, by seas of immense extent.

The Portuguese, who discovered this island in 1502, stored it with hogs, goats, and poultry, and used to touch at it for water and fresh provisions in their return from India, but we do not find they ever planted a colony here, or if they did, having deserted it afterwards, the English East-India Company took possession of the island A. D. 1600, and held it till

1673, without interruption, when the Dutch took it by surprize. However, the English, commanded by Captain Munden, recovered it again, within the space of a year, and took three Dutch East-India ships that lay in the road at the same time. The Hollanders had fortified the landing place, and placed batteries of great guns to prevent a descent: but the English being acquainted with a small creek where only two men could go a-breast, climbed up to the top of the rocks in the night-time, and appearing next morning at the backs of the Dutch, they threw down their arms, and surrendered the island without striking a stroke: but as we have before observed, this creek has been since fortified: so that there is now no place where an enemy can make a descent with any probability of success.

The affairs of the East-India Company are managed here by a governor, deputy-governor, and store-house-keeper, who have certain settled salaries allowed, besides a public table, well furnished, to which all commanders, masters of ships, and eminent passengers are welcome.

The masters of the plantations keep a great many blacks, who, upon severe treatment, hide themselves for two or three months together, keeping among the rocks by day, and roving by night for provisions: but they are generally discovered and taken.

The children and descendants of white people have not the least red in their cheeks, in all other places near the tropics: but the natives of St. Helena are remarkable for their ruddy complexions and robust constitutions. Their healthfulness may, in general, be ascribed to the following causes. They live on the top of a mountain always open to the sea breezes that constantly blow here: they are usually employed in the most healthful exercises of gardening and husbandry: the island is frequently refreshed with moderate cooling showers, and no noxious fens nor salt marshes annoy them.



As to the genius and temper of these people, they seemed to us the most honest, the most inoffensive, and the most hospitable people we ever met with of English extraction, having scarce any tincture of avarice and ambition. We asked some of them, if they had no curiosity to see the rest of the world, and how they could confine themselves to so small a spot of earth, separated at such a distance from the rest of mankind? They replied, that they enjoyed the necessaries of life in great plenty: they were neither parched with excessive heat, or pinched with cold: they lived in perfect security, in no danger of enemies, of robbers, wild beasts, or rigorous seasons; and were happy in the enjoyment of a continued state of health: that as there were no rich men among them, (scarce any planter being worth more than 1000 dollars) so there were no poor in the island, no man being worth less than 400 dollars, and consequently not obliged to undergo more labour than was necessary to keep them in health.

Our thoughts were now employed on returning to our native shore: and having sufficiently recruited our stores, on Saturday the 4th of May, we weighed, and sailed out of the road in company with the Portland man of war, and his convoy, consisting of twelve sail of East-Indiamen. With this fleet we continued our course for England until Friday the 10th, when perceiving they outailed us, and consequently might make their port before us, Captain Cook for this reason, made the signal to speak to the Portland, upon which Captain Elliot came on board the Endeavour; to whom a letter for the admiralty was delivered, with a box, containing the common log books of the ship, and the journals of some of the officers. We did not lose sight of the fleet till the 23d, when they parted from us; and about one o'clock in the afternoon, we lost our first lieutenant, Mr. Hicks, an active, skilful, judicious, and useful officer. He died of a consumption, of which lingering disorder he dis-

covered some symptoms when he left England; so that it may be truly said, that he was dying the whole voyage. The whole ship's company attended the funeral rites, and in the evening we committed his body to the sea with the usual ceremonies. The next day the Captain appointed Mr. Charles Clerk, a young man, to act in the room of Mr. Hicks.

We now every day drew nearer our desired haven; but what must be the condition of our once good ship, the Endeavour, may easily be imagined, from a slight recollection of the hardships she had surmounted, and the dangers she had providentially escaped. At this time our rigging and sails were so weather-beaten, that every day something was giving way. However we held on our course without any material occurrence that might endanger our safety, till Monday the 10th of June, when, to our great joy, Nicholas Young, the boy who discovered New Zealand, called out land from the mast head, which proved to be the Lizard.

The next day, being Tuesday the 11th, we proceeded up the channel. On Wednesday the 12th, the pleasing hopes of seeing our relatives and friends, exciting sensations not to be described by the pen of the most able writer, we passed Beachy Head. At noon, to our inexpressible joy, we were a-breast of Dover; and about three o'clock P. M. we came to an anchor in the Downs. When we landed at Deal, our ship's company indulged freely that mirth, and sociable jollity, common to all English sailors upon their return from a long voyage, who as readily forget hardships and dangers, as with alacrity and bravely they encounter them.

We cannot close this book, without duly considering the wonderful protection of the Endeavour in cases of danger the most imminent, particularly when encircled in the wide ocean, with rocks of coral, her sheathing beaten off, and her false keel floating by her side, a hole in her bottom, and the men by turns fainting

fainting at the pumps, cannot but acknowledge the existence of particular providence. This our countrymen experienced, and we have good authority to assert, that our company in the Endeavour do acknowledge, that the hand of superior power was particularly concerned in their protection and deliverance. This omniscient and omnipotent power is the incumbent duty of every christian to believe, confide in, and adore.

*END OF THE FIRST VOYAGE.*





# CAPTAIN COOK'S SECOND VOYAGE

TOWARDS THE  
SOUTH POLE,  
*AND ROUND THE WORLD, &c.*

Begun the 9th of April, 1772, and concluded on the 31st of July, 1775.



## INTRODUCTION.

**T**HE King's expectations were not wholly answered by former discoveries, which were so highly blazoned both at home and abroad, and therefore his Majesty projected this second voyage of Captain Cook. The navy-board was ordered to equip two such ships as were most suitable to the service. Accordingly two vessels were purchased; the largest of the two named the *Resolution*, burden 462 tons, and sent to Deptford to be fitted out; and the *Adventure*, 336 tons, equipped at Woolwich.

On the 28th of Nov. 1771, Captain Cook was appointed to the command of the *Resolution*; and Tobias Furneaux, who had been second lieutenant with captain Wallis, was promoted to the command of the *Adventure*. The *Resolution* had 112 hands on board, officers included: and the *Adventure* 81. In the former James Cook was captain, Robert P. Cooper, Charles Clerke, and Richard Pickersgill, were appointed lieutenants. Joseph Gilbert was master; James Grey, boatswain; James Wallis, Carpenter; Robert Anderson, gunner; and James Patten, surgeon. In the *Adventure*, Tobias Furneaux was captain, Joseph Shank, and Arthur Kemp, lieutenants; Peter Fannin was appointed master, Edward  
4 Y Johns,

Johns, boatswain; William Offered, carpenter, Andrew Gloag, gunner; Thomas Andrews, surgeon.

The two ships were got in readiness with the utmost expedition, and both the navy and victualling boards paid an uncommon attention to their equipment. Indeed Captain Cook sailed with greater advantages in this expedition, than any of his predecessors who had gone out before on discoveries. He had the frame of a vessel of 21 tons, one for each ship, to serve occasionally, or upon any emergency, to serve as tenders; he had on board fishing nets, lines and hooks of every kind; he was supplied with innumerable articles of small value, adapted to the commerce of the tropical islands. The two ships were victualled and provided with all manner of necessaries for a three years voyage.

A proposed voyage, attended with such extraordinary preparations, patronized by parliament, as well as by royal bounty, and the execution of which being superintended by the first officers of the admiralty, the navy, and by Captain Cook himself, we do not hesitate to pronounce one of the most important that ever was performed in any age, or by any country; and we may also with truth assert, that the able navigator made choice of by his majesty, was equal to the task in which he was embarked. Every thinking person cannot but admire his skill, his fortitude, his care of his men, his vigilance in attending to the minutest intimations of former navigators, his perseverance amidst the dangers and hardships of rigorous seasons, his prowess in leading his company just so far as they were capable of proceeding; in short his conduct throughout, which, while he kept every man singly in strict obedience to his duty, he conciliated the affections of all, and secured their esteem.

The history of his second voyage, which we are now about to submit to the judgment of our readers, will, we are persuaded, confirm the truth of this opinion.

## CHAP. I.

*The Resolution and Adventure take their departure from Deptford—Touch at the island of St. Jago—Pursue their voyage to the Cape of Good Hope—Departure from the Cape—Continue their voyage in search of a Southern Continent—Sequel of this search—Separation of the ships, and the arrival of the Resolution in Dusky Bay.*

THE Resolution and Adventure dropped down the river as far as Woolwich, on the 9th of April, at which place she was detained by contrary winds; but on the 22d sailed from thence to Long-Reach, where she was joined by her companion the Adventure, and both ships took in their marines, guns, and ammunition. May the 10th, we sailed for Plymouth, but before we got out of the river, the Resolution was found to be very crank, on which account we put into Sheerness. While some alterations were making in her upper works, Lord Sandwich and Sir Hugh Palliser paid us a visit, in order to see they were executed in a proper manner. The Resolution being again ready for sea, we departed from Sheerness. On the 2d of July we met Lord Sandwich, in the Augusta yacht, whom we saluted with seventeen guns, and his Lordship, accompanied with Sir Hugh Palliser, honoured us with their presence on board, which was the last instance of that very great attention they had paid to a variety of particulars that might tend to promote the success of our undertaking.

About this time Captain Cook received from the board of Admiralty his instructions, dated the 25th of June, the tenor and substance of which were, that the



the Adventure was to be under his command : that the two ships were to proceed to the island of Madeira, from thence to the Cape of Good Hope : that having at this place refreshed the ships' companies, and supplied them with provisions and other necessaries, they were to make the best of their way to the southward, in search of Cape Circumcision, which, by M. Bouvet, is said to be in lat. 54 deg. S. and in about 11 deg. 20 min. E. long. from the Royal Observatory in the park at Greenwich ; that if they fell in with this Cape, Captain Cook was to endeavour, by all means in his power, to discover whether the same was part of the supposed continent, which had so much employed the national attention of different European powers, or only the promontory of an island : that, in either case, the gentlemen on board the two ships were diligently to explore the same, to the utmost extent possible ; and to make such observations of various kinds, as might correspond with the grand object in view, and be in any respect useful to either navigation or commerce ; not omitting at the same time, proper remarks on the genius and temper of the inhabitants, whose friendship and alliance they were directed to conciliate, by all probable motives, and prudential means in their power ; that they were to proceed on new discoveries to the eastward or westward, as the captains might judge most eligible, endeavouring only to run into as high a latitude, and as near the South Pole as possible ; that whatever might be the result of their investigations with respect to Cape Circumcision, they were to continue their surveys to the southward, and then to the eastward, either in search of the said continent, should it not have been ascertained, or to make discoveries of such islands as might be seated in the hitherto unexplored and unknown parts of the southern latitudes ; that, having circumnavigated the globe, they were to return to Spithead by the way of the Cape of Good Hope : and that to answer the intentions of government in this voyage as  
fully

fully as possible, when the season of the year rendered it unsafe to continue in high latitudes, they were to repair to some known port to the northward; and after having refitted, &c. they were to return again, at the proper season, to the southward, in prosecution of new discoveries there.

It may not be amiss here to observe, that these orders were not intended in any respect to cramp Captain Cook, who was allowed, in case the *Resolution* should be lost, to continue his voyage in the *Adventure*: he had to this end assistants out of number: his stay was not even hinted at: he was not obliged to return at any limited time; in short, he had ample power, full authority, and, in all unforeseen cases, he was to proceed according to his own discretion, and act entirely as he pleased.

A copy of the above instructions were transmitted to Captain Furneaux, inclosed with Captain Cook's orders, in which he appointed, should the two ships be separated, the island of Madeira for the first place of rendezvous, Port Praya for the second, the Cape of Good Hope for the third, and New Zealand for the fourth.

While we remained at Plymouth, our astronomers, Mr. Wales and Mr. Bayley, made observations on Drake's island, when the lat. was found to be 50 deg. 21 min. 30 sec. N. and the long. 4 deg. 20 min. W. of Greenwich; whereby the true time for putting the time pieces and watches in motion was ascertained. This was done on the 13th of July, and they were set a going in the presence of the two astronomers, Captain Furneaux, Captain Cook, and the two first lieutenants of the ships. They had each of them keys of the boxes which contained the watches, and were always to be present at the winding them up, and comparing the one with the other, unless prevented by indisposition.

On the 12th of July, the *Resolution* broke from her moorings in the sound, and was adrift, together with the transport buoy to which she was fastened.

All

All hands were on deck instantly, the cables were cleared, and the sails spread. We passed the Adventure, and came to an anchor, after having escaped the very apparent danger of being dashed against the rocks which are under the fort. This favourable event was looked upon by our seamen as an omen to the good success of the voyage.

On the 13th, the two ships sailed from Plymouth Sound, in company, and passed the Edystone, which is a lofty well contrived tower, of the utmost advantage to navigation and commerce. As we stood off shore, the wind increased, and the billows rolled higher and higher. On the 20th, we fell in with Cape Ortegal, on the coast of Galicia. The sea now grew perfectly calm, and the prospect which surrounded us was very delightful. When in sight of Cape Finisterre, bearing W. S. W. seven or eight leagues, we were met by a small French Tartan from Marseilles, freighted with flour from Ferrol and Corunna. We obtained from them a small supply of fresh water, which we much wanted, having been obliged to subsist on bread and four wine.

On the 22d, in the afternoon, we passed two Spanish men of war, one of which fired a shot at the Adventure to bring her to; but on hailing her, and being told we were king's ships, made a proper apology, and very politely took leave, wishing us a good voyage.

On the 29th, about nine at night, we anchored in Funchiale road, in the island of Madeira. After having saluted the garrison with eleven guns, and they had returned the compliment, we went on shore, accompanied by Mr. Sills, a gentleman from the vice-consul, to the house of Mr. Loughnans, a considerable English merchant; who assisted us with every accommodation the island and house afforded, during our stay. Here the officers and private men furnished themselves with such stocks of wine as they could conveniently purchase.

On



On the 1st of August, having stowed on board a supply of water, wine, and other necessaries, we set sail, lost sight of Madeira, and stood to the southward, with a gentle gale at N. E. On the 4th, we saw the pleasant island of Palma, bearing S. S. W. distant about three or four leagues. And on Wednesday the 5th, we passed the isle of Ferro, at the distance of fourteen leagues.

Having departed from Madeira, on the 1st of August, on the 9th we crossed the Tropic of Cancer, and at nine in the morning came in sight of Bonavista, bearing S. W. by W. about ten leagues.

On the 10th, we passed the island of Mayo, on our starboard side, and at two P. M. came to an anchor, eighteen fathom water, in Port Praya, in the isle of St. Jago, one of the Cape de Verds. An officer was sent on shore for leave to procure what refreshments we wanted, which was readily granted; and on his return, we saluted the fort with eleven guns. Here both ships were supplied with plenty of good water. We also recruited our live stock, such as hogs, goats, and poultry, some of which continued alive during the remainder of the voyage.

On the 14th, both ships having got on board a supply of refreshments and provisions, we weighed anchor, put to sea, and continued our voyage to the Cape of Good Hope. On the 16th, in the evening, a luminous fiery meteor made its appearance; it was of a blueish colour, an oblong shape, and had a quick descending motion. After a momentary duration, it disappeared in the horizon. Its course was N. N. W.

On the 19th, one of the carpenter's mates fell overboard, and was drowned. He was sitting on one of the scuttles, from whence it was supposed he fell. All our endeavours to save him were in vain, for he was not seen till the instant he sunk under the ship's stern. We felt his loss very sensibly, he being a sober man, as well as a good workman; and he was much regretted even by his shipmates.

On

On the 20th, the rain descended not in drops, but in streams, and, at the same time, the wind was squally and variable, so that the people were obliged to keep deck, and of course had all wet jackets, an inconvenience very common, and often experienced by seamen. However, this disagreeable circumstance was attended with good, as it gave us an opportunity of spreading our awnings, and filling seven empty puncheons with fresh water.

On the 27th, one of Captain Furneaux's petty officers died on board the *Adventure*; but on board the *Resolution*, we had not one man sick, although a deal of rain fell, which, in such hot climates, is a great promoter of sickness. Captain Cook took every necessary precaution for the preservation of our health; by airing and drying the ship with fires made between decks, and by making the crew air their bedding, and wash their clothes, at every opportunity. Two men were punished on board the *Adventure*; one a private marine for quarrelling with the quartermaster; the other a common sailor, for theft. Each of them receiving one dozen. This we mention to shew what strict discipline it was necessary to preserve on board, in order to establish a regular and peaceable behaviour in such hazardous voyages, when men, unaccustomed to controul, are apt to prove mutinous.

On Tuesday, September the 8th, we crossed the line in longitude 8 deg. W. Some of the crew, who had never passed the line before, were obliged to undergo the usual ceremony of ducking; but some bought themselves off, by paying the required forfeit of brandy. Those who submitted to an immersion, found it very salutary, as it cannot well be done too often in warm weather, and a frequent change of linen and clothes is exceeding refreshing. On the 14th, a flying fish fell on our deck; we caught several dolphins; saw some aquatic birds; and, at various intervals, observed the sea covered with numberless animals. On Sunday the 27th, a sail was discovered

vered to the W. standing after us; she appeared to be a snow, and shewed either Portuguese colours, or St. George's ensign. We did not choose to wait till she approached nearer, or to speak to her.

On Monday the 12th, the weather being calm, we amused ourselves with shooting sea-fowl. We were now accompanied by sheerwaters, pintadoes, &c. and by a small grey petrel. This last is less than a pigeon, has a grey back, whitish belly, and a black stroke across from the tip of the wing to that of the other. These are southern birds, and, we believe, never seen within the tropics, or north of the line. They visited us in great flights; and about the same time we saw several animals of the molusca kind, within our reach, together with a violet coloured shell, of a remarkable thin texture, and therefore seems calculated to keep the open sea, and not to come near rocky places, it being easily broken. Saturday the 17th, we discovered a sail to the N. W. which hoisted Dutch colours. She kept us company two days, but on the third we out-failed her. From the 12th to this day, we had the wind between the N. and E. a gentle gale. On Wednesday the 21st, our latitude was 35 deg. [20 min. S. and our longitude 8 deg. 4 min. 30 sec. E. From this time to the 23d, the wind continued easterly, when it veered to the N. and N. W. After some hours calm, we saw a seal, or as some thought, a sea lion. The wind now fixed at N. W. which carried us to our intended port. As we drew near to the land, the sea fowl, which had accompanied us hitherto, began to leave us: at least, they did not appear in such numbers: nor did we see gannets, or the black bird, commonly called the Cape hen, till we were nearly within sight of the Cape. On Thursday the 29th, at two o'clock P. M. we made the land of the Cape of Good Hope, a particular description of which is given in the first voyage. The Table Mountain, over the Cape Town bore E. S. E. distant twelve or fourteen leagues: had



it not been obscured by clouds, it might, from its height, have been seen at a much greater distance.

Friday the 30th, we stood into Table Bay, with the *Adventure* in company, and anchored in five fathom water. We were now visited by the master-attendant of the fort, some other officers belonging to the company, and Mr. Brandt. This last gentleman brought off to us many articles that were very acceptable; and the master attendant, as is customary, took an account of the two ships, enquiring particularly if the small-pox was on board, a disorder dreaded above all others by the inhabitants of the Cape; for which reason a surgeon always attends on these visits.

This day, Captain Cook sent an officer to wait upon Baron Plettenberg, the governor, to inform him of our arrival, to which he returned a polite answer; and on the return of our officer, we saluted the fort with eleven guns, which compliment was acknowledged by the same number.

Having visited the governor and some of the principal inhabitants, we took up our abode at Mr. Brandt's, the usual residence of most officers belonging to English ships. With respect to accommodation, this gentleman spared neither pains nor expence, in order to favour him with their company. We concerted measures with Mr. Brandt for supplying us with provisions, &c. all which he procured without delay, while our men on board were employed in overhauling the rigging, and the carpenters in caulking the ships' sides &c. At the same time, Mr. Wales and Mr. Bayley made observations for regulating the watches, and other purposes. The result of these was that Mr. Kendal's watch had answered beyond our expectations, by determining the longitude of this place to within one minute of time to what it was observed in 1761, by Mess. Mason and Dickson.

During our stay here, Mr. Forster, who employed his time wholly in the pursuit of natural history and  
botany,

botany, met with one Mr. Sparman, a Swedish gentleman, who had studied under Linnæus. Mr. Forster importuned strongly Captain Cook to take him aboard; and Mr. Sparman being willing to embark, the captain consented; and he was engaged under Mr. Forster, who bore his expences on board, and allowed him a yearly stipend besides.

On the 18th, we had got every thing on board; but it was the 22d before we could put to sea. In this interval the crews of both ships were served every day with fresh beef, or mutton, new baked bread, and what quantity of greens they thought sufficient; and the two ships in every respect, were put in as good condition as when they left England. At this time, some removes took place in the Adventure. The first lieutenant, Mr. Shanks, desired leave to resign, in order to return to England for the recovery of his health, which was granted. Mr. Kemp was appointed first lieutenant, and Mr. Burney, one of our midshipmen, was made second lieutenant, in the room of Mr. Kemp.

On the 22d, we repaired on board, having first taken leave of the governor and other officers who, in a most obliging manner, had afforded us all the necessary assistance we required. At three o'clock P. M. we weighed, and saluted the fort with fifteen guns, which compliment was instantly returned. We now stood all night to the westward, to get clear of the land, during which time, we directed our course, as ordered, to Cape Circumcision. We had a moderate gale from the N. W. point until the 24th, when the wind shifted to the eastward.

This day, by observation at noon, we found ourselves to be in 35 deg. 25 min. S. lat. and 29 min. W. of the Cape of Good Hope. As we were now directing our course towards the antarctic circle, and expected to encounter soon with cold weather, the captain ordered a waste of fresh water to be as much as possible prevented; at the same time, he supplied each man with a fearnought jacket and trowsers, al-

lowed by the Admiralty, and also slops to such who wanted them. On the 29th, a heavy storm came from the N. N. W. with a few intervals of moderate weather, for nearly a week.

On Sunday, December the 6th, we were in lat. 48 deg. 41 min. S. and in 18 deg. 24 min. E. long. The storm continued, and the roaring of the waves, together with hail, rain, and a great agitation of the vessel were circumstances that rendered our situation disagreeable. A boy in the fore part of the ship, hearing a noise of water running among the chests, turned out, and found himself half way up the leg in water; upon which all hands worked at the pumps, but the water increased upon us. This was at last discovered to come through a scuttle in the boat-swain's store-room. This gale, attended with hail and rain, continued till the 8th with such fury, that we could carry no sails; and being driven by this means far to the eastward of our intended course, not the least hope remained of our reaching Cape Circumcision. Our distress was augmented by the loss of a great part of our live stock we had brought from the Cape. Every man felt the effects of the sudden transition from warm to extreme cold weather; for which reason an addition was made to the men's allowance of brandy in both ships.

On the morning of the 7th, the sun gave us a flattering prospect of serene weather; but our expectations soon vanished; the barometer was unusually low; and by one o'clock P. M. the wind, which was at N. W. blew with such violence, as obliged us to strike our top-gallant-masts. On the 8th, the gale was somewhat abated; but the sea ran too high for us to carry more than the fore-top-mast stay-sail.

On the 9th, at three A. M. we wore ship to the southward, showers of snow fell, with squally weather. At eight, made signal for the Adventure to make sail. On the 10th, made another signal for her to lead, and saw an iceland to the westward of us, in 50 deg. 40 min. S. lat. and 2 deg. E. long. of  
the



the Cape of Good Hope. The weather being hazy, Captain Cook, by signal, called the Adventure under our stern; a fortunate circumstance this; for the fog increased so much, that we could not discern an island of ice, for which we were steering, till we were less than a mile from it. The sea broke very high against this island of ice, which Captain Furneaux took for land, and therefore hauled off from it, till he was called back by signal. We cannot determine with precision on the height or circumference of this ice island; but in our opinion, such large bodies must drift very slowly, for, as the greatest part of them are under water, they can be little affected either by the winds or waves. It being necessary to proceed with great circumspection, we reefed our top-sails, and upon sounding, found no ground with 150 fathoms.

On the 11th, in 51 deg. 50 min. S. lat and 21 deg. 8 min. E. long. saw some white birds, and passed another large island of ice. The birds were about the size of pigeons, with blackish bills and feet. Captain Cook thought them of the petrel kind, and natives of these frozen seas. The dismal scene in view, to which we were unaccustomed, was varied as well by these birds, as several whales, which made their appearance among the ice, and afforded some idea of a southern Greenland. But though the appearance of the ice, with the waves breaking over it, might afford a few moments pleasure to the eye, yet could not fail filling us with horror, when we reflected on our danger; for the ship would be dashed to pieces in a moment, were she to get against the weather side of one of these islands, when the sea runs high.

On the 14th, a boat was hoisted out for two gentlemen to make some observations and experiments. While they were thus engaged, the fog increased so much, that they entirely lost sight of both of the ships. Their situation was truly terrific and alarming, as they were only in a small four-oared boat, in an immense ocean, surrounded with ice, utterly destitute  
of

of provisions, and far from any habitable shore. They made various efforts to be heard, and rowed about for some time, without effect; they could not see the length of their boat, nor hear any sound. They had neither mast nor sail, only two oars. They determined to lie still, as the weather was calm, and hoped that the ships would not swim out of sight. A bell sounded at a distance, which was heavenly music to their ears. They were at last taken up by the *Adventure*, and thus narrowly escaped those extreme dangers.

We stood to the South on the 17th, when the weather was clear and serene, and saw several sorts of birds, which we were unacquainted with. The skirts of the ice seemed to be more broken than usual, and we sailed among it most part of the day; but were obliged to stand to the northward, in order to avoid it.

On the 18th we got clear of the ice, but was carried among the ice islands, which it was difficult to keep clear of. In the Greenland seas, such ice is found all the summer long, and it cannot be colder there in summer time than it is here. Upon the supposition that this ice which we have been speaking of is generally formed in bays and rivers, we imagined that land was not far from us, and the ice alone hindered our approaching it.

At last we determined to sail to the eastward, and afterwards to the south, and, if we met with no land or impediment, there to get behind the ice, that this matter might be put out of doubt. We found the weather much colder, and all the crew complained of it. Those jackets which were too short were lengthened with baize, and each of them had a cap made of the same stuff, which kept them as warm as the climate would admit. Scorbatic symptoms appearing on some of the people, the surgeons gave them fresh wort every day, made from the malt we took with us for that purpose.

We stood once more to the southward on the 22d instant. On the 23d, we hoisted out a boat to make such experiments as were thought necessary. We examined

amined several species of birds, which we had shot as they hovered round us with seeming curiosity.

The 25th, being Christmas-day, we were very cheerful, and notwithstanding the surrounding rocks of ice, the sailors spent it in savage noise and drunkenness. On the 26th, we sailed through large quantities of broken ice. We were still surrounded with islands, which in the evening appeared very beautiful, the edges being tinged by the setting sun. We were now in lat. 58 deg. 31 min. S.

On the 29th, the commanders came to a resolution, provided they met with no impediment, to run as far west as Cape Circumcision, since the sea seemed to be pretty clear of ice, and the distance not more than eighty leagues. On this island we saw a great number of penguins. The sight of these birds is said to be an indication of the vicinity of land. This may hold good where there are no ice islands, but not so when there are any, for there they find a resting-place. We will not determine whether there are any females among them at so great a distance from land, or whether they go on shore to breed.

On the 31st, we stood for this island again, but could not take up any of the loose ice, for the wind increased so considerably, as to make it dangerous for the ships to remain among the ice; besides which, we discovered an immense field of ice to the north, extending further than the eye could reach. We had no time to deliberate, as we were not above two or three miles from it.

On the 1st of January, 1773, the gale abated, but there fell a good deal of snow and sleet, which froze on the rigging of the ships. The wind continued moderate the next day, and were favoured with a sight of the moon, whose face we had not seen since we left the Cape of Good Hope. We were now in 59 deg. 12 min. S. lat. and in 9 deg. 45 min. E. long.

On the 8th, we passed more ice islands, which became very familiar to us. In the evening, we came to one which had a vast quantity of loose ice about it; and



as the weather was moderate, we brought to, and sent the boats out to take up as much as they could. Large piles of it were packed upon the quarter deck, and put into casks, from which, after it was melted, we got water enough for thirty days. A very little salt-water adhered to the ice, and the water which it produced was very fresh and good. Excepting the melting and taking away the ice, this is a most expeditious method of supplying the ships with water. We observed here several white whales, of an immense size.

On the 17th, we crossed the antarctic circle; and advanced into the southern frigid zone, which to all former navigators had remained impenetrable. We could see several leagues around us, as the weather was tolerably clear. In the afternoon, we saw the whole sea covered with ice, from S. E. to S. W. We saw a new species of the petrel, of a brown colour, with a white belly and rump, and a large white spot on the wings; we saw great flights of them, but never any of them fell into the ships. We called it antarctic petrel, as such numbers of them were seen thereabouts.

In the afternoon, we saw thirty-eight ice islands, large and small. This immense field was composed of different kinds; such as field-ice, as so called by the Greenlanders, and packed ice. Here we saw several whales playing about the ice, and still large flocks of petrels. Our latitude was now 67 deg. 15 min. S.

We did not think it prudent to persevere in a southern direction, as that kind of summer which this part of the world produces was now half spent; and it would have taken much time to have gone round the ice, supposing it practicable: we therefore resolved to go directly in search of the land lately discovered by the French.

On the 29th, several porpoises passed up with amazing swiftness; they had a large white spot on their sides, which came almost up to their backs. They went at least three times as fast as our vessels, and we

Went at the rate of seven knots and a half an hour. On the 31st, we passed a large ice island, which, at the time of our sailing by, was tumbling to pieces. The explosion equalled that of a cannon.

On the 1st of Feb. we saw large quantities of sea weed floating by the ships. Capt. Furneaux acquainted Capt. Cook, that he had seen a number of divers, which very much resembled those in the English seas, and likewise a large bed of floating rock-weed. These were certain signs of the vicinity of land; but could not tell whether it was to the E. or W. We imagined that no land of any extent lay to the W. because the sea ran so high from the N. E. N. and W.—we therefore steered to the E.—lay too in the night, and resumed our course in the morning. We steered northward, and made signal for the Adventure to follow, as she was rather thrown astern by her movement to the eastward. We could not find land in that direction, and we again steered southward. There was an exceeding thick fog on the 4th, on which we lost sight of the Adventure. We fired several signals, but were not answered; on which account we had too much reason to think that a separation had taken place, though we could not well tell what had been the cause of it. Capt. Cook had directed Capt. Furneaux, in case of a separation, to cruize three days in that place he last saw the Resolution. Capt. Cook accordingly made short boards, and fired half hour guns till the afternoon of the 7th, when the weather cleared up, and the Adventure was not to be seen in the limits of that horizon. We were obliged to lie to till the 10th, and notwithstanding we kept firing guns, and burning false fires all night, we neither saw nor heard any thing of the Adventure, and were obliged to make sail without her, which was but a dismal prospect, for we were now exposed to the danger of the frozen climate without the company of our fellow voyagers, which before had relieved our spirits, when we considered that we were not entirely alone in case we lost our own vessel. The crew universally regretted the loss of the

Adventure; and they seldom looked around the ocean without expressing some concern that we were alone on this unexplored expanse.

Nothing material happened to us but various changes of the weather and climate, till the 25th of March, when land was seen from the mast-head, which greatly exhilarated the spirits of our sailors. We steered in for the land with all the sail we could carry, and had the advantage of good weather, and a fresh gale. The captain mistook the bay before us for Dusky Bay, the island that lay at the mouth of it, having deceived him.

We now proceeded for Dusky Bay, in New Zealand, but with much caution as we advanced nearer the land. We passed several islands, &c. and two leagues up the bay an officer was sent out to look for anchorage, which he found, and signified it by signal. Here we anchored in 50 fathom water, and very near the shore. This joyful circumstance happened on the 26th of March, after we had been 117 days at sea, and sailed 3660 leagues, without so much as once seeing land. We had much reason to be thankful to the Divine Providence, that no untoward accident had befallen us, and that our crew were in good health.

## CHAP. II.

*A narrative of what happened in Dusky Bay—Interviews with the natives—Sails to Charlotte's Sound—Is there joined by the Adventure—Transactions in this place—Capt. Furneaux's narrative—The ships proceed to the island of Otaheite, and their arrival there—Are in a critical situation.*

THE country appeared beautiful and pleasant. The islands we passed, before our entrance into Dusky Bay, were shaded with evergreen, and covered with woods; the various shades of the autumnal yellow, intermixed with evergreens, exhibited a de-



lightful contrast. As soon as we anchored we caught great numbers of fish, which eagerly took the bait laid for them. Our first meal upon fish here was looked upon as the most delightful we had ever made. Capt. Cook did not like the place in which he anchored, and sent Lieut. Pickersgill in search of a better, which he soon found. The captain liked it, and called it Pickersgill harbour. This we entered on the 27th of March, by a channel which was scarcely twice the width of the ship.

In this place we determined to stay some time, and examine it thoroughly, as no one had ever entered it before, or landed on any of the southern parts of this country. Our situation was admirable for wood and water. Our yards were locked in the branches of trees, and near our stern ran a delightful stream of fresh water. We made preparations on shore for making all necessary observations, and perform necessary repairs, &c. &c.

We had not hitherto seen any appearance of inhabitants; but on the 28th, some of the officers went on a shooting party in a small boat, and discovered them, and returned to acquaint Capt. Cook therewith. Very shortly a canoe came filled with them, within musket shot of the ship. They stood looking at us for some time, and then returned; we could not prevail upon them to come any nearer, notwithstanding we shewed them every token of peace and friendship. Capt. Cook with several officers and gentlemen, went in search of them the same day. We found the canoe hauled upon the shore, where were several huts, with fire places and fishing-nets, but the people had probably retired into the woods. We made but a short stay, and left in the canoe some medals, looking glasses, &c. not choosing to search any further. Two parties went out the next day, but returned without finding any thing worth noticing.

On the 6th of April we made a shooting party, found a capacious cove, where we shot several ducks; on which account we called it Duck Cove. We had

an interview with one man and two women, as we returned in the evening, who were natives, and the first that discovered themselves; and had not the man halloosed to us, we should have passed without seeing them. The man stood upon the point of a rock, with a club in his hand, and the women were behind him with spears. As we approached, the man discovered great signs of fear, but stood firm; nor would he move to take up some things that were thrown to him. His fears were all dissipated by Capt. Cook's going up to embrace him; the captain gave him such things as he had about him. The officers and seamen followed the captain, and talked some time to them; though they could not understand them. In this conversation, the youngest of the women bore the greatest share. A droll sailor remarked, that the women did not want tongue in any part of the world. We were obliged to leave them on the approach of night; but before we parted, Mrs. Talkative gave us a dance.

On the 7th we made them another visit, and presented them with several things; but they beheld every thing with indifference, except hatchets and spike nails. We now saw all the man's family, as we supposed, which consisted of two wives, the young woman we mentioned before, a boy about fourteen years old, and three small children. They were well favoured, excepting one woman who had a large wen upon her upper lip, and who, on account of her disagreeable appearance, seemed to be neglected by the man. We were conducted to their habitation, which consisted of two mean huts, situated near the skirts of a wood. Their canoe lay in a small creek, near the huts, and was just large enough to transport the whole family from place to place. A gentleman of our party made sketches of them, which occasioned their calling him Toe Toe; which, it seems, is a word which signifies marking or painting. On taking leave, they presented Captain  
Cook

Cook with some trifles, and a piece of cloth of their own manufacture; and pointed to a boat cloak which he wished to have. The hint was taken, and one was ordered to be made for him of red baize.

On the 9th we paid the natives another visit, and signified our approach by hallooing to them; but they neither met us on shore, nor answered us as usual; the reason of which was, that their time was fully occupied in dressing themselves to receive us. They had their hair combed and oiled, stuck with white feathers, and tied upon the crowns of their heads, and had bunches of feathers stuck in their ears. We were received by them with great courtesy in their dress. The man was so well pleased with the present of the cloak, that he took his patta-patoe from his side, and gave it to Captain Cook. We continued here a little time, and took leave, spending the rest of the day in surveying the bay.

On Monday the 12th, this family paid us a visit in their canoe, but proceeded with caution as they approached the ship. We could not by any means persuade them to come on board, but put ashore in a little creek near us. Captain Cook ordered the bagpipes to play, and the drum to beat; the latter only they regarded. They conversed very familiarly (though not well understood) with such officers and seamen as went to them, and paid a much greater regard to some than to others, we supposed that they took such for women. One of the females shewed a remarkable fondness for one man in particular, until she found out his sex: after which she would not let him approach her. We cannot tell whether she had before taken him for a female, or whether, in discovering himself, he had taken some liberties with her.

In the evening, the natives of Dusky Bay took up their quarters very near our watering-place, which was a clear proof that they placed a great deal of confidence in us. We passed two or three days in examining the bay, in making necessary experiments and observations. We likewise shot great quantities of fowl.

On



On the 19th, the man and his daughter before-mentioned ventured on board our ship, while the rest of the family were fishing in the canoe. Before the man would come into the ship, he struck the side of it with a green branch, and muttered some words, which we took for a prayer; after which he threw away the branch and came on board. They viewed every part of the cabin with apparent curiosity and surprize; but we could not fix the man's attention to any one thing for a moment. All we shewed him seemed beyond his comprehension, and the works of nature and art were alike regarded. The strength and number of our decks and other parts of the ship, seemed to strike him with surprize. The man was still better pleased with hatchets and spike-nails, than any thing our ship produced; when he had once got possession of these, he would not quit them.

Captain Cook and three other gentlemen left the ship as soon as they could disengage themselves from the visitors, whom they left in the gun-room, and went out in two boats to examine the head of the bay; at which place they took up their night's lodging; the next day they continued their observations; and fired at some ducks. Upon the report of the gun, the natives, who had not discovered themselves before, set up a most hideous roar in different places. The gentlemen halloed in their turn, and retreated to their boats. The natives did not follow them, neither indeed could they, because a branch of the river separated them, but still made a great noise. As they continued shooting and making their observations, they frequently heard the natives in the woods. A man and a woman appeared at last on the banks of the river, waving something in their hands as a token of friendship. The gentlemen could not get near them, and the natives retreated into the woods. Two others appeared; but as the gentlemen advanced, they retreated likewise, and the woods afforded them thick cover. The captain and his party passed the next night in the same place, and after breakfast embarked to return on board; but saw two men  
on

on the opposite shore, who hallooed to them, and they were induced to row over to them.

Captain Cook with two other gentlemen landed unarmed, and advanced all together, but the natives retreated, nor would they stand still till Captain Cook went up alone. It was with some difficulty that he prevailed with one of them to lay down his spear; at last he did it, and met the captain with a grass plant in his hand, giving Captain Cook one end to hold, whilst he himself held the other. In this position they stood while the natives made a speech, which the captain did not understand, but returned some sort of answer; they then saluted each other, and the native took his coat from his back, and put it on the captain. He then presented each of them with a hatchet and a knife, having nothing else with him. They invited the gentlemen to their habitation, and wanted them to eat, but the tide prevented their accepting of this invitation.

The two natives accompanied the gentlemen to their boats, but seemed very much agitated at the appearance of the musquets, which they looked upon as instruments of death, on account of the slaughter they had observed among the fowls. It was necessary to watch them, for they laid their hands on every thing except the musquets.

On the 24th, Captain Cook took five geese and a gander, which were all that remained of those brought from the Cape of Good Hope, and carried them to a cove, which on this account he called Goose-cove; this was a convenient place, for they were not likely to be disturbed by the inhabitants, there was plenty of food for them, and they were likely here to breed and spread the country with their species. We had now several days fair weather, which gave us a fine opportunity of making necessary preparations for departure.

On the 27th, we found an arm of the sea more convenient than that by which we entered the bay. All we now waited for was wind to carry us out of the harbour by the new passage we had discovered. The rubbish we had made on shore, which chiefly consisted of  
piece

pieces of wood, &c. we set on fire, in order to dry the ground, which being done, Captain Cook sowed the spot with various sorts of garden seeds. We made several efforts to sail, but the wind proving contrary, we made but little way, and were obliged to anchor on the first of May, on the north side of Long Island. Before we leave Dusky Bay, we think it necessary to give our readers some description of it.

There are two entrances into this bay, which are by no means dangerous; and there are numerous anchoring places, which are at once safe and commodious. The country is very mountainous, and the prospect is rude and craggy. The land bordering on the sea-coast, and all its lands, are covered with wood. There are trees of various kinds, which are common in other countries, the timber of which is remarkably fine. Here are likewise a great number of aromatic plants, and the woods are so over-run with supple jacks, that it is difficult to make way through them. The soil is undoubtedly composed of decayed vegetables, which make a deep black mould; it is very loose, and sinks at every step. Except flax and hemp, there is little herbage.

The inhabitants of Dusky Bay are the same with those in other parts of New Zealand; they speak the same language, and adopt the same customs. It is not easy to divine what could induce these few families to separate themselves from the society of the rest of their fellow-creatures. It seems probable that there are people scattered all over this southern island, by our meeting with inhabitants in this place. They appeared to lead a wandering life and don't seem to be in perfect amity with each other.

On the 11th of May, we again made sail, but met with more obstructions. We observed on a sudden a whitish spot on the sea, out of which a column arose which looked like a glass tube. It appeared that another of the same sort came down from the clouds to meet this, and they made a coalition and formed what



is called a water-spout; several others were formed in the same manner soon after.

As we were not very well acquainted with the nature and causes of these spouts, we were very curious in examining them. Their base was a broad spot, which looked bright and yellowish when the sun shone upon it; this appeared when the sea was violently agitated, and vapours rose in a spiral form. The columns were like a cylinder, and moved forward on the surface of the sea, and frequently appeared crossing each other, they at last broke one after another; this was owing to the clouds not following them with equal rapidity. The sea appeared more and more covered with short broken waves as the clouds came nearer to us; the wind veered about, and did not fix in any one point. Within 200 yards of us, we saw a spot in the sea in violent agitation; the water ascended in a spiral form towards the clouds; the clouds looked black and lowering, and some hail-stones fell on board. A cloud gradually tapered into a long slender tube directly over the agitated spot, and seemed descending to meet the rising spiral, and soon united with it. The last water spout broke like the others, no explosion was heard, but a flash of lightning attended this disjunction.

On the 18th of May, at five o'clock in the morning, we opened Queen Charlotte's Sound, and saw three flashes arising from a strong hold of the natives. We imagined them to be signals of the Europeans, and probably of our old friends in the Adventure; when we fired some guns, we were answered, and in a short time saw the Adventure at anchor. We were saluted by Captain Furneaux with 13 guns, which we very cheerfully returned; none can describe the joy we felt at this most happy meeting.

*The following is a narrative of Captain Furneaux's proceedings, and of the various incidents that happened during the separation of the two ships, to their joining again in Queen Charlotte's Sound.*

THE Adventure, on the 4th of February, 1773, after having lost sight of the Resolution, in a very thick fog, had no other means of again meeting with her, but by cruizing in the place where they parted company, or by repairing to Charlotte Bay, the first appointed place of rendezvous, in case such a misfortune should happen. Soon after their separation, the people of the Adventure heard a gun, the report of which they judged to be on the larboard beam: upon which they hauled up S. E. and fired a four-pounder every half-hour, but receiving no return, nor sight of their companions, they kept the course they had steered before the fog came on. In the evening it began to blow hard. The storm was attended with a prodigious fall of rain, every drop the size of a common pea; and the sea broke over the ship's bows to the height of the yard arms; yet, at intervals the weather was more clear. They then stood on the westward, to cruize in the latitude they last saw her in, according to agreement, in case of separation; but the storm returned with renewed fury, and the weather being again exceeding hazy, they were again compelled to bring to, which untoward circumstance prevented them from reaching the intended place; however, they cruized as near the same as they could for three days, when, after having kept beating about the seas, in the most terrible weather that any ship could possibly endure, and giving all hopes over of joining their lost companion, they bore away for winter quarters, 1400 leagues distant from them; and, having to traverse a sea entirely unknown, they took every precaution for their safety, and reduced the allowance of water to one quart per day for each seaman.

On the 8th, they kept between the lat. 52 and 53 deg. S. and reached to 95 deg. E. long. They had here hard gales from the W. attended with snow, sleet, and a long hollow sea from the S. W. And what is more remarkable, after our separation from the Resolution to our making land, we saw but one of the ice islands, though in the most part of our long run, we were 2 or 3 deg. S. of the lat. in which we first met with them.

On the 24th of March, we shipped many waves, one of which stove the large cutter, and with difficulty we prevented the small one from being washed over-board. After this heavy gale, we had more temperate weather, accompanied with calms. At length we made the coast of New Zealand, in 40 deg. 30 min. S. lat. having 24 deg. of long. from Adventure Bay, in a passage of 15 days.

On the 5th of April, we worked up to windward under Point Jackson. We fired several guns while standing off and on, but saw not any inhabitants. At half past two anchored in thirty-nine fathoms water. At eight, weighed and made sail. On the 6th, at eight o'clock, had the Sound open, and worked up under the western shore, and anchored in Ship Cove, in ten fathoms water, and moored the best bower to the N. N. E. In the night heard the howling of dogs, and people hallooing on the east shore.

Captain Furneaux ordered the large cutter to be manned, and sent her with a proper guard, to examine whether there were any signs of the Resolution having arrived at that harbour. The boat returned without the least discovery. Upon this we instantly prepared to send the tents ashore, for the accommodation of those who were sick of the scurvy; while such who enjoyed health were very alert in catching fish, which proved of great service in recovering our sick, to whom fresh provisions were both food and physic.

On the 9th three canoes came alongside the Adventure, having 15 Indians of both sexes, armed with battle axes, and with other offensive weapons, made of



hard wood, in form of our officers' spontoons, and about four feet in length ; but they had neither bows nor arrows. A kind of mop was wrapt round their shoulders, and tied about their waists with a girdle made of grass. Both men and women exhibited a most savage appearance, and were very unwilling to come on board. The captain made them presents, and by signs invited them to trade. They accepted the presents, and some of them assumed courage enough to trust themselves on deck.

One of our gentlemen, seeing something wrapt up, had the curiosity to examine what it was, when, to his great surprise, he found it to be the head of a man, which, by its bleeding, seemed to be fresh cut off. As Captain Cook had expressed his abhorrence of such unnatural acts, the Indians were very apprehensive of its being forced from them, and the man to whom it belonged trembled for fear of being punished. They therefore, with surprising dexterity, in order to conceal the head, shifted it from one to another, till it was conveyed out of sight ; endeavouring, at the same time, to convince us by signs, that no such thing was in their possession.

Soon after they left the ship, and went on shore, not without some visible signs of displeasure. In this visit they often mentioned the name of Tupia, and upon being informed that he died at Batavia, some of them, with much concern, enquired whether we killed him, or he died a natural death ? By these questions, we concluded these Indians were some of the same tribe who had visited the Endeavour. They returned in the afternoon with fish, and fern roots, which they bartered for nails, to them the most valuable articles ; but the man and woman who had the head, were not among them. Having a catalogue of words in their language, we called several things by name, at which they seemed much surprized, and offered a quantity of fish for the catalogue.

On the 10th, about eight in the morning, five double canoes came along-side the Adventure, with  
about

about 50 Indians, at the head of whom was their chief. We purchased of them for nails and bottles, their implements of war, stone hatchets, cloth, &c. upon which they set a high price. Several of their head men came on board, nor would they quit the ship by fair means; but upon presenting a musket with a bayonet fixed, they quickly took leave of us, seemingly in great good humour; and afterwards they visited us daily, bringing with them fish in abundance, which they exchanged for nails, beads, and other trifles. They behaved peaceably, and having disposed of their cargoes, departed at all times seemingly well pleased.

We now placed a guard on a little island, which, at low water, is joining to Mortuara, called the Hippah, at which place was an old fortified town, that had been abandoned by the natives. We took possession of their houses, and, by sinking a fort within-side, made them very comfortable. Here our astronomer erected his observatory; at the same time we struck our tents on Mortuara; and having run further into the cove with the ship, we moored her for the winter, on the west shore, and gave her a winter coat to preserve her hull; then after sending ashore the spars and lumber, for the decks to be caulked, we pitched our tents near the river, at the watering-place.

On the 12th, the weather continuing fair, and the Indians friendly, the captain and officers were preparing to go ashore, when, about nine A.M. no less than ten canoes came paddling down the sound. We counted 120 natives, all armed. When alongside of the ship, they expressed a desire to be admitted on board; but Captain Furneaux not liking their looks and gestures, gave orders that a few only should be admitted at a time. These behaved so disorderly, that the sailors were obliged to turn them out, and it now appeared plainly that the intention of our new visitors was to make themselves masters of the ship: however, finding the crew to be on their guard, they became more civil, but not before a great gun was discharged over their heads, which

which alone intimidated them. Being thus reduced to order, the people on board produced several articles, such as beads, clasp knives, scissars, cloth, paper, and other trifles, which they bartered for battle-axes, spears, weapons of various sorts, fish-hooks, and other curiosities, the manufacture of the country.

Three months were now elapsed since the *Adventure* lost sight of the *Resolution*; but on the 17th, she was seen at Jackson's Point. We immediately sent out boats to her assistance, it being calm, to tow her into the sound. In the evening, she anchored about a mile without us, and next morning, weighed, and warped within us.

Having thus related the progress of the *Adventure*, we now come to record the transactions of both ships after their junction. It were little more than a repetition of the *Adventure's* distresses to recapitulate the effects of the boisterous weather that were felt by the crew of the *Resolution*; being sometimes surrounded with islands of ice, out of which they could not extricate themselves by the utmost exertion of their skill in seamanship; sometimes involved in sheets of sleet and snow, and in mists so dark, that a man on the fore-castle could not be seen from the quarter-deck; sometimes the sea rolling mountains high, while the running tackle, made brittle by the severity of the frost, was frequently snapping, and sometimes rendered immoveable. Amid the hardships of such a traverse, there is nothing more astonishing, than that the crew should continue in perfect health, scarce a man being so ill as to be incapable of duty. Nothing can redound more to the honour of Captain Cook, than his paying particular attention to the preservation of health among his company. By observing the strictest discipline from the highest to the lowest, his commands were duly observed, and punctually executed. When the service was hard, he tempered the severity thereof, by frequently relieving those employed in the performance, and having all hands at command, he was never under the necessity  
of



of continuing the labour of any set of men beyond what their strength and their spirits could bear.

Having by this means left no spare time for gaming, quarrelling, or rioting, he kept them in action, and punished drunkenness with the utmost severity; and thus by persevering in a steady line of conduct, he was enabled to keep the sea till reduced to a very scanty portion of water; and when he despaired of finding any new land, and had fully satisfied himself of the non-existence of any continent in the quarter he last traversed, he directed his course to Charlotte's Sound, the place appointed for both ships to rendezvous in case of separation, and appeared off the same (as has been already related) on Tuesday the 18th of May, 1773: and here we discovered our consort the Adventure, by the signals she made to us, an event, every one in both ships felt with inexpressible satisfaction.

The next morning after our arrival, being Wednesday the 19th, Captain Cook went off in the boat, at day-break, to gather scurvy-grass, celery, and other vegetables. At breakfast-time he returned with a boat load, enough for the crews of both ships; and knowing their salutary efficacy in removing scorbutic complaints, he ordered that they should be boiled with wheat and portable broth, every morning for breakfast, and with pease and broth for dinner, and thus dressed they are extremely beneficial.

On the 20th, we visited the fortifications of the natives where the observatory was fixed. It is only accessible in one place, and there by a narrow, difficult path, being situated on a steep rock. The huts of the natives stood promiscuously, within an inclosure of palisades; they consisted only of a roof, and had no walls. About noon we were visited by two small canoes, in which were five men. They dined with us, and it was not a little they devoured. In the evening they were dismissed with presents.

On the 24th, the Resolution received another visit from a family, who came with no other intent than to partake

partake of our food, and to get some of our iron work. We wanted to know their names, but it was a long time before we could make them understand us. At last we found that the oldest was called Towahanga, and the others Kotugha, Koghoaa, Khoaa, Kollakh, and Taupuaperua. This last was a boy about twelve years of age, very lively and intelligent. He dined with us, eat voraciously, and was very fond of the crust of a pie, made of wild fowl. He did not much relish Madeira wine, which the captain gave him, but was very fond of some sweet Cape wine, which elevated his spirits, and his tongue was perpetually going.

On the 29th, a great number of natives surrounded us with canoes, who brought goods to exchange, for which they got good returns, owing to the eagerness with which our sailors outbid each other, all of them being desirous of having some of the productions of this country. Among these Indians, we saw many women whose lips were of a blackish hue, and their cheeks were painted with a lively red. They had large knees, and slender bandy legs, owing to want of exercise, and sitting in their canoes cross-legged. The ladies were very agreeable to our crews, who had no opportunity of indulging an intercourse with other women since our departure from England; and they soon found out that chastity was not a distinguishing part of their character. Their consent was easily purchased; a spike nail, or an old shirt, was a sufficient bribe. The New Zealanders, encouraged by the gain of this disgraceful commerce, went through both the ships, offering their daughters and sisters to the promiscuous embraces of every one, for iron, tools, &c.

On the 30th instant, we went over to Long Island, to collect some hay, which the crews had made, and to bring some vegetables on board. In this trip, we found several new plants, and shot some small birds, which we had not seen before. In the afternoon, leave was given to some of our sailors to go on shore, where they again purchased the embraces of the women.

men. These fellows must have been very keen indeed, or they would have been disgusted with the uncleanness of their doxies, all of whom had a disagreeable smell, which might be scented at a considerable distance; and their clothes as well as hair swarmed with vermin to a very great degree, which they occasionally cracked between their teeth. It is surprising how men, who had received a civilized education, could gratify the animal appetite with such loathsome creatures. While this party were on shore, a young woman on board stole one of the seamen's jackets, and gave it to a young man of her own tribe; upon the sailor's taking it from the Indian, he received several blows on the face by the young fellow's fist. At first the sailor took this as in joke, but upon perceiving the assailant to be in earnest, he gave him a hearty English drubbing, and made him cry out for quarters. At this time Captain Cook continued his employment of sowing, in different spots cleared for the purpose, all sorts of vegetables that he thought would grow in this country, such as potatoes, beans, peas, corn, &c.

On Tuesday the 1st of June, we were visited by several natives whom we had not seen before, and who brought with them sundry new articles of commerce; among these were dogs, some of which we purchased. Of these people we saw a few oddly marked in their faces, by spiral lines deeply cut in them. Such kind of marks were very regular in the face of a middle-aged man, named Tringho Waya, who appeared to be a person of note, and to have authority over his brethren. This company seemed to understand perfectly well how to traffic, and did not like we should make hard bargains. Some of them entertained us with a dance on the quarter-deck, previous to which they parted with their upper garments, and stood in a row. They sang a song, and its chorus all together, making during the performance many frantic gestures. Music accom-



panied this song and dance, but it was not very harmonious.

Early in the morning of the 17th, we sailed from this place, in company with the *Adventure*, but had frequent hindrances from contrary winds. On the 22d, we were in lat. 32 deg. 30 min. long. 133 deg. 40 min. W. Now the weather was so warm, that we were obliged to put on lighter clothes. Captain Cook having heard that the crew of the *Adventure* were sickly, went on board the 29th of July, when he found the cook dead, and twenty men ill of the scurvy and flux. Only three men were on the sick list on board the *Resolution*, which was certainly owing to the Captain's absolutely enforcing the eating celery and scurvy-grass with the food, though at first the crew did not like it.

On the 6th of August, Captain Furneaux came on board the *Resolution* to dinner, and reported, that his people were much better, that the flux had quite left them, and that the scurvy was at a stand. The scorbutic people had been well supplied with cyder, which in a great measure contributed to this happy change. On the 14th, we saw Osnaburg Island; and on the 15th, at five in the morning, acquainted Captain Furneaux, that it was our intention to put into Oatipihā Bay, near the south end of Otaheite, and get what refreshments we could in that part of the island, before we went to Matavai.

On the 18th, we were within a league of the reef. On account of the breeze failing us, we hoisted out our boats to tow the ships off, but they could not keep us from being carried too near the reef. Many inhabitants came on board from different parts, who brought fruits, &c. to exchange; the most of them knew Captain Cook again, and enquired for Mr. Banks, and others, but none of them asked for Tupia. Our situation became still more dangerous as the calm continued. On sending to examine the western point of the reef in order to get round that way into the bay, we found that there was not a sufficient

ficient depth of water. Both ships were carried with great impetuosity towards the reef, and all the horrors of shipwreck now stared us in the face. The breakers were not two cables length from us, and we could find no bottom to anchor. The *Resolution* came at three fathoms water, and struck at every fall of the sea, the *Adventure* brought up under our bow without striking. The dreadful surf which broke under our stern, threatened our shipwreck every moment. At length we found ground a little without the bason, and got the ship afloat by cutting away the bower anchor, and the tide ceased to act in the same direction. We happily towed off the *Resolution*, and all the boats were ordered to assist the *Adventure*. We happily got once more safe at sea, after narrowly escaping shipwreck.

We anchored in Oatipihā Bay, very near the shore, and were visited by a great number of the natives, who brought roots, fruit, &c. Several of these people asked for Mr. Banks, and other people who were at Otaheite with Captain Cook before. We were informed by these people, that there had been a battle fought between the two kingdoms; that Toutaha, the regent of the greater peninsula, was slain, and that Otoo reigned in his stead. In this battle Tubourāi Tamaide, and several of our old friends fell. A peace was now fully established.

On the 19th, the two commanders made an excursion along the coast, and were entertained by a chief (whom they met) with some excellent fish, &c. to whom in return they made several presents. On the 20th, one of the natives stole a gun from the people on shore. Some of the natives pursued him of their own accord, who knocked him down, and brought back the musket. We imagine that fear operated more with them in this business than any other motive. On the 21st, a chief came to visit us, who brought in a present of fruit, which proved to be some cocoa-nuts that we had drawn the water from and thrown overboard. He had so artfully tied them

up, that we did not soon discover the deceit. He did not betray the least emotion when we told him of it, and opened two or three of them himself, as if he knew nothing of the matter; he then pretended to be satisfied that it was really so, and went on shore, from whence he sent some bananas and plantains. We were informed that Waheatow was come into the neighbourhood, and wished to see Captain Cook, who accordingly went in company with Captain Furneaux, and some gentlemen: they were likewise attended by some natives. About a mile from the landing place they met the chief, advancing to meet them with a numerous train. When the prince perceived the company, he halted. He knew Captain Cook very well, as they had seen each other several times in 1769. He went at that time by the name of Terrace, and took his father's name at his death. We found him sitting on a stool; and as soon as the usual salutation was over, he seated Captain Cook on the same stool with himself; the rest sat on the ground. He inquired after several who had been on the former voyage, and seemed sorry when we told him we must sail the next day, offering the captain that if he would stay he should have hogs in plenty. Captain Cook made him many presents, and staid with him the whole morning. This party returned on board of the ship to dinner, and made this chief another visit in the afternoon, made him more presents, and he gave us two hogs. At the different trading places, some others were got, so that a meal's fresh pork served for the crews of both ships.

Early in the morning of the 24th, we put to sea, and were accompanied by several canoes, who brought cargoes of fruit for sale; neither did they return till they had disposed of them. The sick people on board the *Adventure* got much relief from these fruits. We left a lieutenant on shore, in order to bring some hogs, which they promised to send by him. He returned on the 25th, and brought eight pigs with him. We arrived at Matavai Bay in the evening,



evening, and our decks were crowded with natives before we could get to anchor, almost all of them were acquainted with Captain Cook. Otoo their king, and a great crowd were got together on shore. Captain Cook was going on shore to pay him a visit, but was told that he was gone to Oparee in a fright; which seemed very extraordinary to the captain, as all others were much pleased to see him. Maritata, a chief, was on board, and advised the captain to defer his visit till next morning.

Next morning the captain set out for Oparee, after having given directions to fetch tents for the reception of the sick. Captain Furneaux, Maritata, and his wife, and some others went with the captain. They were conducted to Otoo as soon as they landed, who sat on the ground under a shady tree, with a great number of people around him. Captain Cook made him several presents after the usual compliments had passed, being very well persuaded that it was much to his interest to establish a friendship with this man. Otoo inquired for all the gentlemen who had been there before, as well as for Tupia, and promised to send some hogs on board, but was very backward in saying he would come on board himself, being, as he said, much afraid of the great guns. He was certainly a most timid prince, as all his actions demonstrated. He was a personable well made man, six feet high, and about thirty years of age. His father and all his subjects were uncovered before him, that is, their heads and shoulders were made bare.

On the 27th, the king Otoo came to pay us a visit, attended by a numerous train; he sent before two large fishes, a hog, some fruits, and a large quantity of cloth. After much persuasion he came on board himself, accompanied by his sisters, a younger brother, &c. with many attendants, who all received presents; and when they had breakfasted, carried them home to Oparee. Upon landing, an old lady, the mother of Toutaha, met Captain Cook, seized him  
by

by both hands, and, weeping bitterly, told him that her son and his friend Toutaha, were dead. Had not the king taken her from Captain Cook, he must have joined her lamentations. The next day the king promised to visit us again, but said we must first wait upon him.

On the 29th, the commanders took a trip to Oparee, attended by some officers and gentlemen, and made the king such presents as he had not before seen. — One of them was a broad sword; at the sight of which he was very much intimidated, and desired it might be taken out of his sight. With a vast deal of argument, he was prevailed upon to suffer it to be put on his side, where it remained a very short time. We received an invitation to the theatre, where they entertained us with a dramatic piece, consisting of a comedy and dance. The performers were one woman, which was no less a personage than the king's sister, and five men, and their music consisted of only three drums. — The whole entertainment was well conducted, and lasted about two hours. When this diversion was over, the king desired us to depart, and loaded us with fruit and fish. The king sent more fruit and fish the next morning.

On the 1st of September, we determined to depart, as the sick were nearly recovered, the necessary repairs of the ships were compleated, and plenty of water provided. Most of the day was employed in unmooring the ships; and in the afternoon the lieutenant returned, who had been sent for the hogs promised. With him came Potatou (the chief of the district of Attahounou) with his wife, to pay Captain Cook a visit, and made him a present of two hogs and some fish. The lieutenant got likewise two more hogs. As the wind was westerly, we were obliged to dismiss our friends sooner than they wished; but they were very well satisfied with the reception they met with.

A young man, named Peoro, came on board some hours before we got under sail, and desired to go with

us, to which we consented; and at the same time he asked for an axe and a spike-nail for his father, who came with him on board. They were accordingly given him, and they parted with great indifference, which seemed to indicate that they had deceived us, and no other consanguinity subsisted. Presently a canoe, conducted by two men, came along-side, and demanded Peoro in the name of Otoo. We informed them that we would part with him if they would return the hatchet and spike-nail, but they said they were ashore; so the young gentleman sailed along with us, though he wept when he saw the land at our stern.

On the 2d, we steered our course for the island of Huaheine, and the Resolution anchored in twenty-four fathoms water on the 3d instant, but the Adventure got ashore on the north side of the channel, but she was happily got off again without receiving any damage. The natives received us with the utmost cordiality, several of whom came on board before our commanders went on shore. Some presents were distributed among them, which were gratefully returned by a plentiful supply of hogs, fruit, &c. Here we had a fine prospect of being plentifully supplied with fresh pork and fowls, which was to us very pleasing.

On the 4th, two trading-parties went on shore, which were very well conducted. Captain Cook was informed that Orec was still alive, and waited to see him. The commanders, with Mr. Forster, went to the place appointed for the interview, accompanied by one of the natives. The boat was landed before the chief's house, and they were desired to remain in it till the necessary ceremony was gone through. There stood close to the shore five young plantain trees, which are their emblems of peace; these were, with some ceremony, brought on separately. The first three, were each accompanied by a young pig, whose ears were ornamented with cocoanut fibres; the fourth plantain tree was accompanied by a dog. All these had particular names and meanings, which we could not understand. This part of the ceremony being over, we were desired by our guide to de-



corate three young plantain trees with nails, looking-glasses, beads, &c. With these in our hands we landed, and were conducted through the multitude. We were directed to sit down a few paces before the chief, and the plantains were laid one by one before him.— This being done, the king came to Captain Cook, fell on his neck, and kissed him. A great effusion of tears fell down the cheeks of this venerable old man; and if ever tears spoke the language of the heart, surely these did. Capt. Cook regarded him as a father, and therefore presented him with the most valuable articles he had. Soon after we returned on board, fourteen hogs were sent us, with fowls and fruit in abundance.

In the morning of the 5th instant, we were again visited by this good old man, who brought a hog and some fruit; indeed he sent the captain every day, ready dressed fruit and roots in great plenty. This morning the lieutenant went on shore in search of more hogs, and returned in the evening with 28, and about 70 more were purchased on shore.

When we went to take leave of Oree, while the ships were unmooring, we presented him with things both valuable and useful. We left him a copper-plate, with this inscription, "Anchored here, his Brittannic Majesty's ships Resolution and Adventure, September 1773."

After we had traded for such things as we wanted, we took our leave, which was a very affectionate one. On returning to the ships they were crowded, as on our arrival, with canoes filled with hogs, fowls, &c. Soon after we were on board, the king came, and staid with us, till we were near two miles out at sea, and then after taking another affectionate leave, parted. During our stay here, we procured upwards of 300 hogs, besides fowls and fruit in great abundance.

While at this island, Captain Furneaux engaged a young man, named Omai, a native of Ulietea, who had been dispossessed of his property by the people of Bolabola, to accompany him on his voyage. This young man had a good understanding, honest principles, and a natural good behaviour.

On the 8th, we entered the harbour of Ohamaneno ; the natives crouded about us with hogs and fruit as soon as we anchored. We refused the hogs, as we had already more than we could manage ; but several of the principal people obliged us to take them whether or no. We made a visit on the 9th to Oreo, who is the chief of this part of the island of Ulietea. He expressed great satisfaction on seeing Captain Cook again, and desired him to exchange names with him, which the latter agreed to : this is a distinguishing mark of friendship. Here we traded as usual, but the balance of trade was much in our favour.

On the 10th, the chief entertained us with a comedy : a very entertaining part of which was a theft, committed with amazing dexterity, by a man and his accomplice. Before the thief has time to carry off the prize, he is discovered, and a scuffle ensues : the discoverers are vanquished, and the thieves go off in triumph. We returned to dinner after the play was over, and as we were walking on shore in the evening, one of the natives informed us that there were nine uninhabited islands to the westward.

Oreo and his son paid us a visit early in the morning of the 11th of September, and brought, as usual, hogs and fruit with them. We dressed the youth in a shirt, and some other articles, of which he was not a little proud. After staying some hours, they went ashore, and so did Captain Cook soon after, but to another part of the shore. When the chief heard he was landed, he went of his own accord, and put a hog and some fruit in the boat, and returned without saying any thing of it to any other person. He afterwards came with some friends to dinner. After dinner, Poorau, who is the most eminent chief of the island, paid us a visit. He was introduced by Oreo, and brought a present with him ; for which he received a handsome return. We promised to meet these two chiefs the next morning ; which we accordingly did, in company with several gentlemen. Another play was acted, and two very pretty young women performed, other-

wise this piece was not so entertaining as the one we saw before.

On the 14th, Oreo and some friends paid us a pretty early visit, when we informed him, that we should dine with him on shore, and desired he would let us have two pigs for dinner, dressed in their fashion. We found the floor of the chief's house strewed with leaves, and we were soon seated round them. Soon after the pigs came tumbling over our heads upon the leaves; and they were both so hot as scarcely to be touched. The table was ornamented with hot bread and plantains: we had likewise a quantity of cocoa-nuts to drink. We never saw victuals dressed cleaner nor better in our lives, and it had a most exquisite flavour, much superior to victuals dressed in our mode; how they contrived it we cannot tell, but though one of them weighed fifty pounds at least, it was well done in every part, and not too much in any. We had a great number of attendants, and people came to see us dine in public, to whom pieces of pork were handed. The chief did not refuse his glass of Madeira whenever it came to his turn, and we never at this, or any other time, saw him affected by it. The boat's crew took the remainder when we had dined. In the afternoon, we were again entertained with a play.

On the 15th, we had a sufficient proof of the timorous disposition of these people. We rather wondered that none of them came to the ships as usual. We were afraid, as two men of the Adventure's crew staid out all night, that the natives had stripped them, or done them some other injury, and were afraid we should revenge their conduct. We went ashore, and found the neighbourhood nearly deserted. Presently the two men made their appearance, and reported they had been very civilly treated. We could get no account of the cause of their flight, and could only learn from a few persons who ventured near us, that several were killed and wounded, and pointed to their bodies where the balls of the guns went in and out. Captain Cook was very uneasy at this relation, fearing for the safety of the people  
gone



gone to Otaha. In order to get the best information, the captain determined to go to the chief himself, whom, after much searching for, he found seated under the shade of a house, with a great many people round him. There was a great lamentation as soon as Capt. Cook approached, the chief and all his company bursting into tears. After all this piece of work, it was found that the cause of their alarm was on account of our boats being absent, supposing that the people in them had deserted us, and that we should adopt violent methods to recover them. They were satisfied, when Captain Cook assured them that there was no cause for alarm, and that the boats would certainly return. On the morning of the 16th, we paid the chief a visit, who was in his own house in perfect tranquillity. At this time Poreo left us.

### CHAP. III.

*State of the island—Customs of the natives—Passage from Ulietea to the Friendly Isles—Hervey's Island discovered—Incidents at Middleburg—The two ships arrive at Amsterdam—Incidents that happened during their stay at that island.*

ON the 17th of September, we determined to put to sea, having a good supply of all kinds of refreshments. Before we sailed, Oreo and his son paid us a visit. Several canoes, filled with fruit and hogs, surrounded us; of the latter we could receive no more, our decks being so crowded with them that we could scarcely move. In both ships were about three hundred and fifty. Oreo and his friends did not leave us till we were under sail, and earnestly importuned us to tell when we should return. Capt. Cook, as many young men offered to come away with us, took one on board, about 18 years of age, named Oedidee, a native of Bolabola. When we were out of the harbour and had made sail, a canoe was observed following us, conducted by two men; whereupon we brought to, and when along-side, they delivered to Captain Cook a present of roasted fruit and roots, from Oreo. The

captain, after having made them a proper return, set sail to the west, with the *Adventure* in company. We shall here give some farther account of these islands, some things which are rather interesting having been omitted in the relation of daily transactions and incidents.

In the years 1767, 1768, the island of Otaheite, as it were, swarmed with hogs and fowls; but at this time it was so ill supplied with these animals, that hardly any thing could tempt the owners to part with them; and the little stock they had seemed to be at the disposal of their kings.

When we lay at Oaiti-piha Bay, in the kingdom of Tirrabou, or lesser Peninsula, we were given to understand, that every hog and fowl belonged to Waheatoua; and that all in the kingdom of Opoureonu, or the greater Peninsula, belonged to Otoo. While at this island, we only got twenty-four hogs in seventeen days; half of which came from the kings themselves, and the other half we were inclined to think were sold us by their permission. But with respect to all the fruits produced in the island, with these we were abundantly supplied, except bread-fruit, which was not in season. Cocoa-nuts and plantains we got the most of; the latter, with a few yams and other roots, supplied the place of bread.

We attributed the scarcity of hogs to two causes: first, to the great number of these animals which have been consumed, and carried away for stock, by the ships that have touched here of late years; secondly, to the frequent wars between the two kingdoms. Two we have known have commenced since the year 1767; but at present peace reigns among them, though they do not seem to entertain a cordial friendship for each other.

After our departure, it was our intention to get into the lat. of the islands of Middleburg and Amsterdam, to which end, on the 17th of September, we steered to the west, inclining to the south, with a view of getting clear of the tracts of former navigators. We proceeded

at

at night with great circumspection, frequently laying to, lest we should pass any land unobserved. On the 21st, and the whole of the 22d, we had rain, thunder, lightning, a large swell from the S. and the wind blew from the N. W. for several days; a sign to us that in that direction, no land was near us. This was discovered from the mast-head, on Thursday the 23d, stretching from S. by W. to S. W. by S. We hauled up with the wind at S. E. and found it to consist of two or three small islots, united by breakers, as are most of the low isles in the sea; the whole being in a triangular form, and about six leagues in circuit. This island is in lat. 19 deg. 18 min. S. and in 158 deg. 54 min W. long.

Each of the small connected isles are clothed with wood, particularly of the cocoa-nut kind; but we saw no traces of inhabitants, and had reason to believe there were none. To these islots we gave the name of Hervey's Island, in honour of Captain Hervey of the navy, one of the lords of the admiralty, and now earl of Bristol. As the landing on this isle would have occasioned a delay, we resumed our course to the west, in which we saw some men of war, tropic birds, and flying fish. On the 25th, we again began to use our sea biscuit, the fruit being all consumed; but of fresh pork each man had every day a necessary allowance. On the 29th, in lat. 21 deg. 26 min. S. we altered our course at noon W. half S.

On the 1st of October, at two o'clock P. M. we made the island of Middleburgh, and the next morning bore up for the west side thereof, passing between the same and a small island that lay off it, where we found a clear channel two miles broad. After running about two thirds of its length, half a mile from the shore, we observed it assumed another aspect, and offered a prospect both of anchorage and landing. Upon this we plied in under the island. We were now visited by two canoes, which came boldly alongside of us, and several of the Indians entered the Resolution without hesitation; which mark of confidence determined us to visit them if possible. After making a few trips, we found  
good



good anchorage, and came to in 25 fathoms water, at three cables length from the shore. We had scarcely anchored, when we were surrounded with Indians, some in canoes, and some swimming; several came on board, and among them a chief named Tioony, to whom Captain Cook presented a hatchet, spike-nails, and other articles, with which he was highly pleased.

A party of our people, in company with Tioony, went on shore, who were conducted to a little creek formed by the rocks, right abreast of the ships, where landing was very easy, and the boats secure against the surf. Here we were saluted with loud acclamations, by an immense croud of people, who shewed the most evident signs of pacific intentions, not one of them having so much as a stick, or any weapon in their hands. They thronged so thick round the boats with cloth, matting, &c. that it was some time before we could make good our landing. Many of them, who could not get near the boats, threw over the others' heads whole bales of cloth, and retired immediately, without either asking or waiting to get any thing in return. At length, the chief caused them to open to the right and left, and make room for us to land. We were then conducted up to his house, which was situated about 300 yards from the sea, at the end of a fine lawn, and under some shaddock trees. In the front was the prospect of the sea, and the ships at anchor. Plantations abounding with the richest productions of nature, were placed behind, and on each side. We were seated on mats, laid on the floor, and the natives placed themselves in a circle round on the outside. Having with us bagpipes, Captain Cook ordered them to be played, and in return, the chief directed three young women to sing a song, which they did with exceeding good grace; and a few presents being distributed among these young women, set all the rest in the circle a singing, who did not sit down unrewarded. Their songs were in no wise harsh, but on the contrary musical and harmonious.

Having

Having continued here some time, at our own request, we were conducted to another plantation where the chief had a house, into which we were introduced. Bananas and cocoa-nuts were set before us, and a bowl of liquor, prepared in our presence, of the juice of ava, in the manner already related, the latter of which was presented to each of us in cups made by the folding of green leaves, containing near half a pint each cup; but Capt. Cook was the only person who tasted the liquor: however, the bowl was soon emptied by the natives, of which both men and women partook; but we observed that the same cup was never filled twice, nor did two persons drink out of it; each had a fresh cup and fresh liquor.

The house we were now entertained in was situated at one angle of the plantation, abounding with fruit and trees, whose fragrance diffused a pleasant odour, and the spreading branches made an agreeable shade. Before the house was an area, on which we were seated. It being now noon, we returned on board to dinner, with the chief Tioony in our company. We had on the table fresh pork, but he eat nothing, which we thought somewhat extraordinary. After dinner we again went on shore, and were received as before.

Mr. Forster with his botanical party, and some other gentlemen, took a walk into the country. Our two captains were conducted to the chief's house, where fruit, and some greens were set before us. Having just dined, we could not eat much, but Oedidee and Omai did honour to the desert. We now intimated a desire of seeing the country, and Tioony very readily gratified our wishes. He led us through several plantations, laid out with great judgment, and inclosed with fences made of reeds. Most of them belonged to our hospitable chief, and were all in very good order, and planted with fruit trees. Hogs and very large fowls, the only domestic animals we saw, were running near the houses, and in the lanes that separated the plantations. Every person was very much pleased with this delightful country and the friendly reception we met with; and we  
much

much regretted, that the season of the year, and other circumstances, would not permit our longer stay. In the evening we returned on board, and on Saturday the 2d of October, the ships were crowded with people the whole day, trafficking in perfect good order.

On the 3d, early in the morning, while the ships were preparing to get under sail, Captains Cook and Furneaux, accompanied by Mr. Forster, went off in the boat to take leave of our hospitable chief. He met us at the landing-place, and had we not excused ourselves, he would have entertained us at his house. We therefore spent half an hour with him, seated on the grass, in the midst of a vast crowd of the natives, who seemed to vie with each other in doing what they thought would give us pleasure. Having made the chief a present, consisting of various articles, he was given to understand that we were going away, at which he seemed not at all affected. He went with us into our boat, with two of his friends, intending to accompany us aboard, but when he saw the *Resolution* under sail, he and his companions went into a canoe, and returned on shore. It is remarkable, that on shore this friendly Indian never made the least exchange; but now, during his stay in the boat, he bartered fish-hooks for nails, and engrossed the trade in a manner wholly to himself.

On the 3d, as soon as Captain Cook came on board, we departed from Middleburgh, and made sail down to Amsterdam. When we were about half way between the two isles, we were met by three canoes, and the people made several attempts to come aboard, but without effect, as the rope we threw out to them broke, and we did not shorten sail. They were likewise unsuccessful in boarding the *Adventure*.

We ran along the south-west coast of Amsterdam, at the distance of half a mile from the shore, whereon the sea broke in a great surf. By the help of glasses, we saw the face of the whole island, which, in every part that came under our observation, appeared covered with plantations. Along the shore we perceived the natives running in great numbers; and displaying small  
white



white flags, the emblems of peace, which signals we answered by hoisting a St. George's ensign. At this time three of the natives of Middleburg, who had continued too long on board the Adventure to return, quitted her, and swam to the shore, from whence we concluded they had no strong inclination to accompany us in our voyage.

We had no sooner opened the west side of the isle, than several canoes, having four men in each, came boldly along-side, and, when they had presented us with some ava root, came on board without the least ceremony. Having got into Van Diemen's Road, we anchored in 18 fathoms water, little more than a cable's length from the breakers; and our coasting anchor, to keep the ship from tailing on the rocks, lay in 47 fathoms water. By this time we were surrounded with people, and our seamen were so eager in purchasing their curiosities, even at the expence of clothes, that Captain Cook found it absolutely necessary to prohibit any farther commerce of this sort. The good effect of this order was, that on the 4th, the natives brought us fowls, pigs, bananas, and cocoa-nuts in abundance, for which we exchanged small nails and pieces of cloth, even old rags would purchase pigs and fowls.

A trading party was now settled, and our commanders went on shore, attended by Mr. Forster and other officers, in company with a chief named Attago, who had attached himself to Captain Cook the first moment of his coming aboard, which was before the ships came to anchor. This person, of some note, presented the captain with several articles, and as a greater testimony of friendship, exchanged names with him; a custom which, as we have observed, is practised at Otaheite, and the Socinian Isles. We were received on shore with the same demonstrations of joy as at Middleburg, and the gentlemen set out into the country, except the two commanders, who distributed presents to such of the natives as Attago pointed out, who were afterwards discovered to be

of superior rank to himself; though at this time, by the attention paid to him, he appeared to be the principal person. Having complained of the heat, Attago shewed and seated us under the shade of a large tree; and the people, who were ordered to form a circle, never attempted to pass the prescribed bounds, and croud upon us, as did those of Otaheite.

After having been here some time, we hinted our desire to see the country; whereupon Attago immediately conducted us along a lane that terminated in an open green, on one side of which we saw a place of worship, built on a mount about eighteen feet high. It was an oblong square, inclosed by a stone parapet wall, about three feet in height; from which the mount, covered with green turf, rose to the building with a gradual slope. The building was twenty by fourteen feet. When we had advanced within fifty yards of its front, every one sat down on the green. Three elderly men, whom we took for priests, begun a prayer, having their faces to the house, which lasted about ten minutes, and this being ended, they came and seated themselves by us. We made them presents of what we had about us, and then proceeded to view the premises, to which they did not shew the least reluctance. The house was built in every respect like their common dwellings, with posts and rafters, covered with palm thatch. The caves came within three feet of the ground, and the open space was filled up with strong matting made up of palm leaves, as a wall. In the front, leading to the top of this, were two stone steps; and round the house was a gravel walk: the floor was also laid with fine gravel, in the centre whereof was an oblong square of blue pebbles, raised six inches higher. In one angle of the building stood an image roughly carved in wood, and another lay on one side. This image was turned over and over by Attago, as he would have done any other log of wood, which convinced us that they were not considered by the natives as objects of worship. We put several questions

to Attago concerning this matter, but did not understand his answers; for our readers are to be informed, that, at our last arrival, we hardly could understand a word the people said. We thought proper to leave an offering, and therefore laid down upon the platform some medals, nails, and other things, which our friend immediately took up and put into his pocket. We could not conceive how they could cut such large stones out of the coral rocks, with which the walls were made that inclosed the mount, some of them being ten feet by four, and near six inches thick. The mount, which stood in a kind of grove, was open only to view on that side which fronted the green, and here five rocks met, most of which appeared to the public. Among the various trees that composed the groves, we found the Etoa tree, of which are made clubs, and a sort of low palm, very common in the northern parts of Holland. This place of worship, in the language of Amsterdam, is called A-sia-tou-ca.

On our return to the water-side, we turned off to a road leading into the country, about sixteen feet broad, and as level as a bowling-green; several other roads intersected it, all inclosed on each side with neat reed fences, and shaded by fruit-trees. The country hereabouts is surprisingly fertile, insomuch, that we might easily have imagined ourselves in the most pleasant situation that Europe could afford. Here are various delightful walks, and not an inch of uncultivated ground. Nature, assisted by art, nowhere appears to more advantage than in this fertile spot. The roads, even the high public one, which was about sixteen feet broad, occupied no more space than was absolutely necessary, nor did the boundaries and fences take up above four inches each, and in many places of these were planted useful trees and plants.

On the 5th, early in the morning, the captain's friend Attago, brought him a hog and some fruit, for which, in return, he received a hatchet. The pin-



nace having been sent on shore to trade as usual, soon returned, and we were informed that the natives, in many respects, were exceeding troublesome. The day before they had stole the boat's grapling, and at this time they were for taking every thing out of the pinnace. It was therefore judged necessary to have on shore a guard, and accordingly the marines were sent, under the command of Lieutenant Edgecumbe.

On the 6th, our friend Attago visited us again as usual, brought with him a hog, and assisted us in purchasing many more. We went afterwards on shore, visited the old chief, with whom we staid till noon, and returned on board to dinner, accompanied by Attago, who never one day left Captain Cook. Being about to depart from this island, a present was made for the old king, and carried on shore in the evening. Attago very strongly importuned us to call again at this isle on our return, and requested of the captain, more than once, to bring him a suit of clothes like those he had on, which was his uniform.

The supplies which we produced from this island, were about 150 pigs, double that number of fowls, as many bananas, &c. as we could find room for; and, had we continued longer, we might have had more than our wants required. We were now about to depart, when, in heaving the coasting cable, it broke, by being chaffed by the rocks; by which accident we lost nearly half the cable, together with the anchor, which lay in forty fathoms water, without any buoy to it; from whence a judgment may be formed of this anchorage.

About ten o'clock P. M. we got under sail, but our decks being encumbered with fruit, fowls, &c. we kept plying under the land till they were cleared. As to the natives of these islands, both sexes are of a common size with Europeans; but with respect to complexion, their colour is that of a lightish copper, and more uniformly so than among those of Otaheite and the Society Isles. Of our gentlemen, some thought  
these

these people were a much handsomer race; others were of a contrary opinion. It is certain that they have in general regular features, with a good shape: they are also active, brisk, and lively. The women are especially very merry and sociable, and would chat with us, without being invited, or if we seemed attentive, without considering whether we understood them or not. They appeared in general to be modest: yet instances of those of a different character were not wanting; and some having venereal complaints, Captain Cook took all possible care that the disorder should not be communicated to them. Whenever opportunity served, they discovered a strong propensity to pilfering, and in the art of thieving are full as knowing and dexterous as the Otaheiteans. Their hair, particularly of the females, is black, but some of the men have a method of staining their hair with various colours, as white, red, and blue, which we saw upon the same head. It is wore cut short, and we met with only two exceptions to this custom. The boys have only a single lock on the top of the head, combed upwards, and a small quantity on each side. The beards of the men are shaved quite close with two shells: and even those of an advanced age have fine eyes, and in general good teeth.

The dress of the natives consists of a piece of cloth or matting, hanging below the knees, but from the waist upwards, they are generally naked. We were entertained frequently with songs from the women, in an agreeable style, and the music they accompanied by snapping their fingers, so as to keep time to it. Both this and their voices are very harmonious: and they have a considerable compass in their notes.

The government of this country is much like that of Otaheite; that is, in a king or prime chief (called Areeke) with other subordinate chiefs, who are lords of certain districts, perhaps sole proprietors, to whom the people seem to pay great obedience. We also perceived a third rank, one of whom was our friend

Attago,

Attago, who seemed to have not a little influence over the common people. It was the opinion of Captain Cook, that all the land is private property, and that here, as at Otaheite, are a set of servants or slaves, who have no property in land. Indeed, we cannot suppose every thing to be in common, in a country so richly cultivated. Few would toil if they did not expect to reap, and enjoy the fruits of their labour as their own. Parties of six, eight, or ten people, would frequently bring fruit down to the landing-place; but we always saw one man or woman, superintend the sale of the whole, without whose consent no exchanges could be made; and the things they bartered for were always given them, all which plainly shew they were the owners, and the others only their servants.

#### CHAP. IV.

*The Resolution and Adventure, continue their voyage from Amsterdam—Proceed for Queen Charlotte's Sound—An interview with the inhabitants—The final separation of the two ships—Transactions and incidents in Queen Charlotte's Sound—The inhabitants discovered to be cannibals—The Resolution departs from the Sound, and proceeds in search after her consort—Course of the Resolution in search of the supposed Continent; and the methods pursued to explore the Southern Pacific Ocean—arrives at Easter Island, and transactions there, &c.*

ON the 7th of October, we made sail to the southward, and our route determined was, to make for Queen Charlotte's Sound, there to take in a supply of wood and water, and then to proceed on farther discoveries to the S. and E. We now after a few hours calm, stretched with a S. W. wind to the S. E. but on Sunday the 10th, it veered round to the S. E.



S. E. and E. S. E. upon which we resumed our course to the S. S. W.

On the 21st, at five o'clock A. M. we made the land of New Zealand, extending from N. W. by N. to W. S. W. We stood in shore till we were abreast of Table Cape and Portland Island, which is joined to it by a ledge of rocks. We advanced to the Black Cape on the 22d, and several inhabitants took courage and boarded us, among whom was a chief; he was clothed elegantly, and his hair was dressed in the high fashion of the country. We entertained him in the cabin, and his companions sold us some fish. These people were very fond of nails, and the chief received them with much greater eagerness than when the captain gave him hogs, fowls, seeds, and roots. We obtained a promise from him not to kill any, and if he keeps his word, there are enough to stock the whole island; the present consisted of two sows, two boars, four hens, and two cocks. We likewise gave him several useful seeds, and instructed him in the manner of setting them. The Adventure was now a good way to leeward, and we were obliged to tack, she was consequently separated from us; but we were joined by her on the 24th.

The wind was now very high, so that we could carry hardly any sail; we endeavoured to make Cape Palliser, but we had such a hard gale for two days, that drove us off the land just as we were in sight of port. This was very mortifying; but two favourable circumstances attended it, for we were in no danger of a lee-shore, and it was fair over head. In the evening of the 25th, we endeavoured to find the Adventure, which the storm had separated, but without effect, the weather being so hazy that we could not see a mile round us.

On the 28th, we saw the Adventure about five miles to leeward, and we kept company with her till the night of the 29th, when she disappeared; nor did we see her at day-light. Charlotte's Sound was the appointed place of rendezvous; and as we had separated

rated from the Adventure, we were obliged to make for it, otherwise Captain Cook would have sought a supply of wood and water further south. We stood to the eastward, in hopes of meeting with the Adventure.

On the 2d of November, the morning was clear, and we kept a sharp look out for the Adventure; but as we could not see her, we judged she was got into the Sound. We accordingly made for the shore, and anchored in twelve fathoms water, when several of the inhabitants came on board, who were extravagantly fond of nails. We ran up into Ship Cove on the 3d, where we expected to find the Adventure, but were disappointed. Here we were obliged to unbend the sails, which had been very much damaged in the late storms. Several people came on board, who remembered the Endeavour when on this coast. The empty casks were ordered on shore, and the necessary repairs both to them and the ship were ordered to be made.

On the 5th, one of the natives took an opportunity of stealing one of the seamen's bag of clothes, which with some difficulty we recovered. This made our people more cautious in future. Several strangers came to visit us in five canoes; they took up their quarters in a cave near us, and decamped the next morning with six of our small water-casks. All the people whom we found on our arrival likewise went with them.

On the 22d, our officers visited the dwelling-places of several of the natives, found some human bones, from which the flesh appeared to be lately taken; and on the 23d, they being on shore, saw the head and bowels of a youth, lately killed, lying on the beach; his heart was stuck on a fork, and fixed at the forepart of one of the largest canoes. It is certain that the New Zealanders are cannibals, which this circumstance fully proves; but from all we could learn, they only eat the flesh of those slain in battle.

Before

Before we quitted the Sound, we left a memorandum setting forth the day of our departure, what course we intended steering, &c. and buried it in a bottle, where it must be discovered, should Captain Furneaux touch here, though we did not place any great expectation in such an event. We sailed from hence on the 25th of November, and sought the Adventure in several harbours, but without effect. All hopes of seeing her again were now vanished, and we set about our intended discoveries by ourselves.

On the 21st, we came the second time within the antarctic circle; and on a sudden got among a great quantity of loose ice, and a cluster of ice islands, which it was very difficult to steer clear of, as the fog was very thick. On the 24th, they increased so fast upon us, that we could see near one hundred round us, besides an astonishing quantity of small pieces. Here we spent the 25th, being Christmas-day, in much the same manner as we did the preceding one.

On the 2d of January, 1774, we steered N. W. in order to explore great part of the sea between us and our track to the south; but were obliged to steer northeasterly the next day, and could not accomplish our design. On the 25th, we found ourselves in a pleasant climate, and no ice in view; and on the 26th, came a third time within the antarctic circle.

On the 30th, we saw a very extensive field of ice, and within the field, we distinctly enumerated ninety-seven ice hills, of various sizes; it is probable that such mountains of ice were never seen in the Greenland seas. On this account, the attempt to get farther to the south, though not absolutely impossible, was yet both rash and dangerous. The majority of us were of opinion that ice extended to the pole, as it might possibly join some land to which it had been contiguous since the earliest times. Should there be land to the south behind this ice, it certainly can afford no better retreat for man, beasts, or birds, than the ice itself, with which it must certainly be covered. As we could not go any farther to the south, we



thought it adviseable to tack, and stand back to the north, being at this time in lat. 71 deg. 10 min. S. and 106 deg. 54 min. W. Happily for us we tacked in good time; for we had no sooner done it, than a thick fog came on, which would have been highly dangerous when we fell in with the ice.

On the 1st of February, we were able to take in some more ice, which, though it was cold work to collect, served us for present consumption when melted. Captain Cook was now well satisfied that no continent was to be found in this ocean, but that which is totally inaccessible; he therefore determined to pass the ensuing winter within the tropic, if he met with no other object worth pursuing. It was determined to steer for Easter Island, or Davis's Land, which we knew very little about; and we were happy at the thoughts of getting into a warmer climate. We had continual gales from the 8th to the 12th instant, when it fell a dead calm. The weather varied every day considerably till the 25th. The same day, Captain Cook was taken so ill as to be obliged to keep his bed, and recovered very slowly. It is something very extraordinary, that when he could eat nothing else, he had a mind to a dog of Mr. Forsters's, which was killed, and he relished both the flesh and the broth made of it. This seems very odd kind of food for a sick man; and in the opinion of many people, would create much greater sickness than it was likely to be of any means of removing.

On the 11th of March, land was seen from the mast-head, which proved to be Easter Island; and on the 13th, we came to an anchor in 36 fathoms water, before the sandy beach. One of the natives came on board the ship, where he staid two nights. A party of us went ashore on the 14th, and found a great number of the natives assembled, who were pacifically inclined, and seemed desirous to see us. We very soon found out that these gentlemen were as expert thieves as any before met with; we could scarce keep any thing in our pockets, and it was with difficulty

culty we could keep our hats upon our heads. These people seemed to understand the use of a musket, and to be very much afraid of it. Here were several plantations of potatoes, sugar-canes, and plantains; but otherwise the country appeared barren and without food. As the natives did not seem willing to part with these articles, and as we were in want of them, we determined to stay only a few days.

A party of officers and men were sent up the country in order to examine it; and Captain Cook remained on shore among the natives. An advantageous trade for potatoes was opened, but soon put a stop to by the owners of the spot from whence they were dug. It seems that they had stolen these potatoes: for they all ran away at his approach. From this circumstance it is pretty evident, that they are not more strictly honest among themselves than to strangers. They found the greatest part of the island barren, though in many places there were plantations of the roots before mentioned.

Travelling on, they found in some places a poor sort of iron ore, and afterwards came to a fruitful part of the island on which were several plantations. They could get no good water in their journey; but were obliged to drink what they could get, on account of the extremity of their thirst. They found the natives so addicted to theft, that they were obliged to fire some small shot at a man who took from them their bag of provisions and implements. The shot hit this fellow in the back, on which he dropped the bag and fell; but he soon afterwards got up and walked off. The man ran round them and repeated several words, which they could not understand; and afterwards they were good friends together, no one ever attempting to steal any more.

Many of our people gained the summit of an hill, but could not see any bay or creek, nor discover any signs of fresh water. They returned to the ship in the evening. No shrubs worth mentioning were

found in this excursion, neither did they see an animal of any sort, and but very few birds. They could not discover any thing in the whole island to induce ships in the utmost distress to touch at.

## CHAP. V.

*The Resolution sails from Easter Island to the Marquesas—Departs from the Marquesas, with an account of the inhabitants, &c.—The Resolution leaves Otaheite—Her arrival at the island Huaheine—Various incidents related—The ship proceeds to Ulietea—Incidents during her stay, and the character of Oedidee.*

ON the 16th of March, we took our departure from Easter Isle, and steered for the Marquesas islands, intending to make some stay there, if nothing material intervened. On the 6th of April, we discovered an island, when in lat. 9 deg. 20 min. and long. 138 deg. 14 min. we were about nine leagues distance from it. We soon discovered another, afterwards a third and fourth; these were the Marquesas, discovered in 1595. After various unsuccessful trials to come to an anchor, we came at last before Mendana's port, and anchored in thirty-four fathoms water, at the entrance of the bay.

Several canoes appeared, filled with natives, but it was with some difficulty they were persuaded to come along-side; they were at last induced by some spike nails and a hatchet. From these people we got some fish and fruit. Great numbers of them came along-side next morning, and brought with them one pig, some bread-fruit and plantains, for which they received nails. We often detected them in keeping our goods, and making no return; which practice was not put a stop to till Captain Cook fired a musket ball over the head of one man, who had repeatedly served us so.

When



When Captain Cook saw there were too many natives on board, he desired that they might be well looked after, or they would certainly commit many thefts. Before the captain was well got into the boat, he was told that a canoe, with some men in her, were making off with one of the iron stancheons from the opposite gangway. The captain immediately ordered them to fire over the canoe, but not to kill any body. There was such a noise on board, that his orders were not distinctly heard, and the poor thief was killed at the third shot. The rest that were in the canoe leaped overboard, but got in again just as Captain Cook came up to them, and threw overboard the stancheon.

One of the men sat laughing as he laded the blood and water out of the boat, but the other looked very serious and dejected. We afterwards had reason to think that the father of the latter had been shot. The natives retired with great precipitation at this unhappy accident; but their fears were in some measure allayed by the captain's following them into the bay, and making them presents.

A man who had the appearance of a chief, came off to us with a pig upon his shoulder; he was presented with a hatchet in return, and afterwards great numbers of the natives came along-side, and carried on some traffic. Peace being now established, another party of men were sent ashore. The natives received us civilly, and we got a supply of water, as well as some hogs and fruit. On the 9th, we collected a good many pigs and other refreshments, and returned on board in the evening. We also obtained several pigs from the different canoes that came along-side of us on the 10th, and by this time we had a sufficient number to afford the crews a fresh meal.

We were now determined to remove our quarters, and make sail for Otaheite, hoping to fall in with some of those islands, where our wants might effectually be relieved. We had been nineteen weeks at sea, living the whole time upon salt provisions, and therefore

therefore could not but want some refreshments; yet we must own, with grateful acknowledgments to goodness supreme, that on our arrival here, it could scarcely be said we had one man sick, and but a few who had the least complaint.

On the 14th, we weighed from St. Christina, and stood over for La Dominica, and the night was spent in plying between the two isles. On the 12th, we steered to the S. and at five P. M. Resolution Bay bore E. N. E. half E. distant five leagues, and the island of Magdalena about nine leagues, which was the only view we had of it.

On the 20th, hauling round the west end of the islands, we found a great swell, rolling in from the S. by which we knew we were clear of these low islands; and being not within sight of land, made the best of our way to Otaheite, having a strong gale at E. attended with showers of rain. On the 21st, we made the high land of Otaheite; by sun-set were in with Point Venus, and the next morning anchored in Matavia Bay, in seven fathoms water. Our arrival was no sooner known to the natives, than they paid us a visit, expressed the most lively congratulations, and supplied us with fish and fruit sufficient for all the crew.

On the 24th, Otoo and other chiefs, with a train of attendants, brought us ten large hogs, besides fruit, which made their visit exceedingly agreeable. As the king's coming had been announced to us, and knowing how much it was our interest to keep this chief our friend, Captain Cook met him at the tents, and conducted his retinue, with himself on board, where they staid dinner, and appeared highly pleased with their reception. Next day, notwithstanding we had much thunder, lightning, and rain, the king came again to see us, and brought with him another present. When at Amsterdam, we had collected, among other curiosities, some red parrot feathers. These precious valuables procured us  
hogs,

hogs, fruit, and every other thing the island afforded.

On the 26th, Captain Cook, accompanied by some of the officers and gentlemen, went down to Oparree, to visit Otoo by appointment. When arrived, we saw a large number of canoes in motion, but were much surprised at perceiving more than 300 ranged along shore, all completely equipped and manned; besides a vast number of armed men on the shore. We landed in the midst of them, and were received by a vast multitude, some under arms, and some not. The cry of the former was Tiyono, and Towha, and the latter Tiyono Otoo. Towha was admiral, or commander of the fleet. Upon our landing, we were met by a chief, named Tee, uncle to the king, of whom we enquired for Otoo. Soon after we were met by Towha, who received us in a friendly manner. He took Captain Cook by the one hand, and Tee by the other, and dragged them, as it were, through the crowd that was divided into two parties, both of which proclaimed themselves his friends. One party wanted him to go to Otoo, and the other to remain with Towha. When come to the usual place of audience, Tee left us to go and bring the king. Towha insisted on the captain's going with him, but he would not consent. Tee being desirous of conducting the captain to the king, Towha opposed, and he was obliged to desire Tee to desist, and to leave him to the admiral and his party, who conducted him to the fleet.

When we came to the fleet, we told 160 large double canoes, equipped, manned, and armed. The chiefs, and all those on the fighting stages, were habited in cloth, turbans, breast-plates, and helmets. Their vessels were full dressed with flags, streamers, &c. so that the fleet made such a noble appearance as we had never before seen in this sea, and what no one could have expected. Their instruments of war were clubs, spears, and stones. We counted, exclusive of the vessels of war, 170 sail of smaller double canoes,



canoës, all rigged with mast and sail, which the war canoes had not. These we judged were designed for transports, victuallers, &c. for in the war canoes were no sorts of provisions whatever.

We conjectured that in their 330 vessels, there were no less than 7760 men; a number incredible, especially as we are told they all belonged to the districts of Attahourou and Ahopataë. Having viewed this fleet, it was our intention to have gone on board, could we have seen the admiral. At last Tee came, by whom we were informed, that he was gone to Matavai. When we got to Matavai, our friends told us, that this fleet was part of the armament intended to go against Eimeo, whose chief had thrown off the yoke of Otaheite.

On the 27th, in the morning, Towha sent us by his servants, two large hogs and some fruit. The bearers of this present had orders not to receive any thing in return, nor would they when offered them. Some of our gentlemen went with the captain in his boat to Oparree, where we found Towha and the king; after a short visit, he brought them both on board, together with Tarevetoo, the king's younger brother. When they drew near the ship, the admiral, who had never seen one before, expressed strong signs of surprize, and when on board, he was shewed, and beheld every part of it with great attention. When Towha retired after dinner, he put a hog on board without our knowledge, or waiting for a return; and soon after Otoo and his attendants departed also.

On the 1st of May, several chiefs supplied us with a large quantity of provisions; and the day following our friend Towha sent us a present of a hog, and a boat loaded with various sorts of fruits and roots. On the 7th, in the morning, we found Otoo at the tents, of whom the captain asked leave to cut down some trees for fuel. He took him to a growing near the sea shore, the better to make him understand what sort he wanted: and he seemed much pleased when he told him

him no trees should be cut down that bore any kind of fruit. This assurance from us he repeated several times aloud to the people about us.

In the afternoon, when on board, we were honoured with a visit from the royal family, consisting of Otoo, his father, brother, and two sisters: but this was properly the father's visit, who brought the captain a complete mourning dress, a present he much valued; for which he had in return whatever he desired, which was not a little; and to the rest of the company were presented red feathers. They were then conducted ashore in the captain's boat. Otoo and his friends were so well pleased with the reception they met with, that, at parting, we were granted the liberty to cut down as many trees as we wanted, and what sort we pleased.

On the 8th, our friendly connections with the natives were interrupted by the negligence of one of our centinels at the tents, who had his musket carried away, he having slept or quitted his post. We received an imperfect account of this affair from Tee, but understood enough to know that something had happened, which alarmed the king, who, Tee said, was under great apprehensions of being killed. We therefore lost no time in going ashore; and when landed, were informed of the transaction by the serjeant who commanded the party. Most of the natives had fled at our approaching the tents. Tarevatoo slipped from us in a moment, and a very few besides Tee had courage to remain.

We went immediately in search of Otoo, and in the way endeavoured to allay the fears of the people. Having advanced some distance from the shore in the country, Tee on a sudden stopped, and advised our returning, saying, he would proceed to the mountains, whither Otoo had retired, and inform him that we were still his friends. The captain thought it was to no purpose to go farther, we therefore took Tee's advice, and returned on board.

After this, Oedidee was dispatched to the king, to let him know his fears were groundless, seeing the captain required of him only what was in his power, the return of the musket. A short time after, we saw six large canoes coming round Point Venus. Suspecting that one belonged to those that had committed the theft, it was resolved to intercept them, for which purpose a boat was put off, and another ordered to follow. One of the canoes was ahead of the rest, and seemingly making for the ship. We put along-side of her, and found three women that we knew. They said, they were going aboard the ship with a present to the captain, and that the other canoes were laden with fruit, hogs, &c. Satisfied with this intelligence, the captain recalled his orders for intercepting them, thinking they also, as well as this one, were bound for the ship.

We therefore left the single canoe, and proceeded to shore, to speak with Otoo; but upon landing, found he had not been there. Looking behind us, we saw all the canoes, the one we had left near the ship not excepted, making off in the greatest haste.—Vexed at being thus deceived, we resolved to pursue them, and as we passed the ship, Captain Cook gave orders to send out another boat for the same purpose. We overtook and brought five out of the six along-side, but the one by which we were outwitted got clear off.

In one of the prizes was a friend of Mr. Forster's, who had hitherto called himself an Earee, also three women; his wife, daughter, and the mother of the late Toutaha. At this time, Tee and Oedidee came on board, and assured us, that the man who had stolen the musket was from Tiarabou; and, that we might credit their declaration, they desired us to send a boat to Waheatoua, the king of Tiarabou, offering to go themselves in her, and recover the musket. This story, though not altogether satisfactory, carried with it an air of probability; and thinking it better to drop the  
the



the affair altogether, the captain suffered Mr. Forster's friend to depart with his canoes.

The captain then desired Tee to tell Otoo, that he should give himself no farther concern about the musket, being satisfied none of his people had committed the theft. We had now given it up, concluding it to be irrecoverably lost, but in the dusk of the evening, it was brought to the tents, together with other things we had not missed, by three men, who, as well as some other people present, affirmed, that it was by one belonging to Maritata the things had been stolen; but we concluded both Tee and Oedidee had intentionally deceived us.

On the 9th, Tee came again aboard to inform us, that Otoo was at Oparee, and requested of the captain to send a person to let him understand if he was still his friend. He was asked why he did not do this himself as he was desired? he made a trifling excuse, but we thought he had not seen Otoo. As the natives brought not any thing to market, and a stop was consequently put to our trade with them, it was judged time ill spent to send any more fruitless messages; a party therefore set out, with Tee in our company, and having reached the utmost boundaries of Oparee, the king at last made his appearance.

The first salutations being over; and having taken our seats under the shade of some trees, Otoo desired the captain to speak. He began with blaming the king for giving way to groundless alarms, he having always professed himself his friend, and was displeased only with those of Tiarabou, who were the thieves. The captain was then asked, how he came to fire at the canoes? By way of excuse, he told him they belonged to Maritata, one of whose people had stolen the musket, and, added the captain, "If I had them in my power, I would destroy them, or any other belonging to the district of Tiarabou." We knew this declaration would please them, from the natural aversion the one kingdom has to the other; and it was enforced by pre-

sents, which we believe were the strongest arguments in favour of a reconciliation: for after these weighty reasons, things were soon restored to their former state, by Otoo's promising, on the word of a king, that we should be supplied the next day with provisions and fruit as usual.

Peace and amity being now once more established, we accompanied him to his proper residence at Oparee, where he obliged us with a view of some of his dock-yards, where we saw several large canoes, some building, and others lately built, some of which were the largest we had ever seen. Having gratified our curiosity, we repaired on board, with Tee in our company, who, after he had dined with us, went to acquaint Happi, the king's father, that all differences were brought to a happy conclusion.

In the afternoon, Otoo himself brought us a large supply of provisions, and presently after, more fruit was brought us than we knew what to do with; for the natives, we believe, thought themselves injured equally with ourselves; and we knew they had every thing ready for our market, when they were permitted to bring them. Otoo desiring to see some of our great guns fired, his wish was complied with, but the sight being entirely new, gave him as much pain as pleasure; but in the evening, when we entertained him with a shew of fireworks, he expressed much greater satisfaction.

On the 11th, a large supply of fruit came to market, and among the rest a present from Towha, the admiral; for which the captain made a suitable return. At this time all the necessary repairs of the ship being nearly finished, it was resolved to leave Otaheite in a few days; to this end every thing was ordered off from the shore, that the natives might see we were about to leave.—And next day, Oberea, whom we had not seen since 1769, paid us a visit, bringing with her hogs and fruit. Otoo also came soon after, with a number of attendants, and a large quantity of provisions. Captain Cook was very generous in his returns of presents, and in the evening

evening entertained them with fire-works, thinking it might be the last time we might see these friendly people, who had so liberally relieved our wants.

On the 13th, we were not ready to sail, but the wind was favourable and the weather fair. Oedidee was not yet returned from Attahourou, and various reports were circulated concerning him. Some said he was at Matavai; others, that he intended not to return; and there were those who affirmed he was at Oparee. With a view of discovering the truth, a party of us repaired to Oparee, where we found him. Towha was also here, who, notwithstanding he was afflicted with a swelling in his feet and legs, nevertheless resolved to see the captain before he sailed, and had advanced with this intent thus far on his journey. The day being far spent, we were obliged to shorten our stay, and after having seen Otoo, we returned on board with Oedidee.

This youth, we found, was desirous of remaining at Otaheite; the captain, therefore, told him he was at liberty to remain there, or to quit us at Ulietea, or go with us to England. That if the latter was his choice, he must look upon him as his father, as it was very probable he would never return to his own country.—The youth threw his arms about his neck, wept much, and said, many of his friends persuaded him to remain at Otaheite. Oedidee was well beloved in the ship, on which account every one was persuading him to go with us.

On the 14th, early in the morning, Oedidee came on board, and Mr. Forster prevailed upon him to go with us to Ulietea. Towha, Potatou, Oamo, Happi, Oberea, and many more of our friends, paid us a visit. The wife of Towha was with him; this chief was hoisted in, and placed on a chair on the quarter-deck. Among other presents, we gave the admiral an English pendant, which, after he had been instructed in the use of it, pleased him more than all the rest. The same day, the king, and Tee, his prime minister, came



came on board, and brought with them a hog, and a turtle of about sixty pounds weight, who, after remaining on board some time, took an affectionate farewell.

On Sunday the 15th, we put to sea, with a fine breeze in our favour, and pursued our voyage to the N. W. and N. W. by W. The same night we made the island of Huaheine, and anchored in the north entrance of O'Wharre harbour. Oree, the chief, and several of the natives, paid us visits. Oree, among other articles, brought with him a hog; and the next day, Captain Cook returned Oree's visit, presenting to him some red feathers, which he held in his hand, and muttered over them a prayer. This morning the people began to bring us fruit. The chief sent us two hogs, which were followed by himself and friends, who came to dine with us. Oree asked for axes and nails, which were readily given him.

After dinner, Mr. Forster, and a party with him, went up the country to examine its productions; which he continued as a daily task during the ship's continuance in this harbour. As a servant of Mr. Forster's was walking along the shore, without a companion, he was beset by several stout fellows, who would have stripped him, had not some of our people arrived to his assistance. One of the men made off with a hatchet. This day, the number of natives that came about the ship was so great, that it was found necessary to place centinels in the gangways, to prevent the men from coming on board; but no opposition was made to the women, so that the ship was crowded with them.

On the 17th, we found Oree, and a great number of the principal people, assembled in a house consulting together. We heard the late robbery mentioned by them several times; but the chief assured us, neither himself nor his friends had any hand in the same, and desired Captain Cook to kill with his guns those that had. We could not learn where the robbers were gone, and therefore, at present, took no more notice of the

the affair. In the evening a dramatic entertainment was exhibited. The subject of the piece was that of a girl running away with us from Otaheite. This was not wholly a fiction, for a girl had taken her passage with us from Ulietea, and was at this time present when her own adventures were represented; she could hardly refrain from tears while the play was acting; and it was with much difficulty we persuaded her to stay out the entertainment. At the conclusion of the piece, the girl's return to her friends was represented; and the reception she met with was not a favourable one. It is very probable that this part of the comedy was designed to deter others from going away with us.

On the 18th, king Oree came on board and dined, and the captain, at his desire, ordered the great guns to be shotted and fired into the water, by way of a salute at his arrival and departure; indeed he had by Oedidee given us to understand, that he expected the same honours to be paid to him, as had been shewn to the chiefs of Otaheite.

A party of petty officers having obtained leave to amuse themselves in the country, they took with them some hatchets, nails, &c. in bags, which were carried by two natives, who went with them as their guides. These fellows made off with the trust reposed in them, and artfully enough effected their escape. The party had with them two muskets; and after it had rained some time, the natives pointed out some birds for them to shoot. One of the guns went off, and the other missed fire several times. At this instant, when the fellows saw themselves secure from both, they took the opportunity to run away, and not one of the party, being all much surprised, had presence of mind enough to pursue them.

On the 19th, a report was current, that the natives intended to rise and attack the ship. The captain, though he did not think them serious in such an attempt, yet was unwilling totally to disregard the intimation; he therefore ordered twenty stand of arms to be in readiness, in case any commotion should be observed

observed among them; but though the rumour increased throughout the day, yet no preparations could be perceived to countenance such a report; and the king continued his visits as usual, never coming empty handed.

On the 20th, the first and second lieutenants, with one of the mates, being out on a shooting party, they were beset by more than fifty of the natives, who first took from them their arms, and then robbed them of what articles they had carried with them to trade. In the scuffle, the first lieutenant lost the skirt of his coat, and one of the other gentlemen received a severe blow. When the robbers had stripped them of their merchandise, they restored to them their fowling-pieces. When this transaction came to the knowledge of Captain Cook, he went immediately with a boat's crew on shore, and entered a large house, wherein, were two chiefs. This, with all their effects, he took possession of, and remained there till he heard that the gentlemen had got safe on board, and had all their things restored to them. Oedidee informed us, Oree was so much affected with the relation of this, that he wept much. When on board, we learned from the officers themselves, that a small insult on their part, was the occasion of the affray; but some chiefs interfering, took the officers out of the croud, and caused every thing which had been taken from them to be restored.

On the 21st, we saw upwards of sixty canoes, most of the people in them being Eareeoies, steering for Ulietea, and we heard they were going to visit their brethren in the neighbouring islands. It seems these people have customs among them peculiar to themselves; and assist each other when necessity requires: we may therefore call them the Free Masons of Huaheine.— This day Oree sent a message to Captain Cook, desiring he would come on shore, and bring twenty-two men with him, in order to chastise the robbers. Oedidee brought with him twenty two pieces of leaves to assist his memory, a custom very common among these people.



people.' This message seemed to be an extraordinary one, and therefore the captain went to the chief for better information. Oree informed him that these fellows were a set of banditti, who had formed themselves into a body, and had resolved to rob all they met, for which purpose they were now assembled and armed. These robbers Oree wanted us to attack, the captain said they would fly to the mountains; but he assured us to the contrary, and desired we would destroy both them and their habitations, only sparing their canoes. This request seemed extraordinary, but the captain was resolved to comply with it in part, lest these fellows should make more head, and become formidable; and also with a view of preventing the report from gaining ground in Ulietea, where we intended going, and we were apprehensive associations might be formed in like manner, and the people might treat us the same way, or worse, they being more numerous.

Captain Cook and his officers made ready to accompany king Oree in the expedition against the robbers; and having ordered fifty marines, with some sailors, to be well armed, they landed near the palace of the king, and having required him to conduct them according to his promise, he very readily consented, and they all set out together in very good order. The party increased as we proceeded; and Oedidee told us, that several of the banditti had joined us, with a view of decoying us into a place where they might attack us to advantage. As we could place no confidence in any other person, we took his advice, and proceeded with caution.

We marched several miles, when Captain Cook declared he would proceed no farther; besides, we were informed that the men had fled to the mountains. At this time we were about to cross a deep valley, with steep rocks on each side, where our retreat might have been rendered difficult, by a few men assailing us with stones. Oedidee persisted in his opinion; and we marched back in the same order as we came.

As we went along, we observed several people coming down the sides of the hills with clubs, which they immediately hid when they found we saw them. This was some confirmation of Oedidee's suspicions; but we could not persuade ourselves that the chief had any such intention, whatever might be the designs of his people. In our return we halted in a convenient place, and wanting some refreshments, they were immediately brought us.

When we arrived at the landing-place, we discharged several vollies, to convince the natives that we could support a continual fire; after which we returned on board, and the chief dined with us, having brought with him a hog ready dressed. After dinner we received a great number of presents as peace-offerings. Two chiefs brought each of them a pig, a dog, and some young plantain trees, and with due ceremony presented them singly to the captain. Another brought a very large hog, with which he had followed us to the ship. A quantity of fruit was brought us by others; so that we were likely to make more by this little excursion, than by all the presents we had made them; and the expedition had one good effect at least, for the people were convinced that muskets were more terrible things than they at first imagined.

We were promised a larger supply of hogs and fruit the next day; but the chief was not as good as his word. We went ashore in the afternoon, and found him sitting down to dinner. The people about him immediately began chewing the pepper-root; a cup of the juice was presented to Captain Cook, but he did not like the method of brewing it. Oedidee was not so nice, and immediately swallowed what the captain refused. The chief washed his mouth with cocoa-nut water after he had taken the juice of the pepper-root, and ate a large quantity of plantain, repe, and mahee, and finished his dinner by eating and drinking a composition of plantains, bread-fruit, mahee, &c. of the consistence of a custard; of this he took about three pints. He dined in  
the

the open air at the outside of his house, and during dinner time a play was performing within the house.

On the 23d, we put to sea. The chief and Captain Cook took an affectionate leave of each other. When Oree heard that we never intended coming there any more, he said, "Let your sons come, we will treat them well." We did not get a sufficient supply of hogs at this island, though they did not appear to be scarce; but we obtained more fruit than we well knew what to do with. Our stock in trade being nearly exhausted, we found it necessary to set the smiths to work, in making different sorts of iron tools, that an influence might be kept up at the other islands, and to enable us to procure refreshments.

On the 24th, we anchored in Ulietea, and were visited by Oreo the chief, who brought with him a handsome present. A party of us went ashore to make the chief a present, and as we entered his house we were met by five old women, who lamented very bitterly, and cut their faces in a shocking manner. This was not the worst part of the story, for we were obliged to submit to their amiable embraces, and get ourselves covered with blood. After this ceremony was over, they washed themselves, and appeared as cheerful as any other person.

On the 27th, Oreo paid us a visit, in company with his wife, son, and daughter, and brought with them a very handsome present of all kinds of refreshments.— We accompanied them on shore after dinner, and were entertained with a play, which concluded with the representation of a woman in labour, performed by a set of brawny fellows; the child that was brought forth was at least six feet high. As soon as the child was delivered, they pressed his nose, which seemed to indicate that they really take this method with all their children, which occasions that flatness which their noses generally have.

On the 29th, several things were stolen out of our boats, which lay at the buoy; but on application to the chief, we had them all returned, except an iron



tiller, and in lieu of that they brought us two large hogs. On the 30th, a party of us set out for Oedidee's estate, accompanied by the chief and his family. When we arrived there, we found that Oedidee could not command any thing, though he had promised us hogs and fruit in abundance; they were now in possession of his brother. We had here an opportunity of seeing them kill and dress a pig, which was done in the following manner: three men first strangled the hog; the hog was laid on his back, two men laid a stick across his throat, pressing at each end, the third man stuffed up his fundament with grass, and held his hind legs. The hog was kept in this position for ten minutes, before he was dead. An oven which was close by, was heated.— They laid the hog on the fire as soon as he was dead, and singed off his hair; he was then carried to the seaside and washed. The carcase was then laid on clean green leaves, that it might be opened. They first took out the lard, and laid it on a green leaf, the entrails were then taken out and carried away in a basket; the blood was put into a large leaf. The hog was then washed quite clean, and several hot stones were put into his body; it was then placed in the oven on his belly, the lard and fat were put into a vessel, with two or three hot stones, and placed along side the hog; the blood was tied up in a leaf, with a hot stone, and put into the oven; they covered the whole with leaves, on which they placed the remainder of the hot stones; they afterwards threw a great deal of rubbish in, and covered the whole with earth. A table was spread with green leaves, while the hog was baking, which took up little more than two hours. We sat down at one end of the table, and the natives, who dined with us, at the other; the fat and blood were placed before them, and the hog before us. We thought the pork exceeding good indeed, and every part of it was well done. The natives chiefly dined off the fat and blood, and said it was very good victuals. The whole of this cookery was conducted with remarkable cleanliness. This estate of Oedidee was small but very pleasant; and the houses

formed

formed a pretty village. After we had dined, we returned to the ship. In our way we saw four wooden images, each two feet long. They stood on a shelf, had a large piece of cloth round the middle, a turban on their heads, stuck with cocks' feathers. They told us these were their servants' gods.

On the 4th of June, the chief and his family came on board to take leave, bringing a handsome present with them. We were very much importuned to return to this place; when we told them we could not, their grief was bitter, and we believed it to be real. They desired Captain Cook to acquaint them with his burial place, and said they would be buried with him. A strong proof of affection and attachment. We left Oedidee here, as we could not promise that more ships would be sent from England to those islands; he left us with infinite regret. Oedidee did not leave us till we were out of the harbour, and staid to fire some guns, it being his Majesty's birth-day. This youth was of a gentle, docile, humane disposition, and would have been a better specimen of the natives than Omai,

## CHAP. VI.

*Departure of the Resolution from Ulietea—Incidents at Savage Island—Passage from Savage Island to Rotterdam—Transactions at this place, and the insolence of the natives—An account of the people in Turtle Island—Transactions while here, and ferocious behaviour of the inhabitants—The Resolution continues her course from Port Sandwich—Steers in a direction for Sandwich Island, in order to discover the Southern extremity of the Archipelago—Hostile behaviour of the natives of Sandwich Isle—More new islands discovered.*

ON the 20th, we discovered land, and the inhabitants appearing upon the shore, we equipped two boats, and as we approached, the inhabitants retired into the woods. When we landed, we took post on a high

high rock to prevent a surprise, and the botanising party began collecting plants, with which the country seemed covered. Captain Cook took two men with him and entered the woods, but on hearing the inhabitants approach, they returned. We made every friendly sign in our power, but were answered by menaces; and one of the natives threw a stone, which struck one of our party. Two muskets were fired indiscriminately, and they all retreated into the woods.

Having embarked, we proceeded along the coast till we came to a place where four canoes lay. Captain Cook and only four gentlemen with him, went to look at the canoes. Very soon after the natives rushed out of the wood upon us, and we endeavoured, to no purpose, to bring them to a parley; they threw their darts, and appeared very ferocious. We discharged some muskets in the air, but this did not intimidate them, for they still threw darts and stones. Captain Cook's musket missed fire, otherwise he would certainly have killed the ringleader of them. The men drawn up on the rock fired at some who appeared on the heights, which allayed the ardour of our antagonists, and we had an opportunity to join the marines. We do not think any of the natives were hurt, but they all retreated into the woods, and seeing we could make nothing of them, returned to the ship.

Captain Cook named this place Savage Island, from the conduct and aspect of the islanders its situation is south latitude 19 deg. 1 min. west longitude, 169 deg. 37 min. its form is circular, and is about eleven leagues in circumference. The country appears entirely covered with trees and shrubs. Nothing but coral rocks were to be seen along the shore.

We steered for Rotterdam, and as we drew near it, several canoes laden with fruit came along-side of us, but we did not shorten sail. The people on board them wanted us much to go towards their coast, telling us, as well as they were able, we might safely anchor there. We came to anchor on the north side of the island on the 26th. The inhabitants brought us great quantities of



of yams and haddocks, for which we gave them old rags and nails. We got a plentiful supply of fruit and water, but it was rather brackish. Happening to leave the surgeon on shore, he got a canoe to bring him off; but just as he was getting into it, one of the natives snatched away his musket and ran off with it, after which no person would bring him on board. He certainly would have been stripped, had he not presented a tooth-pick case to them, which they took for a little gun. Captain Cook hearing of this transaction, went on shore, but the natives fled at his approach. A boat was sent ashore on the 28th for some water, when the people behaved in a rude and daring manner; it was with difficulty they got their water-casks filled, and into the boats again. The lieutenant who commanded this party had his gun snatched from him, and most of the people had something or other taken away from them. This was the effect of ill-timed lenity. Captain Cook landed soon after, and resolved to have the gun restored. All the marines were ordered ashore armed. As the botanising party were in the country, three guns were fired from the ship to alarm them, as we did not know how the natives might behave to them. The natives knew well enough what we intended, and brought the musket long before the marines got ashore.

An old woman presented a young girl to Captain Cook, giving him to understand that she was at his service. The girl was artful enough, and wanted to bargain for a shirt and a spike nail, neither of which the captain had with him. He was then told that he might retire with her upon credit, which he refused. The old procuress then abused him, saying he was insensible to her charms; the girl was very pretty, and wanted to go aboard the ship with the captain; but he would not take her, as he had given orders no women should be admitted there.

On the 29th, we sailed, and a great many canoes came up with us, laden with fruit, &c. which were exchanged for the usual commodities. The passion of our people for curiosities was as great as ever, and they  
were

were stripped of most of the clothes the ladies of Otaheite had left them. We stretched out for Amattafoa on the 30th, and several canoes came to us from all parts with the common articles; out of one of them we got two pigs, which in this part of the world are a scarce commodity.

On the 1st of July, we discovered land: the master and the boat were sent to the sound to find anchorage; four or five people were discovered on the shore, who retreated as the boat advanced, and they all fled to the woods when the boat landed. The master returned, and brought word there was no sounding without the reef. This island is situated S. latitude, 19 deg. 48 min. W. longitude, 178 deg. 2 min. We called it Turtle Island.

After a good deal of stormy weather, we saw an island, called by the natives Ambrym, on the 21st of July. We discovered a creek as we drew nearer the shore, which had the appearance of a good harbour: many people were assembled, who invited us on shore, but we did not choose to go, as they were armed with bows and arrows. We sent out two armed boats to discover a port about a league more to the south, where we anchored in eleven fathoms water. Several of the natives came off to us, but acted with great caution; at last they trusted themselves along-side, and exchanged arrows for pieces of cloth. Presents were made to two men who ventured on board, and others came at night for the same purpose, but they were not admitted.

On the 22d, in the morning, we landed, in the face of 500 men, armed with bows, arrows, spears, and clubs, but they made no opposition. Captain Cook advanced alone, with nothing but a green branch in his hand: on seeing this, a person who seemed to be a chief, gave his bow and arrows to another, and came to meet him in the water, took the captain by the hand, and led him up to the croud. The marines were at this time drawn up on the beach. Captain Cook distributed several presents among them. We made signs that we  
wanted

wanted wood, and in return they made signs for us to cut down the trees. They brought a pig for a peace offering, and we flattered ourselves with the hopes of procuring more, but these were vain and delusive; for we only got a small quantity of water, and about half a dozen cocoa-nuts. They parted freely with their arrows, but we could not purchase of them any bows without a great deal of difficulty. They called this island Mailicolæ, another near it Apee, and a third Paoon.

Continuing our course from hence on the 24th, we discovered several small islands, one of which we came very near. It is about twelve miles in circumference, and has three high peaked hills upon it. We then passed a group of small islands which we called the Shepherds' Isles, and discerned people on every one of these islands; but there were no soundings near them at 182 fathoms. We found the southern lands to consist of one large island, the extremities of which we could not see. On the north side of this extensive island we saw three or four smaller ones. One of these we called Montague, another Hinchinbrook, and the largest Sandwich Island. Several people came down as we passed Montague Island, and seemed to invite us in a friendly manner on shore. As we could not approach it at this time, we steered more to the west, as there appeared a bay to run up in that quarter, and a good shelter from the winds. But as this was not so much our object as to discover the southern extremity of the Archipelago, we steered E. S. E. which was the direction of Sandwich Island.

On the 1st of August, we gained the N. W. side of the island, and saw several inhabitants, who invited us ashore by various signs. Here we should have anchored, but the wind obliged us to alter our design. Besides, we wanted to explore the land to the S. E. therefore ranged along the coast. As we continued our course, we saw a light a-head, and it being near evening,



evening, did not choose to proceed any farther, but stood off and on all night.

On the 3d, we sent a boat on shore to get some wood if possible, being much in want of that article; but our people could not land on account of a high surf of the sea; and they saw not any natives on that part of the isle. Having anchored in seventeen fathoms water, under the N. W. side of the head of the land, we saw several people on the shore, some endeavouring to swim off to us; but they all retired when they perceived our boat approach towards them.

On the 14th, a party went out armed to find a proper landing-place, and where we might gain a supply of wood and water. We gave the inhabitants some medals, &c. with which they appeared much pleased, and directed us to a bay fit for our purpose. As we went along the shore, their numbers increased prodigiously. We tried several places to land, but did not approve of their situation. At length we came to a fine sandy beach, where Captain Cook stepped out without wetting his foot. The inhabitants received him with great politeness. One of them, who appeared to be a chief, made the natives form a semicircle round the head of the boat, and chastised such as attempted to prevent it. Their behaviour was in every respect agreeable, yet we did not much like their appearance, as they were all armed with bows, arrows, spears, and darts. On this account we kept a good look out, and watched particularly the motions of the chief, who wanted us to haul the boat on shore. He renewed his signs for this to be done, and then held a conference with some of the natives. One circumstance appeared rather suspicious, he refused some spike nails that we offered him. Captain Cook immediately returned to the boat, upon which they attempted by force to detain us. Very fortunately the gang-board happened to be laid out for the captain to return into the boat; this some of the natives unhooked from the stern as we were putting off; they hooked it to the head

head of the boat, and attempted to haul her on shore. Some of them were daring enough to take the oars out of the hands of our people. They in some measure desisted on Captain Cook's presenting a musket, but went on again in an instant, seemingly determined to haul the boat on shore, and to detain us. The chief was at the head of this party, and others stood at a small distance behind, with stones, darts, and other missile weapons, ready to support them. Our own safety was now become our only consideration, for signs and threats had not the effect we expected. The captain therefore resolved to make the chief suffer alone, a victim to his own treachery; but at this critical moment his piece did not go off. This increased their insolence, and they began to assault us with stones, darts, and arrows. We were now ordered to fire. The first discharge threw them into confusion, but they were very reluctantly driven off the beach with the second. After this they continued a kind of bush-fighting, by throwing stones from behind trees, and sometimes a dart or two. Four of them lay to all appearance dead on the shore, but two of them afterwards crawled in among the bushes. That they might understand the effect of our great guns, we fired a four pound shot at them, which, though it fell short, terrified them so much, that we saw no more of them.

On the 5th of August, we weighed anchor, and got clear of the bay, and steered for the S. end of the island. We discovered on the S. W. side of the head, a pretty deep bay; its shores low, and the land appeared to be fertile; but being exposed to the S. E. winds, until better known, we thought the N. W. side preferable.

At sun-set we came in sight of an island, being high table land, bearing E. by S. and also discovered another little isle, which we had passed in the night. We now steered for the island, and discovered a small inlet which had the appearance of a good harbour.—Two armed boats, under the command of lieutenant

Cooper, were sent off in order to sound, while the ship stood on and off, to be ready to follow, or to afford any assistance that might be required. We observed a number of natives on the shore, also several canoes; and when our boats entered the harbour they launched some, but came not near. At this time the lieutenant made signal for anchorage, and we stood in with the ship, the wind having left us when we were within the entrance.

The boats were now sent out to find a better anchorage; and while we were thus employed, many of the natives came in parties to the sea-side, all armed; some swam off to us, others came in canoes. At first they seemed afraid of us, and kept at a distance, but by degrees waxed bolder, and at length came under our stern, and made some exchanges. Those in one of the first canoes threw towards us some cocoa-nuts. The captain went out in a boat, picked them up, and in return gave them several articles. Others were induced by this to come along-side, who behaved in a most insolent manner. They attempted to tear our flag from the staff, would have knocked the rings from the rudder, and we had no sooner thrown out the buoys of the boats than they caught hold of them. We fired a few muskets in the air, of which they took no notice, but a four-pounder alarmed them so much, that they quitted their canoes, and took to the water. But finding themselves unhurt, they got again into their canoes, flourished their weapons, hallooed in defiance, and went again to the buoys, but a few musketoon shot soon dispersed them. They all retired in haste to the shore, and we sat down to dinner unmolested. In the interval of those transactions, an old man who seemed to be amicably disposed, came several times, in a small canoe, between us and the shore, bringing off each time cocoa-nuts and yams, for which he took in exchange whatever we offered him. Another was in the gangway when the great gun was fired, after which we could not prevail with him to stay. In the evening



evening we landed at the head of the harbour, with a party of men well armed. The natives made not the least opposition, though we had one body on our right, and another on our left, all armed. We distributed among the old people some presents of cloth and medals, and filled two casks with fresh water. We got in return plenty of cocoa-nuts, but could not prevail on them to part with their weapons, which they held constantly in a posture of defence. The old man was one of these parties, but by his behaviour we judged him to be pacific. We thought by their pressing so much, in spite of all our endeavours to keep them at a distance, that little would be wanting to induce them to attack us; but we re-embarked very soon, and thus probably their scheme was disconcerted.

On the 6th, we brought the ship as near the landing-place as possible, that we might over-awe the natives, and cover the party on shore, who were to get a supply of wood and water, which we much wanted. While we were upon this business, we observed the natives assembling from all parts, all armed, to the amount of some thousands, who formed themselves into two divisions, as they did the preceding evening, on each side the landing-place. At intervals a canoe came off, at times conducted by one, two, or three men, bringing us cocoa-nuts, &c. for which they did not require any thing in return, though we took care they should always have something: but their principal intention seemed to be, to invite us ashore. The old man before-mentioned, came off to us several times, and the captain, with a view of making him understand that he wanted to establish a friendly intercourse, took his weapons that were in the canoe, and threw them overboard, and made him a present of a piece of cloth. He understood the meaning of this, for we saw him frequently in conversation with his countrymen, to whom he made our request known, going first to one party, then to another, nor did we afterwards see him with his weapons, or in a warlike manner. Soon  
after

after a canoe, in which were three men, came under our stern, one of whom behaved very outrageously, brandishing his club, and striking with it the ship's side; at last he offered to exchange his weapon for a string of beads, and other trifles; these we sent down to him by a line, of which he had no sooner got possession, than he made off, without delivering his club. We were not sorry for this, as it afforded us an opportunity of shewing the people on shore the effects of our fire-arms. We therefore, without hesitation, complimented this fellow with the contents of a fowling-piece, loaded with small shot, and when the others were out of the reach of musket-shot, we fired some musketoons, or wall pieces, at them, which made them take to the water. But all this seemed to make very little impression on the people ashore, who began to halloo, and seemingly make a joke of it. Having moored the ship, with her broadside to the landing-place, and scarcely musket-shot off, we planted our artillery in such a manner as to command the whole harbour, and then embarked with a party of seamen, supported by the marines, and rowed to the landing-place, where the natives were drawn up in two divisions. The intermediate space between them was about forty yards, in which were laid a few plantains, tree roots, and a yam. We made signs for the divisions to retire back, but to these they paid not the least regard; their number every moment was augmented, and, except three old men, not one unarmed. We thought it was better to frighten them into a more peaceable behaviour, and therefore a musket was fired over their heads, which for a minute had the desired effect, but they soon returned to their daring behaviour. The ship was then ordered, by signal, to fire a few great guns, which presently dispersed them. We landed, and cut down some trees, which we put into our boats, and a few small casks of water, to let the natives see what we chiefly wanted. Thus far matters were pretty well settled: we returned on board to dinner, and they all dispersed.

On

On the 7th, the natives began to assemble again, with their weapons, as before, but not in such numbers: notwithstanding this, we landed in order to get water and cut wood. We found most of the old people disposed to be our friends, but the younger, being daring and insolent, obliged us to stand to our arms, but as soon as our people had filled their boats with wood and water, and embarked on board, they all retired in a peaceable manner.

On the 13th, an old man came on board, (whose name was Paowang) to dine with us. We took this opportunity of shewing him every part of the ship, and a variety of trading articles, hoping he might see something that he liked, and so a traffic be carried on with the natives for refreshments. But Paowang observed every thing with indifference, except a sand-box, of which he took some notice, and immediately went ashore.

On the 15th, preparations were made on board to set sail. This day one of the botanical party shot a pigeon, in the craw of which was a nutmeg. Mr. Forster endeavoured, without success, to find the tree. During their stay on shore, they observed in most of their sugar plantations deep holes dug, four feet deep, and five in diameter, which on enquiry, we found were designed as traps to catch rats in. These animals, so destructive to sugar-canes, are here in great plenty.—Round the edge of these pits, as a decoy, and that the rats may be more liable to tumble in, the canes are planted as thick as possible.

On the 16th, we found our tiller much damaged, and by neglect, we had not a spare one aboard. We knew of but one tree in the neighbourhood that would do for our purpose. The carpenter was sent ashore to examine it, and upon his report a party of men were directed to cut it down, after the consent of the natives had been obtained. They did not make the least objection, and our men went instantly to work. Much time was necessary to cut it down, as the tree was large; and



and before they had finished their work, word was brought to the captain, that our friend Paowang was not pleased. Paowang was sent for, and our necessity explained to him. We then made him a present of a piece of cloth and a dog, which obtained his consent, and the voices of those that were with him in our favour.

Having thus obtained our point, we conducted our friend on board to dinner; after which we went with him ashore, to pay a visit to an old chief, who was said to be the king of the island; though as Paowang took little notice of him, we doubted the fact. His name was Geogy. He had a cheerful open countenance, though he was old, and had round his waist a broad red and white chequered belt. His son was with him, who could not be less than 50 years old. At this time a vast concourse of people were assembled near the watering-place. The behaviour of many was friendly; of others daring and insolent; which we did not think prudent to resent, as our stay was nearly at an end.

On the 19th, we prepared for sailing, as the tiller was finished; but the wind being unfavourable, the guard and a party of men were sent ashore, to bring off the remainder of the tree from which we had cut the tiller. The captain went with them, and found a number of the natives collected together near the landing-place, among whom various articles were distributed. At the time our people were getting some large logs into the boat, the centry presented his piece at one of the natives, and, without the least apparent cause, fired at, and killed him. A few of the natives had just before advanced within the limits, to see what we were about, but upon being ordered back, they readily obeyed. A fellow of the centry pretended, that a man had laid his arrow across his bow, so that he apprehended himself in danger; but this had been frequently done out of a bravado, to shew they were armed, and prepared equally with ourselves. Captain Cook was highly exasperated at this rascal's rash conduct; and most of the people fled with

with the utmost precipitation. The natives were thrown into such consternation, that they brought abundance of fruit, which they laid down at our feet. They all retired when we returned aboard to dinner, and only a few appeared in the afternoon, among whom were Paowang and Wha-a-gou.

On the 20th, the wind was favourable for getting out of harbour; we began to unmoor, and having weighed, put to sea. The Resolution being the first ship that ever entered this harbour, Captain Cook named it Port Resolution. Its lat. is 19 deg. 32 min. 25 sec. and half south, and in 169 deg. 44 min. 35 sec. east long. The landing-place is exceeding convenient for taking in wood and water, both of these necessary articles being near the shore. On the 23d, we came in sight of Mallicollo. We were agreeably surprised with the beauty of the forest, from whence we saw smoke ascend in various places, a plain indication of their being inhabited; the circumjacent land appeared fertile and populous. We observed troops of natives on several parts of the shore, and two canoes put off to us, but as we did not shorten sail, they did not overtake the ship.

On the 24th, we advanced nearly to the middle of the passage, and the N. W. end of Mallicollo extended from S. 30 deg. E. to S. 58 deg. We now steered N. by E. then N. along the east coast of the northern land. At first this coast appeared continued, but we found it was composed of several low woody isles, most of them of small extent except the southernmost, which was named St. Bartholomew. We continued our course N. N. W. along a fine coast covered with trees. On the 25th, at day-break, we were on the north side of the island, and steered W. along the low land under it, for the bluff-head; beyond which, at sun-rise, we saw an elevated coast, stretching to the N. as far as N. W. by W. Having doubled the head, we perceived the land to tend S. a little easterly, and to form a large deep bay, bounded on the W. by the above-mentioned coast. At half past four o'clock P. M.

we were only two miles from the W. shore, to which we had been driven by a N. E. swell. Here we saw large bodies of the natives collected together. Some ventured off in canoes; but they took sudden fright at something, nor could all our signs of friendship induce them to come along-side.

On the 26th, we were about eight miles from the head of the bay, which is terminated by a low beach; behind which is an extensive flat covered with wood, and bounded on each side by a ridge of mountains. We found our lat. at noon to be 15 deg. 5 min. S. and at one o'clock, having a breeze at N. by E. we steered up to within two miles of the head of the bay. Mr. Cooper and Mr. Gilbert were sent out to reconnoitre, while we stood off and on with the ship. By this time an opportunity was afforded for three sailing canoes to come up, which had been following us. They would not come along-side, but advanced near enough to receive such things as were thrown out to them, fastened to a rope. On the return of the boats, we were informed by Mr. Cooper and others, that they had landed at the head of the bay, near a fine stream of fresh water. We steered down the bay, being not in want of any thing, and the wind having shifted to S. S. E. Throughout the fore-part of the night, on the west side of the shore, the country was illumined with fires, from the sea-shore to the summit of the mountains.

On Saturday the 27th, at day-break, we found ourselves two thirds down the bay, and at noon we were the length of the N. W. point, which bore N. 82 deg. W. distant five miles; and by observation, our latitude was 14 deg. 39 min. 30 sec. Some of our gentlemen were doubtful of this being the bay of St. Philip and St. Jago, because no place answered to the port of Vera Cruz; but the captain gave very good reasons for a contrary opinion. A point is a very vague term, like many others in geography; and what Quiros calls the port of Vera Cruz, might be the whole haven or harbour, or the anchorage at the head of the bay, which



which in some places may extend farther off than where our boats landed. The river was probably one of those mentioned by Quiros, and, if we were not deceived, we saw the other.

The bay is every where free from danger, and of an unfathomable depth, except near the shores, which are for the most part low. It hath sixty miles sea coast; eighteen on each side, which lies in the direction of S. half W. and N. half E. six at the head; and thirty-six on the west side, the directions of which is S. by E. and N. by W. from the head down to two-thirds of its length, and then N. W. by N. to the N. W. point.—The two points which form the entrance of the bay, are in the direction of S. 53 deg. E. and N. 53 deg. W. distant from each other thirty miles. The bay, as well as the flat land at the head of it, is bounded by a ridge of hills; one to the west is very high, and extends the whole length of the island. Upon this appeared a luxuriant vegetation wherever the eye turned. Rich plantations adorned the sides of the hills, forests reared their towering heads, and every valley was watered with a running stream; but of all the productions of nature the cocoa-nut trees were the most conspicuous.

On the 28th and 29th, we took every opportunity when the horizon was clear, to look out for more land, but none was seen; it is probable there is none nearer than Queen Charlotte's Sound. But on the 30th, we plied up the coast with a fresh breeze.

On the 31st, we weathered the S. W. point of the island. The coast, which trends east-northerly, is low, and seemed to form some creeks or coves; and as we got farther into the passage, we perceived some low isles lying along it, which seemed to extend behind St. Bartholomew's island. Having now explored the whole Archipelago, the season of the year made it necessary to return to the south; but we had yet some time left to make observation on any land we might discover between this and New Zealand; at which place the captain intended to touch, in order to recruit our stock

of wood and water, for another southern course. To this end, at five o'clock P. M. we tacked, and hauled to the southward, with a fresh gale at S. E. At this time the S. W. point of the island Tierra del Espiritu Santo bore N. 82 deg. W. which Captain Cook named Cape Lisburne. It lies in lat. 15 deg. 40 min. and in 165 deg. 59 min. E. longitude.

## CHAP. VII.

*New Caledonia discovered—The Resolution is obliged to depart from Caledonia—Continues her voyage to New Zealand—She arrives at Queen Charlotte's Sound—An account of incidents while the ship lay there.*

ON the 1st of September, we were out of sight of land, and no more was to be seen. We continued our course to the S. W. and on the 3d, found ourselves in 19 deg. 49 min. and in 165 deg. E. long. On the 4th, we discovered land, which at noon extended from S.S.E. to W. by S. distant six leagues. At five P. M. we were six leagues off, when we were stopped by a calm. At this time the land extended from S. E. by S. to W. by N. round by the S. W. but as some openings were seen in the W. could not determine whether it was one connected land, or a cluster of islands.

On the 5th, we observed the coast extended to the S. E. of Cape Colnet, and round by the S. W. to N. W. by W. We bore down to N. W. and came before an opening that had the appearance of a good channel. We desired to enter it, in order to have an opportunity of observing an eclipse of the sun. We therefore sent out two armed boats to sound the channel; and at the same time saw twelve large sailing canoes near us. All the morning we had observed them in motion, and coming off from different parts; but some were lying on the reef, fishing as we imagined. When we hoisted out our boat, they were pretty near us; but upon seeing this,

this, they returned, and our boats followed them. We now were convinced that what we had taken for openings in the coast was low land, all connected, except the western extremity, which as we afterwards learnt, was an island called Balabea. The boats having made a signal for a channel, we stood in with the ship. The officer of the boats reported, that there was good anchorage, and the natives civil and obliging. We proceeded up the bay, and at length anchored in five fathoms water.

A great number of the natives surrounded us before we got to anchor, in 18 canoes, without any sort of weapons, and we prevailed upon one boat to come near enough to receive some presents. In return, they tied two fish to the rope, that stunk intolerably. An intercourse being thus opened by mutual exchanges, two of the natives ventured on board the ship; presently after she was filled with them. Some dined with us, but they would not eat salt beef, pork, or peas soup.

After dinner time, a party of us went ashore with armed boats, and landed amidst a great number of people. They expressed a natural surprise at seeing men and things so new to them as we were. Presents were made to such as a man who had attached himself to Captain Cook pointed out; but he would not suffer the captain to give the women who stood behind, any beads or medals. Having by signs enquired for fresh water, some pointed to the east, others to the west; but our friend undertook to conduct us to it, and for that purpose embarked with us. We rowed near three miles to the E. and entered a narrow creek or river, which brought us to a little straggling village, where he shewed us fresh water.

The tide not permitting us to stay any longer in the creek, we took leave of these amicable people, from whom we had nothing to expect but good nature, and the privilege of visiting their country without molestation, as it was easy to see these were all they could bestow. Though this did not satisfy our demands, it gave us much ease and satisfaction, for they certainly excelled



excelled all the natives we had hitherto met with in friendly civility.

On the 12th, early in the morning, the captain being desirous of stocking the country with hogs as well as dogs, he took with him a young boar and sow, and went up the creek, in search of his friend, the chief, in order to give them to him. The natives informed us that he lived at some distance, but they would send for him: but he not coming as soon as we expected, Captain Cook resolved to give them to the first man of consequence he met with. In consequence of this determination, they were offered to a grave old man, who shook his head, and made signs for us to take them into the boat again. On our refusing to comply, they seemed to hold a consultation what was to be done.

After this, our guide conducted us to the chief, and he accordingly led us to a house, where eight or ten middle aged persons were seated in a circle. To these the captain and his pigs were formally introduced.— They desired the captain, with great courtesy, to be seated, who began to expatiate on the merits of his pigs, explaining to them their nature and case, and how they would multiply: in short, he enhanced their value as much as possible, that they might take the more care of them. In return for our present, we had six yams before us, after which we returned on board. In the afternoon we made a trip to the shore, and on a tree near the watering-place, an inscription was cut, setting forth the ship's name, date, &c. as a memorial and proof that we were the first discoverers of that country.

Having now fully satisfied our curiosity, we returned on board, when the captain ordered all the boats to be hoisted in, that we might be ready to sail, and put to sea.

The inhabitants of this country are strong, robust, active, friendly, courteous, and not addicted to pilfering, as all other nations are in this sea. They have in general good features; but in some we saw a resemblance of the negroes; having thick lips, flat noses, and

and full cheeks. Their hair and beards are black. The former is very rough and frizzled. Some have their hair tied up in clubs, and others, as well as the women, wear it cropped short. They also wear their beards cropped in the same manner. The women in this island are very chaste, and we never heard that any of our people ever obtained the least favour from any one of them. Indeed their ladies would sometimes divert themselves by going a little aside with our gentlemen, as if they meant to be kind, and then would in a moment run away laughing at them.

On the 13th of September, at sun-rise, we weighed, and stood off for the channel we came in by. At half past seven we were in the middle of it, when the isle of Balabea bore W. N. W. At noon we lost sight of Balabea, and at three o'clock, we run by a low sandy isle. At sun-set, we could just see the land, which bore S. W. by S. about ten leagues distant. No land was to be seen in this direction; so that every appearance flattered our expectations, and induced us to believe, that we should soon get round the shoals.

On the 15th, seeing neither land nor breakers, we bore away W. N. W. but the shoals still continuing, we plied up for a clear sea to the S. E. by doing which, we did but just weather the point of the reef we had passed the preceding evening. To render our situation the more dangerous, the wind began to fail us; in the afternoon it fell a calm, and we were left to the mercy of a great swell, setting directly for the reef, which was not more than a league from us. The pinnace and cutter were hoisted out to tow the ship, but they were of little service. At seven o'clock, a light air N. N. E. kept her head to the sea; and on the 16th, at eleven o'clock A. M. we hoisted in the boats, and made sail to the S. E. A tide or current had been in our favour all night, and was the cause of our getting so unexpectedly clear of the shoals.

On the 20th, at noon, Cape Colnet bore N. 78 deg. W. distant six leagues. From hence the land extended round

round by the S. to E. S. E. till it was lost in the horizon, and the country appeared variegated with many hills and vallies. We stood in shore till sun-set, when we were about three leagues off. Two small islets lay distant from us five miles, and others lay between us and the shore. The country was very mountainous, and had much the same aspect as about Balade.

On Friday the 30th, at three o'clock P. M. it fell calm, the swell, assisted by the current, set us fast towards the breakers, which were yet in sight to the S. W. but at ten o'clock a breeze springing up, we steered E. S. E. not venturing farther south till daylight.

On the 1st of October, we had a very strong wind at S. S. W. attended by a great sea, so that we had reason to rejoice at having got clear of the shoals before this gale overtook us. We were now obliged to stretch to S. E. and at noon were out of sight of land.

On the 2d, we had little wind, and a great swell; but at eleven, a fresh breeze springing up, we stood to the S. We were now in the lat. of 23 deg. 18 min. and in 169 deg. 49 min. E. longitude.

On the 3d, we had a strong gale, with squalls from the S. W. and the captain laid aside all thoughts of returning to the land we had left. Nor could such an attempt be thought a prudent one, when we consider, that we had a vast ocean yet to explore to the south; that the ship was already in want of necessary stores; that summer was approaching very fast, and that any considerable accident might detain us from pursuing the great object of this voyage another year. Thus necessity compelled us to leave a coast, for the first time, which we had first discovered, but not fully explored. The captain named it New Caledonia, and in his opinion, it is next to New Zealand, the largest island in the South Pacific Ocean. The extent is from lat. 19 deg. 37 min. to 22 deg. 30 min. S. and from long. 163 deg. 37 min. to 167 deg. 14 min. E. It lies nearly N. W. half W. and S. E. half E. and is about 87 leagues long,



long, but its breadth does not any where exceed ten leagues.

On the 7th, a breeze sprung up, and fixed at S. E. by S. The day following, we had a gentle gale, attended with fine weather. On the 9th, we were in lat. 28 deg. 25 min. and in 170 deg. 26 min. E. long. In the evening Mr. Cooper struck a porpoise. It was six feet long, and differs from the common porpoise in the head and jaw, which are long and pointed. This had eighty-eight teeth in each jaw. It was first soaked in water, then roasted, broiled and fried. To us, who had long subsisted on salt meat, it was more than palatable; and we thought the haslet, and lean flesh, a delicious feast.

On the 10th, we discovered land. Captain Cook called it Norfolk Island. We anchored here in twenty-two fathoms water, on a bank of coral sand, mixed with broken shells. After dinner, a party of us embarked in the boats, and landed in the island behind some large rocks. It was uninhabited, and we were undoubtedly the first who ever set foot upon it. We found here many sea and land fowl, of the same kind as in New Zealand; likewise cabbage-palm, wood-sorrel, sow-thistle, and samphire. The cabbage trees were not thicker than a man's leg, and from ten to twenty feet high. The cabbage, each tree producing but one, is at the top inclosed in the stem. This vegetable is not only wholesome, but exceeding palatable, and some excellent fish we caught made a luxurious entertainment.

On the 11th, we sailed from Norfolk Island, which we weathered, having stretched up to S. S. W. We found the coast bounded with rocky cliffs and banks of coral sand. On the south side lie two isles, which serve as roosting and breeding places, for white boobies, gulls, tern, &c. A bank of coral sand and shells, surrounds the isle, and extends, especially southward, seven leagues off. Our intention at this time was to refresh the crew, and repair the ship in Queen Charlotte's Sound.

On the 18th, we made a trip to the north, and bore away for the Sound. We hauled round Point Jackson, at nine A. M. and at eleven o'clock anchored before Ship Cove, the tide not permitting us to get in. Captain Cook went ashore, and looked for the bottle with the memorandum which he left when last here, but it was taken away by some person or other. The seine was hauled twice, and only four fish caught; but several birds were shot, and the nests of some shags were robbed of their young ones.

On the 19th, the ship was warped into the cove, and moored. The sails were unbent, several of them having been much damaged in the late gale. The main and fore courses were condemned, and the topmasts struck and unrigged. The forge was set up, and tents erected on shore for the reception of a guard, &c. Plenty of vegetables were gathered for the refreshment of the crew, and boiled every morning with oatmeal and portable broth for breakfast. From some circumstances, as cutting down trees with saws and axes, and a place found where an observatory had been set up in our absence, we had no doubt but the Adventure had been in this cove since we left it.

On the 24th, we saw canoes coming down the sound, which, when the ship was seen by the people, retired behind a point on the west side. After breakfast, we went in search of them, and having fired at several birds, the report of our pieces gave notice of our being near, and they discovered themselves by hallooing to us in Shag Cove; but when we landed, and drew near to their habitations, they all fled, except two or three men, who maintained their ground, with their weapons in their hands. The moment we landed they knew us, and their fears subsided. Those who had returned from the woods, embraced us over and over again; but the men would not suffer some women we saw at a distance to come near us. We asked them on what account they were afraid of us? and also what was become of our old friends? To these questions we got no satisfactory answer; but they  
talked

talked much about killing, which was variously understood by us.

On the 26th, some of the natives went to the tents, and told our people, that a ship like ours had lately been lost, that some of the men landed at Vanna Aroa, on the other side the strait; that a dispute happened between them and the natives; that several of the latter were shot, and that the natives got the better of them when they could fire no longer, and both killed and ate them. One of the relaters of this strange story, said it was twenty or thirty days; but another said it was two moons since.

The following day they told the same story to others, which made the captain, and indeed all of us, very uneasy about the Adventure; but when the captain enquired himself, and endeavoured to come at the truth of these reports, the very people who raised them, denied every syllable of what they had said, and seemed wholly ignorant of the matter; so that we began to think the whole relation had reference only to their own people and boats.

On the 28th, we again went on shore, but found no appearance of the hogs and sows we had left behind. Having been a shooting to the west bay, in our return we got some fish from the natives for a few trifling presents. As we came back some of the party thought they heard a pig squeak in the woods. We shot this day a good many wild fowl and small birds. On the 31st, it was somewhat remarkable that all the natives left us.

On the 1st of November, we were visited by a number of strangers, who came from up the Sound. The principal articles of trade they brought with them was green stone, some of which were the largest pieces we had ever seen. On the 2d, a large black sow was seen by the botanising party, which we discovered to be the same that Captain Furneaux left behind him. Supposing it to be a boar, we carried over to Long Island a sow, but seeing our mistake, we brought her back. This incident afforded us some hopes, that this island in time



will be stocked with such useful animals. Lieut. Pickersgill was told the same story by one of the natives, of a ship having been lost, but the man declared though many were killed, it was not by them.

On the 6th, our friends returned, and took up their abode near the tents. An old man, named Pedero, made Captain Cook a present of a staff of honour, such as the chiefs carry; and in return, the captain dressed him up in a suit of old clothes, which made him very happy. He had a fine person, and his colour only distinguished him from an European. We enquired of him and his companions, if the Adventure had been there during our absence; and they gave us to understand that she arrived a little time after our departure; that she staid about twenty days, and had been gone ten moons; and that neither she, nor any other ship, had been stranded on the coast. This account made us easy respecting the Adventure.

This day we went with a number of hands to catch the sow, and put her to the boar, but returned without seeing her. Pedero dined with us, partook heartily of every thing set before him, and drank more wine than any one at table, without being in the least intoxicated. On the 8th, we put a boar, a sow, and two pigs on shore, so that we hope all our endeavours to stock this country will not prove fruitless. We found a hen's egg a few days ago, and therefore believe that some of the cocks and hens we left here are still in being.

On the 9th, we unmoored, and shifted our station farther out of the cove, for the more ready getting to sea; but at present, the caulkers had not finished the sides of the ship; and we could not sail till this work was completed. Our friends brought us a large supply of fish, and in return, gave Pedero a large empty oil jar, with which he seemed highly delighted. We never saw any of our presents after they received them, and cannot say whether they gave them away, or what they did with them; but we observed, every time we visited them, they were as much in want of hatchets, nails,

nails, &c. as if we had not bestowed any upon them. Notwithstanding these people are cannibals, they are of a good disposition, and have not a little humanity. The head of each tribe, or family is respected; respect may command obedience; but we are inclined to think, not one among them has either a right or power to enforce it.

In the afternoon, we went into one of the coves; where, upon landing, we found two families employed in different manners; some were making mats, others sleeping; some roasting fish and roots: and one girl was employed in heating stones, which she took out of the fire as soon as they were hot, and gave them to an old woman who sat in the hut. The old woman placed them one upon another, laid over them some green celery, and over all a coarse mat: she then squatted herself down on the top of the heap, and sat very close. Probably this operation might be intended as a cure for some disorder, to be effected by the steams arising from the green celery, and we perceived the woman seemed very sickly.

## CHAP. VIII.

*The departure of the Resolution from New Zealand—Her passage from thence to Terra del Fuego—The run from Cape Deseada to Christmas Sound—The Resolution departs from Christmas Sound—Doubles Cape Horn—Her passage through Strait Le Maire, and round Staten Island—Departs from Staten Island—The island of Georgia discovered, and a descriptive account of the same.*

**T**HURSDAY, November 10, at day-break, we weighed, and sailed from Queen Charlotte's Sound in New Zealand, having a fine breeze at N. N. W. All our sails being set, we got round the Two Brothers, and stretched for Cape Campbell, at the S. W. entrance of the Strait. We passed this at four o'clock P. M. Cape  
Palliser

Palliser bore N. half W. distant five leagues, and then steered S. S. E. half E.

On the 13th, we hauled up towards a fog bank, which we took for land; after which we steered S. E. by S. and saw a seal. On the 14th, we saw another seal, in lat. 45 deg. 54 min. and 170 deg. 29 min E. longitude. On the 15th, having passed the great meridian of 180 deg. E. which divides the globe into two equal parts, we began to reckon our longitude W. of Greenwich.

On the 27th, we steered E. having a steady fresh gale; and at noon were in lat. 35 deg. 6 min. S. and in 138 deg. 56 min. W. longitude. In this parallel, not a hope remained of finding any more land in the southern Pacific Ocean. We resolved therefore to steer for the W. entrance of the Straits of Magellan, with a view of coasting the S. side of Terra del Fuego, round Cape Horn to the Strait le Maire. In the afternoon, we had squally weather, which carried away our top-gallant mast.

On the 1st of December, it fell a calm, but about seven, we got a wind at S. E. which stood to N. E. On the 5th, a fine gale at S. enabled us to steer E. with very little deviation to the N. and the wind now altering to the S. W. and blowing a steady gale, we continued to steer E. inclining a little to S. On the 6th, we had some snow showers; and on the 9th, a fine pleasant gale, with showers of rain.

On the 18th, we steered S. E. by E. along the coast. Near a league from the main is a high ragged isle, which we called Landfall. We continued to range the coast, and at eleven o'clock, passed a projecting point, having a round surface, and of considerable height, to which we gave the name of Cape Gloucester. It has the appearance of an island, and is situated S. S. E. half E. seventeen leagues from the isle of Landfall. Between these the coast forms two bays, strewed with rocky islets, rocks, and breakers. The coast appeared unconnected, as if formed of a number of islands. The land is very mountainous, rocky, and barren,



barren, but in some places, covered with tufts of wood and patches of snow.

On the 20th, we perceived the ship to drive off the shore out to the sea; for by the melting of the snow, the inland waters will occasion a stream to run out of most of the inlets. In the evening, a breeze springing up at E. by S. we stood in for the land, being desirous of entering one of the many ports, in order to take a view of the country, and to recruit our stock of wood and water. In standing in for an opening, apparently on the east side, we sounded in 40 and 60 fathoms.—Our last soundings were nearly between the two points that form the entrance to the inlet. We stood for that to the east, as being clear of islets; but, upon sounding found no bottom with a line of 120 fathoms. In this disagreeable situation, a breeze springing up, our captain resolved to stand up the inlet; but night approaching, our safety depended on casting anchor, therefore continued sounding, but always, to our mortification, in an unfathomable depth: soon after we anchored in thirty fathoms, in a bottom of sand and broken shells.

On the 22d, two parties were sent out with boats to look for a more secure station. They found a cove above the point under which the ship lay, in which was exceeding good anchorage. At the head of it was a stony beach, a valley covered with wood, and a stream of fresh water, conveniencies more favourable than we could expect would be found in such a place. Here also they shot three geese out of four. Orders were dispatched to remove the ship into this place. We returned on board, and found every thing in readiness to weigh, which was done. We soon after got round, and anchored in twenty fathoms water.

On the 23d, lieutenant Pickersgill went out to examine the east side of the sound, while the captain proceeded in the pinnace to the west side, with a view of going round the island under which the ship lay, which he called Shag Island. This harbour lies in W. by S. a mile and a half. It hath wood and fresh water,

water, and from twelve to twenty-four fathoms deep. At the south end of Shag Island, the shags breed in vast numbers in the cliffs of the rocks. We shot some of the old ones, but could not come at the young ones, which are by much the best eating. We likewise brought down three wild geese, a valuable acquisition at this time.

On the 24th, two sporting parties went over one of the N. E. islands above-mentioned, which was named Goose Island; and the other, accompanied by Captain Cook, went by the S. W. side. When under the island we had plenty of sport, having shot as many geese as served for a Christmas-meal for our men, which proved much more agreeable to them than salt beef and pork. In the south of the island were abundance of geese, it being their moulting season, when most of them come on shore, and are not disposed to fly. Our party got sixty-two, and Mr. Pickersgill with his party, fourteen.

We were informed by our people on board, that a number of natives, in nine canoes, had been alongside, and some of them in the ship: they seemed well acquainted with Europeans, and had several of their knives among them.

On the 25th, being Christmas-day, we had another visit from them. They are a diminutive, ugly, half-starved, beardless race; almost naked, being only slightly covered with a seal-skin or two joined together, so as to make a cloke which reached to their knees; but the greatest part of them had but one skin, which scarcely covered their shoulders, and all their lower parts were quite naked. The women are clothed no better than the men, except that they cover their nakedness with a seal-skin flap. They are inured from their infancy to cold and hardships, for we saw some young children at the breast, entirely naked. They remained all the time in their canoes, having their bows and arrows with them, and harpoons, made of bone, with which they strike and kill fish.

They

They all departed before dinner, nor did we believe any one invited them to partake of our Christmas cheer, which consisted of geese, roast and boiled, goose-pie, &c. a treat little known to us; and which was heightened by Madeira wine, the only article of our provisions that was mended by keeping. We called this place Christmas Sound, in honour of the day, and the joyful festival we had celebrated here.

On the 27th, every thing on shore was ordered on board. The weather being fine and pleasant, a party of us went round by the south side of Goose Island, and picked up thirty-one of these birds. When we returned on board, we found all the work done, and the launch in, so that we now only waited for a fair wind to put to sea.

On the 28th, we sailed from this sound with a light breeze at N. W. At noon, Point Nativity being the east part of the Sound, bore N. half W. distant one league and a half. We steered S. E. by E. and E. S. E. when we hauled to the S. for the sake of a view of St. Idenfonso. At half past five o'clock, we had a good sight of the isles. They are situated about six leagues from the main, in lat. 55 deg. 53 min. S. and in 69 deg. 41 min. W. long.

On the 30th, we were driven by the current to Staten Land; but a breeze springing up at N. N. W. we stood over for Success Bay. We hoisted our colours, and firing two guns, we perceived a smoke rise out of the woods, made by the natives above the south point of the bay. A party was sent into Success Bay, in order to discover if any traces of the Adventure were to be seen there; but they returned without having found any.

When Mr. Pickersgill landed, the natives received him and his associates with great courtesy. They were clothed in seal-skins, had bracelets on their arms, and appeared to be the same kind of people we had seen in Christmas Sound. The bracelets were made of silver wire, wrought somewhat like the hilt of a sword, and, no doubt, the workmanship of an European. Accord-



ing to Mr. Pickersgill's account, the bay was full of whales and seals, and we had observed the same in the strait, particularly on the Terra del Fuego side, where the whales are exceeding numerous.

On the 31st, we bore up for the east end of Staten Land. The weather being hazy, we could only now and then get sight of the coast; but as we advanced to the east, several islands were seen of unequal extent. As we continued our course, we saw on one of the islands a great number of seals and birds, a strong temptation to our people, who were in want of fresh provisions; and in hauling round it we had a strong race of a current, like unbroken water. At length, after fishing for the best ground, we cast anchor in twenty-one fathoms water, about a mile from the island.

In the afternoon a large party of us landed, some to kill seals, and others birds or fish. The island was so stocked with the former, which made such a continual bleating, that we might have thought ourselves in Essex, or any other country where cows and calves are in abundance. Upon examination, we found these animals different from seals, though they resembled them in shape and motion. The male having a great likeness to a lion, we called them on that account lions. We also found of the same kind as the New Zealand seals, and these we named sea bears. We shot some of the large ones, not thinking it safe to go near them; though in general, they were so tame, that we knocked some down with our sticks. Here were a few geese and ducks, and abundance of penguins and shags; the latter of which had young ones, almost fledged, consequently just to our taste. In the evening, our party returned sufficiently laden with provisions of various sorts.

On the 1st of January, 1775, Mr. Gilbert was sent out to Staten Land, in search of a good harbour, nothing more being wanting in the opinion of the captain, to make this place a good port for ships to touch at for refreshments. Another party went to bring on board the beasts we had killed the preceding day. The old lions and bears were good for nothing but their blubber, of which

which we made oil; but the flesh of the young ones was liked very well; even the flesh of the old lionesses was not much amiss; but that of the old males was abominable.

This day Captain Cook took an observation of the sun's meridian altitude (his height at noon) at the N. E. end of this island, which determined its latitude at 44 deg. 40 min. 5 sec. S. Having shot a few geese, some other birds, and supplied ourselves plentifully with young shags, we returned on board in the evening.

About ten, the party returned from Staten Land, where they found a good port, in the direction of N. a little easterly, from the N. E. end of the eastern island, and distant three leagues to the westward of Cape St. John. The marks whereby it may be known, are some small islands lying in the entrance. The channel which is on the east side of these islands, is half a mile broad. The course is in S. W. by S. turning gradually to W. by S. and W. The harbour is almost two miles long, and near one broad. The bottom is a mixture of mud and sand, and hath in it from ten to fifty fathoms water. Here are several streams of fresh water, with good wood for fuel.

On this island are an innumerable number of sea-gulls, the air was quite darkened with them, upon being disturbed by our people: and when they rose up, we were almost suffocated with their dung, which they seemed to emit by way of defence; and it stunk worse than what is vulgarly called devil's dung.

On the 3d, we weighed, and stood for Cape St. John, which in the evening bore N. by E. distant four miles. This point being the eastern point of Staten Land, is a rock of considerable height, situated in lat. 53 deg. 46 min. S. and in 64 deg. 7 min. W. long. having a rocky islet lying close under the N. point of it. To the westward of the cape is an inlet, which seemed to communicate with the sea to the south; and between this and the cape is a bay. Having doubled the cape, we hauled up along the south coast. At noon Cape St. John bore N. 20 deg. E. distant about three leagues; Cape

St. Bartholomew, or the S. W. point of Staten Land, S. 83 deg. W. two high detached rocks N. 80 deg. W. By observation our lat. was found to be 54 deg. 56 min. S. We now judged this land to have been sufficiently explored; but before we leave it, think it necessary to make a few observations on this and its neighbouring islands.

The S. W. coast of Terra del Fuego, with respect to inlets and islands, may be compared to the coast of Norway; for we believe within the extent of three leagues there is an inlet or harbour, which will receive and shelter the first rate ships: but till these are better known, every navigator must fish for anchorage; add to this, there are several rocks on the coast; though as none lie far from land, the approach of them may be known by sounding, if they cannot be seen; so that upon the whole, we cannot think this the dangerous coast it has been represented by other voyagers.

Staten Land is thirty miles in length, and near twelve broad. Its surface consists of craggy hills, towering up to a vast height, especially near the west end, and the coast is rocky. The greatest part of the hills, their summits excepted, is covered with trees, shrubs, and herbage. We cannot say any thing, that navigators may depend on, concerning the tides and currents on these coasts; but we observed that in Strait Le Maire, the southerly tide, or current, begins to act at the new and full moon about four o'clock. It may also be of use to commanders to remark, that if bound round Cape Horn to the W. and not in want of any thing to oblige them to put into port, we would advise them not to come near land; as by keeping out to sea, they would avoid the currents, which, we are convinced, lose their force twelve leagues from land; and at a greater distance they would find none to impede their course.

All the animals of this island live in perfect harmony, and seem careful not to disturb each other's tranquillity. The sea-lions possess most of the coast; the bears take up their quarters within the isle; the shags lodge in the highest



highest cliffs; the penguins have their separate abode where there is the most easy communication to and from the sea; and the other birds have their places of retirement; yet we have observed them all, with mutual reconcilment, mix together, like domestic cattle and poultry in a farm yard: nay, we have seen the eagles and vultures sitting together among the shags, on their hillocks, without the latter, either young or old, being disturbed at their presence.

We left Staten Island on the 3d, and this day being the 4th, we saw the land again; and at six o'clock in the afternoon, a heavy squall came so suddenly upon us, that it carried away a top-gallant-mast, a studding-sail, boom, and a fore studding-sail. This ended in a heavy shower of rain; we now steered S. W. in order to discover the Gulf of Sebastian, if such a coast existed, in which the gulf has been represented, for of this we entertained a doubt: however, this appeared to be the best course to clear it up, and to explore the southern part of this ocean.

On the 6th, we were in lat. 58 deg. 9 min. S. and 53 deg. 14 min. W. the situation nearly assigned for the S. W. point of the Gulf of St. Sebastian; but seeing no signs of land, were still doubtful of its existence; and being also fearful, that by keeping to the S. might miss the land said to be discovered by La Roche in 1675, and by the ship *Lion*, in 1756; for these reasons, we hauled to the N. in order to get into the parallel laid down by Dalrymple, as soon as possible. On the 7th, we were near midnight in the lat. of 56 deg. 4 min. S. long. 53 deg. 36 min. W.

On the 13th, we stood to the S. till noon, when finding ourselves in lat. 55 deg. 7 min. we stretched to the N. We saw several penguins, and a snow petrel, which we judged to denote the vicinity of ice. We found also the air much colder than we had felt it since we left New Zealand. On the 14th, we discovered land, in a manner wholly covered with snow. We sounded in 175 fathoms, muddy bottom. On the 15th, the wind blew in squalls, attended with snow and

sleet, and we had a great sea to encounter. At four, we stood to the S. W. under two courses; but at midnight the storm abated, so that we could carry our topsails double reefed.

On the 17th, at four o'clock A. M. we stood to the E. with a moderate breeze, and at eight saw the land extending from E. by N. to N. E. by N. It proved to be an island, and we called it Willis's Island, from the name of the person who first discovered it from the mast-head. We bore to it with a view of exploring the northern coast; and as we advanced, we perceived another isle to the north, between that and the main. Observing a clear passage between both, we steered for the same, and in the midway found it to be two miles broad. Willis's Isle is in the lat. of 54 deg. S. and 38 deg. 23 min. W. long.

On the 17th, having got through the passage, we observed the N. coast trended E. by N. for about three leagues. We ranged the coast till near night, at one league distance, when, on sounding, we found fifty fathoms, and a muddy bottom. On the 17th, we made for the land. We now steered along shore till seven, when seeing the appearance of an inlet, we hauled in for it. The captain, accompanied by Mr. Forster and others, went off in a boat to reconnoitre the bay before we ventured in with the ship. They landed in three different places, displayed our colours, and took possession of the country in his Majesty's name. The head of the bay was terminated by ice cliffs, of considerable height; pieces of which were continually breaking off, and made a noise like a cannon. Nor were the interior parts of the country less horrible.—The savage rocks raised their lofty summits till lost in the clouds, and vallies were covered with seemingly perpetual snow. Not a tree, nor a shrub of any size were to be seen. The only signs of vegetation were a strong bladed grass, growing in tufts, wild burnet, and a plant like moss seen on the rocks. Sea-bears, or seals, were numerous; the shores swarmed with young cubs. Here were also the largest penguins we had yet

yet seen. Some we brought aboard weighed thirty pounds.

When the party returned aboard, they brought with them a quantity of seals and penguins; not that we wanted provisions, but any kind of fresh meat was acceptable to the crew; and even Captain Cook acknowledged, that he was now, for the first time, heartily tired of salt diet of every kind; and that though the flesh of penguins could scarcely be compared to bullocks liver, yet its being fresh was sufficient to make it palatable. The captain named the bay he surveyed, Possession Bay; though, according to his account of it, we think it to be no appendage to his majesty's new possessions.

On the 18th, we made sail to the east, along the coast; the direction of which from Cape Buller, is 73 deg. 30 min. E. for the space of twelve leagues, to a projecting point, which was named Cape Saunders.—Beyond this is a pretty large bay, which obtained the name of Cumberland Bay. At the bottom of this, as also in some smaller ones, were vast tracts of frozen ice or snow, not yet broken loose. Being now just past Cumberland Bay, we hauled off the coast, from whence we were distant four miles.

On the 20th, we made sail to the S. W. round Cooper's Island, which is one rock, considerably high, about five miles in circuit, and one distant from the main. Here the main coast takes a S. W. direction for five leagues, to a point which we called Cape Disappointment, off which are three small isles. The most southern one is a league from the cape, green, low, and flat. We now quitted this coast, and directed our course to the S. S. E. for the land we had seen the preceding day. A strong gale overtook us, and we thought ourselves very fortunate in having got clear of the land before this came on.

On the 21st, the storm was succeeded by a thick fog, attended with rain; but having got a southerly breeze, we stood to the east till three in the afternoon; and then steered north in search of the land. On the



22d, we had thick foggy weather; but in the evening it was so clear that we could see two leagues round us, and thinking we might be to the east of the land, we steered west.

On the 23d, a thick fog at six o'clock, once more compelled us to haul the wind to the south; but at eleven, we were favoured with a view of three or four rocky islets, extending from S. E. to E. N. E. about one league distant: and this being the extent of our horizon, might be the reason we did not see the Sugar-loaf. We were well assured, that was the land we had seen before, and which we had now circumnavigated; consisting of only a few detached rocks, the receptacles for birds. They are situated in latitude 55 deg. S. This interval of clear weather was succeeded by as thick a fog as ever, on which we stood to the north. Thus we were continually involved in thick mists, and the shags, with frequent soundings, were our best pilots; but on the 23d, we stood a few miles to the north, when we got clear of the rocks, out of soundings, and saw not any shags.

## CHAP. IX.

*The Resolution continues her course—Newland and Saunders Isles discovered—Conjectures, and some reasons that there may be land about the south pole—The Resolution alters her course to the east—Proceedings till her arrival at the Cape of Good Hope—Sails for the Isle of Fayal, and returns to England—Captain Furneaux's Narrative, from the time the Adventure was separated from the Resolution, to her arrival in England, including the report of Lieutenant Burney, concerning the untimely death of the boat's crew, who were murdered by some of the natives of Queen Charlotte's Sound.*

ON the 25th, we steered E. S. E. We had a fresh gale at N. N. E. but the weather still continued foggy, till towards the evening, at which time it cleared up. On the 26th, we held on our course with a fine gale from the N. N. W. but at day-light, seeing no land to the east, and being in latitude 56 deg. 33 min. S. and in 31 deg. 10 min. west longitude, we steered to the south.

On the 27th, we had so thick a fog, that we could not see a ship's length. We expected soon to fall in with the ice, and on this account, it being no longer safe to sail before the wind, we hauled to the east with a gentle gale. When the fog cleared away, we resumed our course to the south; but it returned again, which obliged us to haul upon a wind; and unless we soon discovered some certain signs of falling in with land, the captain determined to make this the limit of his voyage to the south. Indeed it would not have been prudent to have squandered away time in seeking farther to the south, when there was as great a probability of finding a large track of land near Cape Circumcision. Besides, it was an irksome task to traverse in high southern latitudes, where nothing was to be discovered but ice.

At this time a long hollow swell from the west, indicated that no land was to be expected in such a direction; and upon the whole, we may venture to assert, that the extensive coast laid down by Mr. Dalrymple, and his Gulf of St. Sebastian, do not exist. On the 28th, at eight o'clock A. M. we stood to the east, with a gentle breeze at north. The weather cleared away, and we perceived the sea strewed with large and small bodies of ice. Some whales, penguins, snow peterels, and other birds were seen. We had now sun-shine, but the air was cold. At noon, by observation, we were in 60 deg. 4 min. S. and in 29 deg. 23 min. W. longitude. At half past two o'clock, having continued our course to the east, we suddenly fell in with a vast number of large ice-islands, and a sea strewed with loose ice, and the weather becoming hazy, made it dangerous to stand in among them. We therefore tacked, and stood back to the west, with the wind at north. We were now surrounded with ice-islands, all nearly of an equal height, with a flat surface, but of various extent.

On Sunday the 19th, having little wind, we were obliged to traverse in such courses as were most likely to carry us clear of them, so that we hardly made any progress one way or other, throughout the whole day. The weather was fair, but remarkably gloomy, and we were visited by penguins and whales in abundance. On the 30th, we tacked and stood to the N. E. and almost throughout the day it was foggy, with either sleet or snow. At noon we were in latitude 59 deg. 30 min. S. and in 29 deg. 24 min. W. At two o'clock, passed one of the largest ice-islands we had seen during our voyage; and some time after two smaller ones. On the 31st, we discovered land a-head, distant about one league. This land consisted of three rocky islets of considerable height. The utmost terminated in a lofty peak, like a sugar-loaf, to which we gave the name of Freezland Peak, after the man who first discovered it. The latitude is 59 deg. S. and 27 deg. W. longitude. To the east of this peak,



peak, was seen an elevated coast, whose snow capp'd summits were above the clouds. We named it Cape Bristol, in honour of the noble family of Hervey. Also in latitude 59 deg. 13 min. 30 sec. S. and in 27 deg. 45 min. W. another elevated coast appeared in sight, distant from four to eight leagues. This land we called Southern Thule, because the most southern that has yet been discovered. Its surface rises high, and is every where covered with snow. There were those of our company, who thought they saw land in the space between Thule and Cape Bristol. We judged it more than probable that these two lands are connected, and the space is a deep bay, which, though these are mere suppositions, was called Forster's Bay. Being not able to weather Southern Thule, we tacked and stood to the north, at one o'clock, and at four Freezland Peak was distant four leagues. Soon after the wind fell, and we were left to the mercy of a great westerly swell, which set right upon the shore; but at eight o'clock, the weather clearing up, we saw Cape Bristol, which bore E. S. E. ending in a point to the north, beyond which we could see no land. Thus we were relieved from the fear of being cast away by the swell, and cast on the most horrible coast in the world. We continued our course to the north all night, with a light breeze at west.

On Wednesday the 1st of February, at four o'clock in the morning, we had a view of a new coast. At six it bore north 6 deg. E. and being a high promontory, we named it Cape Montague. It is situated in latitude 58 deg. 37 min. S. and in 26 deg. 44 min. W. longitude, eight leagues to the north of Cape Bristol. We saw land in several places between them, whence we concluded the whole might be connected. We wish it had been in our power to have determined this with greater certainty, but prudence would not permit the attempt, nor to venture near a coast the dangers of which have been already sufficiently pointed out. One ice-island, among many others on this coast, particularly attracted our notice: it was level in surface,

of great extent both in height and circuit, and its sides were perpendicular, on which the waves of the sea had not made the least impression. We thought it might have come out from some bay on the coast. At noon, by observation, we found our latitude to be 58 deg. 25 min. In the afternoon, at two o'clock, when standing to the north we saw land, which bore N. 25 deg. E. It extended from N. 40 deg. to 52 deg. E. and it was imagined more land lay beyond it to the east.

On the 2d, at six o'clock A. M. having steered to the north during the night, land was discovered, bearing north 12 deg. E. distant ten leagues. We saw two hummocks just above the horizon, of which we soon lost sight. We now stood, having a fresh breeze at N. N. E. for the northernmost land we had seen the preceding day, which, at this time, bore E. S. E. By ten o'clock, we fetched in with it, but not having it in our power to weather the same, we tacked at three miles from the coast. This extended from E. by S. to S. E. and appeared to be an island of about ten leagues circuit. The surface was high, and its summit lost in the clouds. Like all the neighbouring lands, it was covered with a sheet of snow and ice, except on a point of the north side, and on two hills seen over it, which probably were two islands. These were not only clear of snow, but seemed covered with green turf. We saw also large ice-islands to the south, and others to the N. E. At noon we tacked for the land again, in order if possible to determine whether it was an island; but a thick fog soon prevented the discovery, by making it unsafe to stand for the shore; so that having returned, we tacked and stood to N. W. to make the land we had seen in the morning. We left the other under the supposition of its being an island, and named it Saunders' Isle, after Capt. Cook's honourable friend Sir Charles Saunders. It lies in latitude 57 deg. 49 min. S. and in 26 deg. 44 min. W. long. distant thirteen leagues from Cape Montague. The wind having shifted at six o'clock, we stood to the north; and at eight we saw Saunders' Island, extending

tending from S. E. by S. to E. S. E. We were still in doubt if it were an island, and could not at this time clear it up, as we found it necessary to take a view of the land to the north, before we proceeded any further to the east. With this intent we stood to the north, and on the 3d, at two o'clock A. M. we came in sight of the land we were searching after, which proved to be two isles. On account of the day on which they were discovered, we called them Candlemas Isles. They lie in lat. 57 deg. 11 min. S. and in 27 deg. 6 min. W. longitude. Between these we observed a small rock: there may perhaps be others; for the weather being hazy occasioned us to lose sight of the islands, and we did not see them again till noon, at which time they were three or four leagues off. We now stood to the N. E. and at midnight came suddenly into water uncommonly white, at which appearance the officer on watch was so much alarmed, that he immediately ordered the ship to put about, and we accordingly tacked instantly. There were various opinions aboard concerning this matter; probably it might be a shoal of fish; but some said it was a shoal of ice; and others thought it was shallow water.

On Sunday the 4th, at noon, by observation, we found ourselves in latitude 56 deg. 43 min. S. and in longitude 25 deg. 33 min. W. We now, having a breeze at breast, stood to the south, intending to regain the coast we had lost; but the wind at eight o'clock in the evening, obliged us to stand to the east, in which run we saw many ice-islands and some loose ice. As the formation of ice-islands has not been fully investigated, we will here offer a few hints and observations respecting them.

We do not think, as some others do, that they are formed by the water at the mouths of great cataracts or large rivers, which, when accumulated, break off, owing to their ponderous weight; because we never found any of the ice which we took up, in the least incorporated, or connected with earth, which must necessarily adhere to it, were this conjecture true. Furthermore,



thermore, we are not certain whether there are any rivers in these countries, as we saw neither rivers nor streams of fresh water there. The ice-islands, at least in these parts, must be formed from snow and sleet consolidated, which gather by degrees, and are drifted from the mountains. In winter, the seas or ice-cliffs must fill up the bays, if they are ever so large. The continual fall of snow occasions the accumulation of these cliffs, till they can support their weight no longer, and large pieces break off from these ice-islands. We are inclined to believe, that these ice-cliffs, where they are sheltered from the violence of the winds, extend a great way into the sea.

On the 5th, having seen no penguins, we thought that we were leaving land behind us, and that we had passed its northern extremity. On the 6th, we held on our course till the 7th at noon, when we found our latitude to be 58 deg. 15 min. S. and lon. 21 deg. 34 min. W. and not seeing any signs of land, we concluded, that what had been denominated Sandwich Land, was either a group of islands, or a point of the continent, for in Captain Cook's opinion, the ice that is spread over this vast southern ocean, must originate in a track of land, which he firmly believes lies near the pole, and extends farthest to the north, opposite to the Southern Atlantic and Indian Oceans; for ice being found in these farther to the north, than any where else, induced the captain to conclude, that land of considerable extent must exist near the south. Upon a contrary supposition it will follow, that we ought to see ice every where under the same parallel; but few ships have met with ice going round Cape Horn; and for our part, we saw but little below the sixtieth degree of latitude in the Southern Pacific Ocean; on the other hand, in this sea, between the meridian of 40 deg. W. and fifty or sixty degrees east, we found ice as far north as 51 deg. Others have seen it in a much lower latitude. Let us now suppose there is a Southern Continent within the polar circle. The question which readily occurs, will be, What end can be answered in discovering or exploring such a coast?

Or

Or what use can the same be of, either to navigation, geography, or any other science? And what benefits can result therefrom to a commercial state? Consider for a moment, what thick fogs, snow, storms, intense cold, and every thing dangerous to navigation, must be encountered with by every hardy adventurer; behold the horrid aspect of a country impenetrable by the animating heat of the sun's rays; a country doomed to be immersed in everlasting snow. See the islands and floats on the coast, and the continued falls of the ice-cliffs in the ports; these difficulties, which might be heightened by others less dangerous, are sufficient to deter every one from the rash attempts of proceeding farther to the south, than our expert and brave commander has done, in search of an unknown country, which when discovered would answer no valuable purpose whatever.

By this time, we had traversed the Southern Ocean, in such a manner, as to have no doubt in determining that there is no continent, unless near the pole, and out of the reach of navigation. We have made many new discoveries, and ascertained the exact situation of several old ones. Thus was the end of our voyage fully answered, a southern hemisphere sufficiently explored, and the necessity of a search after the southern continent put an end to. We should have proceeded to farther discoveries, but our captain thought it cruel to detain the people who sailed with him any longer without the necessary refreshments, especially as their behaviour merited every indulgence; for neither officers nor men ever once repined at any hardship, nor expressed any uneasiness, or additional fear of danger, on account of our separation from the *Adventure*. It was now high time to think of returning home; and could we have continued longer, we should have been in great danger of the scurvy breaking out among us, and we do not know any good purpose farther discoveries would have answered: we therefore steered for the Cape of Good Hope, intending to look for Bouvet's discovery, Cape Circumcision, and the isles of Denia and Marseveen.

On Tuesday the 7th, we resumed our course to the east, and this day only three ice islands were seen. At eight o'clock in the evening we hauled the wind to the S. E. for the night. On the 8th, at day-light, we continued our course to the east. In the afternoon, passed three ice islands. On the 9th, we had a calm most part of the day; the weather fair, except at times a snow shower. We saw several ice islands, but not the least intimation that could induce us to think that any land was near us. We stood now to the N. E. with a breeze which sprung up at S. E. On the 10th, we had showers of sleet and snow; the weather was piercing cold, inso-much that the water on the deck was frozen. The ice islands were continually in sight.

On the 11th, we continued to steer east. In the morning we had heavy showers of snow; but as the day advanced, we had clear and serene weather. At noon, we were in lat. 58 deg. 11 min. and in 7 deg 55 min. W. longitude. On the 12th, we had ice islands continually in sight, but most of them were small and breaking to pieces. On the 13th, we had a heavy fall of snow; but the sky clearing up, we had a fair night, and so sharp a frost, that the water in all our vessels on deck, was next morning covered with a sheet of ice.

On the 14th, we continued to steer east, inclining to the north, and in the afternoon crossed the first meridian, or that of Greenwich, in the latitude of 57 deg. 50 min. S. At eight o'clock we had a hard gale, at S. S. W. and a high sea from the same quarter.

On the 15th, we steered E. N. E. till noon, when by observation, we were in the latitude of 56 deg. 47 min. S. and 4 deg. 11 min. E. longitude. We now sailed N. E. with a view of getting into the latitude of Cape Circumcision. We had some large ice islands in sight, and the air was nearly as cold as the preceding day. The night was foggy, with snow showers, and a smart frost. On the 16th, we continued our course N. E. and at noon we observed in latitude 55 deg. 26 min. E. longitude, in which situation we had a great swell



swell from the south, but no ice in sight. At one o'clock we stood to the south-east, till six, when we tacked and stood to the north. At this time we had a heavy fall of snow and sleet, which fixed to the masts and rigging as it fell, and coated the whole with ice. On the 17th, we had a great high sea from the south, and from whence we concluded no land was near in that direction. On the 18th, the weather was fair and clear.

We now kept a look out for Cape Circumcision; for if the land had ever so little extent in direction of N. and S. we could not miss seeing it, as the northern point is said to lie in 54 deg. On the 19th, at eight o'clock in the morning, land appeared in the direction of E. by S. but it proved a mere fog-bank. We now steered E. by S. till seven o'clock in the evening, when we were in lat. 54 deg. 42 min. S. and in 13 deg. 3 min. E. longitude. We now stood to N. W. having a very strong gale, attended with snow showers. On Monday the 20th, we tacked and stretched to the N. E. and had a fresh gale, attended with snow showers and sleet. At noon, our latitude was 54 deg. 8 min. S. long. 12 deg. 59 min. E. but had not the least sign of land. On the 21st, we were 5 deg. to the east of the lon. in which Cape Circumcision is said to lie, and continued our course east, inclining a little to the south till the 22d. We had now measured in the lat. laid down for Bouvet's land, thirteen degrees of longitude; a course in which it is hardly possible we could have missed it; we therefore began to doubt its existence; and concluded that what the Frenchman had seen, could be nothing more than a deception, or an island of ice: for after we had left the southern isles, to the present time, not the least vestige of land had been discovered. We saw, 'tis true, some seals and penguins; but these are to be found in all parts of the southern ocean, and we believe, shags, gannets, boobies, and men-of-war birds, are the most indubitable signs that denote the vicinity of land, as they seldom go very far out to sea. Being at this time only two degrees of

longitude from our rout to the south, when we took our departure from the Cape of Good Hope, it was in vain for us to continue our course to the east under this parallel; but thinking we might have seen land farther to the S. for this reason, and to clear up some doubts, we steered S. E. in order to get into the situation in which it was supposed to lie.

On the 23d, from observations on several distances of the sun and moon, we found ourselves in the lat. of 55 deg. 25 min. S. and in 23 deg. 22 min. E. long. and having run over the track in which the land was supposed to lie, without seeing any, we now were well assured the ice islands had deceived Mr. Bouvet, as at times they had deceived us. During the night, the wind had veered to N. W. which enabled us to steer more north; for we had now laid aside all thoughts of searching farther after French discoveries, and were determined to direct our course for the Cape of Good Hope, intending only by the way to look for the isles of Denia and Marseveen, which by Dr. Halley are laid down in the latitude of 41 deg. 5 min. and 4 deg. E. longitude from the meridian of the Cape of Good Hope. On Friday the 25th, we steered N. E. and were at noon in latitude 52 deg. 52 min. S. longitude 26 deg. 31 min. E. This day we saw the last ice island.

On Wednesday the 1st of March, we were in the latitude of 46 deg. 44 min. S. and in 23 deg. 36 min. W. longitude; and we took notice, that the whole time the wind blew regular and constant northerly, which included several days, the weather was always cloudy and very hazy; but as soon as it came to the south or west, it cleared up. We also observed, that the barometer began to rise several days before this change happened. On the 3d, in the afternoon we had intervals of clear weather, but at night the wind blew a heavy squall from S. W. whereby several of our sails were split, and a middle stay-sail was wholly lost. We were now in latitude 41 deg. 30 min. S. longitude 16 deg. 51 min. E. We had not yet seen any signs of  
and,

land, but albatrosses, peterels, and other sea-birds, were our daily visitors. On the 11th, the wind shifted suddenly from N. W. to S. W. which occasioned the mercury to fall as suddenly from 62 to 52 deg. so different was the state of the air between a northerly and a southerly wind.

On Saturday the 12th, some albatrosses and peterels were shot, which proved an acceptable treat. This day we were nearly in the situation in which the isles of Denia and Marseveen are said to lie, and not the least hope of finding them remained. On the 13th, we stood to N. N. W. and at noon, by observation, were in lat. 38 deg. 51 min. S. which was above thirty miles more than our log gave us; to what this difference was owing, we could not determine: the watch also shewed that we had been set to the east. At this time we were two degrees north of the parallel in which the isles are laid down, but found not any encouragement to persevere in our endeavours to find them.

This must have consumed more time, we think, in a fruitless search; and every one, all having been confined a long time to stale and salt provisions, was impatient to get into port. We therefore, in compliance with the general wish, resolved to make the best of our way to the Cape of Good Hope. On Thursday the 16th, at day-break, we descried in the N. W. quarter, standing to the westward, two sail, one of which shewed Dutch colours. About this time, a quarrel arose between three officers and the ship's cooks, which was not reconciled without serious consequences. Those three gentlemen, upon some occasion or other, entered the cook-room with naked knives, and with oaths, unbecoming their character, swore they would take away the lives of the first who dared to affront them. It seems they had formerly met with some rebuffs for too much frequenting the cook's apartments, which had hitherto passed in a joke; but now a regular complaint was laid before the captain of their unwarrantable behaviour, and of the danger the men were in of their lives; into which complaint



the captain was under the necessity of inquiring: and upon finding it just, of confining the offenders in irons.

While they were in this situation, the articles of war being read, it was found that the offence was of such a nature as hardly to be determined without a reference to a court-martial, in order to which, the two who appeared most culpable, were continued prisoners upon parole, and the third was cleared. After this business had engrossed the captain's attention, he called the ship's company together, and after recounting the particulars of the voyage, the hardships they had met with, the fatigues they had undergone, and the cheerfulness they had constantly shewn in the discharge of their duty, he gave them to understand, how much it would still recommend them to the Lords of the Admiralty, if they would preserve a profound silence in the ports they had yet to pass and might enter, with regard to the courses, the discoveries they had made, and every particular relating to this voyage; and likewise after their return home, till they had their Lordships' permission to the contrary; requiring at the same time, all the officers who had kept journals to deliver them into his custody, to be sealed up, and not to be opened till delivered to their lordships at the proper office. In the interim, they were to be locked up safely in a chest. This request was cheerfully complied with by every commissioned officer.

On Friday the 17th, we observed at noon in the lat. of 34 deg. 42 min. S. in the evening we saw land, about six leagues distant, in the direction of E. N. E. and there was a great fire or light upon it, throughout the first part of the night. On the 18th, at day-break, we saw at the same distance, the land again, bearing N. N. W. At nine o'clock, we sent out a boat to get up with one of the two ships before noticed; we were so desirous of hearing news, that we paid no attention to the distance, though the ships were at least two leagues from us. Soon after we stood to the south, a breeze sprung up at west. At this time three more sail were seen to windward, one of which shewed English colours. The boat returned at one o'clock

o'clock P. M. and our people in it had been on board a Dutch Indiaman coming home from Bengal; the ship was the Bownkirk Polder, the captain Cornelius Bosch. The captain very politely made us a tender of sugar, arrack, and of any thing that could be spared out of the ship.

By some English mariners on board her, our people were informed, that our consort had arrived at the Cape of Good Hope twelve months ago; adding that a boat's crew had been murdered and eaten by the natives of New Zealand. This intelligence sufficiently explained the mysterious accounts we had received from our old friends in Queen Charlotte's Sound. On the 19th, at ten o'clock in the morning, the English ship bore down to us. She was the *True Briton*, Capt. Broadly, on her return from China. A letter to the secretary of the Admiralty was committed to the care of the captain, who generously sent us fresh provisions, tea, and other articles. In the afternoon the *True Briton* stood out to sea, and we in for land. At six o'clock, we tacked within five miles of the shore, distant as we conjectured, about six leagues from Cape Aquilas. On the 20th, we stood along shore to the west; and on the 21st, at noon, the Table Mountain over the Cape town, bore N. E. by E. distant ten leagues. The next morning we anchored in Table Bay; with us in our reckoning, it was Wednesday the 22d, but with the people here, Tuesday the 21st, we having gained a day by running to the E. In the bay we found ships of different nations, among which was an English East Indiaman, from China, bound directly for England. In this ship Capt. Cook sent a copy of his journal, together with some charts and drawings to the Admiralty. We saluted the garrison with thirteen guns, and the compliment was returned with an equal number. We now heard the deplorable story of the *Adventure's* boat's crew confirmed, with the addition of a false report, concerning the loss of a French ship upon the same island, with the total destruction of the captain and his crew, propagated no doubt, by the *Adventure's* people, to render an act of savage barbarity, that would scarcely admit

admit of aggravation, still more horrible. But that which gave us full satisfaction about this matter, was, Capt. Furneaux had left a letter for our commander, in which he mentions the loss of the boat and ten of his men, in Queen Charlotte's Sound.

The day after our arrival at this place, Capt. Cook, accompanied by our gentlemen, waited on Baron Plettenberg, the Dutch Governor, by whom, and his principal officers, they were treated with the greatest politeness; and as at this place refreshments of all kinds may be procured in great abundance, we now, after the numerous fatigues of a long voyage, began to taste and enjoy the sweets of repose. It is a custom here for all the officers to reside on shore, in compliance with which, the captain, the two Forsters, and Mr. Sparman took up their abode with Mr. Brandt, well known to our countrymen for his obliging readiness to serve them. Our people on board were not neglected; and being provided daily with fresh baked bread, fresh meat, greens, wine, &c. they were soon restored to their usual strength, and as soon forgot all past hardships and dangers.

All hands were employed now to supply all our defects, almost every thing except the standing rigging was to be replaced anew; and it is well known the charges here for naval stores are most exorbitant; for the Dutch, both at the Cape and Batavia, take a scandalous advantage of the distress of foreigners. That our casks, rigging, sails, &c. should be in a shattered condition, is easily accounted for. In circumnavigating the globe, we mean, from leaving this place till our return to it again, we had sailed no less than sixty thousand miles, equal nearly to three times the equatorial circumference of the earth; but in all this run, which had been made in all latitudes, between 9 and 71 deg. we sprung neither low-masts nor top-masts; nor broke so much as a lower or top-mast shroud. At the Cape, the curiosity of all nations was excited, to learn the success of our discoveries, and in proportion to the earnestness of the solicitations, wherewith the  
common



common men were pressed by foreign inquisitors, they took care to gratify them with wonderful relations.—Hence many strange stories were circulated abroad, before it was known by the people at large at home, whether the Resolution had perished at sea, or was upon her return to Europe.

During our stay here, several foreign ships put in and went out, bound to and from India, namely, English, French, Danish, and three Spanish ships, two going to, and one returning from Manilla. We believe it is but lately, that ships of this nation have touched here; and these were the first to whom were allowed the same privileges as other European states. We now lost no time in putting all things in readiness to complete our voyage; but we were obliged to unhang our rudder, and were also delayed for want of caulkers; as it was absolutely necessary to caulk the ship before we put to sea.

On the 26th of April, this work was finished, and having got on board a fresh supply of provisions, and all necessary stores, we took leave of the governor, and his principal officers. On the 27th, we went on board, and soon after, the wind coming fair, we weighed and put to sea. When under sail we saluted the garrison, as is customary, and they returned the compliment. When clear of the bay we parted company with some of the ships who sailed out with us: the Danish ship steered for the East Indies, the Spanish frigate, *Juno*, for Europe, and we and the Dutton Indiaman, for St. Helena. Depending on the goodness of Mr. Kendall's watch, we determined to attempt to make the island by a direct course. The wind, in general, blew faint all the passage, which made it longer than common.

On the 15th of May, at day-break, we saw the island, distant fourteen leagues, and anchored, at midnight, before the town, on the N. W. side of the island. Governor Skettowe, and the gentlemen of the island, treated us, while we continued here, with the greatest courtesy. In our narrative of Captain Cook's former voyage,

voyage, we have given a full description of this island; to which we shall only add, that the inhabitants are far from exercising a wanton cruelty towards their slaves. We are informed also that wheel-carriages and porter knots have been in use among them for many years. Within these three years a new church has been built; some other new buildings are erecting, a commodious landing-place for boats has been made, and other improvements, which add both strength and beauty to the place. Here we finished some necessary repairs, which we had not time to complete during our stay at the Cape. Our empty water casks were also filled, and the ship's company had fresh beef, at five-pence per pound. This article of refreshment is very good, and the only one to be procured worth mentioning.

On the 21st, in the evening, we took leave of the governor, and then repaired on board. The Dutton Indiaman, in company with us, was ordered not to fall in with Ascension, for which we steered, on account of an illicit trade, carried on between the Company's ships, and some vessels from North America, who of late years, had visited the island on pretence of fishing, when their real design was to wait the coming of the India ships. The Dutton was therefore ordered to steer N. W. by W. or N. W. till to the northward of Ascension. With this ship we were in company till the 24th, when we parted. A packet for the Admiralty was put on board, and she continued her course N. W.

On the 11th, we made the island of Ascension; and in the evening anchored in Cross Bay, on the N. W. side, half a mile from the shore, in ten fathoms water. The Cross-hill, so called on account of a flag-staff erected upon it in form of a cross, bore S. 38 deg. E. and the two extreme points of the bay extended from N. E. to S. W. We had several fishing parties out every night, and got about twenty-four turtles, weighing between four and five hundred weight each. This was our principal object, though we might have had a plentiful

plentiful supply of fish in general. We have no where seen old wives in such abundance; also cavalies, congor eels, and various other sorts.

This island lies in the direction N. W. and S. E. and is ten miles broad, and five or six long. Its surface is very barren, and scarcely produces a shrub, plant, or any kind of vegetation, in the space of many miles; instead of which we saw only stones and sand, or rather flags and ashes: hence from the general appearance of the face of this island, it is more than probable, that at some time, of which we have no account, it has been destroyed by a volcano. We met with in our excursions a smooth even surface in the intervals between the heaps of stones; but, as one of our people observed, you may as easily walk over broken glass bottles as over the stones; for if you slip, or make a false step, you are sure to be cut or lamed. At the S. E. end of the isle is a high mountain, which seems to have been left in its original state; for it is covered with a kind of white marle, producing purslain, spurg, and one or two sorts of grass. On these the goats feed, which are to be found in this part of the isle. Here are good land crabs, and the sea abounds with turtle from January to June. They always come on shore to lay their eggs in the night, when they are caught by turning them on their backs, in which position they are left on the beach till the next morning, when the turtle-catchers fetch them away. We are inclined to think, that the turtles come to this island merely for the purpose of laying their eggs, as we found none but females; nor had those we caught any food in their stomachs. We saw also near this place abundance of aquatic birds, such as tropic birds, men of war, boobies, &c. On the N. E. side we found the remains of a wreck; she seemed to have been a vessel of one hundred and fifty tons burthen. We were informed, that there is a fine spring in a valley between two hills, on the top of the mountain above-mentioned; besides great quantities of fresh water in holes in the rocks. While the Resolution lay in the road, a sloop belonging to New-York anchored



by her. She had been to the coast of Guinea with a cargo of goods, and came here under a pretence to take in turtle; but her real intention was, we believe, to traffic with the officers of our homeward bound East-Indiamen; for she had lain here near a week, and had got on board twenty turtles; whereas a sloop from Bermuda, had sailed but a few days before, with one hundred and five on board, which were as many as she could take in; but having turned several more on different beaches, they inhumanly ripped open their bellies, for the sake of the eggs, and left the carcasses to putrefy. The centre of this island of Ascension is situated in the lat. of 8 deg. S. and in 14 deg. 28 min. 30 sec. W. longitude.

On the 31st of May, we departed from the island of Ascension, and steered with a fine gale at S. E. by E. for that of Fernando de Noronah, on the coast of Brasil, in order to determine its longitude. In our passage to this place, we had very good weather, and fine moon-light nights, which afforded us many opportunities of making lunar observations. On the 9th of June, we made the island, which had the appearance of several detached hills; the largest of which very much resembled the steeple of a church. As we advanced and drew near it, we found the sea broke in a violent surf on some sunken rocks, which lay about a league from the shore. We now hoisted English colours, and bore up round the north end of the isle, which is a group of little islets; for we perceived plainly, that the land was unconnected and divided by narrow channels. On one of these, next the main, are several strong forts, rendered so by the nature of their situation, which is such, as to command all the anchoring and landing-places about the island. We continued to sail round the northern point, till the sandy beaches, before which is the road for shipping, and the forts were open to the westward of the said point. As the Resolution advanced, a gun was fired, and immediately the Portuguese colours were displayed on all the forts: but not intending to stop here, we fired  
a gun

a gun to the leeward, and stood away to the northward, with a fresh breeze. The hill which appears like a church tower, bore S. 27 deg. W. 5 miles distant; and from our present point of view it appeared to lean, or over-hang to the E. Fernando de Noronah is in no part more than 6 leagues in extent, and exhibits an unequal surface, well clothed with wood and herbage. Its latitude is 3 deg. 53 min. S. and its longitude carried on by the watch, from St. Helena, is 32 deg. 34 min. W. Don Antonio d'Ulloa, in his account of this island, says, "that it hath two harbours, capable of receiving ships of the greatest burden; one is on the north side, and the other on the N. W. The former is, in every respect, the principal, both for shelter and capaciousness, and the goodness of its bottom; but both are exposed to the N. and W. though these winds, particularly the N. are periodical, and of no long continuance. You anchor in the north harbour (which Capt. Cook called a road) in thirteen fathoms water, one third of a league from the shore, bottom of fine sand; the peaked hill bearing S. W. 3 deg. southerly." This road, or (as Ulloa terms it) harbour, is very secure for shipping, being sheltered from the S. and E. winds.

On the 11th, at three o'clock P. M. in long. 32 deg. 14 min. we crossed the line. We had squally weather from the E. S. E. with showers of rain, which continued at times till the 12th, and on the 13th the wind became variable. At noon we were in lat. 3 deg. 49 min. N. and in 31 deg. 47 min. W. long. We had now for most part of the day, dark gloomy weather, till the evening of the 15th, at which time we were in lat. 5 deg. 47 min. N. and in 31 deg. W. long. After this we had three successive calm days, in which we had fair weather and rains alternately; and sometimes the sky was obscured by dense clouds, which broke in very heavy showers of rain.

On the 18th, we had a breeze at E. which fixed at N. E. and we stretched to N. W. As we advanced to the N. the gale increased. On the 21st, Capt. Cook ordered the still to be set to work, with a view of

making the greatest quantity possible of fresh water. To try this experiment the still was fitted to the largest copper we had, which held about 64 gallons of salt-water. At four o'clock A. M. the fire was lighted, and at six the still began to run. The operation was continued till six in the evening: at which time we had obtained 32 gallons of fresh water. At noon the next day, the mercury in the thermometer was 84 and an half, as high as it is generally found to rise at sea. Had it been lower, more water would have been procured; for it is well known, that the colder the air is, the cooler the still may be kept, whereby the steam will be condensed faster. The invention, upon the whole, is a useful one, but it would not be prudent for a navigator to trust wholly to it, for tho' with plenty of fuel, and good coppers, as much water may be obtained as will be necessary to support life, yet the utmost efforts that can be employed in this work, will not procure a sufficiency to support health, especially in hot climates, where fresh water is most wanted; and in the opinion of Captain Cook, founded on experience, the best judge of this matter, nothing can contribute more to the health of seamen, than their having plenty of sweet fresh water.

On the 25th, we were in lat. 16 deg. 12 min. N. and in 37 deg. 20 min. W. long. Observing a ship to windward, bearing down upon us, we shortened sail; but on her approaching, we found by her colours she was Dutch; we therefore made sail again, and left her to pursue her course. On the 28th, we observed in the lat. of 21 deg. 21 min. N. lon. 40 deg. 6 min. W. and our course made good was N. by W. On the 30th, a ship passed us within hail; but she was presently out of sight, and we judged her to be English. We were now in the lat. of 24 deg. 20 min. N. lon. 40 deg. 47 min. W. In lat. 29 deg. 30 min. we saw some sea-plants, commonly called gulf weed, because it is supposed to come from the Gulf of Florida; it may be so, and yet it certainly vegetates at sea. We continued to see this plant in small pieces, till in the  
latitude



latitude of 36 deg. N. beyond which parallel we saw no more of it.

On the 5th of July, the wind veered to the east; and the next day it was calm. On the 7th and 8th we had variable light airs, but on the 9th the wind fixed at S. S. W. after which we had a fresh gale, and steered at first N. E. and then E. N. E. our intention being to make some of the Azores, or Western Isles. On the 11th, we were in lat. 60 deg. 45 min. N. and in 36 deg. 45 min. W. longitude, when we descried a sail steering to the west; and on the 12th, came in sight of three more.

On the 13th, we made the island of Fayal, and on the 14th, at day-break, we entered the bay of De Horta, and at eight o'clock anchored in 20 fathoms water, about half a mile from the shore. Our design in touching at this place, was to make observations, from whence might be determined with accuracy the longitude of the Azores. We were directed by the master of the port, who came on board before we cast anchor, to moor N. E. and S. W. in this station, the S. W. point of the bay bore S. 16 deg. W. and the N. E. point, N. 33 deg. E. The church at the N. E. end of the town, N. 38 deg. W. the west point of St. George's island N. 42 deg. E. distant eight leagues; and the isle of Pico extending from N. 74 deg. E. to S. 46 deg. E. distant five miles. In the bay we found the *Pourvoyeur*, a large French frigate, an American sloop, and a brig belonging to Fayal.

On the 14th, the captain sent to the consul, and notified our arrival to the governor, begging his permission to grant Mr. Wales an opportunity to make his observations on shore. This was readily granted, and Mr. Dent, who acted as consul in the absence of Mr. Gathorne, not only procured this permission, but accommodated Mr. Wales with a convenient place in his garden to set up his instrument; and in several other particulars, this gentleman discovered a friendly readiness to oblige us: even his house was always at our command both night and day; and the entertainment

we met with there, was liberal and hospitable. All the time we staid at this place, the crew of our ship were supplied with plenty of fresh beef, and we purchased about 50 tons of water, at the rate of about three shillings per ton. To hire shore boats is the most general custom here, though ships are allowed, if they prefer many inconveniences to a trifling expence, to water with their own boats. Fresh provisions may be got, and hogs, sheep, and poultry, for sea-stock, at reasonable rates. The sheep are not only small, but are also very poor; but the bullocks and hogs are exceeding good. Here is plenty of wine to be had.

Before we proceed with our own observations, made during our abode at Fayal, it may be agreeable to our readers, to give them a brief account and description of all the Azores, or Western Islands. These have, by different geographers, been variously deemed parts of America, Africa, and Europe, as they are almost in a central point; but we apprehend they may with more propriety be considered as belonging to the latter. They are a group of islands, situated in the Atlantic ocean, between 25 and 32 deg. of W. long. and between 37 and 40 N. lat. 900 miles W. of Portugal, and as many E. of Newfoundland. They are nine in number, viz. St. Taria, St. Miguel, or St. Michael, Terceira, St. George, Graciosa, Fayal, Pico, Flores, and Corvo.

These islands were first discovered by some Flemish ships in 1432, and afterwards by the Portuguese in 1447, to whom they now belong. The two westernmost were named Flores and Corvo, from the abundance of flowers on the one, and crows on the other. They are all fertile, and subject to a governor-general who resided at Angra in Terceira, which is also the seat of the bishop, whose diocese extends over all the Azores. The income of the latter, which is paid in wheat, amounts to about 200l. sterling per year. On every island there is a deputy-governor, who directs the police, militia, and revenue; and a juiz or judge is at the head of the law department, from whom lies an appeal

appeal to a higher court at Terceira, and from thence to the supreme court at Lisbon. The natives of these islands are very litigious.

St. Miguel, the largest, is 100 miles in circumference, contains about 29,000 inhabitants, and is very fertile in wheat and flax. Its chief town is Ponta del Gado. This island was twice ravaged by the English in the time of Queen Elizabeth.

Terceira is reckoned the chief island, on account of its having the best harbour; and its chief town, named Angra, being the residence of the governor-general and the bishop. The town contains a cathedral, five other churches, eight convents, several courts of officers, &c. and is defended by two forts.

The island of Pico, so called from a mountain of vast height, produces excellent wine, cedar, and a valuable wood called teixos. On the south of the island is the principal harbour, called Villa das Lagens.

The inhabitants of Flores having been many years ago infected with the venereal disease by the crew of a Spanish man of war, that was wrecked upon their coast, the evil, it is said, still maintains its ground there, none of the inhabitants being free from it, as in Pera, and other parts of Siberia.

Travellers relate that no poisonous or venomous animal is to be found in the Azores, and that if carried thither, it will expire in a few hours. One tenth of all their productions belong to the king, and the article of tobacco brings in a considerable sum. The wine called Fayal wine, is chiefly raised in the island of Pico, which lies opposite to Fayal. From eighteen to twenty thousand pipes of that wine are made there yearly.—All of these islands enjoy a salubrious air, but are exposed to violent earthquakes, from which they have frequently suffered.

Villa de Horta, the chief town in Fayal, like all the towns belonging to the Portuguese, is crowded with religious buildings; there being no less in this little city, than three convents for men, and two for women. Here are also eight churches, including those belong-  
ing



ing to the convents, and that in the Jesuits' college. This college is a noble structure, and seated on an elevation in the pleasantest part of the city. Since the expulsion of that order, it has been suffered to go to decay, and in a few years, by the all consuming hand of time, may be reduced to a heap of ruins. The principal produce of Fayal is wheat and Indian corn, with which the inhabitants supply Pico, which in return sends them wine more than sufficient for their consumption, great quantities being annually shipped from De Horta (for at Pico there is no road for shipping) for America, whence it has obtained the name of Fayal wine.

The villa de Horta is situated at the bottom of a bay, close to the edge of the sea. It is defended by two castles, one at each end of the town, and a stone work extending along the sea shore from the one to the other. But these works serve more for shew than defence. Before this villa, at the east end of the island, is the bay or road to Fayal, which faces the west end of Pico. It is a semicircle, about two miles in diameter; and its depth, or semi-diameter, is better than three fourths of a mile.

Upon the whole, we by no means think this road of Fayal a bad one. We were informed by a Portuguese captain of the following particulars, which, if true, are not unworthy of notice. This Portuguese told us, that in the direction of S. E. about half a league from the road, and in a line between that and the south side of Pico, lies a concealed sunken rock, covered with 22 fathoms water, and on which the sea breaks from the south. He also gave us to understand, that of all the shoals about these isles that are laid down in our charts, and pilot books, only one has any existence, which lies between the islands of St. Mary and St. Michael, called Hormingan. He further informed us, that the distance between Fayal and the Island of Flores, is forty-five leagues; and that there runs a strong tide between Fayal and Pico, the flood setting to the N. E. and the

the ebb to the S. W. but out at sea, the direction is east and west. By various observations, the true longitude of this bay was found to be 28 deg. 39 min. 18 sec. and a half.

On the 19th, at four o'clock A. M. we sailed out of the bay, and steered for the west end of St. George's island. Having passed this, we shaped our course E. half S. for the island of Terceira; and after a run of fourteen leagues, we found ourselves not more than one league from the west end. We now proceeded as expeditiously as the wind would permit for England; and on the 29th, we made the land near Plymouth.

On the 30th, we cast anchor at Spithead, when Capt. Cook, in company with Messrs. Wales, Forster, and Hodges, landed at Portsmouth, and from thence set out for London. The whole time of our absence from England was three years and eighteen days; and owing to the unbounded goodness of an Almighty Preserver, who indulgently favoured our attempt, and seconded our endeavours, notwithstanding the various changes of climates (and they were as various as can be experienced) we lost only one man by sickness, and three by other causes. Even the single circumstance of keeping the ship's company in health, by means of the greatest care and attention, will make this voyage remarkable in the opinion of every humane person; and we trust the grand end of this expedition, and the purposes for which we were sent into the southern hemisphere were diligently and sufficiently pursued.

The Resolution made the circuit of the southern ocean in a high latitude, and Capt. Cook traversed it in such a manner, as to leave no room for a mere possibility of there being a continent, unless near the pole, and consequently out of the reach of navigation. However, by having twice explored the tropical sea, the situation of old discoveries were determined, and a number of new ones made; so that, we flatter ourselves, upon the whole, the intention of the voyage has, though not in every respect, yet upon the whole, been sufficiently answered; and by having explored so minutely

the southern hemisphere, a final end may, perhaps, be put to searching after a continent in that part of the globe, which has, of late years, and indeed, at times, for the two last centuries, engrossed the attention of some of the maritime powers, and been a favourite theory among the geographers of all ages. The probability of there being a continent, or large tract of land, near the pole, has been already granted; and we may have seen part of it. The extreme cold, the numberless islands, and the vast floats of ice, give strength to this conjecture, and all tend to prove, that there must be main land to the south; but that this must extend farthest to the north, opposite to the southern Atlantic and Indian oceans, we have already assigned several reasons; of which, one is the greater degree of cold in these seas, than in the southern Pacific Ocean, under the same parallels of latitude; for in this last ocean, the mercury in the thermometer seldom fell so low as the freezing point, till we were in lat. 60 deg. and upwards; whereas in the other oceans, it fell as low as the latitude of 45 deg. the cause whereof we attributed to a greater quantity of ice, which extended farther north in the Atlantic and Indian oceans, than in the south Pacific sea; and supposing the ice to be first formed at, or near land, of which we are fully persuaded, it will be an undeniable consequence, that the land extends farther north. But what benefit can accrue from lands thus situated, should they be discovered? lands doomed to everlasting frigidness; and whose horrible and savage aspect no language or words can describe. Will any one venture farther in search after such a country, than our brave and skilful commander has done? Let him proceed, and may the God of universal nature be his guide. We heartily wish him success, nor will we envy him the honour of his discovery. We will venture to say, that this narrative is not defective in point of intelligence, that the facts are true, and that the whole is expressed in an easy stile, which, we flatter ourselves, will not be displeasing to our numerous friends, whose favours we here take the opportunity of gratefully



gratefully acknowledging. It has been observed, that the principal officers of the *Resolution* delivered their journals into the custody of Capt. Cook; and on his arrival in England, Capt. Furneaux also put into his hands a narrative of what had happened in the *Adventure* after her final separation from the *Resolution*.—But it is here necessary to remark further, that some officers in both ships, reserved their private journals; and certain ingenious memorials, to gratify the curiosity of their friends. From such materials these sheets are composed; nor have we had recourse to any printed authorities, but from the sole view of correcting errors in some places, and rendering this undertaking a full, comprehensive, and perfect work. This premised, we shall now lay before our readers a complete narrative of Captain Furneaux's proceedings in the *Adventure*.

*A new, accurate, full, and complete account of Capt. Furneaux's proceedings in the Adventure, from the time he was separated from the Resolution, to his arrival in England; wherein is comprised a faithful relation respecting the boat's crew, who were murdered, and eaten by the Cannibals of Queen Charlotte's Sound, in New Zealand.*

**I**N October 1778, we made the coast of New Zealand after a passage of fourteen days from Amsterdam, and stood along shore till we reached Cape Turnagain, when a heavy storm blew us off the coast for three days successively, in which time we were separated from our consort, the *Resolution*, and saw her not afterwards in the course of her voyage.

On Thursday, the 4th of November, we regained the shore, near Cape Palliser. Some of the natives brought us in their canoes abundance of cray fish and fruit, which they exchanged for our Otaheite cloth, nails, &c. On the 5th the storm again returned, and we were driven off the shore a second time by a vio-

lent gale of wind, accompanied by heavy falls of sleet, which lasted two days; so that by this time our decks began to leak, our beds and bedding were wet, which gave many of our people colds; and now we were most of us complaining, and all began to despair of ever getting into the Sound, or, which we had most at heart, of joining the Resolution. We combated the storm till Saturday the 6th, when being to the north of the cape, and having a hard gale from S. W. we bore away for some bay, in order to complete our wood and water, both of which articles we were at present in great want. For some days past we had been at the allowance of one quart of water, and it was thought six or seven days more would deprive us even of that scanty pittance.

On the 9th, in lat. 38 deg. 21 min. S. and in 178 deg. 37 min. E. lon. we came abreast of Tolaga Bay, and in the forenoon anchored in eleven fathoms water, stiff muddy ground, which lay across the bay for about two miles. This harbour is open from N. N. E. to E. S. E. nevertheless it affords good riding with a westerly wind; and here are regular soundings from five to twelve fathoms. Wood and water are easily procured, except when the winds blow hard easterly, and then at such times, which are but seldom, they throw in a great sea.

The natives about this bay are the same as those at Queen Charlotte's Sound, but more numerous, and have regular plantations of sweet potatoes, and other roots. They have plenty of fish of all sorts, which we purchased with nails, beads, and other trifles. In one of their canoes, we saw the head of a woman, lying in state, adorned with feathers, and other ornaments. It had all the appearance of life, but upon a nearer view, we found it had been dried; yet, every feature was in due preservation and perfect. We judged it to be the head of some deceased relative, kept as a relic.

On the 12th, having taken on board ten tons of water and some wood, we set sail for the Sound; but

we

we were scarcely out when the wind began to blow dead hard on the shore, so that not being able to clear the land on either tack, we were obliged to return to the bay, where we arrived the next morning of the 13th; and having anchored, we rode out a heavy gale of wind at E. by S. attended with a very great sea. We now began to fear the weather had put it out of our power to join our consort, having reason to believe she was in Charlotte's Sound, the appointed place of rendezvous, and by this time ready for sea. Part of the crew were now employed in stopping leaks, and repairing our rigging, which was in a most shattered condition.

On the 14th and 15th, we hoisted out our boats, and sent them to increase our stock of wood and water; but on the last day, the surf rose so high, that they could not make the land. On the 16th, having made the ship as snug as possible, we unmoored at three o'clock A. M. and before six got under weigh. From this time to the 28th, we had nothing but tempestuous weather, in which our rigging was almost blown to pieces, and our men quite worn down with fatigue.

On the 29th, our water being nearly expended, we were again reduced to the scanty allowance of a quart a man per day. We continued beating backward and forward till the 30th, when the weather became more moderate; and having a favourable wind, we were so happy at last as to gain with safety our desired port. After getting through Cook's Streights, we cast anchor at three o'clock P. M. in Queen Charlotte's Sound. We saw nothing of the Resolution, and began to doubt her safety; but upon having landed, we discovered the place where she had pitched her tents; and upon further examination, on an old stump of a tree, we read these words cut out, "Look underneath." We complied instantly with these instructions, and digging, soon found a bottle corked and waxed down, wherein was a letter from Captain Cook, informing us of their arrival at this place on the 3d instant, and their departure on the 24th, and that they intended spending a few days in the entrance of the straits to look for us. We  
immediately



immediately set about the necessary repairs of the ship, with an intention of getting her to sea as soon as possible.

On the 1st of December, the tents were carried on shore, the armourer's forge put up, and every preparation made for the recovery of the sick. The coopers were dispatched on shore to mend the casks, and we began to unstow the hold to get at the bread; but upon opening the casks, we found a great quantity of it entirely spoiled, and most part so damaged, that we were obliged to bake it over again, which unavoidably delayed us some time. At intervals, during our stay here, the natives came on board as usual with great familiarity. They generally brought fish, or whatever they had to barter with us, and seemed to behave with great civility; though twice in one night they came to the tents with an intention of stealing, but were discovered before they had accomplished their design. A party also came down in the night of the 13th, and robbed the astronomer's tent of every thing they could carry away. This they did so quietly, that they were not so much as heard or suspected, till the astronomer getting up to make an observation, missed his instruments, and charged the centinel with the robbery. This brought on a pretty severe altercation, during which they spied an Indian creeping from the tent, at whom Mr. Bailey fired and wounded him; nevertheless he made a shift to retreat into the woods. The report of the gun had alarmed his confederates, who, instead of putting off from the shore, fled into the woods, leaving their canoe, with most of the things that had been stolen, aground on the beach. This petty larceny, it is probable, laid the foundation of that dreadful catastrophe which soon after happened.

On the 17th, at which time we were preparing for our departure, we sent out our large cutter, manned with seven seamen, under the command of Mr. Rowe the first mate, accompanied by Mr. Woodhouse, midshipman, and James Tobias Swilley, the carpenter's servant. They were to proceed up the Sound to Grass Cove, to gather greens and celery for the ship's company,

pany, with orders to return that evening; for the tents had been struck at two in the afternoon, and the ship made ready for sailing the next day. Night coming on, and no cutter appearing, the captain and others began to express great uneasiness. They sat up all night, in expectation of their arrival, but to no purpose. At day-break, therefore the captain ordered the launch to be hoisted out. She was double manned, and under the command of our second lieutenant, Mr. Burney, accompanied by Mr. Freeman, master, the corporal of marines, with five private men, all well armed, and having plenty of ammunition, two wall pieces, and three days provisions. They were ordered first to look into East Bay, then to proceed to Grass Cove, and if nothing was to be seen or heard of the cutter there, they were to go farther up the cove, and return by the west shore.

Mr. Rowe having left the ship an hour before the time proposed for his departure, we thought his curiosity might have carried him into East Bay, none of our people having been there, or that some accident might have happened to the boat; for not the least suspicion was entertained of the natives, our boats having been higher up, and worse provided. Mr. Burney returned about eleven o'clock the same night, and gave us a pointed description of a most horrible scene indeed; the substance, and every material particular of whose reports are contained in the following relation, which includes the remarks of those who attended Mr. Burney.

On the 18th, pursuant to our orders we left the ship, about nine o'clock in the morning. Having a light breeze in our favour, we soon got round Long Island, and Long Point. We continued sailing and rowing for East Bay, keeping close in shore, and examining with our glasses every cove on the larboard side, till near two o'clock in the afternoon, at which time we stopped at a beach on our left, going up East Bay to dress our dinner. While we were cooking, we saw an Indian on the opposite shore, running along a beach

to the head of a bay; and when our meat was just gone, we perceived a company of the natives seemingly busy; upon seeing which, we got immediately into the boat, put off, and rowed quickly to the place where the savages were assembled, which was at the head of the beach; and here, while approaching, we discerned one of their settlements. As we drew near, some of the Indians came down upon the rocks, and waved for us to depart; but perceiving we disregarded them, they altered their gestures and wild notes. At this place we observed six large canoes hauled upon the beach, most of them being double ones; but the number of people were in proportion neither to the size of these canoes, nor the number of houses.

Our little company, consisting of the corporal and his five marines, headed by Mr. Burney, now landed, leaving the boat's crew to guard it. Upon our approach the natives fled with great precipitation. We followed them closely to a little town, which we found deserted; but, while we were employed in searching their huts, the natives returned, making a shew of resistance; but some trifling presents being made to their chiefs, they were very soon appeased. However, on our return to the boat, the savages again followed us, and some of them threw stones. As we came down to the beach, one of the Indians had brought a bundle of hepatoos, or long spears, but seeing Mr. Burney looked very earnestly at him, he walked about with seeming unconcern. Some of his companions appearing to be terrified, a few trifles were given to each of them.

From the place where we now landed, the bay seemed to run full a mile N. N. W. where it ended in a long sandy beach. After dinner we took a view of the country near the coast with our glasses, but saw not a canoe, or signs of inhabitants, after which we fired the wall pieces, as signals to the cutter, if any of the people should be within hearing. We now renewed our search along the east shore; and came to another settlement where the Indians invited us ashore. We inquired



quired of them about the cutter, but they pretended ignorance. They seemed very friendly, and sold us some fish.

About five o'clock in the afternoon, and within an hour after we had left this place, we opened a small bay adjoining to Grass Cove, and here we saw a large double canoe, just hauled upon the beach, with two men and a dog. The two savages, on seeing us approach, instantly fled, which made us suspect it was here we should have some tidings of the cutter. On landing, and examining the canoe, the first things we saw therein, were one of the cutter's rullock ports, and some shoes, one of which among the latter, was known to belong to Mr. Woodhouse.

A piece of flesh was found by one of our people, which at first was thought to be some of the salt meat belonging to the cutter's men, but upon examination, we supposed it to be dog's flesh; a most horrid and undeniable proof soon cleared up our doubts, and convinced us we were among no other than cannibals; for, advancing farther on the beach, we saw about twenty baskets tied up, and a dog eating a piece of broiled flesh, which, upon examining, we suspected to be human. We cut open the baskets; some of which were full of roasted flesh, and others of fern root, which serves them for bread. Searching others, we found more shoes, and a hand, which was immediately known to have belonged to Thomas Hill, one of our fore-castle men, it having been tattowed with the initials of his name.

We now proceeded a little way in the woods, but saw nothing else. Our next design was to launch the canoe, intending to destroy her; but seeing a great smoke ascending over the nearest hill, we made all possible haste to be with them before sun-set.

At half past six we opened Grass Cove, where we saw one single, and three double canoes, and a great many natives assembled on the beach, who retreated to a small hill, within a ship's length of the water-side, where they stood talking to us. On the top of the

high land, beyond the woods, was a large fire, from whence all the way down the hill, the place was thronged like a fair. When we entered the cove, a musketoon was fired at one of the canoes, as we imagined they might be full of men lying down; for they were all afloat, but no one was seen in them. Being doubtful whether their retreat proceeded from fear, or a desire to decoy us into an ambuscade, we were determined not to be surprized, and therefore running close in shore, we dropped the grappling near enough to reach them with our guns; but at too great a distance to be under any apprehensions from their treachery. The savages on the little hill kept their ground, hallooing, and making signs for us to land. At these we now took aim, resolving to kill as many of them as our bullets would reach; yet it was some time before we could dislodge them. The first volley did not seem to affect them much; but on the second, they began to scramble away as fast as they could, some howling and others limping. We continued to fire as long as we could see the least glimpse of any of them through the bushes. Among these were two very robust men, who maintained their ground, without moving an inch, till they found themselves forsaken by their companions, and then, disdaining to run, they marched off with great composure and deliberation. One of them however got a fall, and lay there, or crawled away on his hands and feet; but the other escaped without any apparent hurt. Mr. Burney now improved their panic, and, supported by the marines, leapt on shore, and pursued the fugitives.

We had not advanced far from the water-side, on the beach, before we met with two bundles of celery, which had been gathered by the cutter's crew. A broken oar was stuck upright in the ground, to which the natives had tied their canoes; whereby we were convinced this was the spot where the attack had been made. We now searched all along at the back of the beach, to see if the cutter was there, but instead of her, the most horrible scene was presented to our view that  
was

was ever beheld by any European; for here lay the hearts, heads, and lungs of several of our people, with hands and limbs, in a mangled condition, some broiled and some raw; but no other parts of their bodies, which made us suspect, that the cannibals had feasted upon, and devoured the rest.

To complete this shocking view of carnage and barbarity, at a little distance we saw the dogs gnawing their entrails. We observed a large body of the natives collected together on a hill about two miles off; but as night drew on apace, we could not advance to such a distance; neither did we think it safe to attack them, or even to quit the shore, to take an account of the number killed, our troop being a very small one, and the savages were both numerous and much irritated.—While we remained almost stupefied on the spot, Mr. Fannen said that he heard the cannibals assembling in the woods, on which we returned to the boat, and having hauled alongside the canoes, we demolished three of them. During this transaction, the fire on the top of the hill disappeared, and we could hear the savages in the woods at high words; quarrelling perhaps, on account of their different opinions, whether they should attack us, and try to save their canoes.

They were armed with long lances, and weapons not unlike a serjeant's halbert in shape, made of hard wood, and mounted with bone instead of iron. We suspected that the dead bodies of our people had been divided among those different parties of cannibals, who had been concerned in the massacre; and it was not improbable, that the group we saw at a distance by the fire, were feasting upon some of them, as those on shore had been, where the remains were found, before they had been disturbed by our unexpected visit: be that as it may, we could discover no traces of more than four of our friends' bodies, nor could we find the place where the cutter was concealed. It now grew dark, on which account, we collected carefully the remains of our mangled friends, and putting off, made the best of our way from this polluted place, not without a few



few execrations bestowed on the blood-thirsty inhabitants. When we opened the upper part of the Sound, we saw a very large fire about three or four miles higher up, which formed a complete oval, reaching from the top of a hill down almost to the water-side; the middle space being inclosed all round by the fire, like a hedge. Mr. Burney and Mr. Fannen having consulted together, they were both of opinion, that we could, by an attempt, reap no other advantage than the poor satisfaction of killing more of the savages.

Upon leaving Grass Cove, we had fired a volley towards where we had heard the Indians talking; but by going in and out of the boat, our pieces had got wet, and four of them missed fire. What rendered our situation more critical was, it began to rain, and our ammunition was more than half expended. We, for these reasons, without spending time where nothing could be hoped for but revenge, proceeded for the ship, and arrived safe aboard about midnight. Such is the account of this tragical event; the poor victims were far enough out of hearing, and in all probability every man of them must have been butchered on the spot.

It may be proper here to mention, that the whole number of men in the cutter were ten, namely, Mr. Rowe, our first mate, Mr. Woodhouse, a midshipman, Francis Murphy, quarter-master, James Sevilley, the captain's servant, John Lavenaugh, and Thomas Milton, belonging to the after-guard; William Facey, Thomas Hill, Michael Bell, and Edward Jones, fore-castle men. Most of these were the stoutest and most healthy people in the ship, having been selected from our best seamen. Mr. Burney's party brought on board the head of the captain's servant, with two hands, one belonging to Mr. Rowe, known by a hurt it had received; and the other to Thomas Hill, being marked with T. H. as before mentioned. These with other mangled remains, were inclosed in a hammock, and with the usual ceremony observed on board ships, were committed

committed to the sea. Not any of their arms were found ; nor any of their clothes, except six shoes, no two of which were fellows, a frock and a pair of trowsers. We do not think this melancholy catastrophe was the effect of a premeditated plan, formed by the savages, for two canoes came down, and continued all the forenoon in Ship Cove, and these Mr. Rowe met and bartered with the natives for some fish. We are rather inclined to believe, that the bloody transaction, originated in a quarrel with some of the Indians, which was decided on the spot ; or, our people rambling about too secure, and incautious, the fairness of the opportunity might tempt them to commit the bloody deed ; and what might encourage them was, they had found out, that our guns were not infallible ; they had seen them miss fire, and they knew that when discharged, they must be loaded before they could again do any execution, in which interval of time they could take proper advantage of it. From those circumstances we concluded, that after their success, there was a general meeting on the east side of the Sound. We know the Indians of Shag Cove were there, by a long single canoe, which some of our people with Mr. Rowe had seen before in Shag Cove.

After this shocking affair, we were detained four days in the Sound by contrary winds, in which time we saw none of the inhabitants. It is a little remarkable, that capt. Furneaux had been several times up Grass Cove with capt. Cook, were they saw no inhabitants, and no other signs of any, but a few deserted villages, which appeared as if they had not been occupied for many years ; and yet in Mr. Burney's opinion, when he entered the same cove, there could not be less than fifteen hundred or two thousand people. Had they been apprised of his coming, we doubt not, they would have attacked him ; and seeing not a probability remained of any of our people being alive, from these considerations, we thought it would be imprudent to renew the search, and send a boat up again.

On Thursday the 23d of December, we departed from, and made sail out of the Sound, heartily vexed at the unavoidable delays we had experienced, so contrary to our sanguine wishes. We stood to the eastward to clear the Straits, which we happily effected the same evening, but we were baffled for two or three days with light winds before we could clear the coast. In this interval of time, the chests and effects of the ten men who had been murdered, were sold before the mast, according to an old sea custom. We now steered S. S. E. till we got into the latitude of 56 deg. S. At this time we had a great swell from the southward, the winds blew strong from S. W. the weather began to be very cold; the sea made a continual breach over the ship, which was low and deep laden, and by her continual straining, very few of our seamen were dry either on deck or in bed. In the latitude of 58 deg. S. and in 215 deg. E. long. we fell in with some ice, and standing to the east, saw every day more or less. We saw also the birds common in this vast ocean, our only companions, and at times we met with a whale or porpoise, a seal or two, and a few penguins.

On the 10th of January, 1774, we arrived a-breast of Cape Horn, in the lat. of 61 deg. S. and in the run from Cape Palliser in New Zealand to this cape, we were little more than a month, which is 121 deg. of long. in that short time. The winds were continually westerly, with a great sea. Having opened some casks of peas and flour, we found them very much damaged; for which reason we thought it most prudent to make for the Cape of Good Hope, intending first to get into the lat. and long. of Cape Circumcision. When to the eastward of Cape Horn, we found the winds came more from the north, and not so strong and frequent from the westward as usual, which brought on thick foggy weather; so that for several days together, we were not able to make an observation, the sun all the time not being visible. This weather lasted above a month, in which time we were among a great many islands of ice, which kept us constantly on the

look



look out, for fear of running foul of them. Our people now began to complain of colds, and pains in their limbs, on account of which we hauled to the northward, making the lat. of 54 deg. S. We then steered to the east, with an intention of finding the land laid down by M. Bouvet. As we advanced to the east, the nights began to be dark, and the islands of ice became more numerous and dangerous.

On the 3d of March, we were in the lat. of Bouvet's discovery, and half a league to the eastward of it; but not perceiving the least sign of land, either now, or since we attained this parallel, we gave over a further search after it, and hauled away to the northward.

In our last tract to the southward, we were within a few degrees of the longitude assigned for Bouvet's discovery, and about three degrees to the southward; if therefore there should be any land hereabouts, it must be a very inconsiderable island; or rather, we are inclined to think, a mere deception from the ice; for, in our first setting out, we concluded we had made discoveries of land several times, which proved to be only high islands of ice, at the back of large fields, which M. Bouvet might easily mistake for land, especially as it was thick foggy weather.

On the 17th, in the latitude 48 deg. 30 min. S. and in 14 deg. 26 min. E. longitude, we saw two large islands of ice. On the 18th, we made the land of the Cape of Good Hope, and on the 19th, anchored in Table Bay. Here we found Commodore Sir Edward Hughes, with his majesty's ships Salisbury, and Sea-Horse. We saluted the garrison with thirteen guns, and the Commodore with an equal number; the latter returned the full complement, and the former, as usual, saluted us with two guns less. At this place Captain Furneaux left a letter for Captain Cook; and here we remained to refit the ship, refresh the people, &c. till the 16th of April, when we hoisted sail for England; and on the 14th of July, to the great joy of all our sailors, anchored at Spithead.

From

From a review of the whole, our readers must see, how much this nation is indebted to that able circumnavigator Capt. Cook. If they only compare the course the Resolution steered, and the valuable discoveries she made, with that pursued by the Adventure, after she parted company, the contrast will be sufficiently striking. How meritorious must also that person appear in our judgment, who hath not only discovered, but surveyed vast tracts of new coasts; who has dispelled the illusion of a *terra australis incognita*, and fixed the bounds of the habitable earth, as well as those of the navigable ocean, in the southern hemisphere? No proposition was ever more clearly demonstrated, that there is no continent undiscovered in the southern hemisphere, between the equator and the 50th deg. of south lat. in which space, all who have contended for its existence, have included, if not the whole, at least the most considerable part; but at the same time that we declare ourselves thus clearly convinced of the non-existence of a continent within the limits just mentioned, we cannot help acknowledging our ready belief, that the land our navigators have discovered to the S. E. of Staten-Land, is a part of a continent, projecting from the north in a narrow neck, and expanding to the southward and westward, and more particularly towards the east. In this belief we are strengthened by the strong representation of land seen at a distance by our navigators, in lat. 72 deg. and 252 deg. lon. and by the report of Theodore Gerrards, who, after passing the straits of Magellan, being driven by tempests into the lat. of 64 deg. S. in that height came in sight of a mountainous country, covered with snow, looking like Norway, and seemingly extending from E. to W.

The facts and the observations made by Capt. Cook, corroborate each other; and though they do not reduce the question to an absolute certainty, yet the probability is greatly in favour of the supposed discovery. To conclude these reflections, and to place the character of our judicious navigator in the most striking point of view, he performed a voyage of three years and eighteen

teen days, with 118 men, throughout all the climates, from 52 deg. N. to 71 deg. S. with the loss only of one man by sickness: and even this one began so early to complain of a cough, and other consumptive symptoms, which had never left him, that his lungs must have been affected before he came on board to go the voyage.

Did any, most conversant in the bills of mortality, whether in the most healthful climate, and in the best condition of life, ever find so small a list of deaths, among such a number of men within that space? How agreeable then must our surprise be, to find, by the assiduity and unremitted exertion of a single skilful navigator, the air of the sea acquitted of all malignity, and that a voyage round the world has been performed with less danger perhaps to health, than a common tour in Europe. Surely distinguished merit is here conspicuous, though praise and glory belong to God only.

May future navigators spring out of his bright example, not only to perpetuate his justly acquired fame, but to imitate his labours for the advancement of natural knowledge, the good of society, and the true glory of Great Britain.

END OF THE SECOND VOYAGE.





CAPTAIN COOK'S  
*Third and last Voyage,*  
to the  
PACIFIC OCEAN, AND NORTHERN  
HEMISPHERE;

And performed under the direction of Captains Cook, Clerke, and Gore, in his Majesty's ships the Resolution and Discovery, in the years 1776, 1777, 1778, 1779, and 1780.

~~~~~  
CHAP. I.

Capt. Cook's departure from England—Junction with the Discovery at the Cape of Good Hope—Passage to Prince Edward's Island—Arrival at Van Diemen's Land—Interview with the natives—Arrival at Queen Charlotte's Sound—Particulars of the horrid massacre of the Adventure's boat's crew—Departure from Queen Charlotte's Sound.

CAPTAIN James Cook sailed from Plymouth Sound on the 19th of July, 1776, in the Resolution sloop of war; he was accompanied by Omai, whose behaviour on his departure, was a mixture of regret and satisfaction. When the conversation turned on those who had honoured him with their protection and friendship during his stay in England, he could hardly refrain from tears. But the instant his own islands were mentioned, his eyes sparkled with joy. He was deeply sensible of the good treatment he had met with here, and had the highest ideas of the country and people. But the pleasing prospect he now had of returning home, loaded with what he well knew would be esteemed invaluable treasures there, and the flattering hope which the possession of these gave him, of attaining to a distinguished

guished superiority among his countrymen, were considerations which operated by degrees, to suppress every uneasy sensation. On the 10th of October, he arrived at the Cape of Good Hope. Here he was joined, on the 10th of November, by Capt. Clerke, in the *Discovery*, who had not been permitted to sail after him till the 1st of August. In his passage to the Cape, Capt Cook took care to guard against the ill consequences arising from the rains, and the close sultry weather accompanying them, by frequently purifying the air between the decks by fire and smoke, and obliging the people to dry their clothes at every opportunity. By constantly continuing to observe these precautions, there were fewer sick on board the *Resolution* and *Discovery*, than in either of his former voyages.

On the 1st of December both ships left the Cape. On the 12th they passed through two islands, the largest about 15 leagues in circuit, in the lat. of 46 deg. 53 min. S. and in the long. of 37 deg. 46 min. E. The longitude is reckoned from the meridian of Greenwich, and after passing to the E. in the South Atlantic, is carried on easterly beyond the 180th degree, to the utmost extent of the voyage; and back to the same meridian. These two islands, as well as four others, which lie from 9 to 12 degrees of long. more to the E. and nearly in the same latitude, were discovered in 1772, by captains Marion and Crozet, two French navigators. To the two first Capt. Cook gave the name of Prince Edward's Islands, and the latter he called Marion and Crozet's Islands. On the 24th he came in sight of some high islands, which had been discovered in 1773, by Kerguelen, a French captain, who named them all. The northernmost of these, called Bligh's Cap, is in lat. 48 deg. 29 min. S. and long. 68 deg. 40 min. E. They next approached a desolate coast called Kerguelen's Land, which that navigator thought to be a continent, but which Capt. Cook found to be an island. On the 25th, he entered a safe harbour, which he called Christmas Harbour. Here they found plenty of water, but not a bit of wood. The shore was covered with pen-
guins

guins and other birds, and seals. The latter were not numerous, but so insensible to fear, that they killed as many of them as they pleased, for the sake of their fat or blubber, to make oil for their lamps and other uses. On the 29th, they left this harbour, and ranging along the coast, to ascertain its position and extent, they discovered several promontories and bays, with a peninsula, and a new harbour, to all which Capt. Cook gave names.

On the 31st, Capt. Cook left this coast, steering E. by N. and on the 24th of January 1777, saw Van Diemen's Land, which is the southern point of New Holland. On the 26th they anchored in Adventure Bay, where they were employed in procuring wood and water. On the 28th, they were agreeably surprized with a visit from some of the natives, eight men and a boy. They approached from the woods with the greatest confidence imaginable. One of them had a stick in his hand about two feet long, pointed at one end. They were quite naked, and wore no ornaments, unless we consider as such, some large punctures or ridges on different parts of their bodies, some in straight, and some in curved lines. They were of the common stature, but slender. Their skin was black, and also their hair, which was as woolly as that of any native of Guinea; but they had not remarkable thick lips nor flat noses. On the contrary, their features were far from being disagreeable. They had pretty good eyes, and their teeth were tolerably even, but very dirty. Most of them had their hair and beards smeared with red ointment, with which some also had their faces painted.

Every present made to them they received without the least appearance of satisfaction. When some bread was given, as soon as they understood it was to be eaten, they either returned it or threw it away, without even tasting it. They also refused some fish, both raw and dressed; but on giving some birds to them, their behaviour indicated a fondness for such food. Capt. Cook had brought two pigs ashore, with a view of leaving them in the woods; but the instant these came within reach

reach of the savages, they seized them as a dog would have done, by the ears, and were for carrying them off immediately; with no other intention, as could be perceived, but to kill them. Being desirous of knowing the use of the stick before mentioned, Capt. Cook, by signs, prevailed upon one of them to shew him. This savage set up a piece of wood as a mark, and threw at it, at the distance of about 20 yards; on repeated trials, however, he was always wide from his object. Omai, to shew them the superiority of our weapons, then fired his musket at it; which alarmed them so much, that they ran instantly into the woods.

Notwithstanding their consternation on this occasion, on the 29th about twenty of them, men and boys, visited the crew again; one of this party was conspicuously deformed, and not more distinguishable by the hump on his back, than by the drollery of his gestures, and seeming humour of his speeches; which were evidently exhibited for the entertainment of his strange visitors: his language, however, was wholly unintelligible.

Some of this group wore loose round their necks, three or four folds of small cords, made of the fur of some animal; and others had a slip of the kangaroo skin tied round their ancles. Captain Cook gave to each of them a string of beads and a medal, which they seemed to receive with satisfaction; but they set no value on iron or iron tools. They appeared not to know the use of fish-hooks, nor was any canoe or vessel seen, in which they could go upon the water. Yet shell-fish made a part of their food, as was evident from heaps of muscle-shells that were seen in different parts near the shore. Their habitations were little sheds or hovels built of sticks, and covered with bark. Evident signs appeared of their sometimes taking up their abode in the trunks of trees, which had been hollowed out by fire; and the marks of fire near these habitations, and near every heap of shells, were indubitable proofs that they did not eat of their flesh raw.

Some

Some time after several women and children made their appearance, and (Capt. Cook having left his party of wood-cutters) were introduced by the men who attended them, to Lieutenant King, who presented them all with such trifles as he had about him. These females wore a kangaroo skin, in the shape as it came from the animal, tied over their shoulders, and round their waist. Its only use seemed to be, to support their children when carried on their backs; for it did not cover those parts which most nations conceal; being, in all other respects, as naked as the men, and as black, and their bodies marked with scars in the same manner. Some of them had their hair completely shorn, or shaved, in others this operation had been performed only on one side; whilst the rest of them had all the upper part of the head shorn close, having a circle of hair all round, somewhat like the tonsure of the Roman Ecclesiastics. Many of the children had fine features, and were thought pretty; but of the persons of the women, especially of those advanced in years, a less favourable opinion was formed. However the gentlemen of the Discovery, Capt. Cook was told, paid their addresses, and made liberal offers of presents, which were rejected with great disdain; whether from a sense of virtue, or a fear of displeasing their men, he could not determine. That this gallantry was not agreeable to the latter, is certain; for an elderly man, as soon as he observed it, ordered all the women and children to retire, which they obeyed, though some of them shewed a little reluctance. Capt. Cook's reflection on this circumstance must not be omitted: "This conduct of Europeans, among savages, to their women, is highly blameable; as it creates a jealousy in their men, that may be attended with consequences fatal to the success of common enterprize, and to the whole body of the adventurers, without advancing the private purpose of the individual, or enabling him to gain the object of his wishes. I believe it has been generally found among uncivilized people, that where the women are easy of access, the men are the first to offer them to strangers;

strangers; and that where this is not the case, neither the allurements of presents, nor the opportunity of privacy will be likely to have the desired effect. This observation, I am sure, will hold good through all the parts of the South-Sea where I have been."

To Capt. Cook's account of Van Diemen's Land, Mr. Anderson, his surgeon, has added many particulars respecting its natural history. Among its vegetable productions, he could not find one that afforded the smallest subsistence for man. There are two kinds of forest trees that are quite unknown to Europe. The only animal of the quadruped kind, which he could get, was a sort of opossum, about twice the size of a large rat; and which is, most probably, the male of that species. It is of a dusky colour above, tinged with a brown or rusty cast, and whitish below. About a third of its tail, towards its top, is white, and bare underneath; by which it probably hangs on the branches of the trees, as it climbs these and lives on berries. Of the feathered race, the most singular was a small bird, with a pretty long tail, and part of the head and neck of a beautiful azure colour, whence they named it *Motacilla Cyanea*.

With respect to the inhabitants, Mr. Anderson (besides what Capt. Cook has already observed) says, that they possess little activity; and that, as for genius, they seem to have less than even the half-animated natives of Terra del Fuego, who have not invention sufficient to make clothing to defend themselves from the rigour of their climate, though furnished with the materials. The only thing in which they seemed to display contrivance, was the manner of cutting their arms and bodies, in lines of different lengths and directions, raised considerably above the surface of the skin; for it is difficult to guess the method they use in this embroidery of their persons. Their not expressing that surprise, which one might have expected, at seeing men so unlike themselves, and things, to which they had been hereunto utter strangers, the indifference to the presents made to them, and
general

general inattention, were sufficient proofs of their not possessing any acuteness of understanding. What the ancient poets feigned, of fawns and satyrs living in hollow trees, is here realized. Many of their largest trees were converted into more comfortable habitations than the wretched construction of sticks mentioned before. These had their trunks hollowed out by fire, to the height of six or seven feet; and that they take up their abode in them some times was evident from the hearths, made of clay, to confine the fire in the middle, leaving room for four or five persons to sit round it. At the same time, these places of shelter are durable; for they take care to leave one side of the tree sound, which is sufficient to keep it growing as luxuriantly as those which remain untouched.

In the morning of the 30th of January, a light breeze springing up at W. both ships put to sea. Soon after the wind veered to the southward, and increased to a perfect storm. Its fury abated in the evening, when it veered to E. and N. E.

This gale was indicated by the barometer; for the wind no sooner began to blow, than the mercury in the tube began to fall. Another remarkable thing attended the coming on of this wind, which was very faint at first. It brought with it a degree of heat that was almost intolerable. The mercury in the thermometer rose as it were instantaneously from about 70 to 90 deg. This heat was of so short a continuance, that it seemed to be wafted away before the breeze that brought it; so that some on board did not perceive it.

On the 10th of February, they discovered the land of New Zealand; and on the 12th anchored at their old station in Queen Charlotte's Sound. Here they were fully employed till the 25th, in procuring wood, water, and grass for their cattle; in brewing spruce-beer, as a preservative from the scurvy; and in making the necessary observations to find the rate of the time-keeper, &c. &c.

The natives came alongside the ship in canoes, but shewed great reluctance when requested to come on board.

board. Captain Cook imputed this behaviour to their being apprehensive, that he had revisited their country, in order to revenge the death of Captain Furneaux's people, about ten of whom having landed from the boat, in a part of the Sound, were massacred by the savages. In this idea, Captain Cook endeavoured to convince them of the continuance of his friendship, and that he should not molest them on account of this melancholy transaction; and the natives soon returned to their former confidence and freedom of intercourse.

Captain Cook, however, was so much on his guard, that all his workmen were under the protection of the marines, and no boat was sent to any distance from the ships without being well officered and armed; for he had not only the tragical fate of the Adventure's boat's crew in his mind, but that of Captain Marion, and some of his people, in the Bay of Islands, in 1772.

Several of the natives erected a kind of temporary village of huts, close to Captain Cook's encampment. Besides these, he was occasionally visited by others, from different quarters. The articles of commerce produced by the natives, were curiosities, fish, and women. The two first always came to a good market; which the latter did not. The seamen had taken a kind of dislike to these people; and were either unwilling, or affraid, to associate with them; "which produced this good effect," says Captain Cook, "that I knew no instance of a man's quitting his station, to go to their habitations."

Among their occasional visitors was a chief, named Kahoora, who headed the party that cut off Captain Furneaux's people, and had himself killed Mr. Rowe, the officer who commanded. Some of the natives strongly importuned the captain to sacrifice him to his vengeance. "Had I followed the advice of all our pretended friends," says Captain Cook, "I might have extirpated the whole race; for the people of each hamlet or village, by turns, applied to me to destroy the other," and Omai joined in these solicitations. But

Kahoorā reposed a perfect confidence in the good faith of Captain Cook, and had no reason to repent it.

Captain Cook, one day, made an excursion to Grass Cove, the memorable scene of the massacre. Here he met with his old friend Pedro; and from him, and some of the natives, who were entirely guiltless of the deed, they received the shocking particulars; which were as follow: "That while our people were sitting at dinner, surrounded by several of the natives, some of the latter stole, or snatched from them, some bread and fish, for which they were beat. This being resented, a quarrel ensued, and two New Zealanders were shot dead, by the only two musquets that were fired; for before our people had time to discharge a third, or to load again those that had been fired, the natives rushed in upon them, overpowered them with numbers, and put them all to death."

Captain Cook was told, "that a black servant of Captain Furneaux, who had been left in the boat to take care of her, was the cause of the quarrel: that one of the natives stealing something out of the boat, the negro gave him a severe blow with a stick: that the cries of the fellow being heard at a distance, they imagined he was killed, and immediately began the attack upon our people; who before they had time to reach the boat, or to arm themselves against the impending danger, fell a sacrifice to the fury of the savages,

Captain Cook thought it probable that both these accounts were true; it being natural to suppose, that while some of the natives were stealing from the man left in the boat, others of them might be taking the same liberties with the property of our people, who were on shore. But all agreed, that there was no pre-meditated plan of bloodshed; and that if the thefts had not been too hastily resented, no mischief would have happened. Kahoorā being questioned by Captain Cook, said, that one of his countrymen having brought a stone hatchet to barter, the man to whom it was offered took it, and would neither return it, nor give any thing for it;

it; on which the owner of it snatched up the bread as an equivalent, and thus the quarrel began.

On the 20th, there was a violent storm from the N. W. The gusts of wind from the hills were very violent, insomuch that they were obliged to strike the yards and top-masts to the utmost, and yet with difficulty rode it out. These storms are very frequent here. The neighbouring mountains, which at these times are always loaded with vapours, not only increase the force of the wind, but alter its direction in such a manner, that no two blasts follow each other from the same quarter; and the nearer the shore, the more their effects are felt. Great numbers of the natives continued to visit the encampment, particularly while the crew were melting some blubber. No Greenlander ever seemed to be more fond of train oil. They relished the very skimmings of the kettle, and dregs of the casks; but a little of the pure stinking oil seemed to be a most delicious feast.

Among the most remarkable particulars of the natural history of this place, which are copiously described by Mr. Anderson, we must not omit to take notice of the striking contrast, which the face of the country affords to that of Van Diemen's Land.—It is uncommonly mountainous, rising immediately from the sea into large hills with blunted tops. At considerable distances are vallies, or rather impressions on the sides of the hills, which are not deep, each terminating towards the sea in a small cove, with a pebbly or sandy beach; behind which are small flats, where the natives generally build their huts, at the same time hauling their canoes up the beaches. This situation is the more convenient, as in every cove a brook of fine water empties itself into the sea. The hills are one continued forest of lofty trees, flourishing with a vigour almost superior to any thing that imagination can conceive, and affording an august prospect to those who are delighted with the grand and beautiful works of nature.

The agreeable temperature of the climate, no doubt, contributes much to this uncommon strength in vege-

tation; for at this time, though answering to our month of August, the weather was never disagreeably warm; nor did it raise the thermometer higher than 66 deg. The winter, also, seems equally mild with respect to cold: for in June 1773, which corresponds to our December, the mercury never fell lower than 48 degrees; and the trees at that time, retained their verdure, as if in the summer season; so that, in Mr. Anderson's opinion, their foliage is never shed, till pushed off with the succeeding leaves in spring. In short, the only obstacle to this being one of the finest countries upon earth, is its hilliness; which, allowing its woods to be cleared away, would leave it less proper for pasturage than flat land; and still more improper for cultivation, which could never be effected by the plough.

Among the plants, one deserves particular notice, as the natives make their garments of it, and it produces a fine silky flax, superior in appearance to any thing we have, and probably as strong. It grows in bunches or tufts, with sedge-like leaves, bearing, on a long stalk, yellowish flowers, which are succeeded by a long roundish pod, filled with very thin shining black seeds.—Another plant, which bears a red berry, and which is much like the supple jack, growing about the trees, stretching from one to another, in such a manner, as to render the woods wholly impassable.

Among the birds are several sorts of cuckoos, one of which is not larger than a sparrow, of a splendid green cast above, and elegantly varied with waves of golden, green, brown and white colours below. Another kind is of a black colour, with a greenish cast, which is remarkable for having a turf of white curled feathers hanging under the throat. This turf of feathers resembled the white flowers used as ornaments in the ears at Otaheite, and called Poowa, whence our sailors called this the Poy Bird. There is also a small greenish bird, which is almost the only musical one here, but is sufficient to fill the woods with a melody, that is not only sweet, but so varied, that one would imagine he was surrounded by a hundred different sorts of birds, when

the little warbler is near. Hence it is named the mocking bird.

With respect to quadrupeds, it is remarkable, that in this extensive land, there is not even the trace of one, except only a few rats, and a sort of fox-dog, which is a domestic animal with the natives. Neither is there any mineral worth notice but a green jasper, or serpent-stone, of which the natives make their tools and ornaments.

Of the natives we can here only observe, that, contrary to the savages of Van Diemen's Land, they shew as much ingenuity, both in invention and execution, as any uncivilized nations under similar circumstances; for, without the use of any metal tools, they make every thing by which they procure their subsistence, clothing, and warlike-weapons, with a degree of neatness, strength and convenience for accomplishing their several purposes. Their chief mechanical tool is formed exactly after the manner of our adzes; and is made, as are also the chissel and gouge, of the green serpent-stone already mentioned. But their master-piece seems to be carving. The heads of their canoes are sometimes ornamented with it, in such a manner, as not only shews much design, but also an example of great labour and patience in execution. Their cordage for fishing-lines is equal in strength and evenness, to ours, and their nets not at all inferior. But what must cost them the greatest labour, is in making of the tools we have mentioned: for the stone is exceedingly hard, and the only method of fashioning it, is by rubbing one stone upon another. Their substitute for a knife is a shell, a bit of flint, or jasper. And, as an augur, to bore with, they fix a shark's tooth in the end of a small piece of wood. It is true, they have a small saw, made with some jagged fishes' teeth, fixed on the convex edge of a piece of wood nicely carved. But this, they say, is only used to cut up the bodies of their enemies, whom they kill in battle.

From this country, Captain Cook, at the request of Omai, and with their own and relations' consent, took two young Zealanders. On the 25th of February, the

Captains

Captains Cook and Clerk left Queen Charlotte's Sound; and on the 29th of March following, came within sight of the island of Mangea.

During Captain Cook's passage to the island of Mangea, the two adventurers from New Zealand, repented heartily of the step they had taken, immediately after they had lost sight of their own country, the sea sickness they experienced giving a turn to their reflections. All the soothing encouragement that could be thought of availed but little. They wept both in public and private; and made their lamentations in a kind of song, which, as far as the meaning of the word could be understood, was expressive of the praises of their own country and people, from which they were to be separated for ever. Thus they continued for many days, till their sea-sickness wore off, and the tumult of their mind began to subside. Then these fits of lamentation became less and less frequent, and at length entirely ceased. Their native country and their friends, were, by degrees, forgotten; and they appeared to be as firmly attached to their new acquaintances, as if they had been born among them.

The island of Mangea, (which is the name the natives gave it) lies in the latitude of 21 deg. 57 min. S. and 201 deg. 53 min. E.; Capt. Cook pronounces it from its exterior appearance, to be a very fine island, capable of supplying all their wants; and he computes it to be about five leagues in circuit. But he found it impossible either to land here, or to find any anchorage for his ships; such part of the coast as fell under his observation being guarded by a reef of coral rock, on the outside of which the sea is of an unfathomable depth; and a great surf broke with violence against the shore or against the reef that surrounded it.

Early in the morning of the 28th of Feb. several of the natives were perceived upon a sandy beach, all armed with long spears and clubs, which they brandished in the air with signs of threatening, or as others interpreted the attitude, with invitations to land. Most of them were naked, except having a sort of girdle, which
being

being brought up between the thighs, covered that part of the body. But some of them had pieces of cloth of different colours, white, striped, or chequered; thrown about their shoulder: and almost all of them had a kind of white turban; and some others, a sort of high conical cap. They were of a tawny colour; and in general of a middling stature, but robust, and inclined to corpulence.

At this time, a small canoe was launched in a great hurry from the farther end of the beach; and, a man getting into it, put off, as with a view to reach the ship. On this, the captain brought to, that he might receive the visit; but the man's resolution failing, he soon returned towards the beach, where after some time, another man joined him in the canoe; and then they both paddled towards the ship. They stopt short, however, as if afraid to approach, until Omai, who addressed them in the Otaheitean language, in some measure quieted their apprehensions. They then came near enough to take some beads and nails, which were tied to a piece of wood, and thrown into the canoe. They seemed afraid to touch these things, and put the piece of wood aside, without untying them. This, however, might arise from superstition; for Omai said, that when they saw us offering them presents, they asked something for their EATOOA, or God. He also, perhaps improperly, put the question to them, whether they ever eat human flesh? which they answered in the negative, with a mixture of indignation and abhorrence. One of them, whose name was Mourooa, being asked how he came by a scar in his forehead, answered, that it was in consequence of a wound he had got in fighting with the people of an island, which lies to the North-Eastward, who sometimes came to invade them. They afterwards took hold of a rope. Still, however, they would not venture on board; but told Omai, that their countrymen had given them this caution, at the same time directing them to inquire whence the ship came, and the name of the captain.

Mourooa was lusty, but not very tall; his features were agreeable, and his disposition seemingly no less so; for he made several droll gesticulations, which indicated both good nature and a share of humour. He also made others, which seemed of a serious kind, and repeated some words with a devout air, before he ventured to lay hold of the rope; which was probably to recommend himself to the protection of some Divinity. His colour was nearly of the same cast with that common to the more southern Europeans. The other was not so handsome. Both of them had strong straight hair, of a jet colour, tied together on the crown of the head with a bit of cloth. They wore girdles, which were a substance made from the *Morus papyrifera*, in the same manner as at the other islands in this ocean. It was glazed like the sort used by the natives of the Friendly Islands; but the cloth on their heads was white, like that which was found at Otaheite. They had on a kind of sandals made of a grassy substance, interwoven, and probably intended to defend their feet against the rough coral rock. Their beards were long; and the inside of their arms, from the shoulders to the elbow, and some other parts were punctured or tatooed, after the manner of the natives of almost all the other islands in the South Sea. The lobe of the ears was pierced, or rather slit, and to such a length, that one of them stuck there a knife and some beads which had been given him; and the same person had two polished pearl shells, and a bunch of human hair, loosely twisted, hanging round his neck. The canoe they came in was not above ten feet long, and very narrow, but both strong and neatly made. The forepart had a flat board fastened over it, and projecting out to prevent the sea getting in on plunging.

About ten o'clock the captain went in a boat to sound the shore: he had no sooner put off, than the two men in the canoe paddled toward the boat, and having come alongside, Mourooa stepped into her, without being asked, and without a moment's hesitation.

While thus employed in endeavouring to land (which was found impossible, unless at the risk of having the boat filled with water, or even staved to pieces) great numbers of the natives flocked down to the beach, all armed as above mentioned. Mourooa, probably thinking that this warlike appearance prevented their landing, ordered them to retire. As many of them complied, he was judged to be a person of some consequence. So great was the curiosity of several, that they swam to the boat, and came on board without reserve. It was even difficult to keep them out, and still more difficult to prevent their carrying off every thing upon which they could lay their hands. At length, when they perceived the boat returning to the ship, they all jumped out, except Mourooa. He, though not without evident signs of fear, kept his place, and went on board the ship.

The cattle, and other objects, did not strike him with so much surprise as one might have expected. But, in fact, he seemed very uneasy; and as the ship, on his getting on board, happened to be standing off shore, this circumstance made him the more so. After a short stay, the captain ordered a boat to carry him in towards land. As soon as he got out of the cabin, he stumbled over one of the goats. His curiosity now overcoming his fear, he stopt, looked at it, and asked Omai, What bird this was? The boat having conveyed him pretty near the surf, he leaped into the sea, and swam ashore. He had no sooner landed, than the multitude of his countrymen gathered round him, as if eager to learn what he had seen. As soon as the boat returned, the captain made sail from the land to the Northward. The natives of Mangea, as do all the new Zealanders, salute strangers by joining noses; adding, however, the additional ceremony of taking the hand of the person to whom they are paying civilities, and rubbing it, with a degree of force, upon their noses and mouths.

On the 1st of April, Captain Cook came in sight of an island, nearly of the same appearance and extent as Mangea; and, at the same time, another island, but

much smaller, was seen right a-head. The first, as they afterwards learned from the natives, was called by them Wateeco. It lies in the lat. of 20 deg. 1 min. S. and in the long. 201 deg. 45 min. E. and appeared to be a beautiful spot, with a surface composed of hills and plains, and covered with verdure of many hues. The next day, two armed boats were sent out, to look for anchoring ground and a landing place. In the mean time the natives came off in canoes, to visit the two ships, and to be quite free from the apprehensions that had been so visible in the inhabitants of Mangea. Presents were reciprocally given and received. In one of these visits, the natives, as they drew near the ships, recited some words in concert, by way of chorus, one of their number first standing up, and giving the word before each repetition. When they had finished their solemn chant, they came along side and asked for the Chief. After giving some presents, they were conducted into the cabin, and to other parts of the ship. Some objects seemed to strike them with a degree of surprise; but nothing fixed their attention for a moment. They were afraid to come near the cows and horses; nor did they form the least conception of their nature. But the sheep and goats did not surpass the limits of their ideas; for they gave us to understand, that they knew them to be birds. It will appear rather incredible, that human ignorance could ever make so strange a mistake; there not being the most distant likeness between a sheep or a goat, and any winged animal. But these people seemed to know nothing of the existence of any other land-animals, besides hogs, dogs, and birds. The sheep and goats, they could see, were very different creatures from the two first, and therefore they inferred, that they must belong to the latter class, in which they knew there is a considerable variety of species.

The people in these canoes differed little from the natives of Mangea. Ornaments, composed of a sort of grass stained with red, and strung with berries of the nightshade, were worn about their necks. Their ears were bored, but not slit; and they were punctured upon the
legs,

legs, from the knee to the heel, which made them appear as if they wore a kind of boots.

Lieutenant Gore, with the two boats, returned in the afternoon, having found the same obstructions both to landing and anchoring, which they had found at Manglea. But as the natives seemed very friendly, and to express a degree of disappointment, when they saw the boats' crews fail in their attempt to land, Mr. Gore was of opinion, that by means of Omai, who could best explain the request, they might be prevailed upon to bring off to the boats beyond the surf, such articles as were most wanted, in particular the stems of plantain-trees, which were good food for the cattle.

Accordingly, about ten the next morning, Mr. Gore was dispatched with three boats, to try the experiment. Two of the natives, who had been on board, accompanied him; and Omai went as interpreter. In order to observe their motions, and to be ready to give them such assistance as they might want, Captain Cook kept as near the shore as was prudent. He was sensible, however, that the reef was as effectual a barrier between him and his friends who had landed, and put them as much beyond his protection, as if half the circumference of the globe had intervened. But the islanders, it was probable, did not know this so well as he did. In the mean time, the occasional visits of the natives on board the ships, served to lessen his solicitude for his friends on shore. At length, a little before sun-set, he had the satisfaction of seeing the boats put off. When they got on board, he found that Mr. Gore, Omai, Mr. Anderson, and Mr. Burney, were the only persons that had landed. Mr. Anderson's narrative of the transactions of the day being extremely interesting, we shall give it in his own words.

"We rowed," says Mr. Anderson, "towards a small sandy beach, and came to an anchor within a hundred yards of the reef, which extends about as far, or a little further from the shore. Several of the natives swam off, bringing cocoa-nuts; and Omai, with their countrymen, whom we had with us in the boats, made

them sensible of our wish to land. Soon after, two canoes came off; and to create a greater confidence in the islanders, we determined to go unarmed, and to run the hazard of being treated well or ill.

"Our conductors, watching attentively the motions of the surf, landed Mr. Burney and myself, who were in the first canoe, safely upon the reef. An islander took hold of each of us, obviously with an intention to support us in walking over the rugged rock, to the beach, where several of the others met us, holding the green boughs of a species of *Mimosa* in their hands, and saluted us by joining their noses to ours. Mr. Gore and Omai were landed from the second canoe.

"A great croud flocked with eager curiosity to look at us; and would have prevented our proceeding, had not some who seemed to have authority, dealt blows, with little distinction, among them, to keep them off. We were then led up an avenue of cocoa palms; and soon came to a number of men, arranged in two rows, and armed with clubs, which they held on their shoulders, much in the same manner as we rest a musket. After walking a little way among these, we found a person who seemed a Chief, sitting on the ground cross-legged, cooling himself with a sort of a triangular fan, made from a leaf of the cocoa-palm with a polished handle of black wood, fixed to one corner. In his ears were large bunches of beautiful red feathers, which pointed forward. But he had no other mark, or ornament, to distinguish him from the rest of the people; though they all obeyed him with the greatest alacrity. He either naturally had, or at this time put on, a serious, but not a severe countenance; and we were desired to salute him as he sat, by some people who seemed of consequence.

"We proceeded still amongst the men armed with clubs, and came to a second Chief, who sat fanning himself, and ornamented as the first. He was remarkable for his size, and uncommon corpulence, though to appearance not above thirty. In the same manner, we were conducted to a third Chief, who seemed older than
the

the two former, and though not so fat as the second, was of a large size. He also was sitting and adorned with red feathers; and after saluting him as we had done the others, he desired us both to sit down, which we were very willing to do, being pretty well fatigued with walking up and down, and with the excessive heat we felt, amongst the vast crowd that surrounded us.

“In a few minutes, the people were ordered to separate; and we saw, at the distance of 30 yards, about 20 young women, ornamented as the chiefs, with red feathers, engaged in a dance, which they performed to a slow and serious air, sung by them all. We got up, and went forward to see them; they continued their dance, without paying the least attention to us. They seemed to be directed by a man who served as a prompter, and mentioned each motion they were to make. But they never changed the spot, as we do in dancing, and though their feet were not at rest, this exercise consisted more in moving their fingers very nimbly, at the same time holding their hands in a prone position near the face, and now and then also clapping them together. Their motions and song were performed in such exact concert, that it should seem they had been taught with great care; and probably they were selected for this ceremony, as few of those whom we saw in the crowd equalled them in beauty. In general they were rather stout than slender, with black hair flowing in ringlets down the neck, and an olive complexion. Their features were rather fuller than that we allow to perfect beauties, and much alike; but their eyes were of a deep black, and each countenance expressed a degree of complacency and modesty, peculiar to the sex in every part of the world; but perhaps more conspicuous here, where nature presented us with her productions in the fullest perfection, unbiassed by sentiment in custom, or unrestrained in manner by art. Their shape and limbs were elegantly formed.

“This dance was not finished, when we heard a noise, as if some horses had been galloping towards us;

us; and on looking aside, we saw the people armed with clubs, who had been desired, as we suppose, to entertain us with the sight of their manner of fighting. This they now did, one party pursuing another, who fled.

“As we supposed the ceremony of being introduced to the chiefs was now at an end, we began to look about for Mr. Gore and Omai; and, though the croud would hardly suffer us to move, we at length found them coming up, as much incommoded by the people as we had been, and introduced in the same manner to the three chiefs. Each of these expected a present; and Mr. Gore gave them such things as he had brought with him from the ship, for that purpose. After this, making use of Omai as his interpreter, he informed the chiefs with what intention we had come ashore; but was given to understand, that he must wait till the next day, and then he should have what was wanted.

“They now seemed to take some pains to separate us from each other; and every one of us had his will to surround and gaze at him. For my part, I was, at one time, above an hour apart from my friends; and when I told the chief with whom I sat, that I wanted to speak to Omai, he peremptorily refused my request.—At the same time, I found the people began to steal several trifling things which I had in my pocket; and when I complained to the chief of this treatment, he justified it.

“From the above circumstances, I now entertained apprehensions, that they had a design to detain us among them. They did not, indeed, seem to be of a disposition so savage, as to make us anxious for the safety of our persons; but it was nevertheless, vexing to think, we had hazarded being detained by their curiosity. In this situation, I asked for something to eat; and they readily brought me some cocoa-nuts, bread-fruit, and a sort of sour pudding, which was presented by a woman. And, on my complaining much of the heat, occasioned by the croud, the chief himself condescended

descended to fan me, and gave me a small piece of cloth, which he had round his waist.

“Mr. Burney happening to come to the place where I was, I mentioned my suspicions to him; and to put it to the test, whether they were well founded, we attempted to get to the beach. But we were stopped when about half way, by some men, who told us, we must go back to the place we had left. On coming up, we found Omai entertaining the same apprehensions, but he had, as he fancied, an additional reason for being afraid; for he had observed, that they had dug a hole in the ground for an oven, which they were heating; and he could assign no other reason for this, than that they meant to roast and eat us, as is practised by the New Zealanders. Nay, we went so far as to ask the question; at which they were greatly surprised, asking in return, whether it was a custom with us! Mr. Burney and I were rather angry that they should be thus suspected by him; there having, as yet, been no appearances, in their conduct towards us, of their being capable of such brutality.

“In this manner we were detained the greatest part of the day, being sometimes together, and sometimes separated: but always in a crowd; who, not satisfied with gazing at us, frequently desired us to uncover parts of our skin; the sight of which generally produced a murmur of admiration. At the same time they did not omit these opportunities of rifling our pockets, and at last, one of them snatched a small bayonet from Mr. Gore, which hung in a sheath by his side. This was represented to the chief, who pretended to send some persons in search of it. But, in all probability, he countenanced the theft; for, soon after, Omai had a dagger stolen from his side, in the same manner, though he did not miss it immediately.

“Whether they observed any signs of uneasiness in us, or that they voluntarily repeated their emblems of friendship, when we expressed a desire to go, I cannot tell; but, at this time, they brought some green boughs, and sticking their ends in the ground, they desired we
would

would hold them as we sat. Upon my urging our business again, they gave us to understand, that we must stay and eat with them; and a pig that we saw, soon after lying near the oven, which they had prepared and heated, removed Omai's apprehensions of being put into it himself; and made us think it was intended for our repast. The Chief also promised to send some people to procure provision for the cattle; but it was not till late in the afternoon, that we saw them return with a few plaintain-trees, which they carried to our boats.

"In the mean time, Mr. Burney and I attempted again to go to the beach; but when we arrived, found ourselves watched by the people, who seemed to have been planted there for that purpose: for, when I tried to wade in upon the reef, one of them took hold of my clothes, and dragged me back. I picked up some small pieces of coral, which they required me to throw down again; and on my refusal they made no scruple to take them forcibly from me. I had gathered some small plants; but these also I could not be permitted to retain; and they took a fan from Mr. Burney, which he had received as a present on coming ashore. Omai said, we had done wrong in taking up any thing; for it was not the custom here to permit freedoms of that kind to strangers, till they had, in some measure, naturalized them to the country, by entertaining them with festivity two or three days.

"Finding that the only method of procuring better treatment was to yield implicit obedience to their will, we went up again to the place we had left; and they now promised, that we should have a canoe to carry us off to our boats, after we had eaten of a repast which had been prepared for us. Accordingly, the second Chief before mentioned, having seated himself upon a low broad stool of blackish hard wood, tolerably polished, and directing the multitude to make a pretty large ring, made us sit down by him. A considerable number of cocoa-nuts were brought; and, shortly after, a long green basket, with a sufficient quantity of baked
plantains

plantains to have served a dozen persons. A piece of the young hog that had been dressed, was then set before each of us, of which we were desired to eat. Our appetites, however, had failed, from the fatigue of the day; and though we did eat a little to please them, it was without satisfaction to ourselves.

“It being now near sun-set, we told them it was time to go on board. This they allowed; and sent down to the beach the remainder of the victuals that had been dressed, to be carried with us to the ship. We found a canoe ready to put us off to our boats; which the natives did with the same caution as when we landed. They put us on board the boats, with the cocoanuts, plantains, and other provisions, which they had brought; and we rowed to the ships, very well pleased that we had at last got out of the hands of our troublesome masters.”

It was mentioned, that Omai was sent upon this expedition; and, perhaps, his being Mr. Gore's interpreter, was not the only service he performed this day. He was asked by the natives a great many questions concerning our people, our ships, and our country, and the sorts of arms we used; and, according to the account he gave to Captain Cook, his answers were not a little upon the marvellous. Our country, he told them, had ships as large as their islands; on board which were instruments of war (describing our guns) of such dimensions, that several people might sit within them; and that one of them was sufficient to crush the whole island at one shot. This led them to ask what sort of guns were on board Captain Cook's ships. He said, that though they were but small in comparison with those he had described, yet, with such as they were, they could, with the greatest ease, and at the distance the ships were from the shore, destroy the island, and kill every soul in it. They then inquired by what means this could be done, and Omai explained it as well as he could. He happened luckily to have a few cartridges in his pocket. These he produced: the balls, and the gunpowder that was to set them in
8
X x
motion,

motion, were submitted to inspection, and to supply the defects of his description, an appeal was made to the sense of the spectators. The multitude had been formed, as before-mentioned, into a circle. This furnished Omai with a convenient stage for his exhibition. In the centre of this, the small quantity of gunpowder collected from his cartridges, was properly disposed upon the ground, and set on fire by a bit of burning wood from the oven. The sudden blast, and loud report, the mingled flame and smোক that instantly succeeded, filled the whole assembly with astonishment. They no longer doubted the tremendous power of our weapons, and gave full credit to all Omai had said.

If it had not been for the terrible idea they conceived of the ships guns, from this specimen of their mode of operation, it was thought they would have detained the gentlemen all night. For Omai assured them, that if he and his companions did not return on board the same day, they might expect that the captain would fire upon the island. And as the ships stood in nearer the land in the evening, than they had done any time before, of which they were observed to take great notice, they probably thought this formidable attack was meditating; and therefore they suffered their guests to depart; in the expectation however, of seeing them again on shore the next morning. But Capt. Cook was too sensible of the risk they had already run, to think of repeating the experiment.

The island, though never before visited by Europeans, had actually other strangers residing in it. Omai, when he landed with Mr. Gore, found amongst the crowd three of his own countrymen, natives of the Society islands, at the distance of about 200 leagues from those islands, an immense unknown ocean intervening, with such wretched sea-boats as their inhabitants are known to make use of, and fit only for a passage where sight of land is scarcely ever lost: such a meeting, at such a place, so accidentally visited by Captain Cook's people, may well be looked upon as one of those unexpected situations with which the writers of
feigned

feigned adventures love to surprize their readers, and which, when they really happen in common life, deserve to be recorded for their singularity.

It may be imagined, with what surprize and satisfaction Omai and his countrymen engaged in conversation. Their story is very affecting. About twenty persons, of both sexes, had embarked on board a canoe at Otaheite, to cross over to the neighbouring island Ulietea. A violent contrary wind arising, they could neither reach the latter, nor get back to the former. Their intended passage being a very short one, their stock of provisions was scanty, and soon exhausted. The hardships they suffered, while driven by the storm they knew not whither, are not to be conceived. They passed many days without any thing to eat or drink. Worn out by famine and fatigue, their numbers gradually diminished. Four men only survived, when the canoe overset; and then the perdition of these seemed inevitable. However they kept hanging by its side, during some of the last days, till providence brought them within sight of the people of this island, who immediately sent out canoes, and brought them ashore. Of the four thus saved, one was since dead. The other three, who lived to give this account of their most miraculous transplantation, spoke highly of the kind treatment they here met with; and they were so well satisfied with their present situation, that they refused the offer made to them at Omai's request, of giving them a passage to their native islands. The similarity of manners and language had more than naturalized them to this spot; and the fresh connections they had here formed, and which it would have been painful to have broken off, after such a length of time, sufficiently account for this refusal. They had arrived at this island at least twelve years ago.

“The landing, (says Capt. Cook,) of our gentlemen on this island, cannot but be considered as a very fortunate circumstance. It has proved the means of bringing to our knowledge a fact, not only very curious but very instructive.” The application of the above narrative

is obvious. It will serve to explain, better than a thousand conjectures of a thousand speculative reasoners, how the detached parts of the earth, and, in particular, how the islands of the South Sea, may have been first peopled: especially those that lie remote from any inhabited continent, or from each other. Such accidents as this probably happen frequently in the Pacific Ocean. In 1696, two canoes, having on board thirty persons of both sexes, were driven, by violent contrary winds, to the isle of Samal, one of the Phillippines, after being tossed about at sea 70 days, and having performed a voyage, from an island called by them Amorsot, 300 leagues to the east of Samal. Five of the number died of the hardships they suffered.

According to Omai's account of what he learned in conversation with his countrymen, the manners of those islanders, their method of treating strangers, and their general habits of life, are much like those that prevail at Otaheite, and its neighbouring isles. Their religious ceremonies and opinions are also nearly the same. From every circumstance, indeed, it is indubitable, that the natives of Wateoo sprang, originally, from the same flock, which has spread itself so wonderfully all over the immense extent of the South Sea. One would suppose, however, that they put in their claim to a more illustrious extraction: for Omai said, that they dignified their island with the appellation of Wenooa no te Eatooa, that is, a land of gods; esteeming themselves a sort of Divinities, and possessed with the spirit of Eatooa. This wild enthusiastic notion Omai seemed to approve of; observing, that there were instances of its being entertained at Otaheite; but that it was universally prevalent among the inhabitants of Mataia, or Osnaburgh Island.

Capt. Cook left Wateoo in the morning of the 4th of April, steering for the other island, which, as before mentioned, he had discovered in its vicinity.

CHAP. II.

Refreshments obtained at Wenooa-ette.—Singularity in the natives of Hervey's Island.—Rich submarine Grotto at Palmerston's Island.—Arrival at the Friendly Islands.—Amiable character of the Natives.—Description of their Persons.—Transactions with the Natives.—Captain Clerk's expedient to prevent their Depredations.—Opinions of the Islanders of a Volcano—Different entertainments exhibited by the English and Natives.—Curious mode of shaving.—Visit of Poulaho, King of the Friendly Islands.—Poulaho's inanimate Viceroy.—Offering to their Deity to deprecate Death.—Departure from the Friendly Islands.

THIS island, at which they arrived the next morning, was uninhabited; but the natives of Watteoo called it Wenooa-ette, or Otakootaia. Here they obtained a supply of cocoa-nuts for themselves; and for their cattle some grass, and a quantity of the leaves and branches of young cocoa-trees, and of the Wharra tree, as it is called at Otaheite, the Pandanus of the East-Indies. This latter being of a soft, spongy, juicy nature, the cattle eat it very well, when cut into small pieces; so that it may be literally said, that they were fed upon billet wood.

On the 6th of April, Capt. Cook arrived at Hervey's Island, which he had discovered in 1773, and which he was now surprized to find inhabited. In his intercourse with the natives, he observed that not one of them had adopted the mode of ornament, so generally prevalent among the natives of this ocean, of puncturing, or tatooing their bodies; although in other respects he had the most unequivocal proofs of their being of the same common race. Being disappointed in the hopes of landing on this island, and the unfavourable winds, &c. having unavoidably retarded his progress

gress so much, that it was impossible to think of doing any thing this year, in the high latitudes of the Northern Hemisphere, Captain Cook now thought it necessary to bear away for the Friendly Islands. But he first resolved to touch at Palmerston's Island, which he had discovered in 1774, and where he arrived on the 4th of April. This island consists of a group of about ten small uninhabited islots, lying in a circular direction, and connected together by a reef of coral rocks.

While the captain employed his boats here to procure refreshments for his crew, he himself explored whatever was curious in the external appearance of this island, which he observed to be scarcely a mile in circuit, and not above three feet higher than the level of the sea. It appeared to be entirely composed of a coral sand, with a small mixture of blackish mould, produced from rotten vegetables. Notwithstanding this poor soil, it is covered with a variety of trees and bushes. At one part of the reef, which looks into, or bounds the lake within, there was a large bed of coral, almost even with the surface, which afforded, perhaps, one of the most enchanting prospects that nature has any where produced. Its base was fixed to the shore, but reached so far in, that it could not be seen; so that it seemed to be suspended in the water, which deepened so suddenly, that at the distance of a few yards, there might be seven or eight fathoms. The sea was, at this time, quite unruffled; and the sun, shining bright, exposed the various sorts of coral in the most beautiful order; some parts branching into the water with great luxuriance, others lying collected in round balls, and in various other figures; all which were greatly heightened by spangles of the richest colours, that glowed from a number of large clams, which were every where interspersed. But the appearance of these was still inferior to that of the multitude of fishes, that glided gently along, seemingly with the most perfect security. The colours of the different sorts were the most beautiful that can be imagined; the yellow, blue, red, black; &c, far exceeding any thing that art can produce. Their
various

various forms, also contributed to increase the richness of this submarine grotto, which could not be surveyed without a pleasing transport, mixed however, with regret, that a work so stupendously elegant, should be concealed, in a place where mankind could seldom have an opportunity of rendering the praises justly due to so enchanting a scene. With respect to the animal creation, the most singular that Capt. Cook observed, were some large eels, beautifully spotted, which when followed, would raise themselves out of the water, with an open mouth, to bite their pursuers. There was also a brown-spotted fish, about the size of a haddock, so tame, that instead of swimming away, it would remain fixed, and gaze at them. Had they been in absolute want, a sufficient supply might have been had; for thousands of clams already mentioned, stuck upon the reef, some of which weighed two or three pounds.

In the night between the 24th and 25th, Captain Cook passed Savage Island, which he had likewise discovered in 1774; and on the 28th, he got sight of some of the Friendly Islands. It was not however, till the 1st of May, that he could come to anchor, at the island of Annamooka, where he resumed the very same station, which he had occupied three years before; and probably, almost in the same place where Tasman, the first discoverer of this, and some of the neighbouring islands, anchored in 1643.

The Friendly Islands form a very extensive Archipelago. The natives reckoned up 150 of them, making use of bits of leaves to ascertain their number. But only sixty-one of these have their proper places and names marked in Capt. Cook's chart of the Friendly Islands; for he was obliged to leave it to future navigators, to introduce into the geography of this part of the South Pacific Ocean, the exact situation and size of near an hundred others, which he had not an opportunity to explore. Among these islands he continued about two or three months; during which time he lived with the natives in the most cordial friendship. Some accidental differences it is true now and then happened,

happened, owing to their propensity to thieving. But these were never attended with any fatal consequences: on the contrary, few on board the ship left their friends here without regret. Nor will this appear wonderful, when we learn the amiable character which Captain Cook has given these people.

"Their countenances, says he, very remarkably express the abundant mildness, or good nature which they possess; and are entirely free from that savage keenness which marks nations in a barbarous state. One would, indeed, be apt to fancy, that they had been bred up under the severest restrictions, to acquire an aspect so settled, and such a command of their passions, as well as steadiness in their conduct. But they are, at the same time, frank, cheerful, and good humoured; tho' sometimes, in the presence of their chiefs, they put on a degree of gravity, and such a serious air, as becomes stiff and awkward, and has an appearance of reserve.

"Their peaceable disposition is sufficiently evinced, from the friendly reception all strangers have met with, who have visited them. Instead of offering to attack them openly, or clandestinely, as has been the case with most of the inhabitants of these seas, they have never appeared, in the smallest degree, hostile; but, on the contrary, like the most civilized people, have courted an intercourse with their visitors, by bartering, which is the only medium that unites all nations in a sort of friendship. Perhaps, no nation in the world traffic with more honesty and less distrust; we could always safely permit them to examine our goods, and to hand them about, one to another; and they put the same confidence in us. If either party repented of the bargain, the goods were re-exchanged with mutual consent and good-humour. Upon the whole, they seem possessed of many of the most excellent qualities that adorn the human mind; such as industry, ingenuity, perseverance, affability, and perhaps, other virtues which our short stay with them might prevent our observing.

"The only defect sullying their character, that we know of, is a propensity to thieving; to which, we found,

found, those of all ages, and both sexes addicted ; and to an uncommon degree. It should, however, be considered, that this exceptionable part of their conduct seemed to exist merely with respect to us ; for in their general intercourse with one another, I had reason to think, that thefts do not happen more frequently (perhaps less so) than in other countries ; the dishonest practices of those worthless individuals are not supposed to authorise any indiscriminate censure on the whole body of the people. Great allowances should be made for the foibles of these poor natives of the Pacific Ocean, whose minds were overpowered with the glare of objects, equally new to them as they were captivating. Stealing, amongst the civilized and enlightened nations of the world, may well be considered as denoting a character deeply stained with moral turpitude, with avarice unrestrained by the known rules of right, and with profligacy producing extreme indigence, and neglecting the means of relieving it. But at the Friendly and other islands which we visited, the thefts, so frequently committed by the natives, of what we had brought along with us, may be fairly traced to less culpable motives. They seemed to arise, solely, from an intense curiosity or desire to possess something which they had not been accustomed to before, and belonging to a sort of people so different from themselves. And, perhaps, if it were possible, that a set of beings, seemingly as superior in our judgment, as we are in theirs, should appear amongst us, it might be doubted, whether our natural regard to justice would be sufficient to restrain many from falling into this error."

"The natives of the Friendly Islands," says Capt. Cook, "seldom exceed the common stature (though we have measured some, who were about six feet;) but are very strong, and well made ; especially as to their limbs. They are generally broad about the shoulders ; and though the muscular disposition of the men, which seems a consequence of much action, rather conveys the appearance of strength than of beauty,

beauty, there are several to be seen, who are really handsome. Their features are very various; insomuch that it is scarcely possible to fix on any general likeness, by which to characterize them, unless it be a fullness at the point of the nose, which is very common. But, on the other hand, we met with hundreds of truly European faces, and many genuine Roman noses amongst them. Their eyes and teeth were good; but the last neither so remarkably white, nor so well set as is often found among Indian nations; though, to balance that, few of them have any uncommon thickness about the lips, a defect as frequent as the other perfection.

“The women are not so much distinguished from the men by their features, as by their general form, which is, for the most part, destitute of that strong fleshy firmness that appears in the latter. Though the features of some are so delicate, as not only to be a true index of their sex, but to lay claim to a considerable share of beauty and expression, the rule is, by no means, so general as in other countries. But, at the same time, this is frequently the most exceptionable part; for the bodies and limbs of most of the females are well proportioned; and some, absolutely, perfect models of a beautiful figure. But the most remarkable distinction in the women, is the uncommon smallness and delicacy of their fingers, which may be put in competition with the finest in Europe.

“Their general colour is a cast deeper than the copper brown; but several of the men and women have a true olive complexion; and some of the last are even a great deal fairer; which is probably the effect of being less exposed to the sun; as a tendency to corpulence, in a few of the principal people, seems to be the consequence of a more indolent life. It is also among the last, that a soft clear skin is most frequently observed. Amongst the bulk of the people, the skin is, most commonly, of a dull hue, with some degree of roughness, especially the parts that are not covered;

covered; which, perhaps, may be occasioned by some cutaneous disease. We saw a man and a boy at Hapaee, and a child at Annamooka, perfectly white. Such have been found amongst all black nations; but, I apprehended, that their colour is rather a disease, than a natural phænomenon."

Captain Cook first went on shore at Annamooka, the chief of which island, Toubou, conducted him and Omai to his house, situated on a pleasant spot, in the centre of his plantation. A fine grass-plot surrounded it, which, he gave them to understand, was for the purpose of cleaning their feet, before they went within doors. The floor of this house was covered with mats; and no carpet in the most elegant English drawing-room could be kept neater. But Capt. Cook found a more strenuous friend in Taipa, one of the chiefs, who had before visited the ships in their first intercourse with the canoes that came off from shore. He seemed to be the only active person about them; and, in order to be near the party that had landed, in the night as well as the day, had a house brought on men's shoulders, a full quarter of a mile, and placed close to the shed which the party occupied.

Besides the operations of making hay for the cattle, and filling the water-casks, a party was employed in cutting wood. The greatest plenty of this last article being a-breast of the ships, in a situation the most convenient for getting it on board, it was natural to make choice of this. The trees here were a species of pepper, called faitanoo by the natives, yielded a juice of a milky colour, of so corrosive a nature, that it raised blisters in the skin, and injured the eyes of the workmen. They were, therefore, obliged to procure the wood from another quarter.

Soon after they were visited by a great chief, from the principal island called Tongataboo. This chief, whose name was Feenou, Taipa was pleased to introduce as king of all the Friendly Islands, a character,

although really a man of great consequence, he found it expedient to lay aside. In the mean time, great mutual civilities passed between Feenou and Captain Cook.

We have already remarked the general propensity to thieving in the natives of these islands. Even some of the chiefs did not think the profession beneath them. One of them was detected carrying out of the ship, concealed under his clothes, the bolt belonging to the spun-yarn winch ; for which Capt. Cook sentenced him to receive a dozen lashes, and kept him confined till he had paid a hog for his liberty. After this, he was not troubled with thieves of rank. Their servants, however, were still employed in this dirty work ; and upon them a flogging seemed to make no greater impression, than it would have done upon the main-mast.

On the 14th of May, Capt. Cook left Annamooka, and steered along a cluster of small islands ; most of them entirely clothed with trees, amongst which were many cocoa-palms ; and each forming a prospect like a beautiful garden placed in the sea. To heighten this, the serene weather they now had contributed very much ; and the whole might supply the imagination with the idea of some fairy land realized. After noticing Toofoa, a volcanic isle, at the distance of two leagues, the smoke of which they saw several times, they arrived on the 17th, at the islands, called by the general name of Hepaee. The Friendly Islanders have some superstitious notions about the volcano upon Toofoa, which they say is an Otooa, or Divinity.

Capt. Cook's reception at Hapaee was the most honourable that can be imagined. The chiefs, not content with munificence, entertained their visitors with a variety of diversions ; among which were single combats with clubs, and wrestling and boxing matches, in the latter of which, even the women signalized themselves. Fenou having expressed a desire to see the marines go through their military exercise,

the captain ordered them all ashore; and, after they had performed various evolutions, and fired several vollies, with which the numerous spectators seemed well pleased, the chief, in his turn, entertained them with an exhibition, which was performed with a dexterity and exactness, far surpassing the specimen just given of our military exercises. It was a kind of dance, so entirely different from any thing Capt. Cook had ever seen, that, as he himself observes, no description can give an adequate idea of it. It was performed by men; and 105 persons bore their parts in it.—Each had in his hand an instrument neatly made, shaped like a paddle, two feet and a half long, with a small handle, and a thin blade: so that it was very light. With these instruments they made many and various flourishes, each of which was accompanied with a different attitude of the body, or a different movement. At first, the performers ranged themselves in three lines, and by various evolutions, each man changed his station in such a manner, that those who had been in the rear, came in the front. Nor did they long remain in the same position, but these changes were made by pretty quick transitions. At one time they extended themselves in one line; they then formed themselves into a semicircle; and lastly, into two square columns. While this last movement was executing, one of them advanced, and performed an antic dance before the captain, which terminated the whole.

The musical instruments consisted of two drums, or rather two hollow logs of wood, from which some varied notes were produced. The dancers, however, did not seem to be much assisted by these sounds, but by a chorus of vocal music, in which all the performers joined at the same time. Their songs were not destitute of pleasing melody; and all their corresponding motions were executed with such skill that the numerous body of dancers seemed to act as if they were one great machine. “It was the opinion of every one of us,” says Capt. Cook, “that such a performance

performance would have met with universal applause on the European theatre; and it so far exceeded any attempt we made to entertain them, that they seemed to pique themselves upon the superiority they had over us. As to our musical instruments, they held none of them in the least esteem, except the drum; and even that they did not think equal to their own. Our French-horns in particular, seemed to be held in great contempt."

Capt. Cook desirous to give them a more favourable idea of the English amusements, and leave their minds fully impressed with a deep sense of our attainments, played off some fire-works in the evening, most of which succeeded so perfectly, as to answer the end he had in view. The water and sky-rockets in particular, pleased and astonished them beyond all conception; and the scale was now turned in our favour.

This seemed only to furnish them with an additional motive to proceed to fresh exertions of their singular dexterity; and our fire-works were no sooner ended, than a succession of dances, which Feenou had got ready for our entertainment, began. As a prelude to them, a band of music, or chorus of eighteen men, seated themselves before us, in the centre of the circle, composed by the numerous spectators, the area of which was to be the scene of the exhibitions. Four or five of this band had pieces of large bamboo, from three to five or six feet long, each managed by one man, who held it nearly in a vertical position, the upper end open, but the other end closed by one of the joints. With this close end, the performers kept constantly striking the ground, though slowly, thus producing different notes, according to the different lengths of the instruments, but all of them of the hollow or base sort; to counteract which, a person kept striking quickly, and with two sticks, a piece of the same substance, split, and laid along the ground, and, by that means, furnishing a tone, as acute, as those produced by the others were grave. The rest of the band, as well as those who performed upon the bamboos, sung
a slow

a slow and soft air, which so tempered the harsher notes of the above instruments, that no bye-stander, however accustomed to hear the most perfect and varied modulation of sweet sounds, could avoid confessing the vast power, and pleasing effect of this simple harmony.

The concert having continued about a quarter of an hour, twenty women entered the circle. Most of them had upon their heads, garlands of the crimson flowers of the Chinese rose, or others; and many of them had ornamented their persons with leaves of trees, cut with a great deal of nicety about the edges. They made a circle round the chorus, turning their faces towards it, and began by singing a soft air, to which responses were made by the chorus in the same tone, and these were repeated alternately. All this while, the women accompanied their song with several very graceful motions of their hands towards their faces, and in other directions at the same time, making constantly a step forwards, and then back again, with one leg, while the other was fixed. They then turned their faces to the assembly, sung some time, and retreated slowly in a body, to that part of the circle which was opposite the hut where the principal-spectators sat. After this, one of them advances from each side, meeting and passing each other in the front, and continuing their progress round, till they came to the rest. On which two advanced from each side, by intervals, till the whole number had again formed a circle about the chorus.

Their manner of dancing was now changed to a quicker measure, in which they made a kind of half turn by leaping, and clapping their hands, and snapping their fingers, repeating some words in conjunction with the chorus. Towards the end, as the quickness of the music increased, their gestures and attitudes were varied with wonderful vigour and dexterity; and some of their motions, perhaps, would, with us, be reckoned rather indecent. Though this part of the performance, most probably, was not meant to convey
any

any wanton ideas, but merely to display the astonishing variety of their movements.

To this grand female ballet succeeded a variety of other dances, in which the men bore a principal part. In some of these the dancers increased their motions to a prodigious quickness, shaking their heads from shoulder to shoulder, with such force, that a spectator, unaccustomed to the sight, would suppose they ran a risk of dislocating their necks. Their discipline was admirable; and in no instance was it more remarkable than in the sudden transitions they so dexterously made, from the ruder exertions and harsh sounds, to the softest airs, and most gentle movements.

While Capt. Cook was at Hapae, he observed a woman shaving a child's head with a shark's tooth, stuck into the end of a piece of stick. She first wet the hair with a rag dipped in water, applying the instrument to that part which she had previously soaked. The operation seemed to give no pain to the child; although the hair was taken off as close as if one of our razors had been employed. Capt. Cook tried one of these instruments upon himself, and found it a good succedaneum. But the men have another contrivance when they shave their beards. They take two shells, one of which they place under a small part of the beard, and with the other applied above, they scrape that part off. In this manner they are able to shave very close.

On the 27th of May, Capt. Cook had an opportunity of discovering that Feenou was not the king of the Friendly Islands, but only a subordinate chief; by a prudent regulation in their government, the natives have an officer over the police, or something like it. This department, when we were amongst them, was administered by Feenou; whose business it was to punish offenders, whether against the state, or against individuals. He was also generalissimo, and commanded the warriors, when called out upon service. The king took some pains to inform us of Feenou's office, and among other things told us that if he himself
should

should become a bad man, Feenou would kill him. What I understood of being a bad man, was, that if he did not govern according to law, Feenou would be ordered, by the other great men, or by the people at large, to put him to death.

The next morning the king came on board, and brought as a present to the captain, one of their caps, made, or at least covered, with red feathers. These caps were much sought after by the ship's company; as they knew they would be highly valued at Otaheite. But though very large prices were offered, not one was ever brought for sale; which shewed they were no less valuable in the estimation of the people here. These caps, or rather bonnets, are composed of the tail feathers of the tropic bird, with the red feathers of the parroquets wrought upon them, or jointly with them. They are made so as to tie upon the forehead without any crown, and have the form of a semicircle, whose radius is 18 or 20 inches.

Some time after the captain steered for Tongataboo. While he was plying up to the harbour, the king kept sailing round them in his canoe. There were at the same time, a great many small canoes about the ships. Two of these, which could not get out of the way of his royal vessel, he ran quite over, with as little concern, as if they had been bits of wood. At Tongataboo Captain Cook's reception was no less hospitable than it had been a Hepaee; grand entertainments of songs and dances, with exhibitions of wrestling and boxing, being successively given.

One day the king came on board the Resolution, and brought with him his son, a youth about 12 years of age. The king dined with the captain, but the son, though present, was not allowed to sit down with him. It was very convenient to have him for a guest; for when he was present, every other native was excluded; whereas, if neither he nor Feenou were on board, the inferior chiefs would be very importunate to be of our dining party. The king was very soon reconciled to our manner of cooking. But still, we believe, he dined

with us more for the sake of what we gave him to drink than for what we set before him to eat; for he had taken a liking to our wine, would empty his bottle as well as most men, and was cheerful over it. But notwithstanding this friendly intercourse, Capt. Cook once thought proper to put the king, his brother, Feenou, and some other chiefs, under arrest, till a kid, two turkey cocks, and some other things, that had been stolen, were restored. This expedient was successful; and though, at first, it made them shy, it did not diminish the friendship with which they still deported themselves.

On the 17th of July, Capt. Cook set sail from Middleburgh or Eaoo, which was the last island he visited, during his intercourse with the natives of this Archipelago, and with a light breeze at S. E. he now steered for the Society Islands. The time employed among the natives of the Friendly Islands was not thrown away. We expended very little of our sea provisions; subsisting in general, upon the produce of the islands, while we staid; and carrying away with us a quantity of provisions sufficient to last till our arrival at another station, where we could depend upon a fresh supply. We were not sorry, besides, to have an opportunity of bettering the condition of these good people, by leaving several very useful animals among them; and, at the same time, those designed for Otaheite, received fresh strength in the pastures of Tongataboo. Upon the whole, therefore, the advantages we received, by touching here, were very great; and we had the additional satisfaction to reflect, that they were received without retarding one moment the prosecution of the great object of our voyage; the season for proceeding to the North, being, as has already been observed, lost, before we took the resolution of bearing away for these islands.

CHAP. III.

Island of Toobouai discovered—Arrival at Otaheite—Omai's reception—Interview with Waheladooda, the chief of Tiaraboo—Omai's imprudent conduct—Girls dressed to bring a present—Omai's war canoe—Otoo's present and message to the king of Great Britain—Departure from Otaheite, and a visit to Eimeo—Conclusion of the history of Omai, and of the two New Zealand youths.

ON the 9th of August, 1777, Captain Cook discovered the small island Toobouai, lying in the lat. of 23 deg. 25 min S. and in 210 deg. 37 min. E. long. But as the natives who approached the ships in their canoes, could not be persuaded to come on board, and the captain had no inducement to land there, he proceeded on his voyage.

On the 12th of Aug. he saw Maitea, one of the Society Islands, and soon after Otaheite. We shall now confine ourselves chiefly to the reception which Omai met with amongst his countrymen, with some of the most remarkable occurrences in Capt. Cook's intercourse with the friendly natives.

When we first came near the island, several canoes came off to the ship, each conducted by two or three men. But, as they were common fellows, Omai took no particular notice of them, nor they of him. They did not even seem to perceive, that he was one of their countrymen, altho' they conversed with him for some time. At length a chief, whom I had known before, named Ootee, and Omai's brother-in-law, who chanced to be at this corner of the island, and three or four more persons, all of whom knew Omai before he embarked with Capt. Furneaux, came on board. Yet there was nothing either tender or striking in their meeting. On the contrary, there seemed to be a perfect indifference on both sides, till Omai, having taken

his brother down into the cabin, he opened the drawer where he kept his red feathers, and gave him a few.— This being presently known amongst the rest of the natives upon deck, the face of affairs was entirely turned, and Ootee, who would hardly speak to Omai before, now begged that they might be tayos (friends) and exchange names. Omai accepted of the honour, and confirmed it with a present of red feathers; and Ootee, by way of return, sent ashore for a hog. But it was evident to every one of us, that it was not the man, but his property, they were in love with. Had he not shewn to them his treasure of red feathers, which is the commodity in greatest estimation at the islands, I question much whether they would have bestowed even a cocoa-nut upon him. Such was Omai's reception amongst his countrymen. I own, I never expected it would be otherwise; but still, I was in hopes, that the valuable cargo of presents, with which the liberality of his friends in England had loaded him, would be the means of raising him into consequence, and of making him respected, and even courted by the first persons throughout the extent of the Society Islands. This could not but have happened, had he conducted himself with any degree of prudence. But, instead of it, I am sorry to say, that he paid too little regard to the repeated advice of those who wished him well, and suffered himself to be duped by every designing knave.

The important news, of red feathers being on board our ships, having been conveyed on shore by Omai's friends, day had no sooner begun to break next morning, than we were surrounded by a multitude of canoes, crowded with people, bringing hogs to market. At first, a quantity of feathers, not greater than what might be got from a tom-tit, would purchase a hog of forty or fifty pounds weight. But as almost every body in the ships was possessed of some of this precious article of trade, it fell, in its value, above five hundred per cent. before night. However, even then, the balance was much in our favour; and red feathers continued

tinued to preserve their superiority over every other commodity. Some of the natives would not part with a hog, unless they received an axe in exchange; but nails, beads, and other trinkets, which, during our former voyages, had so great a run at this island, were now so much despised, that few would deign to look at them.

In the morning of the 13th, Captain Cook came to anchor in a bay called Oheitepeha. Soon after, Omai's sister came on board to see him; and the captain was happy to observe, that, much to the honour of each, their meeting was marked with expressions of the most tender affection. After this moving scene, Omai and the captain went ashore. Here, the attention of the former was soon drawn to an old woman, the sister of his mother. She was already at his feet, and had bedewed them plentifully with tears of joy. The captain left him with the old lady, encircled by a number of people, in order to go and take a view of a house and cross erected by the Spaniards. When he returned, he found Omai holding forth to a large company; and it was with some difficulty he could be got away to accompany the captain on board. Capt. Cook, it seems, had learned, from the natives, that two Spanish ships from Lima had twice put into Oheitepeha Bay, since his last visit in 1774. They had left some hogs, dogs, goats, a bull, and a ram, on shore. The first time they came, they built a house, and left four men behind them, carrying away four of the natives. In about ten months, the same ships returned, bringing back two of the islanders, the other two having died at Lima. After a short stay, they took away their own people, but left the house standing. This was situated at a small distance from the beach. The wooden materials of which it was composed, seemed to have been brought ready prepared, to set up occasionally: for all the planks were numbered. It was divided into two small rooms; and in the inner one, were a bench, a table, a bedstead, some old hats, and other trifles, of which the natives seemed to be very careful, as also of the
house

house itself, which had suffered no hurt from the weather, a shed having been built over it. There were scuttles all around, which served as air-holes; and perhaps, they were also meant to fire from with muskets, if ever it should have been found necessary. At some distance, stood a wooden cross, on the transverse part of which was cut,

CHRISTUS VINCENT.

And on the perpendicular part was,

CAROLUS III. IMPERAT. 1774.

On the other side of the post, Captain Cook took care to preserve the memory of the prior visits of the English, by inscribing,

GEORGIUS TERTIUS REX,

Annis 1767, 1769, 1773, 1774, & 1777.

Near the foot of this cross was the grave of the commodore of the two ships, who died here, while they lay in the bay, the first time. The Spaniards seem to have taken great pains to ingratiate themselves with the inhabitants, who, on every occasion, mentioned them with the strongest expressions of esteem and veneration. The former, however, did not succeed in their attempt to depreciate the character of the English. One of the four persons whom they left behind, and whom the natives called Mateema, made himself very popular. He took uncommon pains to study their language, that he might be enabled to impress their minds with the most exalted ideas of the greatness of the Spanish monarchy, and made them think meanly of the English. He even went so far as to assure them that we no longer existed as an independent nation; that Pretane was only a small island which they (the Spaniards) had entirely destroyed; and that as for Captain Cook, they had met with him at sea, and with a few shot, had sent his ship, with every soul in her, to the bottom. All this, and many other improbable falsehoods, did the Spaniards make these people believe. But, if
Spain

Spain had no other views in this expedition, than to depreciate the English, she had better have kept her ships at home; for Captain Cook's return to the island (which in course, was quite unexpected) was considered as a complete refutation of all that Mateema had said.

Waheiadooa, the sovereign of Tiaraboo, which was the name of this part of the island, was now absent. This was not the same person, though of the same name with the chief, whom Captain Cook had seen here during his last voyage; but his brother, a boy about ten years old, who had succeeded on the death of the elder Waheiadooa about twenty months before, and was now under the tutorage of a chief named Etoerea. The celebrated queen Oberea was dead. However, he soon after sent a message to notify his arrival, and to desire that the captain would visit him ashore. Accordingly Omai and the captain prepared to make him a formal visit. On this occasion, Omai, assisted by some of his friends, dressed himself, not after the English fashion, nor that of Otaheite, nor that of Tongataboo, nor in the dress of any country upon earth; but in a strange medley of all that he was possessed of. There was nothing remarkable in this interview, except the information that Capt. Cook received, that the Spaniards, when they visited the island, had desired the chiefs not to suffer him to enter Oheitepeha Bay, if he should return again, for that the island belonged to them. But the person who addressed me gave this information, that they were so far from paying any regard to this request, that he was authorised now to make a formal surrender of the province of Tiaraboo to me, and of every thing in it; which marks very plainly, that these people are no strangers to the policy of accommodating themselves to present circumstances. At length, the young chief was directed by his attendants to come and embrace me; and by way of confirming this treaty of friendship, we exchanged names. The ceremony being closed, he and his friends accompanied me on board to dinner.

Omai had just prepared a maro, composed of red
and

and yellow feathers, which he intended for Otoo, the king of the whole island, and considering where we were, it was a present of great value. I said all that I could to persuade him not to produce it now, wishing him to keep it on board till an opportunity should offer of presenting it to Otoo, with his own hands. But he had too good an opinion of the honesty and fidelity of his countrymen to take my advice. Nothing would serve him, but to carry it ashore on this occasion, and to give it to Waheiaadooda, to be by him forwarded to Otoo, in order to its being added to the royal maro. He thought, by this management, that he should oblige both chiefs; whereas, he highly disobliged the one, whose favour was of the most consequence to him, without gaining any reward from the other: for Waheiaadooda kept the maro himself, and only sent to Otoo a very small piece of feathers; not the twentieth part of what belonged to the magnificent present.

On the 24th of August, Capt. Cook left the bay of Oheitepeha, and in the evening anchored in Matavai Bay, in another part of the island, whence he expected his principal supply. Here he and Omai had an interview with Otoo, the king of the whole island. Omai had prepared himself for this ceremony, by dressing himself in his very best clothes, and behaved with a great deal of modesty. Nevertheless, very little notice was taken of him. Perhaps envy had some share in producing this cold reception. He made the chief a present of a large piece of red feathers, and about two or three yards of gold cloth; and I gave him a suit of fine linen, a gold-laced hat, some tools, and, what was of more value than all the other articles, a quantity of red feathers, and one of the bonnets in use at the Friendly Islands.

After the hurry of this visit was over, the king, and the whole royal family, accompanied us on board, followed by several canoes, laden with all kind of provisions, in quantity sufficient to have served the companies of both ships for a week. Each of the family owned, or pretended to own, a part; so that we had a
present

present from every one of them ; and every one of them had a separate present in return from me ; which was the great object in view. Soon after, the king's mother, who had not been present at the first interview, came on board, bringing with her a quantity of provisions and cloth, which she divided between me and Omai. For, although he was but little noticed at first, by his countrymen, they no sooner gained the knowledge of his riches than they began to court his friendship. I encouraged this as much as I could ; for it was my wish to fix him with Otoo. As I intended to leave all my European animals at this island, I thought he would be able to give some instructions about the management of them, and about their use. Besides, I knew and saw, the farther he was from his native island, he would be the better respected. But, unfortunately, poor Omai rejected my advice, and conducted himself in so imprudent a manner, that he soon lost the friendship of Otoo, and of every person of note in Otaheite. He associated with none but vagabonds and strangers, whose sole views were to plunder him. And, if I had not interfered, they would not have left him a single article worth carrying from the island. This necessarily drew upon him the ill-will of the principal chiefs ; who found that they could not procure from any one in the ships, such valuable articles of presents, as Omai had bestowed on the lowest of the people, his companions.

Our friend Omai got one good thing at this island, for the many good things he gave away. This was a very fine double sailing canoe, completely equipped, and fit for sea. Some time before, I made up for him, a suit of English colours ; but he thought these two valuable to be used at this time ; and patched up a parcel of colours, such as flags and pendants, to the number of ten or a dozen, which he spread on different parts of his vessel, all at the same time ; and drew together as many people to look at her, as a man of war would, dressed in an European port. These streamers of Omai's were a mixture of English, French, Spanish,

and Dutch, which were all the European colours that he had seen. When I was last at this island, I gave to Otoo an English jack and pendant, and to Towha a pendant; which I now found they had preserved with the greatest care.

Omai had also provided himself with a good stock of cloth and cocoa-nut oil, which are not only in great plenty, but much better at Otaheite, than at any of the Society Islands; insomuch that they are articles of trade. Omai would not have behaved so inconsistently, and so much unlike himself, as he did, in many instances, but for his sister and brother-in-law, who, together with a few more of their acquaintance, engrossed him entirely to themselves, with no other view than to strip him of every thing he had got. And they would undoubtedly, have succeeded in their scheme, if I had not put a stop to it in time, by taking the most useful articles of his property into my possession. But even this would not have saved Omai from ruin, if I had suffered these relations of his to have gone with, or to have followed us to his intended place of settlement, Huaheine. This they had intended; but I disappointed their farther views of plunder, by forbidding them to shew themselves in that island, while I remained there; and they knew me too well not to comply.

On the 28th, Otoo came on board, and informed me, that he had got a canoe, which he desired I would take with me, and carry home, as a present to the Earee rahie no Pretane; it being the only thing, he said, that he could send worth his Majesty's acceptance. I was not a little pleased with Otoo, for this mark of his gratitude. It was a thought entirely his own, not one of us having given him the least hint about it; and it shewed, that he fully understood to whom he was indebted for the most valuable presents he had received. As it was too large for me to take on board, I could only thank him for his good intention; but it would have pleased him much better, if his present could have been accepted.

The frequent visits we have lately paid to this island, seem to have created a full persuasion, that the intercourse will not be discontinued. It was strictly enjoined to me by Otoo, to request, in his name, that Earee rahie no Pretane, to send him, by the next ships, red feathers, and the birds that produce them ; axes, half a dozen musquets, with powder and shot ; and, by no means to forget horses.

In the morning of the 30th of September, Captain Cook left Otaheite ; and the same evening, arrived at Eimeo. Here, the loss of a gnat, which was stolen, forced him into an hostile expedition across the island ; nor was this animal (at that conjuncture of great importance to him) given up, till some houses and canoes were burnt. On the 11th of October, he steered for Huaheine, where it was his intention finally to settle Omai, and where he arrived the next morning. Our arrival here, brought all the principal people of the island to our ships. This was just what I wished, as it was high time to think of settling Omai ; and the presence of these chiefs, I guessed, would enable me to do it in the most satisfactory manner. He now seemed to have an inclination to establish himself at Ulietea ; and if he and I could have agreed about the mode of bringing that plan to bear, I should have had no objection to adopt it. His father had been dispossessed by the men of Bolabola, when they conquered Ulietea, of some land in that island ; and I made no doubt of getting it restored to the son in an amicable manner. For that purpose it was necessary, that he should be on good terms with those who now were masters of the island ; but he was too great a patriot to listen to any such thing ; and was vain enough to suppose, that I would reinstate him in his forfeited lands by force. This made it impossible to fix him at Ulietea, and pointed out to me Huaheine as the proper place. I, therefore, resolved to avail myself of the presence of the chief men of the island, and to make this proposal to them.

After the hurry of the morning was over, we got ready to pay a formal visit to Taireetareea, meaning

then to introduce this business. Omai dressed himself very properly on the occasion ; and prepared a handsome present for the chief himself and another for his Eatooa. Indeed, after he had got clear of the gang that surrounded him at Otaheite, he behaved with such prudence as to gain respect. Our landing drew most of our visitors from the ships ; and they, as well as those that were on shore, assembled in a large house. The concourse of people, on this occasion, was very great ; and, amongst them, there appeared to be a greater proportion of personable men and women than we had ever seen in one assembly at any one of these islands. Not only the bulk of the people seemed, in general, much stouter and fairer than those of Otaheite, but there was also a much greater number of men who appeared to be of consequence, in proportion to the extent of the island ; most of whom had exactly the corpulent appearance of the chiefs of Wateo. We waited some time for Tareetareea, as I would do nothing till the Earee rahie came ; but when he appeared, I found that his presence might have been dispensed with, as he was not above eight or ten years of age. Omai, who stood at a little distance from this circle of great men, began with making his offering to the gods, consisting of red feathers, cloth, &c. Then followed another offering, which was to be given to the gods by the chiefs ; and after that, several other small pieces and tufts of red feathers were presented. Each article was laid before one of the company, who, I understood, was a priest, and was delivered with a set speech or prayer, spoken by one of Omai's friends, who sat by him, but mostly dictated by himself. In these prayers he did not forget his friends in England, nor those who had brought him safe back. The Earee rahie no Pretane, Lord Sandwich, Toote, Tatee, Cook and Clerk, were mentioned in every one of them. When Omai's offerings and prayers were finished, the priest took each article, in the same order in which it had been laid before him, and after repeating a prayer, sent it to the morai ; which, as Omai told

us, was at a great distance, otherwise the offerings would have been made there.

These religious ceremonies having been performed, Omai sat down by me, and we entered upon business by giving the young chief my present, and receiving his in return; and, all things considered, they were liberal enough on both sides. Some arrangements were next agreed upon, as to the manner of carrying on the intercourse betwixt us; and I pointed out the mischievous consequences that would attend their robbing us, as they had done during my former visits. Omai's establishment was then proposed to the assembled chiefs.

He acquainted them that he had been carried to our country, where he was well received by the great king and his carees, and treated with every mark of regard and affection, while he staid amongst us; that he had been brought back again, enriched by our liberality, with a variety of articles which would prove very useful to his countrymen; and that besides the two-horses which were to remain with him, several other new and valuable animals had been left at Otaheite, that would soon multiply, and furnish a sufficient number for the use of the islands in the neighbourhood. He then signified to them my earnest request, in return for all my friendly offices, that they would give him a piece of land, to build a house upon, and to raise provisions for himself and servants; adding, that if this could not be obtained for him in Huaheine, either by gift or by purchase, I was determined to carry him to Ulietea, and fix him there.

Perhaps I have here made a better speech for my friend, than he actually delivered; but these were the topics I dictated to him. I observed, that what he concluded with, about carrying him to Ulietea, seemed to meet the approbation of all the chiefs, and I instantly saw the reason: Omai had, as I have already mentioned, vainly flattered himself, that I meant to use force in restoring him to his father's lands in Ulietea, and he had talked idly, and without any authority from me, on this subject, to some of the present assembly; who
dreaded

dreamed of nothing less than a hostile invasion of Ulietea, and of being assisted by me to drive the Bolabola men out of that island. It was of consequence, therefore, that I should undeceive them; and, in order to this, I signified, in the most peremptory manner, that I neither would assist them in such an enterprize, nor suffer it to be put in execution, while I was in their seas; and that, if Omai fixed himself in Ulietea, he must be introduced as a friend, and not forced upon the Bolabola men as their conqueror.

This declaration gave a new turn to the sentiments of the council. One of the chiefs immediately expressed himself to this effect: That the whole island of Huahaine, and every thing in it, were mine; and that, therefore, I might give what portion of it I pleased to my friend. Omai, who, like the rest of his countrymen, seldom saw things beyond the present moment, was greatly pleased to hear this, thinking, no doubt, that I should be very liberal, and give him enough. But to offer what would have been improper to accept, I considered as offering nothing at all, and therefore, I now desired, that they would not only assign the particular spot, but also the exact quantity of land, which they would allot for the settlement. Upon this, some chiefs who had already left the assembly, were sent for; and, after a short consultation among themselves, my request was granted by general consent, and the ground immediately pitched upon, adjoining to the house where our meeting was held. The extent along the shore of the harbour, was about 200 yards, and its depth to the foot of the hill, somewhat more; but a proportionable part of the hill was included in the grant.

This business being settled to the satisfaction of all parties, I set up a tent ashore, established a post, and erected the observatories. The carpenters of both ships were set to work, to build a house for Omai, in which he might secure the European commodities that were his property. At the same time some hands were employed in making a garden for his use, planting shaddocks, vines, pine-apples, melons, and the seeds
of

of several other vegetable articles; all of which I had the satisfaction of observing to be in a flourishing state before I left the island.

Omai now began seriously to attend to his own affairs, and repented heartily of his ill-judged prodigality while at Otaheite. He found at Huaheine, a brother, a sister, and a brother-in-law, the sister being married. But these did not plunder him, as he had lately been by his other relations. I was sorry, however, to discover, that though they were too honest to do him any injury, they were of too little consequence in the island to do him any good.

A man who is richer than his neighbour, is sure to be envied, by numbers who wish to see him brought down to their level. And, what was his principal danger, he was to be placed in the very singular situation of being the only rich man in the community to which he was to belong. And having by a fortunate connection with us, got into his possession an accumulated quantity of a species of treasure which none of his countrymen could create by any art or industry of his own; while all coveted a share of this envied wealth, it was natural to apprehend, that all would be ready to join in attempting to strip its sole proprietor.

To prevent this if possible, I advised him to make a proper distribution of some of his moveables, to two or three of the principal chiefs; who, being thus gratified themselves, might be induced to take him under their patronage, and protect him from the injuries of others. He promised to follow my advice, and I heard, with satisfaction, before I sailed, that this prudent step had been taken. I took every opportunity of notifying to the inhabitants, that it was my intention to return to this island again, after being absent the usual time; and that if I did not find Omai in the same state of security in which I now left him, all those whom I should then discover to have been his enemies, might expect to feel the weight of my resentment.

Omai's

Omai's house being nearly finished, many of his moveables were carried ashore on the 26th. Among a variety of other useless articles, was a box of toys, which, when exposed to public view, seemed greatly to please the gazing multitude. But as to pots, kettles, plates, dishes, drinking-mugs, glasses, and the whole train of our domestic accommodations, hardly one of his countrymen would so much as look at them. Omai himself now began to think that they were of no manner of use to him; and therefore he very wisely disposed of as many of these articles of English furniture for the kitchen and pantry as he could find purchasers for, amongst the people of the ships, receiving from them, in return, hatchets, and other tools, which had a more intrinsic value in this part of the world, and added more to his distinguished superiority over those with whom he was to pass the remainder of his days.

As soon as Omai was settled in his new habitation, I began to think of leaving the island; and got every thing off from the shore, this evening, except the horse and mare, and a goat big with kid; which were left in the possession of our friend, with whom we were now finally to part. I also gave him a boar and two sows of the English breed; and he had got two sows of his own.

The history of Omai will, perhaps, interest a very numerous class of readers, more than any other occurrence of a voyage, the objects of which do not, in general, promise much entertainment. Every circumstance, therefore, which may serve to convey a satisfactory account of the exact situation in which he was left, will be thought worth preserving; and the following particulars are added, to complete the view of his domestic establishment. He had picked up at Otaheite four or five Toutous; the two Zealand youths remained with him; and his brother, and some others, joined him at Huaheine: so that his family consisted already of eight or ten persons; if that can be called a family, to which not a single female, as yet, belonged;
nor,

nor, I doubt, was likely to be long, unless its master became less volatile.

The house which we erected for him, was 24 feet by 18; and ten feet high. It was composed of boards, the spoils of our military operations at Eimeo; and, in building it, as few nails as possible were used, that there might be no inducement, from the love of iron, to pull it down.

His European weapons consisted of a musquet, bayonet, and cartouch-box, a fowling-piece, two pair of pistols, and two or three swords or cutlasses. The possession of these made him quite happy; which was my only view in giving him such presents. For I was always of opinion, that he would have been happier without fire-arms, and other European weapons, than with them; as such implements of war, in the hands of one, whose prudent use of them I had some grounds for mistrusting, would rather increase his dangers, than establish his superiority. After he had got on shore every thing that belonged to him, and was settled in his new habitation, he had most of the officers of both ships, two or three times, to dinner, and his table was always well supplied with the very best provisions that the island produced.

Before I sailed, I had the following inscription cut upon the outside of his house.

Georgius Tertius, Rex, 2 Novembris, 1777.

Naves	) Resolution, Jac. Cook, Pr.
	) Discovery, Car. Clerke, Pr.

On the 2d of November, at four o'clock in the afternoon, I took the advantage of a breeze, which then sprung up at E. and sailed out of the harbour. Most of our friends remained on board till the ships were under sail; when, to gratify their curiosity, I ordered five guns to be fired. The men all took their leave, except Omai, who remained till we were at sea. We had come to sail by a hawser fastened to the shore. In casting the ship, it parted, being cut

by the rocks, and the outer end was left behind ; as those who cast it off, did not perceive that it was broken, so that it became necessary to send a boat to bring it on board. In this boat Omai went on shore, after taking a very affectionate farewell of all the officers. He sustained himself with a manly resolution, till he came to me. Then his utmost effort to conceal his tears failed ; and Mr. King, who went in the boat, told me, that he wept all the time in going ashore.

It was no small satisfaction to reflect, that we had brought him safe back to the very spot from which he was taken. And, yet, such is the strange nature of human affairs, that we left him in a less desirable situation, than he was in before his connection with us. I do not, by this, mean, that, because he has tasted the sweets of civilized life, he must become more miserable from being obliged to abandon all thoughts of continuing them. I confine myself to this single disagreeable circumstance, that the advantages he received from us, have placed him in a more hazardous situation, with respect to his personal safety. Omai, from being much caressed in England, lost sight of his original condition ; and never considered in what manner his acquisitions, either of knowledge or of riches, would he esteemed by his countrymen, at his return ; which were the only things he could have to recommend him to them now, more than before, and on which he could build either his future greatness or happiness. He seemed even to have mistaken their genius in this respect ; and in some measure, to have forgotten their customs ; otherwise he must have known the extreme difficulty there would be in getting himself admitted as a person of rank, where there is, perhaps, no instance of a man's being raised from an inferior station by the greatest merit. Rank seems to be the very foundation of all distinction here, and, of its attendant, power ; and so pertinaciously, or rather blindly adhered to, that unless a person has some degree of it, he will certainly be despised and hated, if he assumes the appearance of exercising any authority. This was really the case, in

some

some measure, with Omai; though his countrymen were pretty cautious of expressing their sentiments while we remained among them.

Omai's father was a man of considerable property in Ulietea, when that island was conquered by those of Bolabola; and, with many others, sought refuge in Huaheine, where he died, and left Omai, with some other children; who, by that means, became totally dependant. In this situation he was taken up by Captain Furneaux, and carried to England. Whether he really expected from his treatment there, that any assistance could be given him against the enemies of his father and his country; or whether he imagined that his own personal courage, and superiority of knowledge would be sufficient to dispossess the conquerors of Ulietea, is uncertain; but from the beginning of the voyage, this was his constant theme. He would not listen to our remonstrances on so wild a determination, but flew into a passion, if more moderate and reasonable counsels were proposed for his advantage. Nay, so infatuated and attached to his favourite scheme was he, that he affected to believe these people would certainly quit the conquered island, as soon as they should hear of his arrival in Otaheite. As we advanced, however, on our voyage, he became more sensible of his error; and, by the time we reached the Friendly Islands, had even such apprehensions of his reception at home, that he would fain have staid behind at Tongataboo, under Feenou's protection. At these islands, he squandered away much of his European treasure very unnecessarily; and he was equally imprudent at Tiaraboo, where he could have no view of making friends, as he had not any intention of remaining there.

Whatever faults belonged to Omai's character, they were more than over-balanced by his good nature and docile disposition. During the whole time he was with me, I very seldom had reason to be seriously displeased with his general conduct. His grateful heart always retained the highest sense of the favours he had received in England; nor will he ever forget those who honoured

him with their protection and friendship, during his stay there.

Omai's return, and the substantial proofs he brought back with him of our liberality, encouraged many to offer themselves as volunteers to attend me to Pretane. I took every opportunity of expressing my determination to reject all such applications. But, notwithstanding this, Omai, who was very ambitious of remaining the only great traveller, being afraid lest I might be prevailed upon to put others in a situation of rivalling him, frequently put me in mind, that Lord Sandwich had told him, no other of his countrymen were to come to England.

If there had been the most distant probability of any ship being again sent to New Zealand, I would have brought the two youths of that country home with me, as both of them were very desirous of continuing with us. Tiarooa, the eldest, was an exceeding well disposed young man, with strong natural sense, and capable of receiving any instruction. He seemed to be very sensible of the inferiority of his own country to these islands, and resigned himself, though perhaps with reluctance, to end his days in ease and plenty, at Huaheine. But the other was so strongly attached to us, that he was taken out of the ship, and carried ashore by force. He was a witty, smart boy, and on that account, much noticed on board.

CHAP. IV.

Arrival at Ulietea—Intelligence from Omai—Desertion from the ships—The chief's family confined on that account—Conspiracy to seize the Captains Cook and Clerke—Deserters brought back—Christmas Island and the Sandwich Islands discovered, &c. &c.

THE next island which Captain Cook visited was that of Ulietea, where he arrived on the 30th of Nov. 1777. Here he remained upwards of a month. He was still near enough to Omai, to have intelligence

intelligence of his proceedings; and having desired to hear from him, the latter, about a fortnight after the captain's departure from Huaheine, sent two of his people in a canoe, who brought the satisfactory intelligence, that he remained undisturbed by the people of the island, and that every thing went well with him, except that his goat had died in kidding. This intelligence was accompanied by a request, that the captain would send him another goat, and two axes. The messengers were accordingly sent back with the axes, and two kids, male and female.

In the night between the 12th and 13th, a marine deserted from his post at the observatory, carrying with him his musket and accoutrements. Captain Cook went with a strong party in pursuit of him, and found him in a house sitting between two women, who instantly rose to plead in his behalf. The captain, in order to discountenance such proceedings, frowned on them, and bid them be gone: upon which they burst into tears, and walked off. The fellow had nothing to say in his defence, but that the natives had enticed him away.

On the 24th, the desertion of a midshipman and a seaman had like to have been attended with more serious consequences. As the natives were evidently desirous of concealing the deserters, the difficulty of recovering them was great. The pursuit after the fugitives was ineffectual: they had escaped to the island of Bolabola.

On the 26th, Oreo, the chief of Ulietea, with his son, daughter, and son-in-law, went on board the Resolution. The three last being invited by Capt. Clerke to go on board the Discovery, were immediately confined in the cabin. The chief, who still remained on board the Resolution, was informed that he had liberty to depart, and if he recovered the two deserters, his family should be released, but that otherwise, they should be carried away when the ships sailed. This expedient proved successful, although very dangerous:
for

for a scheme had been formed to seize the person of Captain Cook, as he went to his usual bathing-place; and also Captain Clerke and lieutenant Gore, as they were walking on shore; but Capt. Cook did not judge it safe in such critical circumstances, to repeat his bathing; and a pistol in Captain Clerke's hand had intimidated the natives. The conspiracy was first discovered by a girl, whom one of the officers had brought from Huaheine. On the 28th, Oreo brought back the two deserters, who had been taken on the small island of Toobaee; and the family of Oreo was immediately released.

On the 8th of December, Capt. Cook visited Bolabola, where he stayed no longer than to purchase of Opoony, the chief of that island, the anchor which had been left there by M. Bougainville.

Leaving the island of Bolabola, we steered to the Northward; and in the night between the 22d and 23d, crossed the line in the long. of 203 deg. 15 min. E. On the 24th, they discovered an island, which they called Christmas Island, a small, barren, and uninhabited spot. Having weighed anchor on the 2d of Jan. 1778, they resumed their course to the Northward, and on the 18th, discovered several small islands in the lat. of 21 deg. 12 min. N. and long. 200 deg. 41 min. E.; for one of these they steered, and at first, were in some doubt whether or no it was inhabited. However, they soon saw several canoes coming off from the shore towards the ships, which were immediately brought to, to give them time to join. They had from three to six men each; and on their approach, it was an agreeable surprise to find that they spoke the language of Otaheite. It required but little address to get them to come along-side; but no intreaties could prevail on any of them to come on board. Their behaviour seemed perfectly inoffensive, and they had no arms of any kind, except some small stones, which they had evidently brought for their defence, and which they

they threw away when they found they were not wanted.

Captain Cook proceeding to coast along the island, in search of anchoring ground, these canoes left him; but others came off, bringing with them roasted pigs, and some fine potatoes, which they exchanged for whatever was offered them. Several pigs were purchased for a six-penny nail. The next morning we met with several more canoes filled with people, some of whom took courage and ventured on board.

In the course of our voyages, we never before met with the natives of any place so much astonished, as these people were upon entering a ship. Their eyes were continually flying from object to object; the wildness of their looks and gestures fully expressing their entire ignorance about every thing they saw, and strongly marking to us, that, till now, they had never been visited by Europeans, nor been acquainted with any of our commodities, except iron; which, however, it was plain they had only heard of, or had known it in some small quantity, brought to them at some distant period. Plates of earthen-ware, china cups, and other such things, they were so new to them, that they asked if they were made of wood, and wished to have some, that they might carry them to be looked at on shore. They were in some respect naturally well bred, or at least, fearful of giving offence, asking where they should sit down, whether they might spit upon the deck, and the like. One of the natives having stolen a butcher's cleaver, leaped overboard, got into his canoe, and hastened to the shore, the boats pursued him in vain.

Having sent three armed boats under the command of Mr. Williamson, to look for a landing-place, and for fresh water; about noon, Mr. Williamson came back, and reported, that he had seen a large pond behind a beach near one of the villages, which the natives told him contained fresh water; and that there
was

was anchoring ground before it. He also reported, that he attempted to land in another place, but was prevented by the natives, who, coming down to the boats in great numbers, attempted to take away the oars, muskets, and in short, every thing they could lay hold of; pressing so thick upon him that he was obliged to fire, by which one man was killed. But this unhappy circumstance I did not know till after we had left the island; so that all my measures were directed as if nothing of the kind had happened. Mr. Williamson told me, that after the man fell, his countrymen took him up, carried him off, and then retired from the boat, but still they made signals for our people to land, which he declined. It did not appear to Mr. Williamson, that the natives had any design to kill, or even to hurt any of his party; but they seemed excited by mere curiosity to get from them what they had, being at the same time ready to give, in return, any thing of their own.

In the afternoon of the 20th, I went ashore with three armed boats and twelve marines, to examine the water, and to try the disposition of the inhabitants, several hundreds of whom were assembled on a sandy beach before the village; behind it was a narrow valley, the bottom of which was occupied by a piece of water.

The very instant I leaped on shore, the collected body of the natives all fell flat upon their faces, and remained in that very humble posture, till, by expressive signs, I prevailed upon them to rise. They then brought a great many small pigs, which they presented to me, with plantain-trees, using much the same ceremonies that we had seen practised on such occasions, at the Society and other islands; and a long prayer being spoken by a single person, in which others of the assembly sometimes joined. I expressed my acceptance of their proffered friendship, by giving them in return, such presents as I had brought with me from the ship for that purpose. When this introductory

introductory business was finished, I stationed a guard upon the beach, and got some of the natives to conduct me to the water, which proved to be very good, and in a proper situation for our purpose. It was so considerable that it may be called a lake; and it extended farther up the country than we could see. Having satisfied myself about this essential point, and about the peaceable disposition of the natives, I returned on board; and then gave orders that every thing should be in readiness for landing and filling our water-casks in the morning (the 21st) when I went ashore with the people employed in this service, having a party of marines with us for a guard, who were stationed on the beach.

As soon as we landed, a trade was set on foot for hogs and potatoes, which the people of the island gave us in exchange for nails and pieces of iron, formed into something like chissels. We met with no obstruction in watering; on the contrary, the natives assisted our men in rolling the casks to and from the pool; and readily performed whatever we required. Every thing thus going on to my satisfaction, and considering my presence on the spot as unnecessary, I left the command to Mr. Williamson, and made an excursion into the country, up the valley, accompanied by Mr. Anderson and Mr. Webber. A numerous train of natives followed us; and one of them, whom I had distinguished for his activity in keeping the rest in order, I made choice of as our guide. This man, for some time, proclaimed our approach; and every one whom we met, fell prostrate upon the ground, and remained in that position till we had passed. This, as I afterwards understood, is the mode of paying their respects to their own great chiefs.

At sun-set, I brought some of the natives on board, having procured in the course of the day 9 tons of water; we exchanged nails for 80 pigs and a few fowls. These people merited our best commendations, in this commercial intercourse, never once attempting to cheat us. Some of them, indeed, as already mentioned, at first, betrayed a thievish disposition; but they soon

laid aside their conduct, which, we convinced them, they could not persevere in with impunity.

Among the articles which they brought to barter this day, we could not help taking notice of a particular sort of cloke and cap, which, even in countries where dress is more particularly attended to, might be reckoned elegant. The first are nearly of the size and shape of the short clokes worn by the women in England, and the men in Spain, reaching to the middle of the back, and tied loosely before. The ground of them is a net-work, upon which the most beautiful red and yellow feathers are so closely fixed, that the surface might be compared to the thickest and richest velvet, which they resemble, both as to the feel, and the glossy appearance. The means of varying the mixture is very different; some having triangular spaces of red and yellow alternately; others a kind of crescent; and some that were entirely red, had a broad yellow border, which made them appear, at some distance, exactly like a scarlet cloke edged with gold lace. The brilliant colours of the feathers, in those that happened to be new, added not a little to their fine appearance; and we found that they were in high estimation with their owners; for they would not, at first, part with one of them, for any thing that we offered, asking no less a price than a musket; but some were afterwards purchased for large nails.

The cap is made almost exactly like a helmet, with the middle part, or crest, sometimes of a hand-breadth, and it sits very close upon the head, having notches to admit the ears. Its frame is of twigs and osiers, covered with net-work into which are wrought feathers, in the same manner as on the clokes, though rather closer, and less diversified; the greater part being red, with some black, yellow, or green stripes on the sides, following the curve direction of the crest. These, probably, with the clokes, complete the dress; for the natives sometimes, appeared with both on together.

On the 29th, Capt. Cook left Atooi, being driven from the road by stress of weather, and soon arrived
off

off the island of Onceheow. Here they were visited as before, by the natives in their canoes. Many of them came readily on board, crouching down upon the deck, and not quitting that humble posture, till they were desired to get up. They had brought several females with them, who remained alongside in their canoes, behaving with far less modesty than their country-women of Atooi; and at times all joining in a song, not remarkable for its melody, though performed in very exact concert, by beating time upon their breasts with their hands. The men who had come on board, did not stay long; and before they departed, some of them requested our permission to lay down on the deck locks of their hair.

On Sunday, Feb. 1, I went ashore in the pinnace, taking with me a ram-goat and two ewes, a boar and sow-pig of the English breed; and the seeds of melons, pumpkins, and onions; being very desirous of benefiting these poor people, by furnishing them with some additional articles of food. To one of them, whom Mr. Gore had observed assuming some command over the rest, I gave the goats, pigs, and seeds. I should have left these well-intended presents at Atooi, had we not been so unexpectedly driven from that island.

While the people were engaged in filling four water-casks, I walked a little way up the country, attended by the man above-mentioned, and followed by two others, carrying the two pigs. As soon as we got upon a rising ground, I stopped to look round me; and observed a woman on the opposite side of the valley where I landed, calling to her country-women who attended me. Upon this, the chief began to mutter something which I supposed was a prayer; and the two men who carried the pigs, continued to walk round me all the time, making, at least, a dozen circuits before the other had finished his crayson. This ceremony being performed, we proceeded; and presently met people coming from all parts, who, on being called to by my attendants, threw themselves prostrate on their faces, till I was out of sight. The ground which I passed, was in a state of

C c c 2

nature,

nature, very stony, and the soil seemed poor. It was, however covered with shrubs and plants, some of which perfumed the air with more delicious fragrancy than I had met with at any of the other islands visited by us in this part of the ocean.

These two islands of Atooi and Oneeheow, were part of a cluster of islands, now first discovered, to which Capt. Cook gave the name of Sandwich Islands. It is worthy of observation, that the islands in the Pacific Ocean, which our late voyagers have added to the geography of the globe, have been generally found lying in groups or clusters; the single intermediate islands, as yet discovered, being few in proportion to the others; though, probably, there are many more of them still unknown, which serve as steps between the several clusters. Of this newly discovered Archipelago, Capt. Cook now saw five, whose names, as given by the natives, are Woahoo, Atooi, Oneeheow, Oreehoua, and Tahoorā. Of Atooi, which is the largest, we shall proceed to give the most interesting particulars.

The inhabitants are of a middling stature, firmly made, with some exceptions, neither remarkable for a beautiful shape, nor for striking features, which rather express an openness and good-nature, than a keen intelligent disposition. Their visage, especially among the women, is sometimes round, but others have it long: nor can we say, that they are distinguished as a nation, by any general cast of countenance. Their colour is nearly of a nut brown, and it may be difficult to make a nearer comparison. The women are a little more delicate than the men, in their formation; but I may say, that, with very few exceptions, they have little claim to those peculiarities that distinguish the sex in other countries. However, upon the whole, they are far from being ugly, and appear to have few natural deformities of any kind.

They are vigorous, active, and expert swimmers; leaving their canoes upon the most trifling occasion, diving under them, and swimming to others, though at a great distance. It was very common to see women,
with

with infants at the breast, when the surf was so high that they could not land in the canoes, leap overboard, and, without endangering their little ones, swim to the shore, through a sea that looked dreadful.

From the number which we saw collected at every village, as we sailed past, it may be supposed, that the inhabitants of this island are pretty numerous. Any computation, that we make, can be only conjectural. But, that some notion may be formed, which shall not greatly err on either side, I would suppose, that, including the straggling houses, there might be, upon the whole island, sixty such villages, as that before which we anchored; and that, allowing five persons to each house, there would be, in every village, five hundred; or thirty thousand upon the island. This number is, certainly, not exaggerated; for we had sometimes three thousand persons, at least, upon the beach; when it could not be supposed, that above a tenth part of the inhabitants were present.

The women have large pieces of cloth wrapped round them, reaching from just below the breast to the hams, or lower; and several were seen with pieces thrown loosely about the shoulders, which covered the greatest part of the body; but the children, when very young, are quite naked. They wear nothing upon the head; but the hair, in both sexes, is cut in different forms; and the general fashion, especially among the women, is, to have it long before, and short behind. The men often have it cut, or shaved, on each side, in such a manner, that the remaining part, in some measure, resembles the crest of their caps or helmets, formerly described. Both sexes, however, seem very careless about their hair, and have nothing like combs to dress it with. Instances of wearing it, in a singular manner, were sometimes met with among the men, who twist it into a number of separate parcels, like the tails of a wig, each about the thickness of a finger; though the greatest part of these, which are so long that they reach far down the back, we observed, were artificially fixed upon the head, over their own hair. It is remarkable,

ble, that contrary to the general practice of the islands we had hitherto discovered in the Pacific Ocean, the people of the Sandwich Islands have not their ears perforated : nor have they the least idea of wearing ornaments in them. Both sexes, nevertheless, adorn themselves with necklaces made of bunches of small black cord like our hatstring, often above an hundred-fold ; exactly like those of Wateeoo ; only that, instead of the two little balls, on the middle before, they fix a small bit of wood, stone, or shell, about two inches long, with a broad hook, turning forward at its lower part, well polished. They have, likewise, necklaces of many strings of very small shells, or of the dried flowers of the Indian mallow. And sometimes, a small human image of bone, about three inches long neatly polished, is hung round the neck. The women also wear bracelets of a single shell, pieces of black wood, with bits of ivory interspersed, and well polished, fixed by a string drawn very closely through them ; or others of hogs teeth, laid parallel to each other, with the concave part outward, and the points cut off, fastened together as the former ; some of which made only of large boars' tusks, are very elegant. The men, sometimes wear plumes of the tropic birds feathers, stuck in their heads ; or those of cocks, fastened round neat polished sticks, two feet long, commonly decorated, at the lower part, with oora ; and, for the same purpose, the skin of a white dog's tail is sewed over a stick, with its tuft at the end. They also frequently, wear on the head a kind of ornament, of a finger's thickness, or more, covered with red and yellow feathers, curiously varied, and tied behind, and on the arm, above the elbow, a kind of broad shell-work, grounded upon net work.

The men are frequently punctured, though not in any particular part, as the Otaheiteans, and those of Tongataboo. Sometimes there are a few marks upon their hands, or arms, and near the groin ; but frequently we could observe none at all ; though a few individuals had more of this sort of ornament, than we had usually seen at other places, and ingeniously executed
in

in a great variety of lines and figures, on the arms and fore part of the belly ; on which latter, some of them had the figure of the taame, or breast-plate, of Otaheite, though we did not meet with the thing itself amongst them.

Though they seem to have adopted the mode of living in villages, there is no appearance of defence or fortification, near any of them : and the houses are scattered about, without any order, either with respect to the distances from each other, or their position in any particular direction. Neither is there any proportion as to their size ; some being large and commodious, from forty to fifty feet long, and twenty or thirty broad, while others of them are mere hovels. Their figure is not unlike oblong corn or hay-stacks ; or perhaps, a better idea may be conceived of them, if we suppose the roof of a barn placed on the ground, in such a manner as to form a high, acute ridge, with two very low sides, hardly discernible at a distance. The gable, at each end, corresponding to the sides, make these habitations perfectly close all round ; and they are well thatched with long grass, which is laid on slender poles, disposed with some regularity. The entrance is made either in the end or side, and is an oblong hole, so low, that one must rather creep than walk in ; and is often shut up by a board of planks, fastened together, which serves as a door, but having no hinges, must be removed occasionally. No light enters the house, but by this opening ; and though such close habitations may afford a comfortable retreat in bad weather, they seem but ill adapted to the warmth of the climate. They are however, kept remarkably clean ; and their floors are covered with a large quantity of dried grass, over which they spread mats to sit and sleep upon. At one end stands a kind of bench, about three feet high, on which their household utensils are placed. The catalogue is not long. It consists of gourd-shells, which they convert into vessels that serve as bottles to hold water, and as baskets to contain their victuals, and other things, with covers of the same ; and a few wooden bowls

bowls and trenchers, of different sizes. Judging from what we saw growing, and from what they brought to market, there can be no doubt, that the greatest part of their vegetable food consists of sweet potatoes, taro, and plantains; and that bread-fruit and yams are rather to be esteemed rarities. Of animal food, they can be in no want; as they have abundance of hogs, which run, without restraint, about the houses; and if they eat dogs, which is not improbable, their stock of these seemed to be very considerable. The great number of fishing-hooks found among them, shewed that they derive no inconsiderable supply of animal food from the sea. But it should seem, from their practice of salting fish, that the openness of their coast often interrupts the business of catching them; as may be naturally supposed, that no set of people would ever think of preserving quantities of food artificially, if they could depend upon a daily, regular supply of it, in its fresh state. This sort of reasoning however, will not account for their custom of salting their pork, as well as their fish, which are preserved in gourd-shells. The salt, of which they use a great quantity for this purpose, is of a red colour, nor very coarse. It has its colour, doubtless, from a mixture of the mud, at the bottom of the part where it is formed, for some of it, that had adhered into lumps, was of a sufficient whiteness and purity.

They bake their vegetable food with heated stones, as at the Southern Islands; and from the vast quantity which we saw dressed at one time, we suspected that the whole village, or, at least, a considerable number of people, joined in the use of a common oven. The only artificial dish that we met with, was a taro pudding; which though a disagreeable mess from its sourness, was greedily devoured by the natives. They eat off a kind of wooden plate, or trenchers; and the women, as far as we could judge from one instance, if restrained from feeding at the same dish with the men, as at Otaheite, are, at least, permitted to eat in the same place near them.

Their

Their amusements seemed pretty various; for, during our short stay, several were discovered. The dances, at which they use the feathered cloaks and caps, were not seen; but from the motions which they made with their hands, on other occasions, when they sung, we could form some judgment that they are, in some degree at least, similar to those we met with at the Southern Islands, though not executed so skilfully. Neither had they amongst them either flutes or reeds; and the only two musical instruments which we observed, were of an exceeding rude kind. One of them does not produce a melody exceeding that of a child's rattle. It consists of what may be called a conic cap inverted, but scarcely hollowed at the base above a foot high, made of a coarse, sedge-like plant; the upper part of which, and the edges, are ornamented with beautiful read feathers; and to the point, or lower part, is fixed a gourd-shell, larger than the first. Into this is put something to rattle; which is done by holding the instrument by the small part, and shaking, or rather moving it, from place to place briskly, either to different sides, or backward and forward, just before the face, striking the breast with the other hand at the same time. The other musical instrument (if either of them deserve that name) was a hollow vessel of wood, like a platter, combined with the use of two sticks, on which one of our gentlemen saw a man performing. He held one of the sticks, about two feet long, as we do a fiddle with one hand, and struck it with the other, which was smaller, and resembled a drum-stick, in a quicker or slower measure; at the same time beating with his foot upon the hollow vessel, that lay inverted upon the ground, and thus producing a tune, that was by no means disagreeable. This music was accompanied by the vocal performance of some women, whose song had a pleasing and tender effect.

We observed great numbers of small polished rods, about four or five feet long, somewhat thicker than the rammer of a musket, with a tuft of long white dog's hair fixed on the small end. These are, probably, used

in their diversions. We saw a person take one of them in his hand, and, holding it up, give a small stroke, till he brought it into an horizontal position, striking with the foot on the same side, upon the ground, and with his other hand, beating his breast at the same time. They play at bowls, with pieces of whet-stone, of about a pound weight, shaped somewhat like a small cheese, but rounded at the sides and edges, which are very nicely polished; and they have other bowls of the same sort, made of a heavy, reddish brown clay, neatly glazed over with a composition of the same colour, or of a coarse, dark grey slate. They also use, in the same manner that we throw quoits, small, flat, rounded pieces of writing slate, of the diameter of the bowls, but scarcely a quarter of an inch thick, also well polished. From these circumstances, one would be induced to think, that their games are rather trials of skill than of strength.

Had the Sandwich Islands been discovered at an early period, by the Spaniards, there is little doubt that they would have taken advantage of so excellent a situation, and made use of Atooli, or some other of the islands, as a refreshing-place to the ships, that sail annually from Acapulco to Manilla. How happy would Lord Anson have been, and what hardships would he have avoided, if he had known that there was a group of islands, half way between America and Tiniau, where all his wants could have been effectually supplied.

CHAP. V.

Curious marine phenomena—Arrival at Nootka Sound—Intercourse with the natives—Description of their persons—Their general dispositions, and their eagerness to possess iron and other metals.

IN pursuing his voyage northward, one of the most curious circumstances which the captain observed, was during a calm on the 2d of March, 1778, when some parts of the sea seemed covered with a kind of slime,

slime, and some small sea animals were swimming about; the most conspicuous of which, were of the gelatinous, or medusa kind, almost globular; and another sort smaller, that had a white, or shining appearance, and were very numerous. Some of these last were taken up, and put into a glass cup, with some salt water, in which they appeared like small scales, or bits of silver when at rest in a prone situation. When they began to swim about, which they did with equal ease, upon their back, sides, or belly, they emitted the brightest colours of the most precious gems, according to their position with respect to the light. Sometimes they appeared quite pellucid, at other times assuming various tints of blue, from a pale sapphirine, to a deep violet colour, which were frequently mixed with a ruby, or opaline redness; and glowed with strength sufficient to illuminate the vessel and water. They proved to be a new species of oniscus, and, from their properties, were by Mr. Anderson called *oniscus fulgens*; being, probably, an animal which has a share in producing some sorts of that lucid appearance, often observed near ships at sea, in the night.

The coast of New Albion, in North America, was first described on the 7th; but being much obstructed by adverse and tempestuous winds, it was not till the 29th that the captain came to anchor in a sound, to which he gave the name of King George's Sound, but which the natives called Nootka. It is situated on the E. corner of Hope Bay, in the lat. of 49 deg. 33 min. N. and in the long. of 233 deg. 12 min E. Various reparations of the ships, and a very friendly intercourse with the natives, employed his time till the 26th of April, when he put to sea in the further pursuit of his voyage.

When the captain first entered this Sound, three canoes came off to the ship. In one of these were two men, in another six, and in the third ten. Having come pretty near, a person in one of the two last stood up, and made a long harangue, inviting them to land, as was guessed, by his gestures. At the same time. he

kept strewing handfuls of feathers towards them ; and some of his companions threw handfuls of a red dust in the same manner. The person who played the orator, wore the skin of some animal, and held, in each hand, something which rattled as he kept shaking it. After the tumultuous noise had ceased, they lay at a little distance from the ship, and conversed with each other in a very easy manner ; nor did they seem to shew the least surprise or mistrust. Soon after, the canoes began to come off in great numbers, and at one time, there was 32 of them, carrying 3 to 8 persons each, both men and women. But though these visitors behaved very peaceably, they could not be prevailed upon to come on board. They shewed great readiness however, to part with any thing they had, and took whatever was offered them in exchange ; but were more desirous of iron, than of any other article of commerce. The most extraordinary of all articles they brought for sale, were human skulls, and hands, not yet quite stripped of the flesh, which they made us plainly understand they had eaten. We had but too much reason to suspect, from this circumstance, that the horrid practice of feeding on their enemies is as prevalent here, as we had found it to be at New Zealand, &c.

The persons of the natives are, in general, under the common stature, but not slender in proportion, being commonly pretty full or plump. The visage of most of them is round and full ; the forehead rather low ; the eyes black, and rather languishing than sparkling. They have either no beards at all, which was most commonly the case, or a small thin one upon the point of the chin, which does not arise from any natural defect of hair on that part, but from plucking it out more or less ; for some of them, and particularly the old men, have not only considerable beards all over the chin, but whiskers, or mustachios, upon the upper lip, and running thence toward the lower jaw obliquely downward.

Their colour we could not positively determine, as their bodies were incrustated with paint and dirt ; though

in particular cases, when these were well rubbed off, the whiteness of the skin appeared to equal that of Europeans. Their children, whose skins had never been stained with paint, also equalled ours in whiteness.

The women are nearly of the same size, colour, and form with the men; from whom it is not easy to distinguish them, as they possess no natural delicacies sufficient to render their persons agreeable; and hardly any one was seen, even those who were in the prime of life, who had the least pretensions to be called handsome.

The chief employment of the natives seems to be that of fishing, and killing land or sea animals, for the sustenance of their families; for we saw few of them doing any thing in their houses: whereas the women are occupied in manufacturing their flaxen or woollen garments, and in preparing the fish called sardine, for drying; which they carry up from the beach in twig baskets, after the men have brought them in their canoes. The women are also sent in the small canoes to gather muscles and other shell-fish; and perhaps on some other occasions.

We were much better enabled to form some judgment of their disposition, and, in some measure, even of their method of living, from the frequent visits so many of them paid us at our ships, in their canoes; in which, it should seem, they spend a great deal of time, at least in the summer season. For we observed that they not only eat and sleep frequently in them, but strip off their clothes, and lay themselves along to bask in the sun, in the same manner as we had seen practised at their village. Their canoes of the larger sort, are indeed sufficiently spacious for that purpose, and perfectly dry; so that under shelter of a skin, they are; except in rainy weather, much more comfortable habitations than their house.

With respect to food, their greatest reliance seems to be upon the sea, as affording fish, muscles, and smaller shell-fish, and sea-animals. Of the first, the principal are herrings, sardines, two species of bream, and

and small cod. But the herrings and sardines are not only eaten fresh, in their season, but likewise serve as stores, which after being dried and smoked, are preserved by being sewed up in mats, so as to form large bales, three or four feet square. The herrings also supply them with another grand resource, which is a vast quantity of roe, very curiously prepared. It is strewed upon, or as it were, incrustated about, small branches of the Canadian pine. They also prepare it upon a long narrow seagrass, which grows plentifully upon the rocks under water. It may be considered as the winter bread of these people, and has no disagreeable taste. They also roast the large kind of muscle, then stick them upon long wooden skewers, and taking them off occasionally, eat them without any other preparation, though they often dip them in oil, as a sauce.

Of the sea-animals, the most common in use among them as food, is the porpoise, the fat or rind of which, as well as the flesh, they cut in large pieces, and having dried them as they do the herrings, eat them without any farther preparation. They also prepare a sort of broth from this animal, in its fresh state, in a singular manner, putting pieces of it in a square wooden vessel or bucket with water, and then throwing heated stones into it. This operation they repeat till they think the contents are sufficiently stewed or seethed. They put in the fresh, and take out the other stones, with a cleft stick, which serves as tongs; the vessel being always placed near the fire for that purpose. This is a pretty common dish among them, and from its appearance, seems to be strong nourishing food.

Their manufactures, and mechanic arts, are far more ingenious, both in design and execution, than could have been expected from the natural disposition of the people, and the little progress that civilization has made among them in other respects. Their flaxen garments are made of the bark of the pine-tree, beat into a hempen state. It is not spun, but, after being properly prepared, is spread upon a stick, which is fastened across two others that stand upright. It is disposed

disposed in such a manner, that the manufacturer, who sits on her hams at this simple machine, knots it across with small plated threads, at the distance of half an inch from each other. Though, by this method, it be not so close or firm as cloth that is woven, the bunches between the knots make it sufficiently impervious to the air, by filling the interstices; and it has the additional advantage of being softer and more pliable. Their woollen garments, though probably manufactured in the same manner, have the strongest resemblance to woven cloth. But the various figures which are very artificially inserted in them, destroy the supposition of their being wrought in a loom; it being extremely unlikely, that these people should be so dextrous as to be able to finish such a complex work, unless immediately by their hands. They are of different degrees of fineness; some resembling our coarsest rugs or blankets; and others almost equal to our finest sort, or even softer, and certainly warmer.

Their implements for fishing and hunting, which are both ingeniously contrived, and well made, are nets, hooks and lines, harpoons, gigs, and an instrument like an oar. This last is about 20 feet long, 4 or 5 inches broad, and about half an inch thick. Each edge, for about two thirds of its length, is set with sharp bone teeth, about two inches long. Herrings and sardines, and such other small fish as come in shoals, are attacked with this instrument; which is struck into the shoal, and the fish are caught either upon, or between the teeth. Their hooks are made of bone and wood, and rather inartificially; but the harpoon, with which they strike the whales and lesser sea animals, shews a great reach of contrivance. It is composed of a piece of bone, cut into two barbs, in which is fixed the oval blade of a large muscle shell, in which is the point of the instrument. To this is fastened about two or three fathoms of rope; and to throw this harpoon, they use a shaft of about 12 or 15 feet long, to which the rope is made fast, and to one end of which the harpoon is fixed; so as to separate from the
shaft,

shaft, and leave it floating upon the water as a buoy, when the animal darts away with the harpoon.

We sailed from Nootka Sound on the 26th of April, and soon lost sight of land; but on the 2d of May, steering N. W. by N. we discovered a round elevated mountain, which was named Mount Edgecumbe, and the point of land shooting out from it, Cape Edgecumbe. The land, except in some places close to the sea, was all of a considerable height, and hilly. The more elevated hills were covered with snow; but the lower ones were free from it, and covered with a fine wood.

Hence he coasted along, noting several inlets, islands, capes, and mountains, (to which in the order of discovery he gave the names of the Bay of Islands, Cross Cape, Cross Sound, Cape Fair Weather, Mount Fair Weather, Bhering's Bay, the Mountain called by Bhering, Mount Elias, Cape Suckling's, Kay's Island, and Comptroller's Bay) till the 12th of May, when he anchored before a small cove, a little within a cape, to which he gave the name of Cape Hinchin Broke. Near this were some rocky islands, to which Mr. Gore was sent in a boat, in hopes of shooting some eatable birds. But he had hardly got to them, before the natives made their appearance in two large canoes, on which he thought proper to return to the ships, and they followed him. They would not venture along-side, but kept at a distance, hallooing aloud, and alternately clasping and extending their arms; and in a short time, began a kind of song, exactly after the manner of those at Nootka. Their heads were all powdered with feathers. One man held out a white garment, which was interpreted as a sign of friendship; and another stood up in a canoe, quite naked, for almost a quarter of an hour, with his arms stretched out like a cross, and motionless. Though the captain returned all their signs of friendship, and by every expressive gesture, tried to encourage them to come along-side, he could not prevail. After receiving some presents which were thrown to them, they retired to that part
of

of the shore whence they came, making signs they would appear again the next morning.

The next morning, Capt. Cook got under sail, in order to look out for some snug place, where he might search for a leak, which he had lately sprung. At first the clearness of the weather tempted him to steer to the N. farther up the largest inlet; but bad weather returning, he was obliged to anchor, before he had got so far into the bay as he intended.

The weather, bad as it was, did not hinder three of the natives from paying him a visit. They came off in two canoes, two men in one, and one in the other, being the number each could carry. Each of these men had a stick, about three feet long, with the large feathers or wings of birds tied to it. These they frequently held up, with a view, as was guessed, to express their pacific disposition.

The treatment these men met with induced many more to come, between one and two the next morning (the 14th) in great and small canoes. Some ventured on board the ship, but not till some of the crew had stepped into their boats. Amongst those who came on board, was a good-looking middle aged man, who was afterwards found to be the chief. He was clothed in a dress made of the sea otter's skin, and had on such a cap as is worn by the natives of Nootka Sound, ornamented with sky blue glass beads about the size of a large pea. He seemed to set a much higher value upon these, than upon our white glass beads. Any sort of beads, however, seemed to be in high estimation with these people; and they readily gave whatever they had in exchange for them, even their fine otter skins.

These people were also desirous of iron, but they wanted pieces of eight or ten inches long at least, and of the breadth of three or four fingers; for they absolutely rejected small pieces. Consequently they got but little, iron having, by this time, become a scarce article. The captain could not prevail upon the chief to trust himself below the upper deck; nor did he and his com-

panions remain long on board. But while he had their company, it was necessary to watch them narrowly, as they soon betrayed a thievish disposition. At length, after being about three or four hours along-side the *Resolution*, they all left her and went to the *Discovery*; none having been there before, except one man, who at this time came from her, and immediately returned thither in company with the rest. When this was observed, it was thought this man had met with something there, which he knew would please his countrymen better than what they had met with on board the *Resolution*.

As soon as they were gone, I sent a boat to sound the head of the bay: for as the wind was moderate, I had thoughts of laying the ship ashore, if a convenient place could be found where I might begin our operation to stop the leak. It was not long before all the natives left the *Discovery*, and instead of returning to us, made their way toward our boat employed as above. The officers in her seeing this, returned to the ship, and were followed by all the canoes. The boat's crew had no sooner got on board, leaving in her two of their number, by way of a guard, than some of the natives stepped into her. Some presented their spears before the two men; others cast loose the rope which fastened her to the ship, and the rest attempted to tow her away. But the instant they saw us preparing to oppose them, they let her go, stepped out of her into their canoes, and made signs for us to lay down our arms, having the appearance of being as perfectly unconcerned as if they had done nothing amiss. This, though rather a most daring attempt, was hardly equal to what they had meditated on board the *Discovery*. The man who came and carried all his countrymen from the *Resolution* to the other ship, had first been on board of her, where, after looking down all the hatchways and seeing nobody but the officer of the watch, and one or two more, he no doubt thought they might plunder her with ease, especially as she lay at some distance from us. It was unquestionably with this
view

view that they all repaired to her. Several of them, without any ceremony, went on board, drew their knives, made signs for the officer and people on deck to keep off, and began to look about them for plunder. The first thing they met with was the rudder of the boat, which they threw overboard to those of the party who remained in the canoes. Before they had time to find another object that pleased their fancy, the crew were armed, and began to come on deck with cutlasses. On seeing this, the whole company of plunderers sneaked off into their canoes, with as much deliberation and indifference as they had given up the boat, and they were observed describing to those who had not been on board, how much longer the knives of the ship's crew were than their own. It was at this time, that my boat was on the sounding duty, which they must have seen; for they proceeded directly for her, after their disappointment at the Discovery.

This day in heaving the anchor out of the boat, one of the seamen, either through ignorance or carelessness, was carried overboard by the buoy-rope, and followed the anchor to the bottom. It is remarkable, that in this critical situation, he had presence of mind to disengage himself and come up to the surface of the water, where he was taken up, with one of his legs fractured in a dangerous manner.

The 15th and 16th were employed in stopping the leak. This was done in a bay, which Capt. Cook very properly called Snug Corner Bay.

On the 17th the captain weighed, and steered to the North-westward; thinking, if there should be any passage to the N. through this inlet, that it must be in that direction. Soon after he was under sail, the natives in both great and small canoes, paid another visit, which gave an additional opportunity of forming a more perfect idea of their persons, dress and other particulars. These visitors seemed to have no other business but to gratify their curiosity, for they entered into no sort of traffic.

From various circumstances, Captain Cook found it highly improbable that there should be a passage to the N. He proceeded, therefore, on the 18th, to the South-westward, down the inlet, another passage to which he discovered, to the S. W. of that by which he came in, which enabled him to shorten his way out to sea. It is separated from the other by an island, extending 18 leagues in the direction of N. E. and S. W. to which he gave the name of Montague Island. In this S. W. channel are several islands. Those that lie in the entrance, next the open sea, are high and rocky. But those within are low ones, and being entirely free from snow, and covered with wood and verdure, on this account they were called Green Islands. In a channel between these islands and Montague Island, he steered on the 19th, and on the 20th, was again in the open sea, the coast tending W. by S. as far as the eye could reach.

To the inlet, which Captain Cook had just left, he gave the name of Prince William's Sound, and from what he saw of it, he supposed that it occupied at least a degree and a half of latitude, and two of long. exclusive of the arms or branches, the extent of which is not known.

The natives were in general not above the common height, though many of them were under it. They were square or strong chested; and the most disproportioned part of their body seemed to be their heads, which were very large, with thick short necks, and large, broad, or spreading faces; which upon the whole were flat. Their eyes, though not small, scarce bore a proportion to the size of their faces; and their noses had full round points, hooked, or turned up at the tip. Their teeth were broad, white, equal in size, and evenly set. Their hair black, thick, straight and strong; and their beards in general thin, or wanting; but the hairs about the lips of those who have them, were stiff or bristly, and frequently of a brown colour. But several of the elderly men had even, large and thick, but straight beards.

Though

Though in general, they agree in the make of their persons, and largeness of their heads, there is a considerable variety in their features; but very few can be said to be of the handsomer sort, though their countenance indicates a natural share of vivacity, good-nature, and frankness. Some of the women have agreeable faces, and many are easily distinguishable from the men by their features, which are more delicate; but this should be understood chiefly of the younger sort, or middle-aged. The complexion of the women, and of the children, is white; but without any mixture of red. And some of the men who were seen naked, had rather a brownish or swarthy cast, which could scarcely be the effect of any stain; for they do not paint their bodies.

Their common dress (for men, women, and children, are clothed alike) is a kind of close frock, or rather robe, reaching generally to the ankles, though sometimes only to the knees. At the upper part is a hole just sufficient to admit the head, with sleeves that reach to the wrist. These frocks are made of the skins of different animals; the most common of which are those of the sea-otter, grey fox, racoon, and pine-martin, with many of seal-skins; and in general, they are worn with the hairy sides outward. Some also have these frocks made of the skins of fowls, with only the down remaining on them, which they glue on other substances. When it rains, they put over this another frock, ingeniously made from the intestines of whales, or some other large animal, prepared so skilfully, as almost to resemble our gold-beaters' leaf. It is made to draw tight round the neck; its sleeves reach as low as the wrist, round which they are tied with a string: and its skirts, when they are in the canoes, are drawn over the rim of the hole in which they sit, so that no water can enter. At the same time it keeps the men entirely dry upward, for no water can penetrate through it, any more than through a bladder.

The men commonly wear their hair cropt round the neck and forehead, but the women allow it to grow long;

long; and most of them tie a small lock of it on the crown, and a few club it behind, after our manner. Both sexes have the ears perforated with several holes, about the outer and lower part of the edge, in which they hang bunches of beads. The septum of the nose is also perforated, through which they frequently thrust the quill feathers of small birds, or little bending ornaments, strung on a stiff string, three or four inches long, which give them a truly grotesque appearance. But the most uncommon and unsightly ornament fashion, adopted by some of both sexes, is their having their under lip slit, or cut, quite through, in the direction of the mouth, a little before the swelling part. This incision, which is made even in the sucking children, is often above two inches long; and either by its natural retraction, when the wound is fresh, or by the repetition of some artificial management, assumes the true shape of lips, and becomes so large as to admit the tongue through. This happened to be the case when the first person having this incision was seen by one of the seamen, who called out that the man had two mouths; and indeed, it does not look much unlike it. In this artificial mouth they stick a flat, narrow, ornament, made chiefly out of solid shell or bone, cut in little narrow pieces, like small teeth, almost down to the base or thickest part, which has a small projecting bit at each end that supports it when put into the divided lip, the cut part then appearing outward.—Others have the lower lip only perforated into separate holes; and then the ornament consists of many distinct shelly studs, whose points are pushed through these holes, and the heads appear within the lip, as another row of teeth under their own.

These are the native ornaments. But many beads of European manufacture were found among them, chiefly of a pale blue colour, which they hang in their ears, about their caps, or join to their lip-ornaments, which have a small hole drilled in each point to which they are fastened, and others to them, till they hang sometimes as low as the point of the chin. But, in this

last

last case, they cannot remove them so easily; for, as to their own lip-ornaments, they can take them out with their tongue, or suck within, at pleasure. They also wear bracelets, of the shelly beads, or others of a cylindrical shape, made of a substance like amber, which are also used in their ears and noses. And so fond are they in general of ornaments, that they stick any thing in their perforated lip; one man appearing with two of our iron nails projecting from it like prongs; and another endeavouring to put a large brass button into it.

The men frequently paint their faces of a bright red, and of a black colour, and sometimes of a blue, or leaden colour, but not in any regular figure; and the women, in some measure, endeavour to imitate them, by puncturing or staining their chin with black, that comes to a point in each cheek. Their bodies are not painted, which may be owing to the scarcity of proper materials; for all which they brought to sell in bladders, were in very small quantities.

The weapons, and instruments for fishing and hunting, with their canoes, are the very same that are made use of by the Esquimaux and Greenlanders. For defensive armour they have a kind of jacket, or coat of mail, made of thin laths, bound together with sinews, which makes it quite flexible, though so close as not to admit of an arrow or dart. It only covers the trunk of the body, and may not be improperly compared to a woman's stays.

As none of these people lived in the bay where Capt. Cook anchored, or landed, he saw none of their habitations; and had not time to look after them. Of their domestic utensils they brought in their boats some round and oval shallow dishes of wood; and others of a cylindrical shape, much deeper. The sides were made of one piece, bent round, like our chip-boxes, though thick, neatly fastened with thongs, and the bottoms fixed in with small wooden pegs. Others were smaller, and of a more elegant shape, somewhat resembling a large oval butter-boat, without a handle, but more shallow, made
from

from a piece of wood, or horny substance. These last were sometimes neatly carved. They had many little square bags, made of the same gut with their outer frocks, neatly ornamented with very minute red feathers interwoven with it, in which were contained some very fine sinews, and bundles of small cord, made from them, most ingeniously plaited. They also brought many chequered baskets, so closely wrought, as to hold water; some wooden models of their canoes; a good many little images, four or five inches long, either of wood, or stuffed; which were covered with a bit of fur, and ornamented with small quill feathers, in imitation of their shelly beads, with hair fixed on their heads. Whether these might be mere toys for children, or held in veneration as representing their diseased friends, and applied to some superstitious purpose, could not be determined. But they have many instruments made of two or three hoops, or concentric pieces of wood, with a cross-bar fixed in the middle to hold them by. To these are fixed a great number of dried barnacle-shells, with threads, which serve as a rattle, and make a loud noise, when they shake them. This contrivance seems to be a substitute for the rattling-bird at Nootka; and perhaps both of them are employed on the same occasion.

With what tools they make their wooden utensils, frames of boats, and other things, is uncertain; as the only one seen among them was a kind of adze, made almost after the manner of those of Otaheite, and the other islands of the South Seas. They have a great many iron knives, some of which are straight; others a little curved; and some very small ones, fixed in pretty long handles, with the blades bent upward, like some of our shoe-makers' instruments. But they have still knives of another sort, which are sometimes near two feet long, shaped almost like a dagger, with a ridge in the middle. These they wear in sheaths of skins, hung by a thong round the neck under their robe; and they are, probably, only used as weapons; the other knives being apparently applied to other purposes. Every
thing

thing they have, however, is as well and ingeniously made, as if they were furnished with the most complete tool-chest; and their sewing, plaiting of sinews, and small work on their little bags, may be put in competition with any the most delicate manufactures found in any part of the known world. In short, considering the rude uncivilised state in which these people are, their Northern situation, amidst a country perpetually covered with snow, and the wretched materials they have to work with, it appears, that their invention and dexterity, in all manual works, is at least equal to that of any other nation.

The food which they were seen to eat, was dried fish, and the flesh of some animals, either broiled or roasted. Some of the latter that was brought, seemed to be bear's flesh, but with a fishy taste. They also eat the longer sort of fern-root mentioned at Nootka, either baked, or dressed in some other way: and some were seen to eat freely of a substance which was supposed to be the inner part of the pine bark. Their drink is most probably water; for in their boats they brought snow in the wooden vessel, which they swallowed by mouthfuls. Perhaps it could be carried with less trouble, in these open vessels, than water itself. Their method of eating seems decent and cleanly; for they always took care to separate any dirt that might adhere to their victuals. And though they sometimes did eat the raw fat of some sea animal, they cut it carefully into mouthfuls with their small knives. The same might be said of their persons, which to appearance, were always clean and decent, without grease or dirt; and the wooden vessels, in which their victuals were probably put, were kept in excellent order; as well as their boats, which were neat and free from lumber.

Their language seems difficult to be understood at first; not from any indistinctness or confusion in their words and sounds, but from the various significations they have.

Besides those animals, which were seen at Nootka,

there are some in this place which are not found there ; such as, the white bear ; of whose skins the natives brought several pieces, and some entire skins of cubs ; from which their size could not be determined. There was also the wolverine, or quickhatch, which had very bright colours ; a larger sort of ermine than the common one, which is the same as at Nootka, varied with a brown colour, and with scarcely any black on its tail. The natives also brought the skin of the head of some very large animal ; but it could not positively be determined what it was ; though from the colour and shagginess of the hair, and its unlikeness to any other land animal, it might probably be that of the large male ursine seal, or sea bear. But one of the most beautiful skins, and which seems peculiar to this place, is that of a small animal about ten inches long, of a brown or rusty colour on the back, with a great number obscure whitish specks ; and the sides of a blueish ash colour, also with a few of these specks. The tail is not above one third the length of its body, and is covered with hair of a whitish colour at the edges. It is no doubt the same with those called spotted field mice, by Mr. Stæhlin, in his short account of the New Northern Archipelago. But whether they be really of the mouse kind, or a squirrel, could not be told, for want of perfect skins ; though Mr. Anderson was inclined to think that it is the same animal described under the name of the *Cason marinot*, by Mr. Pennant. The number of skins found here, points out the great plenty of these several animals just mentioned ; but it is remarkable, neither the skins of the mouse nor of the common deer were to be seen.

Of the birds mentioned at Nootka, were found here only the white headed eagle ; the shag ; the alcyon, or great king-fisher, which had very fine bright colours ; and the humming-bird, which came frequently about the ship, while at anchor ; though it can scarcely live here in the winter, which must be very severe. The water fowl were geese, a small sort of duck, almost like

like that mentioned at Kerguelen's Land : another sort which no one knew ; and some of the black seapyes, with red bills, which were found at Van Diemen's Land and New Zealand. Some of the people who went on shore, killed a goose, a snipe, and some plovers. But though, upon the whole, the water fowl were pretty numerous, especially the ducks and geese, which frequent the shore, they were so shy, that it was scarcely possible to get within shot ; so that they obtained a very small supply of them as a refreshment.

Their metals were copper and iron : both which, particularly the latter, were in such plenty, as to constitute the points of most of the arrows and lances. The ores, with which they painted themselves, were a red brittle, unctuous ochre, or iron ore, not much unlike cinnabar in colour ; a bright blue pigment ; and black lead. Each of these seemed to be very scarce, as they brought very small quantities of the first and last, and seemed to keep them with great care.

Few vegetables of any kind were seen ; and the trees which chiefly grew here, were the Canadian and spruce pine, and some of them tolerably large.

The beads and iron found amongst these people left no doubt, that they must have received them from some civilized nation. It was pretty certain, from circumstances already mentioned, that Captain Cook's people were the first Europeans with whom they had ever communicated directly ; and it remains only to be decided, from what quarter they had got our manufactures, by intermediate conveyance. And there cannot be the least doubt of their having received these articles, through the intervention of the more inland tribes, from Hudson's Bay, or the settlers on the Canadian lakes ; unless it can be supposed (which however it is less likely) that the Russian traders, from Kamtschatka, have already extended their traffic thus far ; or at least that the natives of their most Easterly Fox Islands communicate along the coast, with those of Prince William's Sound.

As to the copper, these people seem to procure it themselves, or at most it passeth through very few hands to them; for they used to express it being in a sufficient quantity amongst them, when they offered any to barter, by pointing to their weapons; as if to say, that having so much of this metal of their own, they wanted no more.

"It is, however, remarkable," says Captain Cook, "if the inhabitants of this Sound be supplied with European articles, by way of the intermediate traffic to the East coast, that they should in return, never have given to the more inland Indians any of their sea-otter skins; which would certainly have been seen, some time or other, about Hudson's-Bay. But, as far as I know, that is not the case; and the method of accounting for this, must be by taking into consideration the very great distance; which though it might not prevent European goods coming so far, as being so uncommon, might prevent the skins, which are a common article, from passing through more than two or three different tribes, who might use them for their own cloathing: and send others, which they esteemed less valuable, as being of their own animals, Eastward, till they reach the traders from Europe."

CHAP. VI.

Discovery of Cook's River.—Reflections on this Discovery.—Possession taken of the Country and River, in his Majesty's name.—A beautiful bird described.—Conjectures concerning a Russian Letter brought on board by one of the Natives.—Picturesque Appearance of a volcano.—Second visit from a Native.—Providential Escape.—Arrival at the Island of Onalashka, and Intercourse with the Natives.

AFTER leaving Prince William's Sound, on the 20th of May, 1778, Capt. Cook steered S. W. as the coast lay; and, on the 21st, discovered a lofty promontory, which he named Cape Elizabeth, and which

which, at first, he mistook for the western extremity of America. But he soon saw more land to the westward, and found that this, with that which he had before supposed to be the west cape of America, were the two boundaries of the entrance into a very large river, up which he sailed above 70 leagues, before he was absolutely certain it was not a streight which led into the northern ocean. This river has since been named Cook's River, by the express command of Lord Sandwich.

"If the discovery," says Capt. Cook, "of this great river, which promises to vie with the most considerable ones already known to be capable of extensive inland navigation, should prove of use either to the present, or to any future age, the time we spent in it ought to be the least regretted. But to us who had a much greater object in view, the delay thus occasioned was an essential loss. The season was advancing apace. We knew not how far we might have to proceed to the South; and we were now convinced that the continent of America extended farther to the west, than from the modern most reputable charts we had reason to expect. This made the existence of a passage into Baffin's or Hudson's Bay less probable; or at least, shewed it to be of greater extent. It was a satisfaction to me, however, to reflect, that if I had not examined this very considerable inlet, it would have been assumed by speculative fabricators of geography, as a fact that it communicated with the sea to the North, or with Baffin's or Hudson's Bay to the East; and been marked, perhaps, in future maps of the world, with greater precision, and more certain signs of reality, than the invisible, because imaginary, Streights of de Fuco and de Fonte."

Before Capt. Cook quitted this river, he sent lieutenant King with two armed boats, with orders to land on a point of land, on the S. E. side of the river; to display the flag there; to take possession of the country and river in his Majesty's name; and to bury in the ground a bottle containing some pieces of English coin,

coin, of the year 1772, and a paper, on which was inscribed the names of the ships, and date of the discovery. On this account, this point of land was called Point Possession. The natives of the adjoining islands and coast, who trafficked much with the crews of the two ships, while they were exploring the river, seemed to bear such a striking resemblance to the inhabitants of Prince William's Sound, that a description of them is quite unnecessary. To the preceding reflections on the discovery of this river, Captain Cook adds, that "there is not the least doubt, that a very beneficial fur trade might be carried on with the inhabitants of this vast coast; but that unless a northern passage should be found practicable, it seems rather too remote for Great Britain to receive any emolument from it.

Having cleared the mouth of Cook's River, on the 6th of June, the captain steered for several days S. W. by W. as the coast lay, being continually within sight of the continent, among innumerable islands, and generally in thick foggy weather.

On the 18th, having occasion to send a boat on board the *Discovery*, one of the people in her shot a very beautiful bird of the hawk kind. It is somewhat less than a duck, and of a black colour, except the forepart of the head, which is white; and from above and behind each eye arises an elegant yellowish-white crest, revolved backward as a ram's horn. The bill and feet are red. Captain Cook conjectures it to be the *Alca Monochra* of Steller, mentioned in the history of *Kamtchatka*. Several of these birds were afterwards seen, and sometimes in large flocks.

On the 19th some natives, in three or four canoes, who had been following the *Discovery* for some time, at length got under her stern. One of them then made many signs, taking off his cap and bowing, after the European manner. A rope being handed down, to this he fastened a small thin wooden case or box; and having delivered this safe, and spoken something, and made some more signs, the canoes dropped astern, and left the *Discovery*. No one on board had any suspicion
that

that the box contained any thing till after the departure of the canoes, when it was accidentally opened; and a piece of paper was found, folded up carefully; upon which something was written in the Russian language, as was supposed. The date 1778 was prefixed to it; and in the body of the written note, there was a reference to the year 1776. No one being learned enough to decypher the alphabet of the writer, his numerals marked sufficiently that others had preceded us in visiting this dreary part of the globe, who were united to us by other ties besides those of our common nature; and the hopes of soon meeting with some of the Russian traders, could not but give a sensible satisfaction to those who had, for such a length of time, been conversant with the savages of the Pacific Ocean, and of the continent of North America.

Captain Clerke was, at first, of opinion, that some Russians had been shipwrecked here; and that these unfortunate persons seeing the ship pass, had taken this method to inform them of their situation. Impressed with humane sentiments on such an occasion, he was desirous of stopping till they might have time to join the ships. But no such idea occurred to Capt. Cook, to whom it seemed obvious, that if this had been the case, it would have been the first step taken by such shipwrecked persons, in order to secure to themselves, and to their companions, the relief they could not but be solicitous about, to send some of their body off to the ships in the canoes. For this reason, he rather thought that the paper contained a note of information, left by some Russian traders, who had lately been among these islands, to be delivered to the next of their countrymen who should arrive; and that the natives, seeing the ships pass, and supposing them to be Russians, had resolved to bring off the note, thinking it might induce them to stop. Fully convinced of this, Captain Cook did not stay to enquire any farther into the matter, but made sail, and stood away to the westward.

On the 21st, at noon, Captain Cook found himself

two leagues distant from Halibut Island. Rocks and breakers now forced him so far from the continent, that he had but a distant view of the coast between Rock Point and Halibut Island. Over this and the adjoining islands he could see the main land covered with snow; but particularly some hills, whose elevated tops were seen towering above the clouds, to a most stupendous height. The most south westerly of these hills was discovered to have a volcano, which continually threw up vast columns of black smoke. It stands not far from the coast; and in the latitude of 54 deg. 48 min. and the longitude of 195 deg. 45 min. It is also remarkable from its figure, which is a complete cone; and the volcano is at the very summit. He seldom saw this (or indeed any other of these mountains) wholly clear of clouds. At times both base and summit would be clear; when a narrow cloud, sometimes two or three, one above another, would embrace the middle, like a girdle; which with the column of smoke, rising perpendicular to a great height out of its top, and spreading before the wind into a tail of vast length, made a picturesque appearance. It may be worth remarking, that the wind, at the height to which the smoke of this volcano reached, moved sometimes in a direction contrary to what it did at sea, even when it blew a fresh gale.

In the afternoon, having three hours calm, the people caught upwards of a hundred halibuts, some of which weighed an hundred pounds. This was a very seasonable refreshment. In the height of the fishing, which was three or four miles from the shore, a small canoe, conducted by one man, came to them from an adjacent island. On approaching the ship, he took off his cap, and bowed as the other had done, who visited the *Discovery* the preceding day. It was evident, that the Russians must have a communication and traffic with these people; not only from their acquired politeness, but from the note before mentioned. But there was now a fresh proof of it; for this visitor wore a pair

of green cloth breeches, and a jacket of black cloth, or stuff, under the gut, shirt or frock of his own country. He had nothing to barter, except a grey fox skin, and some fishing implements or harpoons; the heads of the shaft of which, for the length of a foot, or more, were neatly made of bone, as a walking-cane, and carved. He had with him a bladder, full of something which was supposed to be oil; for he opened it, took a mouthful, and then fastened it again.

On the 26th, although it was day-light, the weather was so thick and foggy, that they could not see a hundred yards before them; but, as the wind was now moderate, the captain ventured to run. At half past four, he was alarmed at hearing the sound of breakers on his larboard bow. On heaving the lead, he found twenty-eight fathoms water; and the next cast, twenty-five. He immediately brought the ship to, and anchored in this last depth; calling to the *Discovery*, which was close by, to anchor also. A few hours after, the fog having cleared away a little, it appeared that he had escaped imminent danger. He found himself three quarters of a mile from the North East side of an island, which extended from South by West half West, to North by East half East, each extreme about a league distant. Two elevated rocks, the one bearing South by East, and the other East by South, were about half a league each from the ships, and about the same distance from each other. There were several breakers about them; and yet, providence had, in the dark, conducted the ships through, between these two rocks, which we should not have ventured in a clear day, and to such an anchoring place, that we could not have chosen a better.

The island to which they were conducted in this providential manner, lies on the South side of Oonalashka, another island, where they afterwards found an excellent harbour, called by the natives Samganooda. Here they watered, but found no wood. Oonalashka is one of the numerous group of islands, which extend for a considerable distance towards the S. W. from a very projecting cape on the continent of

America, which lies in latitude 54 and half deg. N. and, by Captain Cook, was named Alashka. In approaching this island, they saw some natives towing in two whales, which it was supposed they had just killed. A few of them, now and then, came off to the ships, and bartered a few trifling things with the people, but never remained above a quarter of an hour at a time. On the contrary, they rather seemed shy; and yet the crew could judge that they were no strangers to vessels, in some degree like theirs. They behaved with a degree of politeness unknown to savage tribes.

While the ships lay in the harbour of Samganooda, several of the natives came off, each in a canoe, and bartered a few fishing implements for tobacco. One of them, a young man, overset his canoe, while alongside of one of the boats. Our people caught hold of him, but the canoe went adrift, and being picked up by another, was carried ashore. The youth, by this accident, was obliged to come into the ship; and he went down into the cabin, upon the first invitation, without expressing the least reluctance, or uneasiness. His dress was an upper garment like a shirt, made of the large gut of sea animals, probably the whale; and an under garment of the same shape, made of the skin of birds, dressed with the feathers on, and neatly sewed together; the feathered side being worn next to the skin. It was mended, or patched, with pieces of silk stuff; and his cap was ornamented with two or three sorts of glass beads. His own clothes being wet, Captain Cook gave him others, in which he dressed himself, with as much ease as the captain could have done. From his behaviour, and that of some others, he was convinced that these people were no strangers to Europeans, and to some of their customs. But there was something in the ships that greatly excited their curiosity; for such as could not come off in canoes, assembled on the neighbouring hills to look at them.

Soon after they anchored, a native brought on board such another note as had been given to Captain Clerke. He presented it to Captain Cook; but it was
written

written in the Russian language, which, as already observed, none of them could read. As it could be of no use to Captain Cook, and might be of consequence to others, he returned it to the bearer, and dismissed him with a few presents; for which he expressed his thanks, by making several low bows as he retired.

In walking, next day, along the shore, Captain Cook met with a group of natives of both sexes, seated on the grass, at a repast, consisting of raw fish, which they seemed to eat with as much relish as we should a turbot, served up with the richest sauce. Thick fogs, and a contrary wind, detained him till the 2d of July; which afforded an opportunity of acquiring some knowledge of the country, and of its inhabitants.

Captain Cook left Oonalashka on the 2d of July, 1778, and proceeded Northward. On the 3d of August, he lost Mr. Anderson, surgeon, who had been lingering under a consumption upwards of a year. To perpetuate the memory of this valuable man, to whom he had been indebted for many judicious observations in natural history, an island discovered soon after his decease, was called Anderson's Island. On the 9th Captain Cook came in sight of the most westerly point of all America hitherto known, to which he gave the name of Cape Prince of Wales. This Cape is situated in lat. 65 deg. 46 min. and in the long. of 191 deg. 45 min. Hence we stood over to a point of land, which forms the eastern extremity of the continent of Asia, distant from Cape Prince of Wales about 13 leagues. This, as it appeared in the sequel, is the country of the Tschutski, explored by Beering in 1728. Captain Cook anchored on the S. W. side of this Cape, in a bay, to which, it being the 10th of August, he gave the name of St. Lawrence.

As we were standing into this bay, we perceived on the North shore, a village, and some people, whom the sight of the ships seemed to have thrown into confusion or fear. We could plainly see persons running up the country with burthens upon their backs. At these habitations we purposed to land, and accordingly, went with three armed boats, accompanied by some of the

officers. About 30 or 40 men, each armed with a spontoon, a bow and arrows, stood drawn on a rising ground close by the village. As we drew near, three of them came down towards the ship, and were so polite as to take off their caps, and to make us low bows. We returned the civility, but this did not inspire them with sufficient confidence to wait for our landing; for the moment we put the boats ashore, they retired. The captain followed them ashore without arms; and by signs and gestures prevailed on them to stop, and to receive some trifling presents. In return for these they gave us two fox-skins, and a couple of sea-horse teeth.

They seemed very fearful and cautious; expressing their desire, by signs, that no more of our people should be permitted to come up. On my laying my hand on the shoulder of one of them, he started back several paces. In proportion as I advanced, they returned backwards; always in the attitude of being ready to make use of their spears; while those on the rising ground stood ready to support them with their arrows. Insensibly, myself, and two or three of my companions, got in amongst them. A few beads distributed to those about us, soon created a kind of confidence; so that they were not alarmed when a few more of our people joined us; and, by degrees, a sort of traffic commenced. In exchange for knives, beads, tobacco, and other articles, they gave us some of their clothing, and a few arrows. But nothing that we had to offer could induce them to part with a spear or a bow. These they held in constant readiness, never once quitting them, except at one time, when four or five persons laid theirs down, while they gave us a song and a dance. And even then, they placed them in such a manner, that they could lay hold of them in an instant; and, for their security, they desired us to sit down.

The arrows were pointed with either bone or stone, but very few of them had barbs; and some had a round plump point. What use they may be applied to, we could not say, unless to kill small animals, without

without damaging the skin. The bows were such as we had seen on the American coast. The spears or spontoons, were of iron or steel, and European or Asiatic workmanship; in which no little pains had been taken to ornament them with carving, and inlayings of brass, and of a white metal. Those who stood ready with bows and arrows in their hands, had the spear slung over their right shoulder by a leathern strap. A leathern quiver slung over the left shoulder, contained arrows; and some of these quivers were extremely beautiful, being made of red leather, on which was very neat embroidery, and other ornaments.

Several other things, and in particular their clothing, shewed that they were possessed of a degree of ingenuity far surpassing what one could expect to find among so northern a people. All the Americans we had seen since our arrival on that coast, were rather low of stature, with round chubby faces, and high cheek bones. The people we now were among, far from resembling them, had long visages, and were stout and well made. In short, they appeared to be quite a different nation. We saw neither women, nor children of either sex, nor any aged, except one man, who was bald headed, and he was the only one who carried no arms. The others seemed to be picked men, and rather under than above the middle age. The old man had a black mark across his face, which I did not see in any others. All of them had their ears bored; and some had glass beads hanging to them. These were the only fixed ornaments we saw about them, for they wear none in the lips. This is another thing in which they differ from the Americans we had lately seen.

Their clothing consisted of a cap, a frock, a pair of breeches, a pair of boots, and a pair of gloves, all made of leather, or of the skins of deer, dogs, seals, &c. and extremely well dressed, some with the hair or furs on; but others without it. The caps were made to fit the head very close: and besides these caps, which most of them wore, we got from them some hoods, made of skins of dogs, that were large enough to cover both
head

head and shoulders. Their hair seemed to be black, but their heads were either shaved, or the hair cut close off; and none of them wore any beard. Of the few articles which they got from us, knives and tobacco were what they valued most.

We found the village composed both of their summer and their winter habitations. The latter are exactly like a vault, the floor of which is sunk below the surface of the earth. One of them, which we examined, was of an oval form, about 20 feet long, and 12 or more high. The framing was composed of wood, and the ribs of whales, disposed in a judicious manner, and bound together with smaller materials of the same sort. Over this framing is laid a covering of strong coarse grass; and again is covered with earth; so that on the outside the house looks like a little hillock, supported by a wall of stone, three or four feet high, which is built round the two sides, and one end. At the other end, the earth is raised sloping, to walk up to the entrance, which is by a hole in the top of the roof over that end. The floor was boarded, and under it a kind of cellar, in which I saw nothing but water. And at the end of each house was a vaulted room, which we took to be a store-room.

After a stay of between two and three hours with these people, Capt. Cook returned to his ships, and weighing anchor, proceeded northward, keeping the coast of America as near as possible on board. On the 17th, we perceived a brightness in the northern horizon, like that reflected from ice, commonly called the blink. It was little noticed, from a supposition that it was improbable they should meet with ice so soon.— And yet the sharpness of the air, and gloominess of the weather for two or three days past, seemed to indicate a sudden change. About half an hour after, the sight of a large field of ice left them in no doubt about the cause of the brightness of the horizon. About half past two we tacked close to the edge of the ice, in 22 fathoms water, being then in the lat. of 70 deg. 41 min. not being able to stand on any farther, for the ice was

quite impenetrable, and extending from W. by S. to E. by N. as far as the eye could reach. Here were abundance of sea-horses, some on the water, but more upon the ice.

The next day at noon, we were close to the edge of the ice, which was as compact as a wall, and seemed to be 10 or 12 feet high at least; but farther north, it appeared much higher. Its surface was extremely rugged; and here and there we saw upon it pools of water. At this time they were three or four miles from the American coast, which extended from S. to S. E. by E. The eastern extreme formed a point, which was much incumbered with ice, for which reason it obtained the name of Ice Cape. Its lat. is 70 deg. 29 min. and its long. 198 deg. 20 min.

On the 19th, they found a good deal of drift ice about them, and the main ice was about two leagues to the N. At half past one they got in with the edge of it. It was not so compact as that which they had seen to the northward; but it was too close, and in too large pieces, to attempt forcing the ships through it. On the ice lay a prodigious number of sea-horses, and as they were in want of fresh provisions, the boats from each ship went to get some.

By seven in the evening, they had received on board the Resolution nine of these animals; which, till now, they had supposed to be sea-cows, so that they were not a little disappointed, especially some of the seamen, who, for the novelty of the thing, had been feasting their eyes for some days past. Nor would they have been disappointed now, nor have known the difference, if they had not happened to have one or two on board who had been at Greenland, and declared what animals they were, and that no one ever eat of them. But notwithstanding this, they lived upon them as long as they lasted; and there were few on board who did not prefer them to salt meat.

They lie in herds of many hundreds upon the ice, huddling one over the other like swine, and roar or
bray

bray very loud; so that in the night or foggy weather, they gave us notice of the vicinity of the ice, before we could see it. We never found the whole herd asleep, some being always upon the watch; these on the approach of the boat would wake those next to them, and the alarm being thus gradually communicated, the whole herd would be awake presently; but they were seldom in a hurry to get away, till they had been once fired at, then they would tumble the one over the other into the sea in the utmost confusion. The female will defend the young to the very last, at the expence of her own life, whether in the water or upon the ice. Nor will the young one quit the dam, though she be dead, so that if you kill one you are sure of the other.

It is worth observing, that for several days we had frequently seen flocks of ducks flying to the southward. They were of two sorts, the one much larger than the other. The largest were of a brown colour, and of the small sort, either the duck or drake was black and white, and the other brown. Does not this indicate that there must be land to the north, where these birds find shelter in the proper season to breed, and from whence they were now returning to a warmer climate?

From this day to the 29th, Capt. Cook kept beating along the edge of the ice, from the American to the Asiatic coast, with intent, if possible, to penetrate it, and proceed to the northward; but without effect. At one time, he was in a manner surrounded by the ice, and had no way left to clear it, but by standing to the Southward. Afterwards, having fallen in with the main ice, they were directed how to keep along the edge of it, by the roaring of the sea-horses.

On the 27th, Capt. Cook went with the boats to examine the state of the ice. He found it consisting of loose pieces of various extent, and so close together, that he could hardly enter the outer edge with a boat; and it was as impossible for the ships to enter it, as if it had been so many rocks. He took particular notice, that

that it was all pure transparent ice, except the upper surface, which was a little porous. It appeared to be entirely composed of frozen snow, and to have been all formed at sea. For, setting aside the improbability, or rather impossibility, of such huge masses floating out of rivers, in which there is hardly water for a boat, none of the productions of the land were found incorporated, or fixed in it; which must have unavoidably been the case, had it been formed in rivers, either great or small. The pieces of ice that formed the outer edge of the field, were from forty or fifty yards in extent, to four or five; and he judged, that the larger pieces reached thirty feet, or more under the surface of the water. It also appeared to him very improbable, that this ice could have been the production of the preceding winter alone. I should suppose it rather to have been the production of a great many winters. Nor was it less improbable, according to my judgment, that the little that remained of the summer, could destroy the tenth part of what now subsisted of this mass; for the sun had already exerted upon it the full influence of his rays. It is the wind, or rather the waves raised by the wind, that brings down the bulk of these enormous masses, by grinding one piece against another. We measured the depth of one piece of ice, and found it to be fifteen feet, so that the ships might have sailed over it. If I had not measured this depth, I would not have believed that there was a sufficient weight of ice above the surface, to have sunk the other so much below it.

On the 29th, Captain Cook proceeded northward, as far as Cape North, on the coast of Asia; this Cape he determined to weather, being convinced that the coast beyond it must take a westerly direction, as he could see no land to the northward of it, though the horizon was then pretty clear. Being disappointed in this attempt, the captain now found that the season was so far advanced, and the time when the frost was expected to set in so near at hand, that he could not think it prudent to make any farther attempts to find

a passage into the Atlantic this year, in any direction. His attention, therefore, was now directed to find out some place, where he might be supplied with wood and water; and the first object in his thoughts was, how he should spend the winter, so as to make some improvements in Geography and Navigation, and at the same time be in a condition to return to the North in farther search of a passage the ensuing summer.

CHAP. VII.

Return to the Southward—Burney's Island—Pass the Eastern Cape of Asia—Description and situation of it—Arrival at Norton Sound—Interview with the natives—Description of the Russian settlement at Oonalaska—Mowee and Owhyhee, two of the Sandwich Islands, discovered—The natives refuse to drink sugar-cane beer.

LEAIVING these dreary regions of ice and snow, Captain Cook now steered Southward, and on the 31st of August, 1778, passed by a small island, about three leagues from the main, in the lat. of 67 deg. 45 min. The next day he came in sight of a pretty lofty promontory, in the lat. of 67 deg. 3 min. and in long. 188 deg. 11 min. He was now well assured, that this was the country of the Tschutski, or the N. E. coast of Asia, and that this Cape was the limit of Beering's voyage in 1728.

On the 2d of September, they had fair weather and sun shine, of which, for near five days before, they had been deprived; as they ranged along the coast, at the distance of four miles, they saw several of the inhabitants, and some of their habitations, which looked like little hillocks of earth. In the evening they passed the Eastern Cape; the same point of land which they had passed on the 11th of August; and from which the coast changes its direction, and tends S. W. They who believed implicitly in Mr. Stæhlin's map, thought it then to be the East point of his island Alaschka; but they were satisfied, by this time, that

it could be no other than the Eastern promontory of Asia; and, probably, the proper Tschukotskoi Noss; though the promontory to which Beering gave that name, is farther to the S. W. However Capt. Cook concluded, as Beering did before him, that this is the most Easterly point of Asia. It is a peninsula of considerable height, joined to the continent by a very low, and, to appearance, narrow, neck of land. It seems a steep rocky cliff next the sea; and off the point are some rocks like spires.

After passing this Cape, Captain Cook steered for the Northern point of St. Lawrence Bay, in which he had anchored on the 10th of August. He reached it the next morning, and saw some of the inhabitants of the place where he had seen them before, as well as several others on the opposite side of the bay. None of them, however, attempted to come off to the ships, which he thought a little extraordinary, as the weather was favourable enough; and those whom he had lately visited, had no reason that he could think of, to dislike their visitors. These people must be the Tschutski, a nation that the Russians had not been able to conquer; and from the whole of their conduct with us, it appears that they have not brought them under subjection, though it is obvious they must have a trade with the Russians, either directly, or by the means of some neighbouring nation; as we cannot otherwise account for their being in the possession of the Spoonons, in particular, of which we took notice.

Captain Cook gave the name of St. Lawrence to this bay, on account of his having anchored in it on the 10th of August. This bay is, at least, five leagues broad at the entrance, and four leagues deep, narrow towards the bottom, where it appeared to be tolerably well sheltered from the sea-winds, provided there be sufficient depth of water for ships. The captain, however, did not wait to examine it, although he was very desirous of finding an harbour in those parts, to which he might resort next spring. But he wanted one where wood was to be got; an article, in which he well knew

this place to be deficient. In the afternoon, in the direction of their course, they saw what was first taken for a rock, but it proved to be a dead whale, which some natives of the Asiatic coast had killed, and were towing ashore. They seemed to conceal themselves behind the fish, to avoid being seen; but this was unnecessary, as the captain pursued his course, without taking any notice of them.

On the 4th of September, he ceased to follow the direction of the coast, as he found that it tended westerly, towards the gulf of Anadir, into which he had no inducement to go. He therefore steered to the Southward, and in the evening came in sight of Beering's Island of St. Lawrence. He was now about twelve leagues from the Southernmost point of the main land, which bore South, 85 min. West. This he took to be the point which Beering calls the East point of Suchotski, or Cape Tschukotski; a name which he gave it with propriety, because it was from this part of the coast that the natives came off to him, who call themselves of the nation of the Tschutski. Captain Cook makes its lat. to be 64 deg. 13 min. and its long. 186 deg. 36 min.

Being thus perfectly convinced that he was on the coast of Asia, and not on the East side of the great island called Alaschka, he now stood over to the coast of America, in hopes of finding it there. He was rather induced to spend some time in search of this island, as it is represented to abound with wood, which was greatly wanted by both ships.

On the 8th, he arrived at a Sound, laying between two points of land, one of which to the North, he named Cape Derby, and the other to the South, Cape Denbigh. This inlet, which (in honour of Sir Fletcher Norton, now Lord Grantham) he named Norton Sound, extends to the Northward as far as lat. 64 deg. 54 min. Here they found water, and plenty of drift wood. He staid here till the 17th, occasionally landing, not only to procure wood and water, but to refresh the men, who were alternately sent on shore to feed on the berries

berries and to cut brooms, of which they were in want, and the branches of spruce trees for beer. He likewise sent lieutenant King, with a party of men, in two boats, to explore the sound, and to land on the adjacent heights. From the result of lieutenant King's observations, he was perfectly satisfied that Mr. Stæhlin's island was quite imaginary; and in the sequel, he found that the name of Alaschka is given both by the Russians and natives to the American continent in general, although it properly belongs to a very projecting cape adjoining to the island of Onamaka.

During Capt. Cook's stay in this sound, he had some intercourse with the natives. A family of them came near to the place where we were taking off wood.—I know not how many there were at first; but I only saw the husband, the wife, and the child; and a fourth person, that bore the human shape, and that was all; for he was the most deformed cripple I had ever seen or heard of. The other man was almost blind; and neither he nor his wife were such good looking people as we had sometimes seen amongst the natives of this coast. The under lips of both were bored; and they had in their possession some such glass beads as I had met with before amongst their neighbours. But iron was their beloved article. For four knives, which we had made out of an old iron hoop, I got from them near 400 pounds weight of fish, which they had caught on this or the preceding day.

Having finished the necessary occupations at Norton Sound, Capt. Cook thought it high time to think of leaving these northern regions, and to retire to some place during the winter, where he might procure refreshments for his people, and a small supply of provisions. Petropaulowska, or the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul, in Kamtschatka, did not appear likely to furnish either the one or the other, for so large a number of men. He had, besides, other reasons for not repairing thither at this time. The first, and on which all others depended, was the great dislike to lie inactive for six or seven months, which would have been the
necessary

necessary consequence of wintering in any of these northern parts. No place was so conveniently within his reach, where he could expect to have his wants relieved, as the Sandwich Islands. To them therefore, he determined to proceed; after first endeavouring to find a harbour on the continent of America, to the southward, where he could meet with a farther supply of water.

Leaving Norton Sound on the 17th, Captain Cook successively saw Besborough Island, Stuart's Island, Clerke's Island, Gore's Island, and Pinnacle's Island. But neither among these, nor along the coast, could he find an harbour, where he could procure the wished-for supply of water. It is here to be observed, that no land was to be seen to the southward of Point Shallow Water, which he judged to lie in the lat. of 63 deg. so that between this lat. and Shoal Ness, in the lat. of 60 deg. the coast is entirely unexplored.

At length on the 2d of October, he again arrived at the island of Oonalashka, and hauled into a bay, known by the name of Egoochshack, lying ten miles to the westward of the harbour of Samganooda, where he had formerly anchored; but finding very deep water in this bay, he was glad to get out again. The natives, many of whom lived here, visited them at different times, bringing with them dried salmon and other fish, which they exchanged with the seamen for tobacco. But a few days before every ounce of tobacco that was in the ship, had been distributed among them; and the quantity was not half sufficient to answer their demands. Notwithstanding this, so improvident is an English sailor, that they were as profuse in making their bargains, as if they had now arrived at a port in Virginia; by which means, in less than 48 hours, the value of this article of barter was lowered above 1000 per cent.

On the 3d they anchored in Samganooda harbour; and the carpenters were employed in repairing a leak, which the Resolution had sprung, in her passage from Norton Sound. The vegetables that had been here met with,

with, were now mostly in a state of decay; so that they were but little benefited by the great quantity of berries every where found ashore. That they might avail themselves as much as possible of this useful refreshment, one third of the people, by turns, had leave to go and pick them. Considerable quantities of them were also procured from the natives. If there were any signs of the scurvy in either ship, these berries, and the use of spruce beer, which they had to drink every day, effectually eradicated them. The fishery likewise enabled them to make a considerable saving of their sea provisions. And at this island, the captain found a Russian settlement or factory, for procuring of the skins of sea otters. Mutual civilities passed between the captain and the chiefs of this settlement; from whom he procured much useful information; and by whose means he dispatched a letter to the Lords of the Admiralty, (inclosing a chart of all the northern coast he had visited) which was to be forwarded the ensuing spring to Major Behm, governor of Kamtschatka, and by him the following winter to Petersburg.

Capt. Cook continued at Oonalashka till the 26th of October 1778. But before we proceed farther in the voyage, we shall give his account of several interesting particulars relative to this island.

After we became acquainted with these Russians, some of our gentlemen, at different times, visited their settlement on the island; where they always met with a most hearty welcome. This settlement consisted of a dwelling-house, and two store-houses. And, besides the Russians, there was a number of the Kamtschadales, and of the natives, as servants or slaves to the former. Some others of the natives who seemed independent of the Russians, lived at the same place. Such of them as belonged to the Russians were all males; and they are taken, or perhaps, purchased from their parents when young. There were at this time, about twenty of these, who could be looked upon in no other light than as children. They all live in the same house; the Russians at the upper end; the Kamtschadales in the middle;

middle; and the natives at the lower end; where is fixed a large boiler for preparing their food, which consists chiefly of what the sea produces, with the addition of wild roots and berries. There is little difference between the first and last table, besides what is produced by cookery, in which the Russians have the art to make indifferent things palatable. I have eaten whale's flesh of their dressing, which I thought very good; and they make a kind of pan-pudding of salmon-roe, beaten up fine, and fried, that is no bad succedaneum for bread. They may, now and then, taste real bread, or have a dish in which flour is an ingredient; but this can only be an occasional luxury. If we except the juice of berries, which they sip at their meals, they have no other liquor besides pure water; and it seems to be very happy for them that they have nothing stronger.

As the island supplies them with food, so it does in a great measure, with clothing. This consists chiefly of skins, and is, perhaps, the best they could have. The upper garment is made like our waggoner's frock, and reaches as low as the knee. Besides this, they wear a waistcoat or two, a pair of breeches, a fur cap, and a pair of boots, the soles and upper leathers of which are of Russian leather; but the legs are made of a kind of strong gut. Their two chiefs, Ismyloff and Ivanovitch, wore each a calico frock; and they, as well as some others, had shirts which were of silk. These, perhaps, were the only part of their dress not made among themselves.

There are Russians settled upon all the principal islands between Oonalashka and Kamtschatka for the sole purpose of collecting furs. This great object is the sea beaver or otter. I never heard them enquire after any other animal; though those whose skins are of inferior value, are also made part of their cargoes. I never thought to ask how long they have had a settlement upon Oonalashka, and the neighbouring isles; but to judge from the great subjection the natives are under, this cannot be of a very late date. The Russians began to frequent Oonalashka in 1762. All these
furies

furies are relieved from time to time, by others. Those we met with, arrived here from Okotsk, in 1776, and are to return in 1781; so that their stay in the island will be four years at least.

It is now time to give some account of the native inhabitants. To all appearance, they are the most peaceable, inoffensive people I ever met with. And, as to honesty, they might serve as a pattern to the most civilized nation upon earth. But, from what I saw of their neighbours, with whom the Russians had no connexion, I doubt whether this was their original disposition; and rather think that it has been the consequence of their present state of subjection. Indeed, if some of our gentlemen rightly understood the Russians, they had been obliged to make some severe examples, before they could bring the islanders into any order. If there were severities inflicted at first, the best apology for them is, that they have produced the happiest consequences; and, at present, the greatest harmony subsists between the two nations. The natives have their own chiefs in each island, and seem to enjoy liberty and property unmolested. But whether or no they are tributaries to the Russians, we could never find out. There was some reason to think that they are.

These people are rather low of stature, but plump and well shaped, with rather short necks; swarthy, with chubby faces, black eyes, small beards, and long, straight, black hair, which the men wear loose behind, and cut before, but the women tie it up in a bunch.

Their dress has been occasionally mentioned. Both sexes wear the same fashion; the only difference is in the materials. The women's frock is made of the seal skin; and that of the men of the skins of birds, both reaching below the knee. This is the whole dress of the women. But over the frock, the men wear another made of the gut, which resists water; and has a hood to it, which draws over the head. Some of them wear boots; and all of them have a kind of oval snouted cap, made of wood, with a rim to admit the head.

These caps are dyed with green and other colours; and round the upper part of the rim are stuck the long bristles of some sea-animal, on which are strung glass beads; and on the front is a small image or two made of bone.

They make no use of paint, but the women puncture their faces slightly; and both men and women bore the under lip, to which they fix pieces of bone. But it is as uncommon at Oonalashka, to see a man with this ornament, as to see a woman without it. Some fix beads to the upper lip, under the nostrils; and all of them hang ornaments in their ears.

Their food consists of fish, sea animals, birds, roots, and berries; and even of sea weed. They dry large quantities of fish in summer, which they lay up in small huts for winter use; and probably they preserve roots and berries for the same time of scarcity. They eat almost every thing raw. Broiling and boiling were the only methods of cookery that I saw them make use of; and the first was very probably learnt from the Russians. Some have got little brass kettles; and those who have not, make one of a flat stone, with sides of clay, not unlike a standing pie. I was once present, when the chief of Oonalashka made his dinner of the raw head of a large halibut, just caught. Before any was given to the chief, two of his servants eat the gills, without any other dressing, besides squeezing out the slime. This done, one of them cut off the head of the fish, took it to the sea and washed it, then came with it and sat down by the chief, first pulling up some grass, upon a part of which the head was laid, and the rest was strewed before the chief. He then cut large pieces off the cheeks, and laid these within the reach of the great man, who swallowed them with as much satisfaction as we should do raw oysters. When he had done, the remains of the head were cut in pieces, and given to the attendants, who tore off the meat with their teeth, and gnawed the bones like so many dogs.

As these people use no paint, they are not so dirty
in

in their persons as the savages who thus besmear themselves; but they are full as lousy and filthy in their houses. Their method of building is as follows: they dig in the ground an oblong square pit, the length of which seldom exceeds 50 feet, and breadth 20; but in general the dimensions are smaller. Over this excavation they form the roof of wood, which the sea throws ashore. This roof is covered first with grass, and then with earth; so that the outward appearance is like a dunghill. In the middle of the roof, towards each end, is left a square opening, by which the light is admitted; one of these openings being for this purpose only, and the other being also used to go in and out by, with the help of a ladder, or rather a post, with steps cut in it. In some houses there is another entrance below; but this is not common. Round the sides and end of the huts, the families (for several are lodged together) have their separate apartments, where they sleep, and sit at work; not upon benches, but in a kind of concave trench, which is dug all round the inside of the house, and covered with mats; so that this part is kept tolerably decent. But the middle of the house, which is common to all the families, is far otherwise. For although it be covered with dry grass, it is a receptacle for dirt of every kind, and the place for the urine trough; the stench of which is not mended by raw hides, or leather being almost continually steeped in it. Behind and over the trench, are placed the few effects they are possessed of; such as their clothing, mats and skins.

Their household furniture consists of bowls, spoons, buckets, cans, matted baskets, and perhaps a Russian kettle or pot. All these utensils are very neatly made, and well formed; and yet we saw no other tools among them but the knife and the hatchet; that is, a small flat piece of iron, made like an adze, by fitting it into a crooked wooden handle. These were the only instruments we met with there made of iron. For although the Russians live amongst them, we

found much less of this metal in their possession than we had met with in the possession of the tribes on the American continent, who had never seen, nor perhaps had any intercourse with the Russians. Probably a few beads, a little tobacco and snuff, purchased all they had to spare. There are few, if any of them, that do not smoke and chew tobacco, and take snuff; a luxury that bids fair to keep them always poor.

They did not seem to wish for more iron, or to want any other instruments, except sewing needles, their own being made of bone. With these they not only sew their canoes, and make their clothes, but also very curious embroidery. Instead of thread, they use the fibres of sinews, which they split to the thickness which each sort of work requires. All sewing is performed by the women. They are the tailors, shoe-makers, and boat-builders, or boat-coverers. They make mats and baskets of grass, that are both beautiful and strong.—Indeed, there is a neatness and perfection in most of their work, that shews they neither want ingenuity nor perseverance.

I saw not a fire-place in any one of their houses. They are lighted, as well as heated, by lamps; which are simple, and yet answer the purpose very well. They are made of a flat stone, hollowed on one side like a plate, and about the same size, or larger. In the hollow part they put the oil, mixed with a little dry grass, which serves the purpose of a wick. Both men and women frequently warm their bodies over one of these lamps, by placing it between their legs, under their garments, and sitting thus over it for a few minutes.

They produce fire both by collision and attrition; the former, by striking two stones one against another; on one of which is a stick about eighteen inches in length, and the other a flat piece. The pointed end of the stick they press upon the other, whirling it nimbly round as a drill; thus producing fire in a few minutes. This method is common in many parts of the world. It is practised by the Kamtschadales, by
these

these people, by the Greenlanders, by the Brazilians, by the Otaheiteans, by the New Hollanders, and probably by many other nations.

No such thing as an offensive or defensive weapon was seen amongst the natives of Oonalashka. We cannot suppose that the Russians found them in such a defenceless state; it is more probable that, for their own security, they have disarmed them. Political reasons too may have induced the Russians not to allow these islanders to have any large canoes; for it is difficult to believe they had none such originally, as we found them amongst all their neighbours. However, we saw none here but one or two belonging to the Russians. The canoes made use of by the natives, are the smallest we had any where seen upon the American coast; though built after the same manner, with some little difference in the construction. In the management of their canoes, they make use of the double-bladed paddle, which is held with both hands in the middle, striking the water with a quick regular motion, first on one side, then on the other. By this means the canoe is impelled at a great rate, and in a direction as straight as a line can be drawn. In sailing from Egoochshak to Samgânooda, two or three canoes kept way with the ship, though she was going at the rate of seven miles an hour.

Their fishing and hunting implements differ very little from those used by the Greenlanders, as they are described by Crantz. With respect to the fisheries in the seas, halibut and salmon seem to be in the greatest plenty; and on them the inhabitants of these isles subsist chiefly; at least they were the only sort of fish, except cod, which we observed to be laid up for their winter store.

On Monday the 26th, Captain Cook left this island. His intention was to proceed to the Sandwich islands, there to spend a few of the winter months, and then to go to Kamtschatka, so as to endeavour to be there by the middle of May the ensuing summer. On the 26th of Nov. he discovered Mowee, and on the 30th Owwhyhee,

Owhyhee, two of the Sandwich Islands. In plying between these two islands, they had an occasional traffic with the natives of Owhyhee, for provisions: I never met with a behaviour so free from reserve and suspicion in my intercourse with any tribes of savages as we experienced in the people of this island. It was very common for them to send up in the ship the several articles they brought off for barter; afterward, they would come in themselves, and make their bargains on the quarter-deck. The people of Otaheite, even after our repeated visits, did no care to put so much confidence in us. I infer from this, that those of Owhyhee must be more faithful in their dealings with one another than the inhabitants of Otaheite are. For if little faith were observed amongst themselves, they would not be so ready to trust to strangers. It is also to be observed, to their honour, that they never once attempted to cheat us in exchanges, nor to commit a theft. They understood trading as well as most people, and seemed to comprehend clearly the reason of our plying upon their coast. For though they brought off provisions in great plenty, particularly pigs, yet they kept up their price; and rather than dispose of them for less than they thought they were worth, would take them ashore again.

Having procured a quantity of sugar-cane; and having upon a trial, made but a few days ago, found that a strong decoction of it produced a very palatable beer, I ordered some more to be brewed, for our general use. but when the cask was now broached, not one of our crew even so much as tasted it. As I had no motive in preparing this beverage, but to save our spirits for a colder climate, I gave myself no trouble, either by exerting authority, or by having recourse to persuasion, to prevail on them to drink it; knowing that there was no danger of the scurvy, so long as we could get a plentiful supply of other vegetables. But, that I might not be disappointed in my views, I gave orders that no grog should be served in either ship. I myself, and the officers, continued to make use of
this

this sugar-cane beer, whenever we could get materials for brewing it. A few hops, of which we had some on board, improved it much. It has the taste of new small beer; and I believe no one will doubt of its being very wholesome. And yet my inconsiderate crew alledged it was injurious to their health.

They had no better reason to support a resolution, which they took on our first arrival in King George's Sound, not to drink the spruce beer made there. But, whether from a consideration that it was not the first time of their being required to use that liquor, or from other reason, they did not attempt to carry their purpose into actual execution; and I had never heard of it till now, when they renewed their ignorant opposition to my best endeavours to serve them. Every innovation whatever, on board a ship, though ever so much to the advantage of seamen, is sure to meet with their highest disapprobation. But portable soup, and sour crout were, at first, condemned as stuff unfit for human beings. Few commanders have introduced into their ships more novelties, as useful varieties of food and drink, than I have done. Indeed, few commanders have had the same opportunities of trying such experiments, or been driven to the same necessity of trying them. It has, however, been, in a great measure, owing to various little deviations from established practice, that I have been able to preserve my people, generally speaking, from that dreadful distemper, the scurvy, which has perhaps destroyed more of our sailors, in their peaceful voyages, than have fallen by the enemy in military expeditions.

Many days were spent in plying, in endeavouring to get to the windward of Owhyhee, and to find a proper place for anchorage. At one time the canoes thronged to the ships with hogs and women. The latter, the captain observed, it was not possible to keep from coming on board; no women, he ever met with, were less reserved; and indeed, it appeared to him, that they visited the ships with no other view, than to make a surrender of their persons.

At

At length on the 16th of January 1779, a bay was discovered, into which, after he had sent to examine it, Captain Cook resolved to carry the ships. As night approached, the greater part of his visitors retired to the shore; but numbers of them requested his permission to sleep on board. Curiosity was not the only motive, at least with some: for the next morning, several things were missing, which determined him not to entertain so many another time.

On the 17th, he anchored in this bay, which is called by the natives Karakakooa. The ships continued to be much crowded with natives, and were surrounded by a multitude of canoes. I had no where, in the course of my voyage, seen so numerous a body of people assembled at one place. For, besides those who had come off to us in canoes, all the shore of the bay was covered with spectators, and many hundreds were swimming round the ships like shoals of fish. We could not but be struck with the singularity of this scene; and perhaps there were few on board who now lamented our having failed in our endeavours to find a Northern passage homeward, last summer. To this disappointment we owed our having it in our power to revisit the Sandwich Islands, and to enrich our voyage with a discovery, which, though the last, seemed in many respects, to be the most important that had hitherto been made by Europeans, throughout the extent of the Pacific Ocean.



CHAP. VIII.

Description of Karakakooa Bay—Ceremonies of the landing of Captain Cook—Arrival of Terreeboo, king of the island—Visit from the king, and returned by Captain Cook—Terreeboo's magnificent present—The ships leave the island—The Resolution damaged in a gale, and obliged to return—Death of Captain Cook.

KARAKAKOOA Bay is situated on the W. side of the island Owhyhee. It is bounded by two points of land, at the distance of half a league, and bearing S. S. E. and N. N. W. from each other. On the N. point, which is flat and barren, stands the village of Kowrowa; and in the bottom of the bay near a grove of tall cocoa-nut trees, is another village of a more considerable size, called Kakooa: between them runs a high rocky cliff, inaccessible from the sea shore. The S. side of the coast, for about a mile inland, has a rugged appearance; beyond which the country rises with a gradual ascent, and is overspread with cultivated inclosures and groves of cocoa-nut trees, where the inhabitants of the natives are scattered in great numbers. The shore all round the bay, is covered with a black coral rock, which makes the landing very dangerous in rough weather, except at the village of Kakooa, where there is a fine sandy beach, with a Morai, or burying-place, at one extremity, and a small well of fresh water, at the other. In this bay we moored, January 17, 1779, on the N. side, about a quarter of a mile from the shore, Kowrowa bearing N. W.

As soon as the inhabitants perceived our intention of anchoring in the bay, they came off from the shore in astonishing numbers, and expressed their joy by singing and shouting, and exhibiting a variety of wild and extravagant gestures. The decks and rigging of both ships were soon completely covered with them; and a multitude of women and boys, who had not been able

to get canoes, came swimming round us in shoals; many of whom, not finding room on board, remained the whole day playing in the water.

Among the chiefs who came on board the Resolution, was a young man named Pareea, whom we soon perceived to be a person of great authority. On presenting himself to Captain Cook, he told him that he was Jakanee (we afterwards met with several others of the same denomination; but whether it be an office, or some degree of affinity, we could never learn with certainty) to the king of the island, who was at that time engaged on a military expedition at Mowee, and was expected to return within three or four days. A few presents from Capt. Cook attached him entirely to our interests, and he became exceedingly useful to us in the management of his countrymen, as we had soon occasion to experience. For we had not been long at anchor, when it was observed that the Discovery had such a number of people hanging on one side as occasioned her to heel considerably; and that the men were unable to keep off the crowds which continued pressing into her. Captain Cook, being apprehensive that she might suffer some injury, pointed out the danger to Pareea, who immediately went to their assistance, cleared the ship of its incumbrances, and drove away the canoes that surrounded her.

The authority of the chiefs over the inferior people appeared, from this incident, to be of the most despotic kind. A similar instance of it happened the same day on board the Resolution; where the crowd being so great as to impede the necessary business of the ship, we were obliged to have recourse to the assistance of Kancena, another of their chiefs, who had likewise attached himself to Captain Cook. The inconvenience we laboured under being made known, he immediately ordered his countrymen to quit the vessel, and we were not a little surprised to see them jump overboard, without a moment's hesitation; all except one man, who loitering behind, and shewing some unwillingness

lingness to obey, Kaneena took him up in his arms, and threw him into the sea.

Both the chiefs were men of strong and well proportioned bodies, and of countenances remarkably pleasing, especially Kaneena, who was the finest man I ever saw. He was above six feet high, and regular and expressive features, and lively, dark eyes; his carriage was easy, firm, and graceful.

It has been already mentioned, that during our long cruize off this island, the inhabitants had always behaved with great fairness and honesty in their dealings, and had not shewn the slightest propensity to theft; which appeared to us the most extraordinary, because those with whom we had hitherto held any intercourse, were of the lowest rank, either servants or fishermen. We now found the case exceedingly altered. The immense crowd of islanders, which blocked up every part of the ships, not only afforded frequent opportunities of pilfering without risk or discovery, but our inferiority in number, held forth a prospect of escaping with impunity in case of detection. Another circumstance, to which we attributed this alteration in their behaviour, was the presence and encouragement of their chiefs; for generally tracing the booty into the possession of some men of consequence, we had the strongest reason to suspect that these depredations were committed at their instigation.

Soon as the Resolution had got into her station, our two friends, Pareea and Kaneena, brought on board a third chief, named Koah, who, we were told, was a priest, and had been, in his youth, a distinguished warrior. He was a little old man, of an emaciated figure. Being led into the cabin, he approached Captain Cook, with great veneration, and threw over his shoulders a piece of red cloth, which he had brought along with him. Then stepping a few paces back, he made an offering of a small pig, which he held in his hand, whilst he pronounced a discourse that lasted for a considerable time. This ceremony was frequently repeated during our stay at Owhyhee, and appeared to us,

from many circumstances, to be a sort of religious adoration.

When this ceremony was over, Koah dined with Captain Cook, eating plentifully of what was set before him; but, like the rest of the inhabitants of the islands in those seas, could scarcely be prevailed on to taste a second time our wine or spirits. In the evening, Captain Cook, attended by Mr. Bayley and Mr. King, accompanied him on shore. We landed at the beach, and were received by four men, who carried wands, tipped with dog's hair, and marched before us, pronouncing, with a loud voice, a short sentence, in which we could only distinguish the word *Orono*. The crowd, which had been collected on the shore, retired at our approach; and not a person was to be seen, except a few lying prostrate on the ground, near the huts of the adjoining village.

The next morning the 18th, we went on shore with a guard of eight marines, including the corporal and lieutenant, having orders to erect the observatory, in such a situation as might best enable me to superintend and protect the waterers, and the other working parties that were to be on shore. As we were viewing a spot conveniently situated for this purpose, in the middle of the village, Pareea, who was always ready to shew both his power and his good-will, offered to pull down some houses that would have obstructed our observations. However, we thought it proper to decline this offer, and fixed on a field of sweet potatoes adjoining to the *Morai*, which was readily granted us; and the priests to prevent the intrusion of the natives, immediately consecrated the place, by fixing their wands round the wall by which it was inclosed.

This sort of religious interdiction they call *taboo*; a word we heard often repeated, during our stay among these islanders, and found to be a very powerful and extensive operation. No canoes ever presumed to land near us; the natives sat on the wall, but none offered to come within the tabooped space, till he had obtained our permission. But though the men, at our request,

would

would come across the field with provisions, yet not all our endeavours could prevail on the women to approach us. Presents were tried, but without effect; Pareea and Koah were tempted to bring them, but in vain; we were invariably answered, that the Eatooa and Terreeoboo (which was the name of their king) would kill them. This circumstance afforded no small matter of amusement to our friends on board, where the crowds of people, and particularly of women, that continued to flock thither, obliged them almost every hour to clear the vessel, in order to have room to do the necessary duties of the ship. On these occasions, two or three hundred women were frequently made to jump into the water at once, where they continued swimming and playing about, till they could again procure admittance.

From the 19th to the 24th, nothing very material happened. The caulkers were set to work on the sides of the ships, and the rigging was overhauled and repaired. The salting of hogs for sea store, was also one of the principal objects of Capt. Cook's attention; in which (notwithstanding it has generally been thought impracticable to cure the flesh of animals by salting, in tropical climates,) he was very successful.

We had not been long settled at our observatory, before we discovered in our neighbourhood, the habitations of a society of priests, whose regular attendance at the Morai had excited our curiosity. Their huts stood round a pond of water, and were surrounded by a grove of cocoa-nut trees, which separated them from the beach and the rest of the village, and gave the place an air of religious retirement. On acquainting Captain Cook with this, he resolved to pay them a visit; which he accordingly did, and was received with nearly the same religious ceremonies as at the Morai.

During the rest of the time we remained in the bay, whenever Capt. Cook came on shore, he was attended by one of these priests, who went before him, giving notice that the Orono had landed, and ordered the
people

people to prostrate themselves. The same person also constantly accompanied him on the water, standing in the bow of the boat, with a wand in his hand, and giving notice of his approach to the natives, who were in canoes, on which they immediately left off paddling, and lay down on their faces till he had passed. Whenever they stopped at the observatory, Kaireekkea and his brethren made their appearance with hogs, coconuts, bread-fruit, &c. and presented them with the usual solemnities. It was on these occasions that some of the inferior chiefs frequently requested to be permitted to make an offering to the Orono. When this was granted, they presented the hog themselves, generally with evident marks of fear in their countenances; whilst Kaireekkea and the priests chanted their accustomed hymns.

The civilities of this society were not, however, confined to mere ceremony and parade. Our party on shore received from them every day, a supply of hogs and vegetables, more than sufficient for our subsistence; and several canoes loaded with provisions were sent to the ships with the same punctuality. No return was ever demanded, or even hinted at in the most distant manner. Their presents were made with a regularity more like the discharge of a religious duty, than the effect of mere liberality; and when we enquired at whose charge all this munificence was displayed, we were told it was at the expence of a great man called Kaoo, the chief of the priests, and grandfather to Kaireekkea, who was at that time absent attending the king of the island.

Things continued in this state till the 24th, when we were a good deal surprised to find that no canoes were suffered to put off from the shore, and that the natives kept close to their houses. After several hours suspense, we learned that the bay was tabooed, and all intercourse with us interdicted, on account of the arrival of Terreeboo. As we had not foreseen an accident of this sort, our crews were obliged to pass the day without their usual supply of vegetables. The

next

next morning, therefore, they endeavoured, both by threats and promises, to induce the natives to come along-side ; and as some of them were at last venturing to put off, a chief was observed attempting to drive them away. A musket was immediately fired over his head, to make him desist, which had the desired effect, and refreshments were soon after purchased as usual. In the afternoon, Terreeoboo arrived and visited the ships in a private manner, attended only by one canoe, in which were his wife and children. He staid on board till near ten o'clock.

The next day the king, in a large canoe, attended by two others, paddled towards the ship in great state. Their appearance was grand and magnificent. In the first canoe was Terreeoboo and his chiefs, dressed in their rich feathered cloaks and helmets, and armed with long spears and daggers ; in the second, came the venerable Kaoo, the chief of the priests, and his brethren, with their idols displayed on red cloth. These idols were busts of a gigantic size, made of wicker work, and curiously covered with small feathers of various colours, wrought in the same manner with their cloaks. Their eyes were made of a large pearl oyster, with a black nut fixed in the centre ; their mouths were set with a double row of the fangs of dogs, and together with the rest of their features, were strangely distorted. The third canoe was filled with hogs and vegetables. As they went along, the priests in the centre canoe sung their hymns with great solemnity ; and after paddling round the ships, instead of going on board, as we expected, they made towards the shore at the beach where we were stationed.

As soon as I saw them approaching, I ordered out our little guard to receive the king ; and Captain Cook, perceiving that he was going on shore, followed him, and arrived nearly at the same time. We conducted them into the tent, where they had scarcely been seated, when the king rose up, and in a very graceful manner threw over the captain's shoulders the cloak he himself wore : put a feathered helmet upon his head, and a
curious

curious fan in his hand. He also spread at his feet five or six other cloaks, all exceedingly beautiful, and of the greatest value. His attendants then brought four very large hogs, with sugar-canes, cocoa-nuts, and bread-fruit; and this part of the ceremony was conducted by the king's exchanging names with Captain Cook, which, amongst all the islanders of the Pacific Ocean, is esteemed the strongest pledge of friendship. A procession of priests, with a venerable old personage at their head, now appeared, followed by a long train leading large hogs, and others carrying plantains, sweet potatoes, &c. By the looks and gestures of Kairee-keea, I immediately knew the old man to be the chief of the priests before-mentioned, on whose bounty we had so long subsisted. He had a piece of red cloth in his hands, which he wrapped round Captain Cook's shoulders, and afterwards presented him a small pig in the usual form. A seat was then made for him, next to the king, after which Kairee-keea and his followers began their ceremonies, Kaoo and the Chiefs joining in their responses.

As soon as the formalities of the meeting were over Captain Cook carried Terreeoboo, and as many of the chiefs as the pinnace would hold, on board the Resolution. They were received with every mark of respect; and Captain Cook, in return for the feathered cloak, put a linen shirt on the king, and girt his own hanger round him. The ancient Kaioo, and about half a dozen more old chiefs, remained on shore, and took up their abode at the priests' houses. During all this time, not a canoe was seen in the bay, and the natives either kept within their huts, or lay prostrate on the ground. Before the king left the Resolution, Captain Cook obtained leave for the natives to come and trade with the ships as usual; but the women, for what reason we could not learn, still continued under the effects of the taboo; that is, were forbidden to stir from home, or to have any communication with us.

The inoffensive behaviour of the natives having taken away every apprehension of danger, we did not hesitate

to

to trust ourselves amongst them at all times, and in all situations. The officers of both ships went daily up the country, in small parties, or even singly, and frequently remained out the whole night. It would be endless to recount all the instances of civility we received upon those occasions. Wherever we went, the people flocked about us, eager to offer every assistance, and highly gratified if their services were accepted.— Various little arts were practised to attract our notice, or to delay our departure. The boys and girls ran before, as we walked through their village, and stopped us at every opening, where there was room to form a group for dancing. At one time, we were invited to accept a draught of cocoa-nut-milk, or some other refreshment, under the shade of their huts; at another, we were seated within a circle of young women, who exerted all their skill to amuse us with songs and dances.

The satisfaction we derived from their gentleness and hospitality, was however frequently interrupted by their propensity to stealing. Some of their most expert swimmers were one day discovered under the ships, drawing out the filling nails of the sheathings, which they performed very dexterously by means of a short stick, with a flint stone fixed in the end of it. To put a stop to this practice, which endangered the very existence of the vessels, we at first fired small shot at the offenders, but they easily got out of our reach by diving under the ship's bottom. It was therefore found necessary to make an example, by flogging one of them on board the *Discovery*.

On the 28th, died William Watman, a seaman of the gunner's crew, an event which I mention the more particularly, as death had hitherto been very rare among us. He was an old man, and much respected on account of his attachment to Captain Cook. He had formerly served as a marine 21 years; after which he entered as a seaman on board the *Resolution* in 1772, and served with Captain Cook in his voyage towards the South Pole. At their return, he was admitted into Greenwich Hospital, through the captain's

interest, at the same time with himself; and being resolved to follow throughout the fortunes of his benefactor, he also quitted it along with him, on his being appointed to the command of the present expedition. During the voyage, he had frequently been subject to slight fevers, and was a convalescent when he came into the bay, where being sent on shore for a few days, he conceived himself perfectly recovered, and, at his own desire, returned on board; but the day following, he had a paralytic stroke, which in two days carried him off.

At the request of the king, he was buried on the Morai, and the ceremony was performed with proper solemnity. Old Kaoo and his brethren were spectators, and preserved the most profound silence and attention, while the service was reading. When we began to fill up the grave, they approached it with great reverence, threw in a dead pig, some cocoa-nuts, and plantains; and for three nights afterward, they surrounded it, sacrificing hogs, and performing their usual ceremonies, of hymns and prayers, which continued till almost day-break.

At the head of the grave we erected a post, and nailed upon it a square piece of board, on which was inscribed the name of the deceased, his age, and the day of his death. This they promised not to remove, and we have no doubt but it will be suffered to remain as long as the frail materials of which it is made will permit.

The ship being in great want of fuel, the captain desired me, on the 2d of February, to treat with the priests, for the purchase of the rail that surrounded the top of the Morai. I must confess, I had at first some doubt about the decency of this proposal, and was apprehensive, that even the bare mention of it might be considered, by them, as a piece of shocking impiety. In this, however, I found myself mistaken. Not the smallest surprise was expressed at the application, and the wood was readily given, even without stipulating for any thing in return. While the sailors were taking it away, I observed one of them carrying off a carved image;

imagine ; and, on further enquiry, found that they had conveyed to the boats the whole semicircle. Though this was done in the presence of the natives, who had not shewn any mark of resentment at it, but had even assisted them in the removal, I thought it proper to speak to Kaoo on the subject, who appeared very indifferent about the matter, and only desired, that we would restore the center image, which he carried into one of the priests' houses.

Terreeoboo, and his chiefs, had, for some days past, been very inquisitive about the time of our departure. This circumstance had excited in me a great curiosity to know what opinion this people had formed of us, and what were their ideas respecting the cause and objects of our voyage. I took some pains to satisfy myself on these points ; but I could never learn any thing farther, than that they imagined we came from some country where provisions had failed ; and that our visit to them was merely for the purpose of filling our bellies. Indeed, the meagre appearance of some of the crew, the hearty appetites with which we sat down to their fresh provisions, and our great anxiety to purchase, and carry off, as much as we were able, led them, naturally enough, to such a conclusion. To these may be added, a circumstance which puzzled them exceedingly, our having no women with us ; together with our quiet conduct, and unwarlike appearance. It was ridiculous enough to see them stroking the sides, and patting the bellies of the sailors (who were certainly much improved in the sleekness of their looks, during our short stay in the island), and telling them, partly by signs, and partly by words, that it was time for them to go ; but if they would come again the next bread-fruit season, they should be better able to supply their wants. We had now been sixteen days in the bay ; and if our enormous consumption of hogs and vegetables be considered, it need not be wondered, that they should wish to see us take our leave. It is very probable, however, that Terreeoboo had no other view in his enquiries, at present, than a desire of making

L 112

ing

ing sufficient preparation for dismissing us with presents, suitable to the respect and kindness with which he had received us. For on our telling him we should leave the island on the next day but one, we observed a sort of proclamation was immediately made through the villages, to require the people to bring in their hogs and vegetables, for the king to present to the Orono, on his departure.

The next day being fixed for our departure, Terreeboo invited Captain Cook and myself to attend him, on the 3d, to the place where Kaoo resided.— On our arrival, we found the ground covered with parcels of cloth; a vast quantity of red and yellow feathers, tied to the fibres of cocoa-nut husks; and a great number of hatchets, and other pieces of iron-ware, that had been got in barter from us. At a little distance from these, lay an immense quantity of vegetables of every kind, and near them was a large herd of hogs. At first, we imagined the whole to be intended as a present for us, till Kaireekkea informed me, that it was a gift, or tribute, from the people of that district to the king; and accordingly, as soon as we were seated, they brought all the bundles, and laid them severally at Terreeboo's feet; spreading the cloth, and displaying the feathers and iron-ware before him. The king seemed much pleased with this mark of their duty; and having selected about a third part of the iron-ware, the same proportion of feathers, and a few pieces of cloth, these were set aside by themselves, and the remainder of the cloth, together with all the hogs and vegetables, were afterwards presented to Capt. Cook and myself. We were astonished at the value and magnitude of this present, which far exceeded every thing of the kind we had seen, either at the Friendly or Society Islands. Boats were immediately sent to carry them on board; the large hogs were picked out, to be salted for sea-store; and upwards of thirty smaller pigs, and the vegetables, were divided between the two crews.

The same day, we quitted the Morai, and got the tents and astronomical instruments on board. The charm

charm of the taboo was now removed ; and we had no sooner left the place, than the natives rushed in and searched eagerly about, in expectation of finding something of value, that we might have left behind. As I happened to remain the last on shore, and waited for the return of the boat, several came crowding about me, and having made me sit down by them, began to lament our separation. It was, indeed, not without difficulty I was able to quit them. And here, I hope I may be permitted to relate a trifling occurrence, in which I was principally concerned. Having had the command of the party on shore, during the whole time we were in the bay, I had an opportunity of becoming better acquainted with the natives, and of being better known to them, than those whose duty required them to be generally on board. As I had every reason to be satisfied with their kindness, in general, so I cannot too often, nor too particularly, mention the unbounded and constant friendship of their priests.

On my part, I spared no endeavours to conciliate their affections, and gain their esteem ; and I had the good fortune to succeed so far, that when the time of our departure was made known, I was strongly solicited to remain behind, not without offers of the most flattering kind. When I excused myself, by saying, that Captain Cook would not give his consent, they proposed, that I should retire into the mountains ; where, they said, they would conceal me, till after the departure of the ships ; and on my further assuring them, that the captain would not leave the bay without me, Terreeoboo and Kaoo waited upon Captain Cook, whose son they supposed I was, with a formal request, that I might be left behind. The captain, to avoid giving a positive refusal to an offer so kindly intended, told them, that he could not part with me, at that time, but that he should return to the island the next year, and would then endeavour to settle the matter to their satisfaction.

Early in the morning of the 4th, we unmoored, and sailed out of the bay, with the Discovery in company, and

and were followed by a great number of canoes. Captain Cook's design was to finish the survey of Owhyhee, before he visited the other islands, in hopes of meeting with a road better sheltered than the bay we had just left; and in case of not succeeding here, he purposed to take a view of the S. E. part of Mowee, where, the natives informed us, we should find an excellent harbour.

Captain Cook had calm weather for three succeeding days, which much impeded his progress; and, at midnight, on the 8th, a violent gale came on, which greatly damaged the fore-mast of the Resolution. This circumstance, which proved so fatal to Captain Cook, obliged him to return to Karakakooa Bay, and to take up his old station there, till the damages he had sustained could be properly repaired.

CHAP. IX.

Death of Captain Cook, with an account of the transactions at the Island of Owhyhee, subsequent to the death of Captain Cook—Captain Clerke's departure from Owhyhee—Arrival at Atooi—Final departure from the Sandwich Islands—Description of the natives, and treatment of their women.

AS the repairs of the Resolution required some time, the astronomical apparatus was got ashore, and the tents pitched on the Morai, or burying place, where a guard of a corporal and six marines was stationed. The friendly correspondence was renewed with the priests, who, for the greater security of the workmen, and their tools, tabooed the place where the mast lay, sticking their wands round it as before. But notwithstanding this friendly behaviour of the priests, it was a matter of great surprise, that when the ships came to anchor, their reception was very different from what it had been on their first arrival; no shouts, no bustle, no confusion, but a solitary bay, with only here and there a canoe stealing close along the shore. These suspicious circumstances gave rise

to many conjectures, but whatever these were, things went on in their usual quiet course till the afternoon of the 13th.

Towards the evening of that day, the officer who commanded the watering party of the *Discovery*, came to inform me that several chiefs had assembled at a well near the beach, driving away the natives, whom he had hired to assist the sailors in rolling down the casks to the shore. He told me, at the same time, that he thought their behaviour extremely suspicious, and that they meant to give him some farther disturbance. At this request, therefore, I sent a marine along with him, but suffered him to take only his side arms. In a short time the officer returned, and on his acquainting me, that the natives had armed themselves with stones, and were grown very tumultuous, I went myself to the spot, attended by a marine, with his musquet. Seeing us approach, they threw away their stones, and, on my speaking to some of the chiefs, the mob were driven away, and those who chose it, were suffered to assist in filling the casks. Having left things quiet here, I went to meet Captain Cook, whom I saw coming ashore in the pinnace. I related to him what had just passed; and he ordered me, in case of their beginning to throw stones, or behave insolently, immediately to fire a ball at the offenders. I accordingly gave orders to the corporal, to have the pieces of the centinels loaded with ball, instead of small shot.

Soon after our return to the tents, we were alarmed by a continual fire of muskets from the *Discovery*, which we observed to be directed at a canoe that we saw paddling toward the shore, in great haste, pursued by one of our small boats. We immediately concluded that the firing was owing to some theft, and the captain ordered me to follow him with a marine armed, and to endeavour to seize the people as they came on shore. Accordingly, we ran toward the place where we supposed the canoe would land, but were too late; the people having quitted it, and made their escape into the country before our arrival.

We were at this time ignorant that the goods had been already restored; and as we thought it probable, from the circumstances we had at first observed, that they might be of importance, were unwilling to relinquish our hopes of recovering them. Having therefore enquired of the natives which way the people had fled, we followed them, till it was near dark, when judging ourselves to be about three miles from the tents, and suspecting, that the natives who frequently encouraged us in the pursuit, were amusing us with false informations, we thought it in vain to continue our search any longer, and returned to the beach.

During our absense, a difference of a more serious and unpleasant nature had happened. The officer, who had been sent in the small boat, and was returning on board, with the goods which had been restored, observing the captain and me engaged in the pursuit of the offenders, thought it his duty to seize the canoe, which was left drawn up to the shore. Unfortunately, this canoe belonged to Pareea, who arriving at the same moment from on board the Discovery, claimed his property, with many protestations of his innocence. The officer refusing to give it up, and being joined by the crew of the pinnace, which was waiting for the captain, a scuffle ensued, in which Pareea was knocked down, by a violent blow on the head with an oar. The natives who were collected about the spot, and had hitherto been peaceable spectators, immediately attacked our people, with such a shower of stones, as forced them to retreat with great precipitation, and swim off to a rock at some distance from the shore. The pinnace was immediately ransacked by the natives, and but for the timely interposition of Pareea, who seemed to have recovered from the blow and forgot it at the same instant, would soon have been entirely demolished. Having driven away the crowd, he made signs to our people that they might come and take possession of the pinnace, and that he would endeavour to get back the things which had been taken out of it. After their departure, he followed them in his canoe, with a midshipman's

shipman's cap, and some other trifling articles of the plunder, and, with much apparent concern at what had happened, asked if the Orono would kill him, and whether he would permit him to come on board the next day; on being assured that he would be well received, he joined noses with the officers, in token of friendship, and paddled over to the village of Kowrowa.

When the captain was informed of what had passed, he expressed much uneasiness at it; I am afraid, said he, that these people will oblige us to use some violent measures, for they must not be left to imagine, that they have gained an advantage over us. He immediately gave orders, that every man and woman on board should be turned out of the ship. As soon as this order was executed I returned on shore; and our former confidence in the natives being much abated, by the events of the day, I posted a double guard on the Morai, with orders to call me, if they saw any man lurking about the beach. About eleven o'clock, five islanders were observed creeping round the bottom of the Morai; they seemed very cautious in approaching us, and at last finding themselves discovered, retired out of sight. About midnight, one of them venturing up close to the observatory, the sentinel fired over him; on which the man fled, and we passed the remainder of the night without further disturbance.

On the 14th of February, I went on board the Resolution for the time keeper, and in my way was hailed by the Discovery, and informed that their cutter had been stolen during the night, from the buoy, where it was moored.

When I arrived on board, I found the marines arming, and the captain loading his double-barrelled gun. Whilst I was relating to him what had happened to us in the night, he interrupted me with some eagerness, and acquainted me with the loss of the Discovery's cutter, and with the preparations he was making for its recovery. It had been his usual practice, whenever any thing of consequence was lost, to get the king, o

some of the chiefs on board, and keep them as hostages, till it was restored. This method, which had always been attended with success, he meant to pursue on the present occasion; and at the same time, had given orders to stop all the canoes that should attempt to leave the bay, with an intention of seizing and destroying them, if he could not recover the cutter by peaceable means. Accordingly, the boats of both ships, well manned and armed, were stationed across the bay; and, before I left the ship, some great guns had been fired at two large canoes, that were attempting to make their escape.

It was between seven and eight o'clock when we quitted the ship together; the captain in the pinnace, having Mr. Phillips and nine marines with him, and myself in the small boat. The last orders I received from him were, to quiet the minds of the natives, on our side of the bay, by assuring them, they should not be hurt, to keep my people together, and to be on my guard. We then parted, the captain went towards Kowrowa, where the king resided, and I proceeded to the beach. My first care, on going ashore, was to give strict orders to the marines to remain within the tent, to load their pieces with ball, and not to quit their arms. Afterward I took a walk to the huts of old Kaoo, and the priests, and explained to them, as well as I could, the object of the hostile preparations, which had exceedingly alarmed them. I found, that they had already heard of the cutter's being stolen, and I assured them, that though the captain was resolved to recover it, and to punish the authors of the theft, yet that they, and the people of the village on this side, need not be under the smallest apprehension of suffering any evil from us. I desired the priests to explain this to the people, and tell them not to be alarmed, but to remain peaceable and quiet. Kaoo asked me, if their king was to be hurt? I assured him, he was not; and both he and his brethren seemed satisfied with this assurance.

In the mean time, the captain having called off the launch, which was stationed at the N. point of the bay, and

and taken it along with him, went to Kowrowa, and landed with the lieutenant and nine marines. He immediately marched into the village, where he was received with the usual marks of respect; the people prostrating themselves before him, and bringing their accustomed offerings of small pigs. Finding that there was no suspicion of his design, his next step was to enquire for the king and his sons, who had been his constant guests on board the Resolution. In a short time, the boys returned, with the natives, who had been in search of them, and immediately led the captain to the house where the king had slept. They found him just awoke from sleep, and after a short conversation about the loss of the cutter, from which the captain was convinced that he was in no wise privy to it, he invited him to return in the boat, and spend the day on board the Resolution. To this proposal the king readily consented, and immediately got up to accompany him on board.

Things were in this prosperous train, the boys already in the pinnace, and the rest of the party having advanced near the water-side, when an elderly woman, the mother of the boys and one of the king's favourite wives, came after him, and with many tears and entreaties, besought him not to go on board. At the same time two chiefs, who came along with her, laid hold of him, and insisting that he should go no farther, forced him to sit down. The natives, who were collecting in prodigious numbers along the shore, began to throng round the captain and their king. In this situation, the lieutenant of marines observing that his men were huddled close together in the crowd, and thus incapable of using their arms, if occasion should require it, proposed to the captain to draw them up along the rocks, close to the water's edge; and the crowd readily making way for them to pass, they were drawn up in a line, at the distance of about 30 yards from the place where the king was sitting.

All this time the old king remained on the ground, with the strongest marks of terror and dejection in his

countenance; the captain not willing to abandon the object for which he had come on shore, continuing to urge him, in the most pressing manner, to proceed; whilst, on the other hand, whenever the king appeared inclined to follow him, the chiefs, who stood round him, interposed, at first with prayers and entreaties, but afterwards, having recourse to force and violence, insisted on his staying where he was. Captain Cook therefore finding that the alarm had spread too generally, and that it was in vain to think any longer of getting him off, without blood-shed, at last gave up the point: observing to Mr. Philips, that it would be impossible to compel him to go on board, without the risk of killing a great number of the inhabitants.

Though the enterprize which had carried Captain Cook on shore had now failed, and was abandoned, yet his person did not appear to have been in the least danger, till an accident happened, which gave a fatal turn to the affair. The boats, which had been stationed across the bay, having fired at some canoes that were attempting to get out, unfortunately had killed a chief of the first rank. The news of his death arrived at the village where Captain Cook was, just as he had left the king, and was walking slowly towards the shore. The ferment it occasioned was very conspicuous; the women and children were immediately sent off; and the men put on their war-mats, and armed themselves with spears and stones. One of the natives, having in his hands a stone, and a long iron spike (which they call a Pahooa), came up to the captain, flourishing his weapon, by way of defiance, and threatening to throw the stone. The captain desired him to desist; but the man persisted in his insolence: he was at length provoked to fire a load of small shot. The man having his mat on, which the shot were not able to penetrate, this had no other effect than to irritate and encourage them. Several stones were thrown at the marines; and one of the Erees attempted to stab Mr. Philips with his Pahooa;

hooa; but failed in the attempt, and received from him a blow with the but-end of his musket. Captain Cook now fired his second barrel loaded with ball, and killed one of the foremost of the natives. A general attack with stones immediately followed, which was answered by a discharge of musketry from the marines, and the people in the boats. The islanders, contrary to the expectations of every one, stood the fire with great firmness; and before the marines had time to reload, they broke in upon them with dreadful shouts and yells. What followed was a scene of the utmost horror and confusion.

Four of the marines were cut off among the rocks in their retreat, and fell a sacrifice to the fury of the enemy; three more were dangerously wounded; and the lieutenant, who had received a stab between the shoulders with a pahooa, having fortunately reserved his fire, shot the man who had wounded him, just as he was going to repeat his blow. Our unfortunate Commander, the last time he was seen distinctly, was standing at the water's edge, and calling out to the boats to cease firing, and to pull in. If it be true, as some of those who were present have imagined, that the marines and boatmen had fired without his orders, and that he was desirous of preventing any further bloodshed, it is not improbable, that his humanity on this occasion, proved fatal to him. For it was remarked, that while he faced the natives, none of them had offered him any violence; but that having turned about, to give his orders to the boats, he was stabbed in the back, and fell with his face into the water.

On seeing him fall, the islanders set up a great shout, and his body was immediately dragged on shore, and surrounded by the enemy, who snatching the dagger out of each other's hands, shewed a savage eagerness to have a share in his destruction.

Thus fell our great and excellent commander! After a life of such distinguished and successful enterprize, his death, as far as regards himself, cannot be reckoned premature;

premature; since he lived to finish the great work for which he seemed to have been designed; and was rather removed from the enjoyment, than cut off from the acquisition of glory. How sincerely his loss was lamented by those who had so long found their general security in his skill and conduct, and every consolation under their hardships, in his tenderness and humanity, it is neither necessary nor possible for me to describe; much less shall I attempt to paint the horror with which we were struck, and the universal dejection and dismay which followed so dreadful and unexpected a calamity.

It having been already mentioned, that four of the marines were killed on the spot, the rest, with Mr. Philips, threw themselves into the water, and escaped under cover of a smart fire from the boats. On this occasion, a remarkable instance of gallant behaviour, and of affection for his men, was shewn by that officer. For he had scarcely got into the boat, when, seeing one of the marines, who was a bad swimmer, struggling in the water, and in danger of being taken by the enemy, he immediately jumped into the sea to his assistance, though much wounded himself, and after receiving a blow on the head from a stone, which had nearly sent him to the bottom, he caught the man by his hair, and brought him safe off.

Our people continued for some time to keep up a constant fire from the boats, (which, during the whole transaction, were not more than twenty yards from the land,) in order to afford their unfortunate companions an opportunity of escaping. These efforts, seconded by a few guns, fired at the same time from the *Resolution*, having forced the natives at last to retire, a small boat, manned by five young midshipmen, pulled toward the shore, where they saw the bodies without any signs of life, but judging it dangerous to attempt to bring them off with so small a force, they returned to the ships, leaving them in possession of the islanders, with ten stand of arms.

As soon as the general consternation, which the

news of this calamity occasioned through both crews, had a little subsided, their attention was called to the party at the Morai, where the masts and sails were on shore, with a guard of only six marines. Being at the distance only of a short mile from the village of Kowrowa, we could see distinctly an immense croud collected on the spot where Captain Cook had just before landed. We heard the firing of musketry, and could perceive some extraordinary bustle in the multitude.

My first care, on hearing the muskets fired, was to assure the people, who were assembled in considerable numbers round the wall of our consecrated field, and seemed equally at a loss with ourselves how to account for what they had seen and heard, that they should not be molested; and that at all events, I was desirous of continuing on peaceable terms with them, remained in this posture till the boats had returned on board, when Capt. Clerke observing through his telescope, that we were surrounded by the natives, and apprehending they meant to attack us, ordered two four-pounders to be fired at them. Fortunately these guns, though well aimed, did no mischief, and yet gave the natives a convincing proof of their power. One of the balls broke a cocoa-nut tree in the middle, under which a party of them were sitting; and the other shivered a rock, that stood in an exact line with them. As I had just before given them the strongest assurances of their safety, I was exceedingly mortified at this act of hostility; and, to prevent a repetition of it, immediately dispatched a boat to acquaint Capt. Clerke, that at present I was on the most friendly terms with the natives; and that, if occasion should hereafter arise for altering my conduct towards them, I would hoist a jack, for him to afford us all the assistance in his power.

We expected the return of the boat with the utmost impatience; and after remaining a quarter of an hour under the most torturing anxiety and suspence, our fears were at length confirmed, by the arrival of Mr. Bligh, with orders to strike the tents as quickly as possible,

possible, and to send the sails that were repairing, on board.

Having placed the marines on the top of the Morai, which formed a strong post, and left the command with Mr. Bligh, giving him the most positive directions to act entirely on the defensive, I went on board the *Discovery*, in order to represent to Captain Clerke the dangerous situation of our affairs. As soon as I quitted the spot, the natives began to annoy our people with stones; and I had scarcely reached the ship, before I heard the firing of the marines. I therefore returned instantly ashore, where I found things growing every moment more alarming. The natives were arming and putting on their mats, and their numbers increased very fast.

They began at first to attack us with stones, from behind the walls of their inclosures, and finding no resistance, they soon grew more daring. A few resolute fellows having crept along the beach, under cover of the rocks, suddenly made their appearance at the foot of the Morai, with a design of storming it on the side next the sea, which was its only accessible part; and were not dislodged till after they had stood a considerable number of shot, and seen one of their party fall.

The bravery of one of the assailants well deserves to be particularly mentioned. For having returned to carry off his companion, amidst the fire of our whole party, a wound which he received, made him quit the body and retire; but in a few minutes he again appeared, and being again wounded, was obliged a second time to retreat. At this moment I arrived at the Morai, and saw him return the third time, bleeding and faint; and being informed of what had happened, I forbid the soldiers to fire, and he was suffered to carry off his friend, which he was just able to perform, and then fell down himself and expired.

About this time, a strong reinforcement from both ships, being landed, the natives retreated behind the wall; which giving me access to our friendly priests, I

sent

sent one of them to endeavour to bring their countrymen to some terms, and to propose to them, that if they would desist from throwing stones, I would not permit our men to fire. This truce was agreed to, and we were suffered to launch the mast, and carry off the sails, and our astronomical apparatus, unmolested. As soon as we had quitted the Morai, they took possession of it, and some of them threw a few stones, but without doing us any mischief.

During this consultation, a vast concourse of natives still kept possession of the shore, and some of them came off in canoes, and had the boldness to come within pistol shot of the ships, and so insult us by various marks of contempt and defiance. It was with great difficulty we could restrain the sailors from the use of their arms, on these occasions; but as pacific measures had been resolved on, the canoes were suffered to return unmolested.

In pursuance of this plan, it was determined that I should proceed towards the shore, with the boats of both ships, well manned and armed, with a view to bring the natives to a parley, and, if possible, to obtain a conference with some of the chiefs.

If this attempt succeeded, I was to demand the dead body of Captain Cook; to threaten them with vengeance in case of a refusal; but by no means to fire, unless attacked: and not to land on any account whatever.

I left the ships about four in the afternoon. The whole crowd of the natives was in motion; the women and children retiring; the men putting on their war mats, and arming themselves with long spears and daggers; and as soon as we were within reach they began to throw stones at us with slings, but without doing us any mischief. Concluding therefore, that all attempts to bring them to a parley would be in vain, unless I first gave them some ground for mutual confidence; I ordered the armed boats to stop, and went on in the small boat alone, with a white flag in my hand, which, by a general cry of joy from the natives, I had the

satisfaction to find was instantly understood. The women immediately returned from the side of the hill, whither they had retired; the men threw off their mats, and all sat down together by the water side, extending their arms, and inviting me to come on shore.

Though this behaviour was very expressive of a friendly disposition, yet I could not help entertaining some suspicions of its sincerity. But when I saw Koah, with a boldness and assurance altogether unaccountable, swimming off towards the boat, with a white flag in his hand, I thought it necessary to return this mark of confidence, and therefore received him into the boat, though armed; a circumstance which did not tend to lessen my suspicions. I had long harboured an unfavourable opinion of this man. The priests had always told us that he was of a malicious disposition, and no friend of ours; and the repeated detections of his treachery, had convinced us of the truth of their representations. Add to all this, the shocking transactions of the morning in which he was seen acting a principal part, made me feel the utmost horror at finding myself so near him; and as he came up to me with feigned tears, and embraced me, I was so distrustful of his intentions, that I could not help taking hold of the point of the pahooah, which he held in his hand, and turning it from me.

I told him I was come to demand the body of Captain Cook, and to declare war against them unless it was instantly restored. He assured me this should be done as soon as possible; and, after begging of me a piece of iron, with much assurance, as if nothing extraordinary had happened, he leaped into the sea, and swam ashore, calling out to his countrymen that we were all friends again.

We waited near an hour, with great anxiety, for his return; during which time, the rest of the boats had approached so near the shore, as to enter into conversation with a party of the natives, at some distance from us; by whom they were plainly given to understand, that the body had been cut in pieces, and carried up
the

the country ; but of this circumstance I was not informed till our return to the ships.

I began now to express some impatience at Koah's delay ; upon which the chiefs pressed me exceedingly to come ashore, assuring me, that if I would go myself to their king, the body would certainly be restored to me. When they found they could not prevail on me to land, they attempted, under pretence of wishing to converse with more ease, to decoy our boat among some rocks, where they would have had it in their power to cut us off from the rest. It was no difficult matter to see through these artifices ; and I was therefore strongly inclined to break off all further communication with them, when a chief came to us, who was the particular friend of Captain Clerke, and of the officers of the *Discovery*, on board which ship he had sailed, when we last left the bay, intending to take his passage to Mowee. He told us he came from the king, to acquaint us that the body was carried up the country, but that it should be brought to us the next morning. There appeared a great deal of sincerity in his manner ; and being asked if he told a falsehood, he hooked his two fore-fingers together, which is understood amongst these islanders as the sign of truth ; in the use of which they are very scrupulous.

As I was now at a loss in what manner to proceed, I sent Mr. Vancouver to acquaint Captain Clerke with all that had passed ; that my opinion was, they meant not to keep their word with us, and were so far from being sorry at what had happened, that on the contrary, they were full of spirits and confidence on account of their late success, and sought only to gain time, till they could contrive some scheme for getting us into their power. Mr. Vancouver came back with orders for me to return on board ; having first given the natives to understand, that, if the body was not brought the next morning, the town should be destroyed.

When they saw that we were going off, they endeavoured to provoke us by the most insulting and contemptuous gestures. Some of our people said, they

could distinguish several of the natives parading about in the clothes of our unfortunate comrades; and, among them a chief, brandishing Captain Cook's hanger, and a woman holding the scabbard. Indeed, there can be no doubt, but that our behaviour had given them a mean opinion of our courage; for they could have but little notion of the motives of humanity that directed it.

In consequence of the report I made to Captain Clerke, of what I conceived to be the present disposition of the natives, the most effectual methods were taken to guard against any attack they might make in the night. The boats were moored with top-chains; additional sentinels were posted on both ships; and guard boats were stationed to row round them, in order to prevent the natives from cutting the cables. During the night, we observed a prodigious number of lights on the hills, which made us imagine they were removing their effects back into the country, in consequence of our threats. But I rather believe them to have been the sacrifices that were performing on account of the war, in which they imagined themselves about to be engaged; and most probably the bodies of our slain countrymen were at that time burning.

We remained the whole night undisturbed, except by the howlings and lamentations which were heard on shore; and early the next morning Koah came alongside the *Resolution*, with a present to me. I have mentioned before, that I was supposed, by the natives, to be the son of the captain; and as he, in his life-time, had always suffered them to believe it, I was probably considered as the chief, after his death. As soon as I came on deck I questioned him about the body; and, on his returning me nothing but evasive answers, I refused to accept his presents, and was going to dismiss him, with some expressions of anger and resentment, had not Captain Clerke judged it best, at all events, to keep up the appearance of friendship, and thought it more proper, that he should be treated with the usual respect. He was exceedingly urgent with us to go on shore,

shore, laying all the blame of the detention of the bodies on the other chiefs; and assuring us, that every thing might be settled to our satisfaction, by a personal interview with their king. However, his conduct was too suspicious to make it prudent to comply with this request; and he left us.

The greatest part of the day was taken up in getting the fore-mast into a proper situation on deck, for the carpenters to work upon it, and in making the necessary alterations in the commissions of the officers. The command of the expedition having devolved on Capt. Clerke, he removed on board the *Resolution*, appointed lieutenant Gore to be captain of the *Discovery*, and promoted Mr. Hervey, a midshipman, to the vacant lieutenantcy. During the whole day, we met with no interruption from the natives; and at night the launch was again moored with a top-chain, and guard-boats stationed round both ships as before.

About eight o'clock, it being very dark, a canoe was heard paddling towards the ship, and as soon as it was seen, both the sentinels on deck fired into it. There were two persons in the canoe, and they immediately roared out *Tinnee*, (which was the way in which they pronounced my name) and said they were friends, and had something for me belonging to the captain. When they came on board, they threw themselves at our feet, and appeared exceedingly frightened. Luckily, neither of them were hurt, notwithstanding the balls of both pieces had gone through the canoe. One of them, after the loss of the orono, told us that he had brought a part of his body. He then presented to us a small bundle wrapped in cloth, which he brought under his arm; and it is impossible to describe the horror which seized us, on finding in it a piece of human flesh, about nine or ten pounds weight. This, he said, was all that remained of the body; that the rest was cut to pieces, and burnt; but that the head and all the bones, except what belonged to the trunk, were in the possession of their king, and the other earees; and what we saw had been allotted to *Kaoo*, the chief
of

of the priests, to be made use of in some religious ceremony; and that he had sent it as a proof of his innocence and attachment to us.

This afforded an opportunity of informing ourselves whether they were cannibals, and we did not neglect it. We first tried by many indirect questions, put to each of them apart, to learn in what manner the rest of the bodies had been disposed of; and finding them very constant in one story, that after the flesh had been cut off, it had all been burnt; we at last put the direct question, whether they had not eat some of it? They immediately shewed as much horror at the idea as an European would have done; and asked very naturally, if this was the custom among us? They afterwards asked us with great earnestness and apparent apprehension, "When the orono would come again? and what he would do to them on his return?" The same inquiry was frequently made afterwards by others; and this idea agrees with the general tenor of their conduct towards him, which shewed that they considered him as a being of a superior nature.

We pressed our two friendly visitors to remain on board till morning, but in vain. They told us that, if this transaction should come to the knowledge of the king or chiefs, it might be attended with the most fatal consequences to the whole society, (the priests) in order to prevent which, they had been obliged to come off to us in the dark, and that the same precaution would be necessary in returning on shore. They informed us farther, that the chiefs were eager to avenge the deaths of their countrymen; and particularly cautioned us against trusting Koah, who, they said, was our mortal and implacable enemy, and desired nothing more ardently than an opportunity of fighting us; to which the blowing of some conchs, we had heard in the morning, was meant as a challenge to fight us.

We learned from these men, that 17 of their countrymen had been killed in the first action at Kowrowa, of whom five were chiefs; and that Kaneena and his brother,

brother, our very particular friends, were unfortunately of that number. Eight, they said, were killed at the observatory, three of whom were also of the first rank.

About eleven o'clock, our two friends left us, and took the precaution to desire, that our guard-boat might attend them till they had passed the *Discovery*, lest they should again be fired upon, which might alarm their countrymen on shore, and expose them to the danger of being discovered. This request was complied with, and we had the satisfaction to find, that they got safe to shore.

On the 16th, about noon, finding us persist in our inactivity, great bodies of the natives, after blowing their conchs, and using every mode of defiance, marched off, over the hills, and never appeared afterwards. Those however who remained, were not the less daring and insolent. One man had the audacity to come within musket shot a-head of the ship, and after slinging several stones at us, he waved the captain's hat over his head, while his countrymen were exulting, and encouraging his boldness. Our people were all in a flame at this insult, and coming in a body on the quarter-deck, begged they might no longer be obliged to put up with repeated provocations, and requested me to obtain permission for them from Capt. Clerke, to avail themselves of the first fair occasion of revenging the death of their commander. On my acquainting him with what was passing, he gave orders for some great guns to be fired at the natives on shore, and promised the crew, that if they should meet with any molestation at the watering-place the next day, they should then be left at liberty to chastise them.

It is something remarkable, that before we could bring our guns to bear, the natives had suspected our intentions, from the stir they saw in the ship, and had retired behind their houses and walls. We were therefore obliged to fire, in some measure, at random; notwithstanding which, our shot produced the effects that could have been desired. For soon after, we saw Koah paddling

paddling towards us, with extreme haste, and on his arrival we learned, that some people had been killed, and among the rest Maiha-maiha, a principal chief, and a near relation to the king.

Soon after the arrival of Koah, two boys swam off from the Morai towards the ships, having each a long spear in his hand, and after they had approached pretty near they began to chant a song, in a very solemn manner; the subject of which, from their often mentioning the word orono, and pointing to the village where Captain Cook was killed, we concluded to be the late calamitous disaster. Having sung in plaintive strain for about twelve or fifteen minutes, during the whole of which time they remained in the water, they went on board the *Discovery*, and delivered their spears; and after making a short stay returned on shore. Who sent them, or what was the object of this ceremony, we were never able to learn.

At night, the usual precautions were taken for the security of the ships; and as soon as it was dark, our two friends who had visited us the night before, came off again. They assured us, that though the effects of our great guns this afternoon, had terrified the chiefs exceedingly, they had by no means laid aside their hostile intentions, and advised us to be always on our guard.

The next morning, the boats of both ships were sent ashore for water, and the *Discovery* was warped close to the beach, in order to cover their service. We soon found, that the intelligence which the priests had sent us was not without foundation; and that the natives were resolved to take every opportunity of annoying us, when it could be done without much risk. In fact, our people were so taken up in attending to their own safety, that they employed the whole forenoon in filling only one tun of water. As it was therefore impossible to perform this service till their assailants were driven to a greater distance, the *Discovery* was ordered to dislodge them with her great guns; which being effected by a few discharges, the men landed without molestation.

molestation. However, the natives soon after made their appearance again; and it was now found absolutely necessary to burn down some few straggling houses near a wall, behind which they had taken shelter. In executing these orders, I am sorry to add, that our people were hurried into acts of unnecessary cruelty and devastation; although something ought certainly to be allowed to their resentment of the repeated insults and contemptuous behaviour of the islanders, and to the natural desire of revenging the loss of their commander.

I have already mentioned that orders had been given to burn only a few straggling huts, which afforded shelter to the natives. We were therefore a good deal surprized to see the whole village on fire; and before a boat, that was sent to stop the progress of the mischief, could reach the shore, the houses of our old and constant friends the priests, were all in flames. I cannot enough lament the illness that confined me on board this day. The priests had always been under my protection: and, unluckily, the officers who were on duty, having been seldom on shore at the Morai, were not much acquainted with the circumstances of the place. Had I been present myself, I might probably have been the means of saving their little society from destruction.

Several of the natives were shot in making their escape from the flames; and our people cut off the heads of two of the natives, and brought them on board.

At this time an elderly man was taken prisoner, bound, and sent on board in the boat, with the heads of his two companions. I never saw horror so strongly pictured as in the face of this man, nor so violent a transition to extravagant joy, as when he was united and told he might go away in safety. He shewed us he did not want gratitude, as he frequently afterwards returned with presents of provisions, and also did us other services.

Soon after the village was destroyed, we saw, coming down the hill, a man attended by fifteen or twenty boys, holding pieces of white cloth, green boughs, and plaintains in their hands. I knew not how it happened, that this peaceful embassy, as soon as they were within reach, received the fire of a party of our men. This, however, did not stop them. They continued their procession, and the officer on duty came up in time to prevent a second discharge. As they approached nearer, it was found to be our much esteemed friend Kaireেকেea, the priest, who had fled on our setting fire to the village, and had now returned, and desired to be sent on board the *Resolution*.

When we arrived, we found him exceedingly grave and thoughtful. We endeavoured to make him understand the necessity we were under of setting fire to the village, by which his house, and those of his brethren, were unintentionally consumed. He expostulated a little with us on our want of friendship, and on our ingratitude. And indeed it was not till now, that we learned the whole extent of the injury we had done them. He told us, that relying on the promises I had made them, and on the assurances they had afterwards received from the men, who had brought us the remains of Captain Cook, they had not removed their effects back into the country, with the rest of the inhabitants, but had put every thing that was valuable of their own, as well as what they had collected from us, into a house close to the *Morai*, where they had the mortification to see it all set on fire by us.

On coming on board, he had seen the heads of his countrymen lying on the deck, at which he was exceedingly shocked, and desired, with great earnestness, that they might be thrown overboard. This request Captain Clerke immediately ordered to be complied with.

In the evening the watering party returned on board, having met with no further interruption. We
passed

passed a gloomy night; the cries and lamentations we heard on the shore being far more dreadful than ever. Our only consolation was, the hope that we should have no occasion, in future, for a repetition of such severities.

It is very extraordinary, that amidst all these disturbances, the women of the island, who were on board, never offered to leave us, nor discovered the smallest apprehensions either for themselves, or their friends on shore. So entirely unconcerned did they appear, that some of them, who were on deck when the town was in flames, seemed to admire the sight, and cried out, that it was maitai, or very fine.

The next morning, Koah came off as usual to the ships. As there existed no longer any necessity for keeping terms with him, I was allowed to have my own way. When he approached towards the side of the ship, singing his song, and offering me a hog and some plantains, I ordered him to keep off, cautioning him never to appear again without Captain Cook's bones, lest his life should pay the forfeit of his frequent breach of promise. He did not appear much mortified with this reception, but went immediately on shore, and joined a party of his countrymen, who were pelting the waterers with stones.

The natives being at last convinced that it was not the want of ability to punish them, which had hitherto made us tolerate their provocations, desisted from giving us further molestation; and, in the evening a chief, called Eappo, who had seldom visited us, but whom we knew to be a man of the very first consequence, came with presents from the king to sue for peace. The presents were received, and he was dismissed with the same answer which had before been given, that until the remains of Captain Cook should be restored, no peace would be granted. We learned from this person, that the flesh of all the bodies of our people, together with the bones of the trunks, had been burnt; that the limb bones of the

marines had been divided amongst the inferior chiefs ; and that those of Captain Cook had been disposed of in the following manner : the head to a great chief, called Kahoo-opeon ; the hair to Mahia-mahia ; and the legs, thighs, and arms, to the king. After it was dark, many of the inhabitants came off with roots and other vegetables ; and we also received two large presents of the same articles from Kaireekeea.

The 19th was chiefly taken up in sending and receiving the messages which passed between Captain Clerke and the king. Eappo was very pressing that one of our officers should go on shore ; and, in the mean time, offered to remain an hostage on board. This request, however it was not thought proper to comply with ; and he left us with a promise of bringing the bones the next day. At the beach the waterers did not meet with the least opposition from the natives ; who, notwithstanding our cautious behaviour, came amongst us again, without the smallest appearance of diffidence or apprehension.

About ten in the morning of the 20th, we saw a great number of people descending the hill, which is over the beach, in a kind of procession, each man carrying a sugar-cane on his two shoulders, and bread-fruit, taro, and plantains, in his hand. They were preceded by two drummers ; who, when they came to the water-side, sat down by a white flag, and began to beat their drums, while those who had followed them advanced, one by one ; and, having deposited the presents they had brought, retired in the same order. Soon after, Eappo came in sight, in his long feathered cloak, bearing something with great solemnity in his hands ; and having placed himself on a rock, he made signs for a boat to be sent him.

Captain Clerke conjecturing that he had brought the bones of Captain Cook, which proved to be the fact, went himself in the pinnace to receive them, and

and ordered me to attend them in the cutter. When we arrived at the beach, Eappo came into the pinnace, and delivered to the captain the bones, wrapped up in a large quantity of fine new cloth, and covered with a spotted cloak of black and white feathers. He afterwards attended us to the Resolution, but could not be prevailed on to go on board; probably not choosing, from a sense of decency, to be present at the opening of the bundle. We found in it both the hands of Capt. Cook, entire, which were well known from a remarkable scar on one of them, that divided the thumb from the fore-finger, the whole length of the metacarpal bone; the skull, but with the scalp separated from it, and the bones that form the face wanting; the scalp, with the hair upon it cut short, and the ears adhering to it: the bones of both arms, with the skin of the fore-arms hanging to them; the thigh and leg bones joined together, but without the feet. The ligaments of the joints entire; and the whole bore evident marks of having been in the fire, except the hands, which had the flesh left upon them, and were cut in several places, and crammed with salt, apparently with an intention of preserving them. The scalp had a cut in the back part of it, but the skull was free from any fracture. The lower jaw, which was wanting, Eappo told us, had been seized by a chief, and that the king was using every means to recover it.

The next morning (Sunday) Eappo and the king's son came on board, and brought with them the remaining bones of Captain Cook, and the barrels of his gun, his shoes, and other trifles that belonged to him. Eappo took great pains to convince us, that the king, Mahia-mahia, and himself, were most heartily desirous of peace; that they had given the most convincing proof of it in their power; and that they had been prevented from giving it sooner by the other chiefs, many of whom were still our enemies. He lamented with the greatest sorrow, the death of six chiefs we had killed, one of whom was our best friend. The cutter, he told us,

was

was taken away by Pareea's people; very probably in revenge for the blow that was given him; and that it was broken up the next day.

Nothing now remained but to perform the last offices to our great, though unfortunate commander. Eappo was dismissed with orders to taboo all the bay; and in the afternoon, the bones having been put into a coffin, and the service read over them, they were committed to the deep, with the usual military honours. What our feelings were on this occasion, I leave the world to conceive; those who were present know, that it is not in my power to express them.

During the forenoon of the 22d, not a canoe was seen paddling in the bay; the taboo which Eappo had laid on it the day before, at our request, not being yet taken off. At length Eappo came off to us. We assured him, that we were now entirely satisfied; and that as the orono was buried, all the remembrance of what had passed was buried with him. We afterwards desired him to take off the taboo, and to make it known that the people might bring their provisions as usual. The ships were soon surrounded with canoes, and many of the chiefs came on board, expressing great sorrow at what had happened, and their satisfaction at our reconciliation. Several of our friends, who did not visit us, sent presents of large hogs, and other provisions. Amongst the rest came the old treacherous Koah, but was refused admittance.

As we had now every thing ready for sea, Captain Clerke imagining, that, if the news of our proceedings should reach the islands to leeward before us, it might have a very bad effect, gave orders to unmoor. About eight in the evening we dismissed the natives; and Eappo and the friendly Kaireekeea took an affectionate leave of us. We immediately weighed, and stood out of the bay. The natives were collected on the shore in great numbers; and as we passed along, received our last farewells with every mark of affection and good-will.

His first object was to search for an harbour on the S. E. side of Mowee. Being driven, however, by the easterly winds and current, he was not able to gain it, but, on the 1st of March, anchored again off the island of Atooi. The great business there was to procure water and provisions; but the party employed on shore for this purpose, were in the most imminent danger. Nothing but the moderation and management of lieutenant King could have prevented a repetition of the catastrophe of Owhyhee. Harmony however was restored by the interposition of the chiefs, who attributed this hostile circumstance to a want of subordination, which was the natural consequence of the civil dissensions which then reigned in the islands, and which were occasioned by the goats which Capt. Cook had left at Oneeheow, and which were all destroyed in the contest. On the 8th, Capt. Clerke sailed from Atooi, and anchored the same afternoon off Oneeheow. On the 12th he finally left these islands.

We have already given various particulars of the Sandwich Islands, in our description of the island of Atooi. It will be now proper to add a few observations. They consist of a group of eleven in number, extending in lat. from 18 deg. 54 min. to 22 deg. 15 min. north; and in long. from 199 deg. 36 min. to 205 deg. 06 min. E. They were named the Sandwich Islands by Captain Cook, in honour of the earl of Sandwich, under whose auspices this voyage was undertaken. The climate here differs very little from that of the West India islands, which lie in the same latitude. Whether they are subject to the same violent winds and hurricanes could not be discovered, as the ships were not there in any of the stormy months; but Captain King thinks it probable, that in this respect, they resemble the Society and Friendly Islands, which are in a great measure free from these dreadful visitations.

Of the quadrupeds in these islands, the only sort worthy of observation are the dogs, and that merely on account of the manner in which they are treated here;

here; a manner so different from the Europeans. These dogs are about the size of the common turnspit; exceeding sluggish in their nature; which may be more owing to the manner in which they are treated, than to their natural disposition. They are, in general, fed, and left to herd, with the hogs; nor did there appear one instance in which a dog was made a companion in the manner we do in Europe. Indeed, the custom of eating them is an insuperable bar to their admission into society; and as there are neither beasts of prey in the islands, nor objects of chase, it is probable that the social qualities of the dog, his fidelity, attachment, and sagacity, will remain unknown to the natives.

With respect to the vegetables, the most remarkable were several large roots, brought to the ships at Oneeheow. They were of a brown colour, shaped like a yam, and from six to ten pounds in weight. The juice, which it yields in great abundance, is very sweet, and of a pleasant taste, and was found to be an excellent substitute for sugar. The natives are very fond of it, and use it as an article of their common diet; and our people also found it very palatable and wholesome. It was supposed to be the root of some kind of fern.

The natives of these islands are, in general, above the middle size, and well made; they walk very gracefully, run nimbly, and are capable of bearing great fatigue; though, upon the whole, the men are somewhat inferior, in point of strength and activity, to the Friendly Islanders, and the women less delicately limbed than those of Otaheite. Their complexion is rather darker than that of the Otaheiteans, and they are not altogether so handsome a people. However, many of both sexes had fine open countenances; and the women in particular had good eyes and teeth, and a sweetness and sensibility of look, which rendered them very engaging. Their hair is of a brownish black, and neither uniformly straight, like that of the Indians in America, nor uniformly curling, as among the African negroes, but varying, in this respect, like the hair of Europeans.

Europeans. One striking peculiarity, in the features of every part of this great nation, I do not remember to have seen any where mentioned; which is, that even in the handsomest faces, there is alway a fulness of the nostril, without any flatness or spreading of the nose, that distinguishes them from Europeans. It is not improbable that this may be the effect of their usual mode of salutation, which is performed by pressing the ends of their noses together.

Notwithstanding the irreparable loss we suffered from the sudden resentment and violence of the people, yet, in justice to their general conduct, it must be acknowledged, that they are of the most mild and affectionate disposition; equally remote from the extreme levity and fickleness of the Otaheiteans, and the distant gravity and reserve of the inhabitants of the Friendly Islands. They appear to live in the utmost harmony and friendship with one another. The women who had children, were remarkable for their tender and constant attention to them; and the men would often lend their assistance in those domestic offices, with a willingness that does credit to their feelings.

It must, however, be observed, that they fall very short of the other islanders in that best test of civilization, the respects paid to the women. Here they are not only deprived of the privilege of eating with the men, but the best sorts of food are tabooed, or forbidden them. They are not allowed to eat pork, turtle, several kinds of fish, and some species of the plantains; and we are told that a poor girl got a terrible beating for having eaten, on board our ship, one of these interdicted articles. In their domestic life, they appear to live almost entirely by themselves, and though we did not observe any instances of personal ill treatment, yet it was evident they had little regard or attention paid them.

The great hospitality and kindness, with which we were received by them, have been frequently remarked; and indeed they make the principal part of our transactions with them. Whenever we came on shore,

there was a constant struggle who should be the most forward in making us little presents, bringing refreshments, or shewing some other mark of their respect. The old people never failed of receiving us with tears of joy ; seemed highly gratified with being allowed to touch us, and were constantly making comparisons between themselves and us, with the strongest marks of humility. The young women were not less kind and engaging, and, until they found, notwithstanding our endeavours to prevent it, that they had reason to repent of our acquaintance, attached themselves to us without the least reserve.

In justice however to the sex, it must be observed, that these ladies were probably all of the lower class of the people ; for I am strongly inclined to believe, that, excepting the few, whose names are mentioned in the course of the narrative, we did not see any woman of rank in the island.

Their natural capacity seems, in no respect, below the common standard of mankind. Their improvements in agriculture, and the perfection of their manufactures, are certainly adequate to the circumstances of their situation, and the natural advantages they enjoy. The eager curiosity with which they attended the armourer's forge, and the many expedients they had invented, even before we left the islands, for working the iron they had procured from us, in such forms as were best adapted for their purposes, were strong proofs of docility and ingenuity.

Our unfortunate friend Kaneena, (killed with his brother and fifteen of the natives in the fatal conflict with captain Cook) possessed a degree of judicious curiosity, and a quickness of conception, which was rarely met with amongst these people. He was very inquisitive after our customs and manners ; asked after our king ; the nature of our government ; our numbers ; the method of building our ships ; our houses ; the produce of our country ; whether we had wars ; with whom ; and on what occasions ; and in what manner they were carried on ; who was our God ; and many other

other questions of the same nature, which indicated an understanding of great comprehension.

We met with two instances of persons disordered in their minds ; the one, a man at Owhyhee, the other a woman at Oneeheow. It appeared, from the particular attention and respect paid to them, that the opinion of their being inspired by the Divinity, which obtains among most of the nations of the east, is also received here.

The inhabitants of these islands differ from those of the Friendly Isles, in suffering, almost universally, their beards to grow. There were, indeed, a few, amongst whom was the old king, that cut it off entirely ; and others that wore it only upon their upper lip. The same variety, in the manner of wearing the hair, is also observable here, as among the other islanders of the south seas ; besides which, they have a fashion, as far as we know, peculiar to themselves. They cut it close on each side of the head, down to the ears, leaving a ridge, of about a small hand's breadth, running from the forehead to the neck ; which, when the hair is thick and curling, has the form of a crest of the ancient helmet. Others wear large quantities of false hair, flowing down their backs in long ringlets ; and others again tie it into a single round bunch on the top of the head, almost as large as the head itself ; and some into five or six distinct bunches. They daub their hair with a grey clay, mixed with powdered shells, which they keep in balls, and chew it into a kind of soft paste, when they have occasion to make use of it. This keeps the hair smooth, and, in time, changes it to a pale yellow colour.

Both sexes wear necklaces, made of strings of small variegated shells ; and an ornament, in the form of the handle of a cup, about two inches long, and half an inch broad, made of wood, stone, or ivory, finely polished, which is hung about the neck, by fine threads of twisted hair, doubled sometimes an hundred fold. Instead of this ornament, some of them wear on their

breast, a small human figure, made of bone, suspended in the same manner.

The fan, or fly-flap, is also an ornament used by both sexes. The most ordinary kind are made of the fibres of the cocoa-nut, tied loose in bunches to the top of a smooth polished handle. The tail feathers of the cock, and of the tropic bird, are also used in the same manner; but the most valuable are those which have the handle made of the arm or leg bones of an enemy slain in battle, and which are preserved with great care, and handed down, from father to son, as trophies of inestimable value.

The custom of tatowing the body, they have in common with the rest of the natives of the South Sea islands, but it is only at New Zealand, and the Sandwich Islands that they tatow the face.

From some information we received, relative to the custom of tatowing, we were inclined to think, that it is frequently intended as a sign of mourning on the death of a chief, or any other calamitous event. For we were often told, that such a particular mark was in memory of such a chief, and so of the rest. It may be here too observed, that the lowest class are often tatowed with a mark, that distinguishes them as the property of the several chiefs to whom they belong.

The dress of the men generally consists of a piece of thick cloth called the maro, about ten or twelve inches broad, which they pass between the legs, and tie round the waist. This is the common dress of all ranks of people. Their mats, some of which are beautifully manufactured, are of various sizes, but mostly about five feet long, and four broad. These they throw over their shoulders, and bring forward before; but they are seldom used, except in time of war, for which purpose they seem better adapted than for ordinary use, being of a thick and cumbersome texture, and capable of breaking the blow of a stone, or any blunt weapon. Their feet are generally bare, except when they have occasion to travel over the burnt stones, when they secure them with a sort of sandal made of cords, twisted
2 from

from the fibres of the cocoa-nut. Such is the ordinary dress of the islanders; but they have another, appropriated to their chiefs, and used on ceremonious occasions, consisting of a feathered cloak and helmet, which, in point of beauty and magnificence, is perhaps nearly equal to that of any nation in the world. These cloaks are made of different lengths, in proportion to the rank of the wearer, some of them reaching no lower than the middle, others trailing on the ground. The inferior chiefs have also a short cloak, resembling the former, made of the long tail-feathers of the cock, the tropic and man of war birds, with a broad border of the small and yellow feathers and a collar of the same. Others again are made of feathers entirely white, with variegated borders. The helmet has a strong lining of wicker-work, capable of breaking the blow of any warlike instrument, and seems evidently designed for that purpose. These feathered dresses seemed to be exceedingly scarce, appropriated to persons of the highest rank, and worn by the men only.

The exact resemblance between this habit and the cloak and helmet formerly worn by the Spaniards, was too striking not to excite our curiosity to inquire, whether there were any probable grounds for supposing it to have been borrowed from them. After exerting every means in our power, of obtaining information on this subject, we found that they had no immediate knowledge of any other nation whatever; nor any tradition remaining among them of these islands having been ever visited before by any such ships as ours. But notwithstanding the result of these inquiries, the uncommon form of this habit appears to me a sufficient proof of its European origin; especially when added to another circumstance, that it is a singular deviation from the general resemblance in dress, which prevails amongst all the branches of this tribe, dispersed through the South Sea. We were driven indeed, by this conclusion, to a supposition of the shipwreck of some Buccaneer, or Spanish ship, in the neighbourhood of these islands. But when it is recollected,

lected, that the course of the Spanish trade from the Acapulco to the Manillas, is but a few degrees to the southward of the Sandwich Islands, in their passage out, and to the northward, on their return, this supposition will not appear in the least improbable.

The common dress of the women bears a close resemblance to that of the men. They wrap round the waist a piece of cloth, that reaches half way down the thighs; and sometimes in the cool of the evening, they appeared with loose pieces of fine cloth thrown over their shoulders, like the women of Otaheite. The pau is another dress, very frequently worn by the younger part of the sex. It is made of the thinnest and finest sort of cloth, wrapt several times round the waist, and descending to the leg; so as to have exactly the appearance of a full short petticoat. Their hair is cut short behind, and turned up before, as is the fashion among the Otaheiteans and New Zealanders; all of whom differ in this respect from the women of the Friendly Islands, who wear their hair long. We saw, indeed, one woman in Karakakooa Bay, whose hair was arranged in a very singular manner; it was turned up behind, and brought over the forehead, and then doubled back, so as to form a sort of shade for the face, like a small bonnet.

Their necklaces are made of shells, or of a hard shining red berry. Besides which, they wear wreaths of dried flowers of the Indian mallow; and another beautiful ornament called eraie, which is generally put about the neck, but is sometimes tied like a garland round the hair, and sometimes worn in both these ways at once. It is a ruff of the thickness of a finger, made in a curious manner, of exceeding small feathers, woven so close together as to form a surface as smooth as that of the richest velvet. The ground was generally of a red colour, with alternate circles of green, yellow, and black.

At Atooi, some of the women wore little figures of the turtle, neatly formed of wood or ivory, tied on their fingers, in the manner we wear rings. Why this animal

mal is thus particularly distinguished, I leave to the conjectures of the curious. There is also an ornament made of shells, fastened in rows on a ground of strong netting, so as to strike each other, when in motion; which both men and women, when they dance, tie either round the arm or the ankle, or below the knee. Instead of shells, they sometimes make use of dog's teeth, and a hard red berry, resembling that of the holly.

There remains to be mentioned another ornament, (if such it may be called) the figure of which may be conceived by the following description: It is a kind of mask, made of a large gourd, with holes cut in it for the eyes and nose. The top was stuck full of small green twigs, which, at a distance, had the appearance of an elegant waving plume; and from the lower part hung narrow stripes of cloth, resembling a beard. We never saw these masks worn but twice, and both times by a number of people together in a canoe, who came to the side of the ship, laughing and drolling, with an air of masquerading. Whether they may not likewise be used as a defence for the head against stones, for which they seem best designed, or in some of their public games, or be merely intended for the purposes of mummery, we could never inform ourselves.

In addition to the furniture of their houses, which has been accurately described by captain Cook, I have only to add, that at one end are mats on which they sleep, with wooden pillows, or sleeping stools, exactly like those of the Chinese. Some of the better sort of houses have a court-yard before them, neatly railed in, with smaller houses built round it, for their servants. In this aerea they generally eat, and sit during the day-time. In the sides of the hills, and among the steep rocks, we also observed several holes or caves, which appeared to be inhabited; but as the entrance was defended with wicker-work, and we also found, in the only one that was visited, a stone fence running across it

it within, we imagine they are principally designed for places of retreat, in case of an attack from an enemy.

The way of spending their time appears to be very simple, and to admit of little variety. They rise with the sun; and, after enjoying the cool of the evening, retire to rest a few hours after sun-set. The making of canoes and mats forms the occupations of the erees; the women are employed in manufacturing cloth; and the tow-tows are principally engaged in the plantations and fishing. Their idle hours are filled up with various amusements. Their young men and women are fond of dancing; and, on more solemn occasions, they have boxing and wrestling matches, after the manner of the Friendly Islands: though, in all these respects, they are much inferior to the latter.

Their dances have a much nearer resemblance to those of the New Zealanders, than of the Otaheiteans or Friendly Islanders. They are prefaced with a slow, solemn song, in which all the party join, moving their legs, and gently striking their breast, in a manner, and with attitudes, that are perfectly easy and graceful; and so far they are the same with the dances of the Society Islands.

Their music is of a ruder kind, having neither flutes nor reeds, nor instruments of any other sort, that we saw, except drums of various sizes. But their songs, which they sung in parts, and accompanied with a gentle motion of the arms, in the same manner as the Friendly Islanders, had a very pleasing effect.

It is very remarkable, that the people of these islands are great gamblers. They have a game very much like our draughts; but, if one may judge from the number of squares, it is much more intricate. The board is about two feet long, and is divided into two hundred and thirty-eight squares, of which there are fourteen in a row, and they make use of black and white pebbles, which they move from square to square.

There is another game, which consists in hiding a stone under a piece of cloth, which one of the parties spreads out, and rumples in such a manner, that the place

place where the stone lies is difficult to be distinguished. The antagonist, with a stick, then strikes the part of the cloth where he imagines the stone to be; and as the chances are, upon the whole, considerably against his hitting it, odds of all degrees, varying with the opinion of the skill of the parties, are laid on the side of him who hides.

Besides these games, they frequently amuse themselves with racing matches between the boys and girls; and here again they wager with great spirit. I saw a man in a most violent rage, tearing his hair, and beating his breast, after losing the hatchets at one of these races, which he had just before purchased from us with half his substance.

Swimming is not only a necessary art, in which both their men and women are more expert than any people we have hitherto seen, but a favourite diversion amongst them. One particular mode, in which they sometimes amuse themselves with this exercise, in Karakakooa Bay, appeared most perilous and extraordinary, and well deserving a distinct relation.

The surf, which breaks on the coast round the bay, extends to the distance of about one hundred and fifty yards from the shore, within which space the surges of the sea, accumulating from the shallowness of the water, are dashed against the beach with prodigious violence. Whenever, from stormy weather, or any extraordinary swell at sea, the impetuosity of the surf is increased to its utmost height, they choose that time for their amusement, which is performed in the following manner: Twenty or thirty of the natives, taking each a long narrow board, rounded at the ends, set out together from the shore. The first wave they meet, they plunge under, and suffer it to roll over them, rise again beyond it, and make the best of their way, by swimming out into the sea. The second wave is encountered in the same manner with the first; the great difficulty is in setting the proper moment of diving under it, which, if missed, the person is caught by the surf, and driven back again with great violence; and all his

dexterity is then required to prevent himself from being dashed against the rocks. As soon as they have gained, by these repeated efforts, the smooth water beyond the surf, they lay themselves at length on their board, and prepare for their return. As the surf consists of a number of waves, of which every third is remarked to be always much larger than the others, and to flow higher on the shore, the rest breaking in the intermediate space, their first object is to place themselves on the summit of the largest surge, by which they are driven along with amazing rapidity towards the shore. If by mistake they should place themselves on one of the smaller waves, which breaks before they reach the land, or should not be able to keep their plank in a proper direction on the top of the swell, they are left to the fury of the next, and to avoid it, are obliged again to dive and regain the place from which they set out. Those who succeed in their object of reaching the shore, have still the greatest danger to encounter. The coast being guarded by a chain of rocks, with here and there a small opening between them, they are obliged to steer their board on one of these, or, in case of failure, to quit it, before they reach the rocks, and plunging under the wave, make the best of their way back again. This is reckoned very disgraceful, and is often attended with the loss of the board, which I have often seen, with great terror, dashed to pieces, at the very moment the islander quitted it. The boldness and address, with which we saw them perform these difficult and dangerous manœuvres, was altogether astonishing, and is scarcely to be credited.

An accident, of which I was a near spectator, shews at how early a period they are so far familiarized to the water, as both to lose all fear of it, and to set its dangers at defiance. A canoe being overfet, in which was a woman with her children, one of them an infant, who, I am convinced, was not more than four years old, seemed highly delighted with what had happened, swimming about at its ease, and playing an hundred tricks, till the canoe was put to right again.

Besides the amusements I have already mentioned, the young children have one, which was much played at, and shewed no small degree of dexterity. They take a short stick, with a peg sharpened at both ends, running through one extremity of it, and extending about an inch on each side; and throwing up a ball made of green leaves moulded together, and secured with twine, they catch it on the point of the peg; and immediately throwing it up again from the peg, they turn the stick round, and thus keep catching it on each point alternately, without missing it for a considerable time. They are not less expert at another game of the same nature, tossing up in the air, and catching in their turns a number of these balls; so that we frequently saw little children thus keep in motion five at a time. With this latter play, the young people likewise divert themselves at the Friendly Islands.

The great resemblance which prevails in the mode of agriculture and navigation, amongst all the inhabitants of the South Sea Islands, leaves me very little to add on those heads.—The most curious specimens of their sculpture, which we saw during our second visit, are the bowls in which the chiefs drink ava. These are usually about eight or ten inches in diameter, perfectly round, and beautifully polished. They are supported by three, and sometimes four small human figures in various attitudes. Some of them rest on the hands of their supporters, extended over the head; others on the head and hands; and some on the shoulders. The figures, I am told, are accurately proportioned, and neatly finished, and even the anatomy of the muscles, in supporting the weight, well expressed.

Their cloth is made of the same materials, and in the same manner as at the Friendly and Society Islands. That which is designed to be painted, is of a thick and strong texture, several folds being beaten and incorporated together; after which it is cut in breadths, about two or three feet wide, and is painted in a variety of patterns, with a comprehensive and regularity of design, that bespeaks infinite taste and fancy. The ex-

actness with which the most intricate patterns are continued, is the more surprising, when we consider that they have no stamps, and that the whole is done by the eye, with pieces of bamboo cane dipped in paint; the hand being supported by another piece of the cane, in the manner practised by our painters. Their colours are extracted from the same berries, and other vegetable substances, as at Otaheite.

The business of painting belongs entirely to the women, and is called kipparee; and it is remarkable that they always gave the same name to our writing. The young women would often take the pen out of our hands, and shew us that they knew the use of it as well as we did; at the same time telling us, that our pens were not so good as theirs. They looked upon a sheet of written paper, as a piece of cloth striped after the fashion of our country; and it was not without the utmost difficulty that we could make them understand that our figures had a meaning in them, which theirs had not.

Their mats are made of the leaves of pandanus; and, as well as their cloths, are beautifully worked in a variety of patterns, and stained of different colours. Some have a ground of pale green, spotted with squares, or romhoids of red; others are of a straw colour, spotted with green; and others are worked with beautiful stripes, either in straight or waving lines of red and brown. In this article of manufacture, whether we regard the strength, fineness, or beauty, they certainly excel the whole world.

Their fishing-hooks are made of mother-of-pearl, bone, or wood, pointed and barbed with small bones, or tortoise-shell. They are of various sizes and forms; but the most common are about two or three inches long, and made in the shape of a small fish, which serves as a bait, having a bunch of feathers tied to the head or tail. Those with which they fish for sharks, are of a very large size, being generally six or eight inches long. Considering the materials of which these
hooks

hooks are made, their strength and neatness are really astonishing; and in fact we found them upon trial, much superior to our own.

The line which they use for fishing, for making nets, and for other domestic purposes, is of different degrees of fineness, and is made of the bark of the touta, or cloth tree, neatly and evenly twisted in the same manner as our common twine; and may be continued to any length. They have a finer sort, made of the mark of a small shrub called Areemah; and the finest is made of human hair; but this last is chiefly used for things of ornament. They also make a cordage of a stronger kind, for the rigging of their canoes, from the fibrous coatings of the cocoa-nuts. Some of this we purchased for our own use, and found it well adapted to the smaller kinds of running rigging. They likewise make another sort of cordage, which is flat, and exceedingly strong, and used principally in lashing the roofing of their houses, or whatever they wish to fasten tight together. This last is not twisted like the former sorts, but is made of the fibrous strings of the cocoa-nut's coat, plaited with the fingers, in the manner our sailors make their points for the reefing of sails.

The gourds grow to so enormous a size, that some of them are capable of containing from ten to twelve gallons, are applied to all manner of domestic purposes; and in order to fit them the better to their respective uses, they have the ingenuity to give them different forms, by tying bandages round them during their growth. Thus, some of them are of a long cylindrical form, as best adapted to contain their fishing-tackle; others are of a dish form, and these serve to hold their salt, and salted provisions, their puddings, vegetables, &c. which two sorts have neat close covers, made likewise of the gourd; others again are exactly the shape of a bottle with a long neck, and in these they keep their water. They have likewise a method of scouring them with a heated instrument, so as to give them the appearance of being painted in a variety of neat and elegant designs.

From

From the Sandwich Islands captain Clerke bent his course to the coast of Kamtschatka, in sight of which he came on the 22d of April, 1779. On the 25th he lost sight of the *Discovery*; but coming to anchor in the Bay of Awatka on the 28th, at some distance from the small town and harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul, he had the satisfaction of seeing her stand into the bay on the first of May. This town, otherwise called Petropaulowski, consisted only of a few miserable log-houses and some comical huts, raised on poles. But, in this wretched extremity of the earth, situated beyond every thing that could be conceived to be most barbarous and inhospitable, and, as it were, out of the very reach of civilization, barricaded with ice, and covered with summer snow, in a poor miserable port, far inferior to the meanest of our fishing towns, they met with feelings of humanity, joined to a greatness of mind, which would have done honour to any nation or climate.

The arrival of the ships gave great alarm at first to the commander at Petropaulowski; but proper explanations and consequent civilities soon took place. Mr. King, Mr. Webber, and two sailors, who had each a boat-hook, being sent to wait upon the commander, who was a serjeant in the Russian service, met with great difficulties in walking over the ice, which extended half a mile from the shore. On their return, therefore, the serjeant provided a sledge, drawn by five dogs, with a driver for each of them. The sailors were highly delighted with this mode of conveyance; and what diverted them still more was, that a sledge was appropriated to each of the boat-hooks.

As there was no possibility of procuring provisions or naval stores at Petropaulowski, and as the serjeant could not act in this affair without orders from the Russian commander of Kamtschatka, who resided at Bolcheretzk, a town on the west side of the peninsula, distant from Petropaulowski about 135 miles; the serjeant, on the first interview, had dispatched a messenger to his superior officer. This messenger, who was
sent

sent off on the 29th, about noon, in a sledge drawn by dogs, returned early in the morning of the 3d of May; so that he was little more than three days and a half in performing a journey of 270 miles.

On the 4th, a Mr. Fedositsch, a Russian merchant, and a German, named Port (who, in the sequel, proved very useful as an interpreter) waited on captain Clerke with a letter from major Behm, the commander of Kamtschatka. This letter was merely complimentary, inviting captain Clerke and his officers to Bolcheretsk, to which place the people who brought it were to conduct them.

Captain Gore, Mr. King, and Mr. Webber being appointed by captain Clerke to wait upon the commander at Bolcheretsk, they set out on the 7th, accompanied by Messrs. Fedositsch and Port, and two Cossacks. Part of the way they proceeded by the tedious and difficult navigation of the river Awatska. In the evening they erected a marquee, and slept on shore. In the morning of the 8th, they were met by the Toion or chief of the Ostrog of Karatchin (an Ostrog, is a small town, fortified by pallisadoes, where the Russian Cossacks and other inhabitants reside) who, having been apprized of their coming, had provided canoes that were better contrived for navigating the lighter part of the river. When they arrived at the Ostrog, they were received at the water-side by the Kamtschadale men and women, and some Russian servants belonging to Fedositsch. They were all dressed out in their best clothes. Those of the women were pretty and gay, consisting of a small loose robe of white nankeen, gathered close round the neck, and fastened with a collar of coloured silk. Over this they wear a short jacket without sleeves, made of different coloured nankeens, and petticoats of a slight Chinese silk. Their shifts, which had sleeves down to the wrists, were also of silk; and coloured silk handkerchiefs were bound round their heads, concealing entirely the hair of the married women, while those that were unmarried brought the handkerchief under the hair, and suffered it to flow loose behind.

This

This Östrog was pleasantly situated by the side of the river, and consisted of three log-houses; three jourts, or houses made under ground; and nineteen balagans, or summer habitations. We were conducted to the dwelling of the Toion, who was a plain decent man, born of a Russian woman, by a Kamtschadale father. His house, like all the rest in this country, was divided into two apartments. A long narrow table, with a bench round it, was all the furniture we saw in the outer; and the household stuff of the inner, which was the kitchen, was no less simple and scanty. But the kind attention of our host, and the hearty welcome we received, more than compensated for the poverty of his lodgings.

His wife proved an excellent cook, and served us with fish and game of different sorts, and various kinds of heath berries, that had been kept since the last year.

While we were at dinner in this miserable hut, the guests of the people, with whose existence we had been scarce acquainted, and at the extremity of the habitable globe, a solitary half-worn pewter spoon, whose shape was familiar to us, attracted our attention; and, on examination, we found it stamped on the back with the word "London." I cannot pass over this circumstance in silence, out of gratitude for the many pleasant thoughts, the anxious hopes, and tender remembrances it excited in us. Those who have experienced the effects that long absence and extreme distance from their native country produce on the mind, will readily conceive the pleasure such trifling incidents can give. To the philosopher and the politician they may perhaps suggest reflections of a different nature.

After the most hospitable treatment during the course of the day, Mr. King and his party, who were now to proceed on sledges, retired to rest, having previously agreed with their conductors to be called up as soon as the ground was hard enough to bear the sledges. At nine in the evening, they were awaked by the melancholy howlings of the dogs, which continued all the time the baggage was lashing upon the sledges; but, as

soon

soon as the dogs were yoked, and they were all prepared to let out, this changed into a light cheerful yelping, which entirely ceased the instant they marched off.

The body of this sledge is about four feet and a half long, and a foot wide, made in the form of a crescent, of light tough wood, strongly bound together with wicker-work; which in those belonging to the better sort of people is elegantly stained of a red and blue colour, and the seat covered with bear-skins, and other furs. It is supported by four legs, about two feet high, which rest on two flat pieces of wood, five or six inches broad, extending a foot at each end beyond the body of the sledge. These are turned up before in the manner of the skate, and shod with the bones of some sea-animal. The forepart of the carriage is ornamented with thongs of leather, and tassels of coloured cloth; and from the cross bar, to which the harness is joined, are hung links of iron, or small bells, the jingling of which they conceive to be encouraging to the dogs. They are seldom used to carry more than one person at a time, who sits at one side, resting his feet on the lower part of the sledge, and carrying his provisions and other necessaries, wrapped up in a bundle behind him. The dogs are usually five in number, yoked two and two with a leader. The reins not being fastened to the head of the dogs, but to the collar, have little power over them, and are therefore generally hung upon the sledge, whilst the driver depends entirely on their obedience to his voice for the direction of them. With this view, the leader is always trained with a particular degree of care and attention; some of them rising to a most extraordinary value, on account of their docility and steadiness; insomuch, that for one of these, I am well assured, forty roubles (or ten pounds) was no unusual price. The driver is also provided with a crooked stick, which answers the purpose both of whip and reins; as by striking it into the snow, he is enabled to moderate the speed of the dogs, or even to stop them entirely; and when they are

lazz, or otherwise inattentive to his voice, he chastises them by throwing it at them. Upon these occasions, their dexterity in picking it up again is very remarkable, and forms the principal difficulty of their art. But it is indeed not surprising, that they should labour to be skilful in practice upon which their safety so materially depends. For, say they, if the driver should happen to lose his stick, the dogs will instantly perceive it, and unless their leader be of the most sober and resolute kind, they will immediately run a-head full speed, and never stop till they are quite spent. But as that will not be the case soon, it generally happens that either the carriage is overturned, dashed to pieces against the trees, or they hurry down some precipice, and are all buried in the snow. The accounts that were given us of the speed of these dogs, and of their extraordinary patience of hunger and fatigue, were scarcely credible, if they had not been supported by the best authority. We were ourselves witnesses of the great expedition with which the messenger, who had been dispatched to Bolcheretsk with the news of our arrival, returned to the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul, though the snow was, at this time, exceedingly soft. But I was informed by the commander of Kamptschatka, that this journey was generally performed in two days and a half; and that he had once received an express from the latter place in twenty-four hours.

The dogs are fed during the winter on the offals of dried and stinking fish; but are always deprived even of this miserable food a day before they set out on a journey, and never suffered to eat before they reach the end of it. We were also told, that it was not unusual for them to continue thus fasting two entire days, in which time they would perform a journey of 120 miles. These dogs are in shape somewhat like the Pomeranian breed, but considerably larger.

Travelling parties are often overtaken with dreadful storms of snow, on the approach of which, they drive with the utmost precipitation, into the nearest wood, and there are obliged to stay, till the tempest, which

frequently lasts six or seven days, is over ; the dogs remaining all this while quiet and inoffensive ; except that sometimes, when pressed by hunger, they will devour their reins, and other leathern parts of the harness.

As we did not choose to trust to our own skill, we had each of us a man to drive and guide the sledge, which, from the state the roads were now in, proved a very laborious task. For, as the thaw had advanced very considerably in the vallies, through which our road lay, we were under the necessity of keeping along the sides of the hills ; and this obliged our guides, who were provided with snow-shoes for that purpose, to support the sledges on the lower side with their shoulders for several miles together. I had a very good-humoured Cossack to attend me, who was, however, so very unskilful in his business, that we were overturned almost every minute, to the great entertainment of the rest of the company. Our party consisted in all of ten sledges. That in which captain Gore was carried, was made of two lashed together, and abundantly provided with furs and bear-skins ; it had ten dogs, yoked four a-breast ; as had also some of those that were heavy laden with baggage.

When we had proceeded about four miles, it began to rain ; which, added to the darkness of the night, threw us all into confusion. It was at last agreed, that we should remain where we were till day-light ; and accordingly we came to anchor in the snow, (for I cannot better express the manner in which the sledges were secured), and wrapping ourselves up in our furs, waited patiently for the morning. About three o'clock we were called on to set out, our guides being apprehensive that if we waited longer, we might be stopped by the thaw, and neither be able to proceed, nor to return. After encountering many difficulties, which were principally occasioned by the bad condition of the road, at two in the afternoon, we got safe to Ostrog, called Natchee kin, situated on the side of a stream, which falls into the Bolchoireka, a little way below the town. The distance between Karatchin and Natchee kin

is 38 wersts (or 25 miles) and had the hard frost continued, we should not, by their account, have been more than four hours in performing it; but the snow was so soft, that the dogs, almost at every step, sunk up to their bellies; and I was indeed much surprised at their being at all able to overcome the difficulties of so fatiguing a journey.

At Natcheequin we were received in the same hospitable manner as at Karatchin; and in the afternoon we went to visit a remarkable hot spring, near this village. We saw, at some distance, the steam rising from it, as from a boiling cauldron, and as we approached, perceived the air had a strong sulphurous smell. The main spring forms a basin of about three feet in diameter; besides which, there are a number of lesser springs of the same degree of heat, in the adjacent ground, so that the whole spot, to the extent of near an acre, was so hot, that we could not stand two minutes in the same place. The water flowing from these springs is collected in a small bathing pond, and afterwards forms a little rivulet; which, at the distance of about an hundred and fifty yards, falls into the river. The bath, they told us, had wrought great cures in several disorders, such as rheumatisms, swelled and contracted joints, and scorbutic ulcers. In the bathing-place, the thermometer at 100 degrees, or blood heat; but in the spring, after being immersed two minutes, it was ten degrees above boiling spirits. The thermometer in the air, at this time, was 34 deg. in the river 40 deg. and in the Toin's house, 64 deg. The ground where these springs broke out, is on a gentle ascent; behind which there is a green hill of a moderate size. I am sorry I was not sufficiently skilled in botany to examine the plants, which seemed to thrive here with great luxuriance; the wild garlic, indeed, forced itself on our notice, and was at this time springing up very vigorously.

The remainder of the way they proceeded in canoes up the river Bolchoireka, and on the 12th, in the

the forenoon, arrived at Bolcheretsk. They were received at the water side by the commander, in a manner the most engaging that could be conceived. In company with major Behm was captain Schmaleff, the second in command, and all the merchants of the place. They conducted us to the commander's house, where we were received by his lady with great civility, and found tea and other refreshments for us. After the first compliments were over, Mr. Webber was desired to acquaint the major with the object of our journey, with our want of naval stores, flour, and fresh provisions, and other necessities for the ships' crews, and at the same time to assure him, that we were sensible, from what we had already seen of the country about Awatska Bay, we could not expect much assistance from him in that quarter; that the impossibility of sending heavy brass stores across the peninsula, during the present season of the year, was but too apparent, from the difficulties we had met with on our journey; and that, long before any material change could take place, we should be under the necessity of proceeding on our voyage. We were here interrupted by the commander, who observed, that we did not know what they were capable of doing; that, at least, it was not his business to think of the difficulties of supplying our wants, but only to learn what were the articles we stood in need of, and the longest time we could allow him for procuring them. After expressing our sense of his obliging disposition, we gave him a list of the naval stores, the number of cattle, and the quantity of flour, we were directed to purchase, and told him, that we purposed recommencing our voyage about the 5th of June.

Captain King next relates many particulars of the well-supported politeness and attention which they experienced in the course of the day. Early in the morning, we received the compliments of the commander, of captain Schmaleff, and of the principal inhabitants of the town, who all honoured us with
visits

visits soon after. The two first having sent for Port, after we were gone to rest, and inquired of him what articles we seemed to be most in want of on board the ships; we found them prepared to insist on our sharing with the garrison under their command, in what little stock of provisions they had remaining. At the same time they lamented, that we had arrived at a season of the year, when there was always the greatest scarcity of every thing amongst them; the sloops not being yet arrived with their usual supply from Okotsk.

We agreed to accept the liberality of these hospitable strangers with the best grace we could; but on condition, that we might be made acquainted with the price of the articles we were to be supplied with; and that captain Clerke should give bills to the amount upon the Victualling Office in London. This the major positively refused; and whenever it was afterwards urged, stopped us short, by telling us, he was certain that he could not oblige his mistress more, than in giving every assistance in his power to her good friends and allies the English; and that it would be a particular satisfaction to her to hear, that in so remote a part of the world her dominions had afforded any relief to ships engaged in such services as ours; that he could not therefore act so contrary to the character of his empress, as to accept of any bills; but that, to accommodate the matter, he would take a bare attestation of the particulars, with which we might be furnished; and that this he should transmit to his court, as a certificate of having performed his duty. I shall leave (he continued) to the two courts all farther acknowledgments; but cannot consent to accept any thing of the kind alluded to.

When the matter was adjusted, he began to inquire about our private wants; saying, he should consider himself as ill used, if we had any dealings with the merchants, or applied to any other person except himself.

In return for such singular generosity, we had little to bestow but our admiration and our thanks. Fortunately, however, captain Clerke had sent by me a set of prints and maps, belonging to the last voyage of captain Cook, which he desired me to present in his name to the commander; who being an enthusiast in every thing relating to discoveries made in the present voyage, and as I judged, that a person in his situation, and of his turn of mind, would be exceedingly gratified by a communication of this sort, though, out of delicacy, he had forborn to ask more than a few general questions on the subject, I made no scruple to repose in him a confidence of which his whole conduct shewed him to be deserving.

I had the pleasure to find, that he felt this compliment, as I hoped he would, and was much struck at seeing, in one view, the whole of that coast, as well on the side of Asia as on that of America, of which his countrymen had been so many years employed in acquiring a partial and imperfect knowledge.

Excepting this mark of confidence, and the set of prints I have already mentioned, we had brought nothing with us that was in the least worth his acceptance; for it scarce deserves noticing, that I prevailed on his son, a young boy, to accept of a silver watch I happened to have about me; and I made his little daughter very happy with two pair of ear-rings, of French paste. Besides these trifles, I left captain Schmaleff the thermometer I had used on my journey; and he promised me to keep an exact register of the temperature of the air for one year, and to transmit it to Mr. Muller, with whom he had the pleasure of being acquainted.

Bolcheretzk is situated in a low swampy plain, that extends to the sea of Okotsk, being about 40 miles long, and of a considerable breadth. It lies on the N. side of the Bolchoi-reka, (or great river,) between
the

the mouth of the Gottsofka and the Bistraia, which here empty themselves into this river; and the peninsula, on which it stands, has been separated from the continent by a large canal, the work of the present commander; which has not only added to its strength as a fortress, but has made it much less liable than it was before to inundations. Below the town, the river is from six to eight feet deep, and about a quarter of a mile broad. It empties itself into the sea of Okotsk, at the distance of twenty-two miles; where, according to Krasheninicoff, it is capable of admitting vessels of a considerable size. There is no corn of any species cultivated in this part of the country; and major Behm informed me, that his was the only garden that had yet been planted. This ground was for the most part covered with snow, that which was free from it, appeared full of small hillocks, of a black turfy nature. I saw about twenty or thirty cows, and the major had six stout horses. These and their dogs are the only tame animals they possess; the necessity they are under, in the present state of the country, of keeping great numbers of the latter, making it impossible to bring up any cattle that are not in size and strength a match for them. For, during the summer season, their dogs are entirely let loose, and left to provide for themselves; which makes them so exceedingly ravenous, that they will sometimes even attack the bullocks.

The houses in Bolcheretsk are all of one fashion, being built of logs and thatched. That of the commander is much larger than the rest, consisting of three rooms of a considerable size, neatly papered, and which might have been reckoned handsome, if the tale with which the windows were covered, had not given them a poor and disagreeable appearance. The town consists of several rows of low buildings, each consisting of five or six dwellings, connected together, with a long common passage running the length

length of them ; on one side of which is the kitchen and store-house ; and on the other the dwelling apartments. Besides these, are barracks for the Russian soldiers and Cossacks ; a good-looking church ; and a court-room ; and at the end of the town a great number of Balagans, belonging to the Kamtschadales. The inhabitants, taken altogether, amount to between five and six hundred.

The next morning, we applied privately to the merchant Fedositsch, to purchase some tobacco for the sailors, who had been upwards of a twelvemonth without this favourite commodity. However, this, like all our other transactions of the same kind, came immediately to the major's knowledge, and we were soon after surprised to find, in our house, four bags of tobacco, weighing upwards of 100 lb. each, which he begged might be presented in the name of himself, and the garrison under his command, to our sailors. At the same time, they had sent us twenty loaves of fine sugar, and as many pounds of tea, being articles they understood we were in great want of, which they begged to be indulged in presenting to the officers. Along with these, Madam Behm had also sent a present for captain Clerke, consisting of fresh butter, honey, figs, rice, and some other little things of the same kind, attended with many wishes, that, in his infirm state of health, they might be of service to him. It was in vain we tried to oppose this profusion of bounty, which I was anxious to restrain, being convinced, that they were giving away not a share, but almost the whole stock of the garrison. The constant answer the major returned us, on those occasions, was, that we had suffered a great deal, and that we must needs be in distress. Indeed, the length of time we had been out, since we touched at any known port, appeared to them so very incredible, that it required the testimony of our maps and other corroborating circumstances, to gain their belief. Among the latter was a very curious fact which major Behm related to us this morning, and which he said, but for

our arrival, he should have been totally at a loss to account for.

It is well known, that the Tschutski are the only people of the north of Asia who have maintained their independence, and resisted all the attempts that have been made by the Russians to reduce them. The last expedition against them, was undertaken in the year 1750, and terminated, after various success, in the retreat of the Russian forces, and the loss of the commanding officer. Since that time, the Russians had removed their frontier fortress from the Anadyr to the Ingiga, a river that empties itself into the northern extremity of the sea of Okotsk, and gives its name to a gulf situated to the west of that of Penshinsk. From this fort major Behm had received dispatches the day of our arrival at Bolcheretsk, containing intelligence, that a tribe, or party of the Tschutski, had arrived at that place with provisions for friendship, and a voluntary offer of tribute; that on enquiring into the cause of this unexpected alteration in their sentiments, they had informed his people, that towards the latter end of last summer they had been visited by two very large Russian boats; that they had been treated by the people who were in them with great kindness, and had entered into a league of friendship and amity with them; and that, relying on his friendly disposition, they were now come to the Russian fort, in order to settle a treaty, on such terms as might be acceptable to both nations. This extraordinary history had occasioned much speculation, both at Ingiginsk and Bolcheretsk; and, had we not furnished them with a key to it, must have remained perfectly unintelligible. We felt no small satisfaction in having, though accidentally, shewn the Russians in this instance, the only true way of collecting tribute, and extending their dominions; and in the hopes that the good understanding, which this event had given rise to, may rescue a brave people from the future invasions of such powerful neighbours.

In return for the trifles which Mr. King had given to the children of major Behm, he was presented by his little boy, with a most magnificent Kamtschadale dress. It was of the kind worn by the principal Toions of the country, on occasions of great ceremony, and which he understood afterwards from Fedositsch, could not have been purchased for 120 roubles. At the same time, he had a present from his daughter of a handsome sable muff.

The next day we dined with the commander, who, in order to let us see as much of the manners of the inhabitants as our time would permit, invited the whole of the better sort of people in the village to his house this evening. All the women appeared very splendidly dressed, after the Kamtschadale fashion. The wives of captain Schmaleff and the other officers of the garrison, were prettily dressed, half in the Siberian and half in the European mode; and Madam Behm, in order to make the stronger contrast, had unpacked part of her bage, and put on a rich European dress. I was much struck with the richness and variety of the silks which the women wore, and the singularity of their habits. The whole was like some enchanted scene in the midst of the wildest of dreary country in the world. Our entertainment consisted of singing and dancing.

Early in the morning, every thing being ready for our departure, we were invited to call on Madam Behm in our way to the boats, and to take our leave of her. Impressed, as our minds were, with sentiments of the warmest gratitude, by the attentive, benevolent, and generous treatment we had met with at Bolcheretzk, they were greatly heightened by the affecting scene which presented itself to us, on leaving our lodgings. All the soldiers and Cossacks belonging to the garrison were drawn up on one hand, and the male inhabitants of the town, dressed out in their best clothes, on the other; and, as soon as we came out of the house, the whole body of the people joined in a melancholy song, which, the major told us, it was usual, in that country,

to sing on taking leave of their friends. In this manner we marched down to the commander's house, preceded by the drums and music of the garrison, where we were received by Madam Behm, attended by the ladies, who were dressed in long silk cloaks, lined with very valuable furs of different colours, which made a most magnificent appearance.

After partaking of some refreshment, that was prepared for us, we went down to the water side, accompanied by the ladies, who now joined in the song with the rest of the inhabitants; and as soon as we had taken leave of Madam Behm, and assured her of the grateful sense we should ever retain of the hospitality of Bolcheretsk, we found ourselves too much affected not to hasten into the boats with all the expedition we could. When we put off, the whole company gave us three cheers, which we returned from the boat; and as we were doubling a point, where for the last time we saw our friendly entertainers, they took their farewell in another cheer.

On the return of the party to Petropaulowski, they were accompanied by major Behm, who had resigned the government of Kamtscharka to his second in command, and was to proceed thence to Okotsk, in his way to Petersburg. They arrived at Petropaulowski on the 23d; and captain Clerke, and his men, did not fail to behave with all respect to the major, which his noble conduct had merited. The various curiosities that had been collected in the course of the voyage were shewn to him, and a complete assortment of every article presented to him by captain Clerke.

On this occasion, I must not pass over an instance of great generosity and gratitude in the sailors of both ships; who, when they were told of the handsome present of tobacco that was made them by the major, desired, entirely of their own accord, that their grog might be stopped, and their allowance of spirits presented, on their part, to the garrison of Bolcheretsk, as they said they had reason to conclude that brandy was scarce in that country, and would be very acceptable to them,
since

Since the soldiers on shore had offered four roubles a bottle for it. We, who knew how much the sailors always felt, whenever their allowance of grog was stopped, which was generally done in warm weather, that they might have it in greater proportion in cold, and that this offer would deprive them of it during the inclement season we had to expect in our next expedition to the North, could not but admire so extraordinary a sacrifice; and that they might not suffer by it, captain Clerke, and the rest of the officers, substituted in the room of the very small quantity the major could be prevailed on to accept, the same quantity of rum. This, with a dozen or two of Cape wine, for Madam Behm, and such other little presents as were in our power to bestow, were accepted in the most obliging manner. The next morning, the tobacco was divided between the crews of the two ships, three pounds being allotted to every man that chewed or smoked tobacco, and only one pound to those that did not.

Major Behm now offered to charge himself with any dispatches we might trust to his care. This was an opportunity not to be neglected; and accordingly captain Clerke acquainted him, that he would take the liberty of sending by him some papers, relating to our voyage, to be delivered to our ambassador at the Russian court. Our first intentions were to send only a small journal of our proceedings; but afterwards, captain Clerke being persuaded that the whole account of our discoveries might safely be trusted to a person who had given such striking proofs both of his public and private virtues; and considering that we had a hazardous part of the voyage still to undertake, determined to send, by him, the whole of the journal of our late commander, with that part of his own, which completed the period from captain Cook's death, till our arrival at Kamtschatka; together with the chart of all our discoveries. Mr Bayley and myself thought it also proper to send a general account of our proceedings to the board of longitude; by which precautions, if any misfortune had afterward befallen us, the admiralty would have been in possession of a complete

complete history of the principal facts of our voyage. It was also determined that a small packet should be sent by an express from Okotsk, which, the major said, if he was fortunate enough in his passage to that port, would reach Petersburg by December, and that he himself should be there in February or March.

During the three following days, the major was entertained alternately in the two ships, in the best manner we were able. On the 25th he took his leave, and was saluted with thirteen guns; and the sailors, at their own desire, gave him three cheers. The next morning Mr. Webber and myself attended him a few miles up the Awatska river, where we met the Russian priest, his wife and children, who were waiting to take the last farewell of their commander.

It was hard to say, whether the good priest and his family, or ourselves, were most affected on taking our leave of major Behm. Short as our acquaintance had been, his noble and disinterested conduct had inspired us with the highest esteem for him; and we could not part with a person to whom we were under such obligations, and whom we had little prospect of ever seeing again, without feeling the most tender concern. The intrinsic value of the private presents we received from him, exclusive of the stores which might be carried to a public account, must have amounted, according to the current price of articles in that country, to upwards of 200*l*. But this generosity, extraordinary as it may appear in itself, was exceeded by the delicacy with which all his favours were conferred, and the artful manner in which he endeavoured to prevent our feeling the weight of obligations, which he knew we had no means of requiting. If we go a step further, and consider him as supporting a public character, and maintaining the honour of a great sovereign, we shall find a still higher subject of admiration, in the just and enlarged sentiments by which he was actuated. The service in which you are employed, he would often say, is for the general advantage of mankind, and therefore gives you a right, not merely to the offices of humanity, but to the privileges
of

of citizens, in whatever country you may be thrown. I am sure I am acting agreeably to the wishes of my mistress, in affording you all the relief in my power; and I cannot forget either her character, or my own honour, so much, as to barter for the performance of a duty.

At other times he would tell us, that he was particularly desirous of setting a good example to the Kamtschadales, who, he said, were but just emerging from a state of barbarism; that they looked up to the Russians as their pattern in every thing; and that he had hopes they might, in future, look upon it as a duty incumbent upon them to assist strangers to the utmost of their power, and believe, that such was the universal practice of civilized nations. To all this must be added, that, after having relieved, to the utmost of his abilities, all our present distresses, he shewed himself no less mindful of our future wants; and as he supposed it more than probable we should not discover the passage we were in search of, and therefore should return to Kamtschatka in the fall of the year; he made captain Clerke give him a list of what cordage and flour we should want, and promised they should be sent from Okotsk, and wait our arrival. For the same purpose, he gave captain Clerke a paper, enjoining all the subjects of the empress, whom we might happen to meet, to give us every assistance in their power.

On our first arrival, we found the Russian hospital, which is the near town of St. Peter and St. Paul, in a condition truly deplorable. All the soldiers were more or less affected by the scurvy, and a great many in the last stage of that disorder. The rest of the Russian inhabitants were also in the same condition; and we particularly remarked, that our friend the serjeant, by making too free with the spirits we gave him, had brought on himself, in the course of a few days, some of the most alarming symptoms of that malady. In this lamentable state, captain Clerke put them all under the care of the surgeons, and ordered a supply of four krout, and malt for wort, to be furnished for their

their use. It was astonishing to observe the alteration in the figures of almost every person we met on our return from Bolcheretsk; and I was informed by our surgeons, that they attributed their speedy recovery principally to the effects of the sweet wort.

After several attempts to clear the bay of Awatska, captain Clerke finally left it on the 16th of June, steering to the N. N. E. We cannot follow him in all the tackings, and nautical circumstances that occurred, in his various attempts to go to the north, between the two continents: they were obstructed by impenetrable ice. During their voyage, they had sometimes an opportunity to hoist out their boats and send them in pursuit of the sea-horses, which were in great numbers on the pieces of ice that surrounded them. The people were more successful than they had been before, returning with three large ones, and a young one; besides killing and wounding several others. The gentlemen who went on this party were witnesses of several remarkable instances of parental affection in those animals. On the approach of the boats towards the ice, they all took their cubs under their fins, and endeavoured to escape with them into the sea. Several, whose young were killed and wounded, and left floating on the surface, rose again, and carried them down, sometimes as our people were going to take them up into the boats; and might be traced bearing them to a great distance through the water, which was coloured with their blood: they were afterwards observed bringing them, at times, above the surface, as if for air, and again diving under it with a dreadful bellowing. The female, in particular, whose young had been destroyed, and taken into the boat, became so enraged, that she attacked the cutter, and struck her two tusks through the bottom of it.

Another remarkable circumstance that was observed during this attempt to go to the north, was the arctic gull's disgusting mode of feeding, which has procured it the name of the parasite, and which, if the reader is not already acquainted with it, will find in the follow-

ing manner: This bird, which is somewhat larger than the common gull, pursues the latter kind whenever it meets them; the gull, after flying for some time, with loud screams, and evident marks of great terror, drops its dung, which its pursuer immediately darts at, and catches before it falls into the sea.

Captain Clerke was unable to proceed further north than latitude 70 deg. 33 min. which was five leagues short of the point to which they had advanced last season. At length, on the 21st of July, it was perceived, that one connected solid piece of ice, rendered fruitless every effort to a nearer approach to the American continent, and joining, as it was supposed, to it, they took a last farewell to the north-east passage to Old England, determined, however, to explore the coast of Asia, in order to succeed, if possible, to the north-west.

But in this attempt they were equally unsuccessful; and, on the 22d the wind kept driving the loose pieces of ice upon them in such quantities, that they were in manifest danger of being blocked up by them.

In the morning of the 23d, the clear water, in which we continued to stand to and fro, did not exceed a mile and a half, and was every instant lessening. At length, after using our utmost endeavours to clear the loose ice, we were driven to the necessity of forcing a passage to the southward, which, at half past seven, we accomplished, but not without subjecting the ship to some very severe shocks. The Discovery was less successful. For, at eleven, when they had nigh got clear out, she became so entangled by several large pieces, that her way was stopped, and immediately dropping bodily to leeward, she fell, broadside foremost, on the edge of a considerable body of ice; and having, at the same time, an open sea to windward, the surf caused her to strike violently upon it. This mass at length either so far broke, or moved, as to set them at liberty to make another trial to escape; but, unfortunately, before the ship gathered way enough to be under command, she again fell to leeward on another fragment; and the swell making

unsafe to lie to windward, and finding no chance of getting clear, they pushed into a small opening, furled their sails, and made fast with ice-hooks.

In this dangerous situation we saw them at noon, about three miles from us, bearing N.W. a fresh gale from the S. E. driving more ice to the N. W. and increasing the body that lay between us. Our lat. by account, was 69 deg. 8 min. the long. 187 deg. and the depth of water 28 fathoms. To add to the gloomy apprehensions which began to force themselves on us, at half past four in the afternoon, the weather becoming thick and hazy, we lost sight of the *Discovery*; but that we might be in a situation to afford her every assistance in our power, we kept standing in close by the edge of the ice.

At six, the wind happily coming round to the north, gave us some hopes that the ice might drift away and release her; and in that case, it was uncertain in what condition she might come out, we kept firing a gun every half hour, in order to prevent a separation. Our apprehensions for her safety did not cease till nine, when we heard her guns in answer to ours; and soon after, being hailed by her, were informed, that upon change of the wind the ice began to separate; and that, setting all their sails, they forced a passage through it. We learned farther, that whilst they were encompassed by it, they found the ship drift with the main body to the N. E. at the rate of half a mile an hour. We were sorry to find, that the *Discovery* had rubbed off a great deal of her sheathing from the bows, and was become very leaky, from the strokes she had received when she fell upon the edge of the ice.

On the 27th, the damages which the *Discovery* had received were found to be of such a nature as would require three weeks to repair, and render it necessary to retire into some port for that purpose. Thus, finding a farther advance to the northward, as well as a nearer approach to either continent, obstructed by a
sea

sea blocked up with ice, we judged it both injurious to the service, by endangering the safety of the ships, as well as fruitless with respect to the design of our voyage, to make any further attempts towards a passage.

This therefore, added to the representation of captain Gore, determined captain Clerke not to lose more time in what he concluded to be an unattainable object, but to sail for Awatka Bay, to repair our damages there; and before the winter should set in, and render all other efforts towards discovery impracticable at this time, to explore the coast of Japan.

I will not endeavour to conceal the joy that brightened the countenance of every individual, as soon as captain Clerke's resolutions were made known. We were all heartily sick of a navigation full of danger, and in which the utmost perseverance had not been repaid with the smallest success. We therefore turned our faces towards home, after an absence of three years, with a delight and satisfaction, which, notwithstanding the tedious voyage we had still to make, and the immense distance we had to run, were as freely entertained, and perhaps as fully enjoyed, as if we had been already in sight of the Land's-end.

CHAP: X.

Return to Kamtschatka—Death of Captain Clerke—An account of his services—Anchor in the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul—Funeral of Captain Clerke—Departure from Awatka Bay—Captain King sent to Canton—Arrival at the Cape of Good Hope.—At the Orkneys; and at the Nore—Concluding reflections.

HAVING taken a final leave of the N. E. coast of Asia, they arrived, on the 21st of August, 1779, within sight of the coast of Kamtschatka. On the 22d, at nine in the morning, departed this life captain Charles Clerke, in the 38th year of his age. He died of a consumption, which had evidently com-

menced before he left England, and of which he had lingered during the whole voyage. His very gradual decay had long made him a melancholy object to his friends ; yet the equanimity with which he bore it, the constant flow of good spirits, which continued to the last hour, and a cheerful resignation to his fate, afforded them some consolation. It was impossible not to feel a more than common degree of compassion for a person, whose life had been a continued scene of those difficulties and hardships, to which a seaman's occupation is subject, and under which he at last sunk. He was brought up to the navy from his earliest youth, and had been in several actions during the war begun in 1756, particularly in that between the *Bellona* and *Courageux*, where being stationed in the mizen-top, he was carried overboard with the mast, but was taken up without having received any hurt. He was midshipman in the *Dolphin*, commanded by commodore Byron, on her first voyage round the world, and afterwards served on the American station.

In 1768, he made his second voyage round the world, in the *Endeavour*, as master's mate, and by the promotion which took place during the expedition, he returned a lieutenant. His third voyage round the world was in the *Resolution*, of which he was appointed the second lieutenant ; and soon after his return, in 1775, he was promoted to the rank of master and commander. When the present expedition was ordered to be fitted out, he was appointed to the *Discovery*, to accompany captain Cook ; and by the death of the latter, succeeded, as has been already mentioned, to the chief command.

It would be doing his memory extreme injustice not to say, that during the short time the expedition was under his direction, he was most zealous and anxious for its success. His health, about the time the principal command devolved upon him, began to decline very rapidly, and was every way unequal to encounter the rigours of a high northern climate. But the vigour and activity of his mind had, in no shape,

suffered by his body: and though he knew, that by delaying his return to a warmer climate, he was giving up the only chance that remained for his recovery, yet, careful and jealous to the last degree, that a regard to his own situation should never bias his judgment to the prejudice of the service, he persevered in the search of a passage, till it was the opinion of every officer in both ships that it was impracticable, and that any further attempts would not only be fruitless, but dangerous.

On the 24th, the *Resolution* entered the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul, with the ensign half staff up, on account of their carrying the body of their late captain. The *Discovery* followed soon after.

We had no sooner anchored, than our old friend the serjeant, who was still the commander of the place, came on board with a present of berries, intended for our poor deceased captain. He was extremely affected when we told him of his death, and shewed him the coffin that contained his body. And as it was captain Clerke's particular request to be buried on shore, and, if possible, in the church of Paratounca, we took the present opportunity of explaining this matter to the serjeant, and consulting with him about the proper steps to be taken on the occasion. In the course of our conversation, which, for want of an interpreter, was carried on but imperfectly, we learned that Professor de l'Isle, and several Russian gentlemen, who died here, had been buried in the ground near the barracks, at the Ostrog of St. Peter and St. Paul's; and that this place would be preferable to Paratounca, as the church was to be removed thither the next year. It was therefore determined that we should wait for the arrival of the priest of Paratounca, whom the serjeant advised us to send for, as the only person that could satisfy our inquiries on this subject.

In the morning of the 25th, captain Gore made out the new commissions, in consequence of captain Clerke's death; appointing himself to the command of the *Resolution*, and me to the command of the *Discovery*.

covery. The same day we were visited by the Pope Romanoff Vereshagen, the worthy priest of Paratounca. He expressed his sorrow at the death of captain Clerke, in a manner that did honour to his feelings, and confirmed the account given by the serjeant respecting the intended removal of the church to the harbour; adding, that the timber was actually preparing, but leaving the choice of either place entirely to captain Gore.

In the afternoon of the 29th, the last offices were paid to captain Clerke. The officers and men of both ships walked in procession to the grave, whilst the ships fired minute-guns; and the service being ended, the marines fired three vollies. He was interred under a tree, which stands on a rising ground, in the valley to the north side of the harbour, where the hospital and store-houses are situated; captain Gore having judged this situation most agreeable to the last wishes of the deceased, for the reasons above-mentioned; and the priest of Paratounca having pointed out a spot for his grave, which, he said, would be as near as he could guess, in the centre of the new church. This reverend pastor walked in the procession, along with the gentleman who read the service; and all the Russians in the garrison were assembled, and attended with great respect and solemnity.

On the 30th of September, captain Gore went to Paratounca, to put up in the church there an escutcheon, prepared by Mr. Webber, with an inscription upon it, setting forth captain Clerke's age and rank, and the object of the expedition in which he was engaged at the time of his decease. A board, with an inscription upon it to the same effect, was also affixed to the tree under which he was buried.

It is here proper to observe, that from the 24th of August, when the ships first entered the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul, to the 9th of October, when they finally cleared Awatska Bay, was employed in the necessary repairs of both ships, in the procuring of a proper supply of provisions and naval stores, and occasionally

sionally in various amusements on shore, and the reciprocal exchange of civilities between the captains of the two ships and the new commander of Bolcheretsk. Before we proceed on the voyage, it must be farther noticed that the instructions from the board of Admiralty having left a discretionary power with the commanding officer of the expedition, in case of failure in search of a passage from the Pacific into the Atlantic Ocean, to return to England by whatever rout he should think best for the farther improvement of geography; captain Gore demanded of the principal officers their sentiments, in writing, respecting the manner in which these orders might most effectually be obeyed. The result of their opinions, which he had the satisfaction to find unanimous, and entirely coinciding with his own, was, that the condition of the ships, as well as of the sails and cordage, made it unsafe to attempt, at so advanced a season of the year, to navigate the sea between Japan and Asia; which would otherwise have afforded the largest field for discovery; that it was therefore advisable to keep to the eastward of that island, and in the way thither to run along the Kuriles, and examine more particularly the islands that lie nearest the northern coast of Japan, which are represented as of a considerable size, and independent of the Russian and Japanese governments. If so fortunate as to find in these any safe and commodious harbours, it was conceived they might be of importance, either as places of shelter for any future navigators, who may be employed in exploring the seas, or as the means of opening a commercial intercourse among the neighbouring dominions of the two empires. The next object was to survey the coast of the Japanese islands, and afterwards to make the coast of China as far to the northward as possible, and to run along it to Macao.

This plan being adopted, captain King received orders from captain Gore, in case of separation, to proceed to Macao; and at six o'clock in the evening of the 9th of October, as before observed, having cleared the

the then entrance of Awatska Bay, they steered to the south, along the coast of Kamtschatka.

On the 12th they came in sight of Cape Lopatka, the southernmost extremity of Kamtschatka, lying in latitude 51 deg. long. 156 deg. 45 min. At the same time they saw the first of the Kurile Islands, called Shoomaska; and on the 13th, the second, named Paramoufir, which is the largest of the Kuriles under the dominions of the Russians. On the 14th and 15th, the wind blowing steadily and fresh from the westward, they were obliged to stand to the southward, and consequently prevented from seeing any more of the Kurile Islands.

This chain of islands, running in a south-west direction, from the southern promontory of Kamtschatka to Japan, extending from lat. 51 deg. to 45 min. is called the Kuriles, from the inhabitants of the neighbourhood of Lopatka, who gave their own name to these islands, on first becoming acquainted with them. They are, according to Spanberg, twenty-two in number, without reckoning the very small ones. The northernmost, called Schoomaska, is not more than three leagues from the promontory of Lopatka, and its inhabitants are a mixture of natives and Kamtschadales. The next to the south, called Paramoufir, is inhabited by the true natives; their ancestors, according to a tradition among them, having come from an island a little farther to the south, called Onecutan.

Those two islands were first visited by the Russians in 1713, and at the same time brought under their dominion. The others in order, are at present made tributary down to Ooshesheer, inclusive, as Mr. King was informed by the worthy pastor of Paratounca, who is their missionary, and visits them once in three years, and speaks of the islanders in terms of the highest commendation, representing them as a friendly, hospitable, generous, humane race of people, and excelling their Kamtschadale neighbours, not less in the formation of their bodies, than in docility and quickness of understanding. Though Ooshesheer is the southernmost island

island that the Russians have yet brought under their dominions, yet they trade to Oorooop, which is the eighteenth; and where there is a good harbour for ships of burthen. Beyond this, to the South, lies Nadeegsda, which was represented by the Russians, as inhabited by a race of men remarkably hairy, and who, like those of Oorooop, live in a state of entire independence.

In the same direction, but inclining somewhat more to the Westward, lie a groupe of islands which the Japanese call Jeso, a name which they also give to the whole chain of islands between Kamptschatka and Japan. The southernmost, called Matmai, hath been long subject to the Japanese, and is formed and garrisoned on the side towards the continent. The two islands to the N. E. of Matmai, Kunachir, and Zellany, and likewise the three still farther to the N. E. called the Three Sisters, are perfectly independent.

From this account of the Kurile Islands, it was a great mortification to our navigators, to find themselves obliged, on the 24th, to give up all farther thoughts of discovery to the North of Japan; the wind for some days past having continued quite unfavourable to their views. Captain King, however, has enriched his account of this part of their transactions, with several observations on the errors of former geographers.

In consequence of this disappointment, Captain Gore shaped his course West South West for the North part of Japan. At day-break, on the 26th, they had the pleasure of seeing high land to the Westward, which proved to be that island; along the East coast of which they run, (experiencing some unexpected effects of the currents) till the 2d of November, when the threatening appearances of a sudden and severe gale made it prudent to leave the shore, and stand off to the Eastward, to prevent being entangled with the land. Nor were we wrong in our prognostications; for it soon afterwards began, and continued till the next day to blow a heavy gale, accompanied with hazy and rainy weather.

In the morning of the third, we found ourselves, by our reckoning, upwards of fifty leagues from the land, which circumstance, together with the very extraordinary effect of currents before mentioned, the late season of the year, the unsettled state of the weather, and the little likelihood of any change for the better, made Captain Gore resolve to leave Japan altogether, and prosecute our voyage to China; hoping, that as the track he meant to pursue had never yet been explored, he should be able to make amends by some new discovery, for the disappointments we had met with on this coast.

If the reader should be of opinion that we quitted this object too hastily, in addition to the facts already stated, it ought to be remarked, that Kämpfer describes the coast of Japan as the most dangerous in the whole world; and that it would have been equally dangerous, in case of distress, to run into any of their harbours; where we know, from the best authorities, that the aversion of the inhabitants to any intercourse with strangers, had led them to commit the most atrocious barbarities; that our ships were in a leaky condition; that our sails were worn out, and unable to withstand a gale of wind; and that the rigging was so rotten as to require constant and perpetual repairs.

On the 14th, they discovered an island, about five miles long, lying in lat. 24 deg. 48 min. long. 141 deg. 12 min. On the South point of this is a high barren hill, which evidently presented a volcanic crater. The earth, rock, or sand (for it was not easy to distinguish of which its surface is composed) exhibited various colours; and a considerable part was conjectured to be sulphur, both from its appearance to the eye, and the strong sulphureous smell, perceived as they approached the point; and some thought they saw steams rising from the top of the hill. From these circumstances Captain Gore gave it the name of Sulphur Island. Two other islands were likewise discovered; the one to the N. and the other to the S. of Sulphur Island.

Captain

Captain Gore now steered his course for the Bashee Islands. These they missed, and on the 28th, passed the island of Prata. On the 30th, they ran along the Lema Isles, of which they had the same view as represented in a plate of Lord Anson's voyage. They also passed the rock marked R, in Lord Anson's plate; but instead of hauling up to the Northward of the Grand Ladrone Island, as was done by the Centurion, they proceeded to leeward, a course against which Captain King has cautioned the marines.

Two Chinese pilots were now taken on board the Resolution; and they finally anchored in the Typa, near the road of Macao, on the 2d of December. Here we received the first intelligence of the war. Hence on the 11th, Captain King took passage, not without many previous difficulties, to Canton, in order to expedite a supply of naval stores for the ships. Although he arrived here on the 18th, various delays prevented the accomplishment of this business till the 26th.

On the 27th he left Canton, and took a passage down the river Tygris to Macao, where he arrived the next day. Besides a handsome present of tea, which Captain King received from the English supercargoes at Canton, he mentions, as a valuable acquisition, a large collection of our periodical publications, which both served to amuse their impatience during their tedious voyage home, and enabled them to return no total strangers to what had been transacting in their native country.

While the ships lay in the Typa, Captain King was shewn, in a garden belonging to an English gentleman at Macao, the rock, under which, as the tradition there goes, the poet Camoens used to sit and compose his *Lusiad*. It is a lofty arch of one solid stone, and forms the entrance of a grotto dug out of the rising ground behind it. The rock is overshadowed by large spreading trees, and com-

mands an extensive and magnificent view of the sea, and the interspersed islands.

Captain Gore, previous to his departure from Macao, put both the ships in a very respectable state of defence, but having received undoubted intelligence, that orders had been issued by the French court, and also by the American Congress to all their commanders, not to molest the ships that sailed under Captain Cook, he thought himself bound, in return, to observe an exact neutrality during the remainder of the voyage.

On the 13th of January, 1780, Captain Gore, left the *Typa*, and on the 16th, passed the island of Sepata. On the 20th, they anchored in an harbour on the S. W. end of the island Condore, in order to procure a supply of wood and provisions. Here it was found advisable that a party should go in the boat and land. While some of the men remained with Captain Gore, in the boat, Captain King and an armed party proceeded through the woods till they came near two huts. On approaching them, they were descried by two men, who immediately ran away, notwithstanding all the peaceable and supplicating gestures that could be devised.

On reaching the huts, I ordered the party to stay without, lest the sight of so many armed men should terrify the inhabitants, whilst I entered, and reconnoitred alone. I found in one of the huts an elderly man, who was in a great fright, and preparing to make off with the most valuable of his effects that he could carry. However, I was fortunate enough in a very little time, so entirely to dispel his fears, that he came out, and called to the two men who were running away to return. The old man and I soon came to a perfect understanding. A few signs, particularly that most significant of holding out a handful of dollars, and then pointing to a herd of buffaloes, and the fowls that were running about the huts in great numbers, left him without any doubts as to the real object of my visit. He pointed towards a
place

place where the town stood, and made me comprehend, that by going thither all my wants would be supplied. By this time the young men, who had fled were returned, and the old man ordered one of them to conduct me to the town, as soon as an obstacle should be removed, of which we were not aware. On our first coming out of the wood, a herd of buffaloes, to the number of twenty at least, came running towards us, tossing up their heads, snuffing the air, and roaring in a hideous manner. They had followed us to the huts, and stood drawn up in a body, at a little distance; and the old man made us understand, that it would be exceeding dangerous for us to move, till they were driven into the woods; but so enraged were the animals grown at the sight of us, that this was not effected without a great deal of time and difficulty. The men, not being able to accomplish it, we were surprised to see them call to their assistance a few little boys, who soon drove them out of sight.

Afterward we had occasion to observe, that in driving these animals, and securing them, which is done by putting a rope through a hole which is made in their nostrils, little boys were always employed, who could stroke and handle them with impunity, at times when the men durst not approach them.

Our visit to the town ended in the purchase of a number of buffaloes. Early in the morning of the 23d, the launches of both ships were sent to the town, to fetch the buffaloes we had purchased; but they were obliged to wait till it was high water, as they could at no other time get through the opening at the head of the harbour. On their arrival at the village they found the surf breaking on the beach with such force, that it was with the utmost difficulty each launch brought a buffalo on board in the evening; and the officers, who were sent on this service, gave it as their opinion, that between the violence of the surf, and the fierceness of the buffaloes, it would be
extremely

extremely imprudent to attempt bringing any more off in this way. We had purchased eight, and were now at a loss in what manner to proceed to get them on board. We could kill no more than what was just necessary for the consumption of one day, as in this climate meat will not keep till the next. At last it was concluded, that the remainder should be driven through the wood, and over the hill down to the bay, where Captain Gore and I had landed the day before, which being sheltered from the wind, was more free from surf. This plan was accordingly put in execution; but the untractable and prodigious strength of the buffaloes, rendered it a tedious and difficult operation.

The method of conducting them was, by passing ropes through their nostrils, and round their horns; but having been once enraged at the sight of our men, they became so furious, that they sometimes broke the trees to which they were often under the necessity of tying them: sometimes they tore asunder the cartilage of the nostril, through which the ropes ran, and got loose.

On these occasions, all the exertions of our men to recover them would have been ineffectual, without the assistance of some young boys, whom these animals would permit to approach them, and by whose little managements their rage was soon appeased. And when at length they were got down to the beach, it was by their aid, in twisting ropes round their legs, in the manner they were directed, that we were enabled to throw them down, and by that means to get them into the boats.

A circumstance, respecting these animals, which I thought no less singular than this gentleness toward, and, as it should seem, affection for little children, was, that they had not been twenty-four hours on board, before they became the tamest of all creatures. I kept two of them, a male and a female, for a considerable time, which became great favourites with the sailors, and, thinking that a breed of animals of
such

such strength and size, some of them weighing, when dressed, 700lb. would be a valuable acquisition, I was inclined to have brought them with me to England; but my intention was frustrated by an incurable hurt that one of them received at sea.

Captain Gore left Pulo Condore on the 28th, and steered for Pulo Timoun, which he passed on the 31st, and the straits of Sunda on the 8th of February. They afterwards touched for water at the island of Cracatoa, and on the 13th of April came to anchor at the Cape of Good Hope.

They remained at the Cape till the 9th of May, and on the 12th of June passed the equator, for the fourth time during this voyage. On the 12th of August we made the Western coast of Ireland, and after a fruitless attempt to get into Port Galway, were obliged, by strong southerly winds, to steer to the Northward. The next object was to put into Lough Swilly, but the wind continuing in the same quarter, we stood on to the Northward of Lewis Island; and on the 22d of August, both ships came to an anchor at Stromness. From hence Captain King was dispatched, to acquaint the Admiralty with their arrival; and on the 4th of October the ships arrived safe at the Nore, after an absence of four years, two months, and twenty-two days.

Captain King concludes his narration with the following interesting reflections: On quitting the Discovery at Stromness, I had the satisfaction of leaving the whole crew in perfect health: and at the same time, the number of convalescents on board the Resolution, did not exceed two or three, of whom only one was incapable of service. In the course of our voyage, the Resolution lost but five men by sickness, three of whom were in a precarious state of health at our departure from England; the Discovery did not lose a man. An unremitting attention to the regulations established by Captain Cook, with which the world is already acquainted, may be justly considered as the principal cause, under the blessing
of

of divine providence, of this singular success. But the baneful effects of salt provisions might perhaps, in the end, have been felt, notwithstanding these salutary precautions, if we had not assisted them, by availing ourselves of every substitute our situation at various times afforded. These frequently consisting of articles which our people had not been used to consider as food for men, and being sometimes exceedingly nauseous, it required the joint aid of persuasion, authority, and example, to conquer their prejudices and disgusts.

The preventives we principally relied on, were sour kroust and portable soup. As to the antiscorbutic remedies, with which we were amply supplied, we had no opportunity of trying their effects, as there did not appear the slightest symptoms of the scurvy, in either ship, during the whole voyage. Our malt and hops had also been kept as a resource, in case of actual sickness, and on examination at the Cape of Good Hope, were found entirely spoiled. About the same time were opened some casks of biscuit, flour, malt, pease, oatmeal, and groats, which, by way of experiment, had been put up in small casks, lined with tin foil, and found all, except the pease, in a much better state, than could have been expected in the usual manner of package.

I cannot neglect this opportunity of recommending to the consideration of government, the necessity of allowing a sufficient quantity of Peruvian bark, to such of his Majesty's ships as may be exposed to the influence of unwholesome climates. It happened very fortunate in the Discovery, that only one of the men that had fevers in the straits of Sunda, stood in need of this medicine, as he alone consumed the whole quantity usually carried out by surgeons in such vessels as ours. Had more been affected in the same manner, they would probably all have perished, from the want of the only remedy capable of affording them effectual relief.

Another

Another circumstance attended this voyage, which if we consider its duration, and the nature of the service in which we were engaged, will appear scarcely less singular than the extraordinary healthiness of the crew, viz. that the two ships never lost sight of each other for a day together, except twice; which was owing the first time to an accident that happened to the *Discovery* off the coast of *Owhyhee*; and the second, to the fogs we met with at the entrance of *Awatska Bay*.

A stronger proof cannot be given of the skill and vigilance of our subaltern officers, to whom this share of merit almost entirely belongs.

APPENDIX.

* * As many very important improvements have been made, both in the population and cultivation of the settlements at *Port Jackson* and *Norfolk Island*, since Captain Cook discovered those islands, we have, in this edition, annexed to the accounts of the formation, &c. of those settlements, an authentic narrative of their progress, and very improved state, according to the most recent information.

Commencement and Progress of the Operations for forming a Colony, interspersed with incidental Occurrences.

IN the year 1786, government having formed a design of removing many disagreeable circumstances, to which this country was exposed from the gaols in the different parts being crowded with criminals sentenced to transportation; the eastern coast of *New Holland* was fixed upon as the most eligible part of the globe for planting a new colony, to carry into effect this necessary purpose. Captain Cook, in the narrative of his first voyage round the world, had mentioned *Botany Bay*, as a spot conveniently situated for forming a new settlement; it was therefore determined by go-

vernment to direct their attention to that place for the accomplishment of their plans.

Accordingly a fleet, consisting of his majesty's ship *Sirius*, under the command of Arthur Philip, Esq. and the Supply armed tender, under the command of lieutenant Ball, with transports, store-ships, &c. sailed for Botany Bay on the 13th of May, 1787, and anchored in that bay on the 20th of January, 1788, after a passage of thirty-six weeks.

The day after the arrival of the fleet, governor Philip, accompanied by several officers, examined the south shore; but as Botany Bay, through want of water, and some disadvantages of situation, was not deemed very convenient for the purpose, they proceeded to explore the coast to the northward, examining every cove, and making particular observations on the country. Amongst other places, they examined an opening, to which Captain Cook had given the name of Port Jackson; and such was the situation of the harbour, together with other advantages apparent at first view, that a resolution was formed of evacuating Botany Bay the ensuing morning.

Port Jackson is one of the finest and most extensive harbours in the universe, and at the same time the most secure, being safe from all the winds that blow. It is divided into a great number of coves, to which the governor has given different names. That on which the town is built, is called Sydney Cove. It is one of the smallest in the harbour, but the most convenient, as ships of the greatest burden can with ease go into it, and heave out close to the shore. Trincomalee, acknowledged to be one of the best harbours in the world, is by no means to be compared to it. In a word, Port Jackson would afford sufficient and safe anchorage for all the navies of Europe. During a run up the harbour of about four miles, in a westerly direction, a luxuriant prospect presented itself on the shores, covered with trees to the water's edge, among which many of the Indians were frequently seen, till the fleet arrived at a small snug cove to the southward, on the banks

banks of which the plan of operations were destined to commence. The natives appeared in considerable numbers, from which it was reasonable to conclude, that the country was more populous than had been represented by Captain Cook, who observes, that they were few in number, dull of apprehension, and void of curiosity ; whereas, in subsequent narratives, they are said to be gay, sprightly, and curious. They examined the strangers with the utmost attention, and seemed particularly struck with the appearance of their dress, imagining their clothes to be composed of so many different skins, and the hat as making part of the head. Indeed, they seemed highly entertained with their new acquaintance, accepted of some toys as presents, and were perfectly cheerful and pleasant, dancing and singing in concert with them, and imitating their words and gestures.

The following circumstances, related by the author of the narrative from which it is taken, are inserted in his own words, as it is presumed they will conduce both to entertainment and information.

“ When I went with a party to the south side of the harbour, and had scarcely landed five minutes, we were met by a dozen Indians, naked as at the moment of their birth, walking along the beach. Eager to come to a conference, and yet afraid of giving offence, we advanced with caution towards them : nor would they, at first, approach nearer to us than the distance of some paces. Both parties were armed ; yet an attack seemed as unlikely on their part as we knew it to be on our own. I had at this time a little boy, of not more than seven years of age, in my hand. The child seemed to attract their attention very much ; for they frequently pointed to him, and spoke to each other ; and, as he was not frightened, I advanced with him towards them, at the same time uncovering his bosom, and shewing the whiteness of the skin. On the clothes being removed, they gave a loud exclamation ; and one of the party, an old man, with a long beard, hideously ugly, came close to us. I bade the little boy not be

X x x 2

afraid,

afraid, and introduced him to the acquaintance of this uncouth personage. The Indian, with great gentleness, laid his hand on the child's hat, and afterwards felt his clothes, muttering to himself all the while. I found it necessary, however, by this time, to send away the child, as such a close connection rather alarmed him; and in this the conclusion verified I gave no offence to the old gentleman. Indeed, it was putting ourselves on a par with them; as I had observed, from the first, that some youths of their own, though considerably older than the one with us, were kept back by the grown people. Several more came up, to whom we made various presents; but our toys seemed not to be regarded as very valuable; nor would they, for a long time, make any returns for them; though, before we parted, a large club, with a head almost sufficient to fell an ox, was obtained in exchange for a looking-glass. These people seemed at a loss to know, (probably from our want of beards,) of what sex we were, which having understood, they burst into the most immoderate fits of laughter, talking to each other at the same time, with such rapidity and vociferation, as I had never before heard. After nearly an hour's conversation by signs and gestures, they repeated the word *whurra* several times, which signifies *be gone*, and walked away from us to the head of the bay."

The adventurers, in the late expedition, had several more interviews with the natives, which ended in so friendly a manner, that hopes were entertained of bringing about a connection with them. The first object of our people was to win their affection, and the next to convince them of our superiority. To this purpose an officer one day prevailed on one of them to place a target, made of bark, against a tree, which he fired at with a pistol, at the distance of some paces. The Indians, though terrified at the report, did not run away; but their astonishment exceeded their alarm, on looking at the shield, which the ball had perforated. As this produced a little shyness, the officer, to dissipate their fears, and remove their jealousy, whistled the air

of *Marlbrouk*, with which they appeared highly charmed, and imitated him with equal pleasure and readiness. It has been remarked, by the different navigators who have explored these southern regions, that the natives of California, and throughout all the islands of the Pacific Ocean, and, in short, wherever they have been, seemed equally touched and delighted with this little plaintive air.

The necessary previous business having been transacted; upon an appointed day, the commissions were read, and possession was taken of the settlement in form. The marine battalion being drawn up, and the convicts assembled on the occasion, his majesty's commission was read, appointing his excellency Arthur Philip, Esq. governor and captain-general in and over the territory of New South Wales, and its dependencies; together with the acts of parliament for establishing trials by law within the same; and the patents, under the great seal of Great Britain, for holding civil and criminal courts of judicature, by which all cases of life and death, as well as matters of property, were to be decided.

The extent of this authority is defined in the governor's commission, to reach from the latitude of 43 deg. 49 min. N. to the latitude of 10 deg. 37 min. S. being the northern and southern extremities of New Holland. It commences again in the 135th deg. of longitude east, and proceeding in an easterly direction, comprehends all islands within the limits of the above specified latitudes in the Pacific Ocean. As the discoveries of English navigators alone are comprised in this territory, it is presumed this partition will obviate all cause of future litigation between us and the Dutch. It appears from the commission considered in the whole, that government have been no less attentive in arming Mr. Philip with plenitude of power, than extent of dominion.

It was found necessary to enforce the rigour of the law, in order to restrain the violation of public security. A set of desperate and hardened miscreants leagued themselves

themselves for the purposes of depredation; and, as is generally the case, had insinuation enough to entice others, less versed in iniquity, to become instrumental in carrying it on.

While the governor was exploring Broken Bay, which is contiguous to Port Jackson, he saw a great number of the natives. One of the females had formed an attachment to his great coat; and to obtain it, she used a variety of means. First, she danced and played a number of antic tricks; but finding this mode ineffectual, she had recourse to tears, which she shed plentifully. This expedient not answering, she ceased from weeping, and appeared as cheerful as any of the party around her. We have introduced this incident, to shew they are not a people devoid of art and finesse, in order to obtain their ends.

Though their women appeared with such few decorations, yet it was evident they had no aversion to finery. The surgeon observed, at a repast, wherein he grouped with the natives, one of the women who sat next to him, observing that he had a white handkerchief in his hand, exhibited a number of lascivious airs, in order to obtain it. He therefore tore it into ribbons, being desirous of multiplying one present into many, with which he decorated her head and neck. On her admiring the buttons of his coat, as he had nothing else left, he cut them away, and tied them round her waist. Thus ornamented, and charmed with her acquirements, she turned away, with a look of inexpressible archness and joy, which seemed to shew, that, like the women in the South Seas in general, they are fond of new ornaments. He also observed, that there is no hospitality or harmony among them; as appeared from their eating so greedily, without regarding the accommodation of any about them; devouring the fish voraciously, which had been thrown on the fire, and scarcely warm.

These people, in their appetites, are very voracious, as appears from the following instance. One of the officers shot a bird, which fell at an old man's feet.

The

The explosion at first greatly alarmed him; but perceiving no ill was intended, he soon got over his fears. The bird was then given to him, which, having barely plucked, and not more than half broiled, he devoured, entrails, bones, and all.

A convict, who had been gathering what they call sweet tea, about a mile from the camp, met a party of the natives, consisting of fourteen, by whom he was beaten and wounded with the stick used in throwing their spears. They then made him strip, and would have taken from him his clothes, and probably his life, had it not been for the report of some muskets, which they no sooner heard than they ran away.

The destructive nature of their weapons, and their skill and adroitness in the use of them, will appear evident from the following circumstances. A convict, being in a state of convalescence, had obtained permission from the governor to go a little way up the country, to gather herbs, for the purpose of making tea. This man, after night set in, was brought to the hospital with one of the spears used by the natives sticking in his loins. It had been darted at him as he was stooping, and while his back was turned to the assailant. The weapon was barbed, and stuck so very fast, that it would admit of no motion. The surgeon, after dilating the wound to a considerable length and depth, with some difficulty extracted the spear, which had penetrated the flesh nearly three inches. After the operation, the convict gave information, that he received his wound from three of the natives, who came behind him at a time when he expected no person to be near him, except another convict, whom he had met a little before, employed on the same business as himself. He added, that, after they had wounded him, they beat him in a cruel manner; and stripping the clothes from his back, carried them off, making signs to him (as he interpreted them) to return to the camp. He further related, that after they had left him, he saw his fellow convict in the possession of another party of the natives, who were dragging him along, with his head bleeding,
and

and seemingly in great distress; while he himself was so exhausted with the loss of blood, that, instead of being able to assist his companion, he was happy to escape with his life.

The natives continued to avail themselves of every opportunity of exercising their cruelty on our people. An officer of the marines, who had been up at the harbour to procure some rushes for thatch, brought to the hospital the bodies of two men employed as rush-cutters, whom he found murdered by the natives in a shocking manner. One of them was transfixed through the breast with one of their spears, which was extracted with great difficulty and force. He had two other spears sticking in him to a depth which must have proved mortal. His skull was divided and comminuted so much, that his brains easily found a passage through. His eyes were out. The other was a youth, and had only some trifling marks of violence about him. This lad could not have been many hours dead; for when the officer found him among some mangrove trees, and at a considerable distance from where the other man lay, he was not stiff, nor very cold; nor was he perfectly so when brought to the hospital. The natives, whenever an opportunity offers, never fail to steal or destroy any of the live stock they can possibly get possession of. Nor are they less cowardly than cruel; for they always behave with an apparent civility when they fall in with men that are armed; but when they meet persons unarmed, they seldom fail to take every advantage of them; in consequence of which many of the convicts have fallen sacrifices to these savages; but the soldiers they never assail, being always terrified at the sight of a red coat.

They are very happy at grimace and mimicry; as an instance of which, it is remarked by the surgeon of the settlement, that, going upon an excursion, they observed a party of the natives fishing, and sat down near the bank to watch their motions. To pass away time, one of the gentlemen sung several songs; and when he had done, the females in the canoes either
sung

sung one of their own songs, or imitated him, in which they succeeded beyond conception. Any thing spoken by our people, they most accurately recited, and this in a manner which the Europeans fell greatly short in their attempts to repeat the language after them, which shews the strength of their organical powers. Nor are they without ingenuity, as appeared from various figures observed by a party of our people on their excursion to the westward. These figures were cut on the smooth surface of some large stones, and consisted chiefly of representations of themselves in different attitudes, of their canoes, of several sorts of fish, and animals; and, considering the rudeness of the instruments with which the figures must have been executed, they seemed to exhibit tolerable likenesses.

The men, in general, are from five feet six inches, to five feet nine inches high; they are thin, but very straight and well proportioned; walk very erect, and are extremely active. The women also, in general, are well made, not so thin as the men, but rather smaller limbed. Their skin is of the colour of wood soot, or which would be called a dark chocolate colour. Their hair is black, but not woolly; it is short, but not cropt; in some lank, in others curled. Some parts of their bodies are painted red; and the upper lip and breasts of some of them are painted with streaks of white. Their features are far from disagreeable; and their teeth even and white. Their voices are soft and tuneable. It is remarked, that the deficiency of one of the fore-teeth of the upper jaw, mentioned by Dampier, was seen in almost the whole of the men; but their organs of sight, so far from being defective, as that author mentions those of the inhabitants of the western side of the continent to be, are remarkably quick and piercing. Many of the women want the two lower joints of the little finger of the left hand; but the reason or meaning of it could not be discovered at the time in which the observation was made; nor has any account of it been given since. The defect was not only apparent in old women, and in young girls of eight or nine years old,

but in young women who had children, and those who had not : the finger has been seen perfect in individuals of all the above ages and descriptions. They have bracelets upon the upper part of their arms, made of plaited hair. They are fond of ornament, though absolutely without apparel : and one of them, to whom was given an old shirt, instead of throwing it over any part of the body, tied it as a fillet round her head.

Both sexes go stark naked, and seem to have no more sense of indecency in discovering their whole body, than the inhabitants of England have in discovering their hands and face. Their principal ornament is the bone which they thrust through the cartilage that divides the nostrils from each other. What perversion of taste could induce them to think this a decoration, or what could prompt them, before they had worn it, or seen it worn, to suffer the pain and inconvenience that must of necessity attend it, is perhaps beyond the power of human sagacity to determine.

As this bone is as thick as a man's finger, and between five and six inches long, it reaches quite across the face, and so effectually stops up both the nostrils, that they are forced to keep their mouths wide open for breath, and snuffle so when they attempt to speak, that they are scarcely intelligible even to each other. The seamen, with some humour, called it the spritsail-yard ; and, indeed, it had so ludicrous an appearance, that, till our people were used to it, they found it difficult to refrain from laughter. Besides the nose-jewel they have necklaces made of shells, very neatly cut, and strung together ; bracelets of small cord, wound two or three times about the upper part of their arm ; and a string of plaited human hair, about as thick as a thread of yarn, tied round the waist. Some of them have also gorgets of shells hanging round the neck, so as to reach across the breast.

But though these people wear no clothes, their bodies have a covering besides the dirt ; for they paint them both white and red. The red is commonly laid on in broad patches upon the shoulders and breast ; and the

the

the white stripes, some narrow and some broad: the narrow are drawn over the limbs, and the broad over the body, not without some degree of taste. The white is also laid on in small patches upon the face, and drawn in a circle round each eye. The red seemed to be ochre, but what the white was could not be discovered: it was close grained, saponaceous to the touch, and heavy. Besides the paint with which they besmear their bodies, they also use grease, or some stinking oily substance, for the same purpose. Some of them ornament their hair with the teeth of fish, fastened on by gum and the skin of the kangaroo. The bodies of the men are much scarified, particularly their breasts and shoulders. These scarifications are considerably raised above the skin; and although they are not in any regular form, yet they are considered as ornamental.

Upon their bodies were seen no marks of disease or sores, but large scars, in irregular lines, which appeared to be the remains of wounds they had inflicted upon themselves with some blunt instrument, and which our people understood, by signs, to have been memorials of grief for the dead.

Upon such ornaments as they had, they seemed to set so great a value, that they would never part with the least article for any thing that could be offered; which was the more extraordinary, as the European beads and ribbons were ornaments of the same kind, but of better form, and more showy materials.

Though both sexes, and those of all ages, are invariably found naked, it must not be inferred from this, that custom so inures them to the change of the elements, as to make them bear, with indifference, the extremes of heat and cold; for they give visible and repeated proofs, that the latter affects them severely, when they are seen shivering and huddling themselves up in heaps in their huts, or the caverns of the rocks, until a fire can be kindled.

These people have no fixed habitation; but repose wherever they may be overtaken by night; and to render

their situation as tolerable as possible, they make a fire, which heating the rock all round them, it becomes as warm as an oven, and they lie huddled together upon the grass, which is first pulled and dried to serve them as a couch. In this instance may be observed the kindness of Providence in the preservation of his creatures. The inhabitants of these remote regions have not the least notion of erecting an edifice, or constructing any kind of shelter, from the inclemency of the seasons; so far from it, they have not even devised the means of clothing their naked bodies. To remedy these essential defects, it is so ordained by infinite wisdom, that the rocks on the sea-coast, as well as those in the interior parts of the country, are composed of soft, crumbly sandy stone; the external parts, which are most exposed to the rigour of the season, are generally of a harder texture than the internal, which are less exposed; so that the latter gradually mouldering away under the pressure of the former, a cavity is made, of dimensions sufficient to contain fifty or sixty of these poor forlorn creatures, who are thereby provided with a tolerably comfortable lodging. In such parts as are not very rocky, they build a kind of huts with pliable rods no thicker than a finger, by bending them, and sticking the two ends in the ground. The covering is of palm leaves and pieces of bark; and the entrance by a large hole, opposite which the fire is made. These huts are designed for the accommodation of such as follow the hunting of the kangaroo, opossums, rats, squirrels, and other animals which inhabit the woods, and which, when pursued, generally run into the hollow of a tree. In order, therefore, to secure the animal when found in the tree, a man climbs even the tallest tree with great ease, by means of notches cut with a stone hatchet in the trunk at convenient distances: when he reaches the summit, or any part that may open a way for the escape of the animal, he fixes himself there with a club in his hand, while another below applies a fire, which fills the hollow of the tree with smoke; so that
the

the animal attempting to escape, is almost certain of falling a prey to its pursuers.

The only furniture observed belonging to these huts, that fell under observation, was a kind of oblong vessel, made of bark, by the simple contrivance of tying up the two ends with a withy, which, not being cut off, serves for a handle.

Their chief utensil was a small bag, about the size of a moderate cabbage-net, which is made by laying threads, loop within loop, somewhat in the manner used by ladies to make purses. This bag the man carries loose upon his back, by a small string, which passes over his head. It generally contains a lump or two of paint or resin, some fish-hooks and lines, a few points of darts, and their usual ornaments, which include all the worldly treasure of the richest man among them.

They are utter strangers to the cultivation of the ground, and appear to live chiefly upon what the sea affords, as the colonists found the coast much more populous than the interior parts. They do not, in general, eat animal food raw, but having no vessel in which water can be boiled, they either broil it upon the coals, or bake it in a hole by the help of hot stones.

The men are very dextrous in the use of the fish-gig, an instrument upwards of three feet in length. These gigs have some one, some two, some three, and some four prongs, pointed and barbed with a fish or other animal's bone. In fine weather a man has often been observed by the colonists lying across a canoe with his face in the water, and his fish-gig immersed, ready for darting. In this manner he lies still, and is almost certain of striking the fish, as his face being a little under the surface of the water, he can see it distinctly, and consequently rarely misses his aim. Women were frequently observed occupied in this necessary employment of fishing with lines and hooks in edge of a surf that would intimidate an experienced seaman. The youngest child, if very small, lies across the lap of the mother, and is safe from falling, though she is
busy

busy in fishing, as the boat being very shallow, she sits in the bottom, with her knees up to her breast, and between her knees and her body the child is perfectly secure.

The men likewise dive with amazing alacrity for shell-fish, which adhere to the rocks: they spring from a rock into the surf, and there continue for a long space of time; and on their rising, cast the fish they have taken off the rocks on shore, which is received by some of their comrades, who are placed there for that necessary purpose.

Their canoes are mean and rude; those on the southern part of the coast are nothing more than a piece of bark, about twelve feet long, tied together at the ends, and kept open in the middle by small boughs of wood. Those farther to the northward are not made of bark, but of the trunk of a tree, hollowed, perhaps, by fire. They are about fourteen feet long, and being very narrow, are fitted with an out-rigger, to prevent their oversetting. These are worked with paddles, that are so large as to require both hands to manage one of them.

The only tools seen among them, were an adze, wretchedly made of stone, some small pieces of the same substance in form of a wedge, a wooden mallet, and some shells and fragments of coral. For polishing their throwing-sticks and the points of their lances, they use the leaves of a kind of wild fig-tree, which bites upon wood almost as keenly as the shave-grass of Europe, which is used by our joiners. With such tools, the making even such a canoe as has been described, must be a most difficult and tedious labour. To those who have been accustomed to the use of metal, it appears altogether impracticable; but there are few difficulties that will not yield to patient perseverance; and he who does all he can, will certainly produce effects that greatly exceed his apparent power.

The weapons used by the natives, are spears or lances, and those are of different kinds. Some of them have four prongs, pointed with bone, and barbed.

Others

Others have but one point. The shaft is straight and light, and from eight to fourteen feet long.

They have a short stick, which assists them in throwing the lance; it is about three feet long, flattened on one side, with a hook of wood at one end, and a flat shell let into a split in the stick at the other, and fastened with gum. Upon the flat side of this stick the lance is laid. In the upper end is a small hole, in which the point of the hook of the throwing-stick is fixed; this retains the lance on the flat side of the stick. They poise it, thus fixed, in one hand, with the fore-finger and thumb over it, to prevent its falling off sideways; at the same time holding fast the throwing-stick, they discharge it with considerable force, and in very good direction, to the distance of about sixty or seventy yards. It was supposed by several of the colonists, who saw these weapons frequently thrown, that a man upon his guard might with ease either parry or avoid them; though they confessed they flew with astonishing velocity.

These spears, or lances, however, are dreadful weapons; for when once they have taken place, they can never be drawn back, without tearing away the flesh, or leaving the sharp ragged splinters of the bone, or shell, which forms the beard, behind them in the wound. They are thrown with great force and dexterity. If intended to wound at a short distance, between ten and twenty yards, simply with the hand; but if at the distance of forty or fifty yards, or more, with the throwing stick. The colonist were inclined to hold the spears of the natives very cheap. Fatal experience, however, convinced them, that the wound inflicted by this weapon is not a trivial one; and that the skill of the Indians in throwing it is far from being despicable. Nor are their weapons of offence confined to the spear only; for they have besides long wooden swords, shaped like a sabre, capable of inflicting a mortal wound; and clubs of an immense size.

The natives, when equipped for any exploit, are armed with a shield, made of the bark of a tree, with
which

which they very dexterously ward off any thing thrown at them. They have also a bludgeon, or club, about twenty inches long, with a large and pointed end; and sometimes a stone hatchet. These make up the catalogue of their military implements. But the principal means of annoying their European visitors, was by setting fire to the high grass, which being very dry, burnt with great rapidity, and did much damage.

The natives of this country do not appear to entertain the most distant idea of religion, nor to have any object of adoration. They are as regardless of the sun, moon, stars, or any of the stupendous works of the Creator, as they are of any of the animals which inhabit their extensive regions. It was evident that they burn their dead, as a discovery was made of a fresh grave, on a survey of a distant branch of Port Jackson, by a party of the colonists. When the earth was removed, a quantity of white ashes was discovered, which appeared to have been but a short time deposited there: among the ashes were found a part of a human jaw-bone, and a small piece of the skull, which, although it had been in the fire, was not so much injured, as to prevent ascertaining, beyond a doubt, what it was. The ashes were put together, and covered up as before. The grave was not more than six inches under the surface of the ground, but the earth was raised as high as it is above the graves in Europe.

Of the animals produced in this island, the kangaroo is one of the most valuable, and grows to a very considerable size; some of them weigh not less than 150 pounds. A male of 130 pounds weight has been killed, whose dimensions were as follows: Extreme length, seven feet three inches. Length of the tail, three feet four inches and a half. Length of the hinder legs, three feet two inches. Length of the fore-paws, one foot seven inches and a half. Circumference of the tail at the root, one foot five inches. Notwithstanding this, the kangaroo, on being brought forth, is not larger than a rat. In running, this animal confines himself entirely to his hinder legs, which are possessed with

with an extraordinary muscular power. Their speed is very great, though not in general quite equal to that of a greyhound: but when the greyhounds are so fortunate as to seize them, they are incapable of retaining their hold, from the amazing struggles of the animal. The bound of the kangaroo, when not hard pressed, has been measured, and found to exceed twenty feet. At what time of the year they copulate, and in what manner, is not known. The testicles of the male are placed contrary to the usual order of nature. When young, the kangaroo eats tender, and well flavoured, tasting like veal; but the old ones are more tough and stringy than bull-beef. They are not carnivorous, but subsist altogether on particular flowers and grass. Their bleat is mournful, and very different from that of any other animal: it is, however, seldom heard but in the young ones.

The dogs of this country are remarkably swift: their chase of the kangaroo, if in an open wood, is seldom more than eight or ten minutes; and if there be more dogs than one, rarely so long. When the dog seizes the kangaroo, he turns, and catching hold of him with the claws of his hind feet, tears him to such a degree, that the dog is frequently carried home covered with wounds. If the dog catches the kangaroo by the throat, he holds him till one of the hunters comes to his assistance, and many dogs have nearly lost their lives in the struggle. Several attempts were made to cure those dogs of their natural ferocity: one of the English officers took much pains on the account of a little puppy, which nevertheless would snap off the head of a fowl, or worry a pig, in defiance of the severest correction. They have been represented as good natured animals when domesticated; but from their extreme ferocity, the possibility of taming them was much doubted. Some of the natives, however, were seen with dogs which appeared to be domesticated the same as ours in Europe; they are of the wolf kind, of a dusky red colour.

The opossum is an animal which abounds in this country. It bears much resemblance to the kangaroo in the strength of its tail, and make of its fore-legs, which are very short in proportion to the hind ones.

The female opossum has a pouch, or pocket, in which she carries her young. Some have been shot with a young one, not larger than a walnut, sticking to a teat in this pocket. Others with young ones no bigger than a rat; one of which was most perfectly formed, with every mark and distinguishing characteristic of the kangaroo. There is also a peculiar formation in the generative parts of this animal.

Most of the animals in this country partake, in a great measure, of the nature of the kangaroo. There are the kangaroo opossum, the kangaroo rat, &c. the formation of the fore legs and feet of which bear no proportion to the length of the hind legs. There is a quadruped, which the natives call *quoll*. It resembles a pole-cat. The back is brown, spotted with white; and the belly white, unmixed. To beasts of prey our people were utter strangers; nor have they yet any cause to believe that they exist in the country. And happy is it for them that they do not, as their presence would deprive them of the only fresh meals the settlement affords, the flesh of the kangaroo.

It is remarked, from the similarity in some part or other of the different quadrupeds found here, that there is great reason to suppose a promiscuous intercourse between the different sexes of the respective animals.

Of bats, which hold a middle place between the beasts and birds, there are many of different kinds, particularly one, which is larger than a partridge. Our people were not fortunate enough to take one, either alive or dead.

The country abounds with birds of various kinds, among which are many of exquisite beauty, particularly loriquets and cockatoos. The water fowl are gulls, shags, solan geese, or gannets, of two sorts; boobies, noddies,

noddies, curleus, ducks, pelicans of an enormous size, and many others. One of the most remarkable was black and white, much larger than a swan, and in shape somewhat resembling a pelican. The land birds are crows, parrots, pigeons, doves, quails, bustards, herons, cranes, hawks, and eagles.

But the bird which principally claims attention, is the cassowary, a species of ostrich, approaching nearer to the *emu* of South America than any other known. One of them was shot at a considerable distance, with a single ball, by a convict employed for that purpose by the governor. Its weight, when complete, was seventy pounds; and its length, from the end of the toe to the tip of the beak, seven feet two inches; though there was reason to believe it had not attained its full growth. On dissection, many anatomical singularities were observed: the gall bladder was remarkably large, the liver not bigger than that of a barn-door fowl; and after the strictest search, no gizzard could be found. The legs, which were of a vast length, were covered with thick strong scales, plainly indicating the animal to be formed for living amidst deserts; and the foot differed from an ostrich's by forming a triangle, instead of being cloven. Goldsmith, whose account of the *emu* is the only one we can refer to, says that "It is covered, from the back and rump, with long feathers, which fall backward, and cover the anus: these feathers are grey on the back, and white on the belly. The wings are so small as hardly to deserve the name, and are unfurnished with those beautiful ornaments which adorn the wings of the ostrich. All the feathers are extremely coarse; but the construction of them deserves notice; they grow in pairs from a single shaft, a singularity which the author we have quoted, has omitted to remark. It may be presumed that these birds are not very scarce, as several have been seen, some of them immensely large; but they are so wild as to make shooting them a matter of great difficulty. Though incapable of flying, they run with such swift-

ness, that our fleetest greyhounds are left far behind in every attempt to catch them. The flesh was eaten, and tasted like beef.

The fish caught here are in general excellent; but several of them partake of the properties of the shark, like the animals in some degree resembling the kangaroo. The land, the grass, the trees, the animals, the birds, and the fish, in their different species, approach by strong shades of similitude to each other. A certain likeness runs through the whole. They are in general palatable, and some of them are very delicious. Upon the shoals and reefs are incredible numbers of the finest green turtle in the world, and oysters of various kinds, particularly the rock-oyster, and the pearl-oyster. The cockles are of such an enormous size, that one of them is more than one person can eat. There are also large muscles, and stingrays, which weigh no less than 336 pounds, after the entrails were taken out. In the rivers and salt creeks are aligators. A shark of an enormous size was found here, which measured at the shoulders six feet and a half in circumference. His liver yielded twenty four gallons of oil; and in his stomach was found the head of a fish of the like species. The Indians, probably from having felt the effects of their voracious fury, testify the utmost horror on seeing these terrible fish.

Of insects, here is a very peculiar kind of ant, as green as a leaf. They live upon trees, where they build their nests. These nests are of a very curious structure: they are formed by bending down several of the leaves, each of which is as broad as a man's hand: they glue the points of them together, so as to form a purse. The viscous used for this purpose is an animal juice, which nature has enabled them to elaborate. Their method of first bending down the leaves, our naturalists had not an opportunity to observe; but they saw thousands uniting all their strength to hold them in this position, while other

busy

busy multitudes were employed within, in applying the gluten that was to prevent their returning back. To satisfy themselves that the leaves were bent and held down by these efforts of the diminutive artificers, our people disturbed them in their work ; and, as soon as they were driven from their station, the leaves, on which they were employed, sprang up with a force much greater than they could have thought them able to conquer by any combination of their strength. But though our people gratified their curiosity at the expence of these insects, the injury did not go unrevenge'd, for thousands immediately threw themselves upon them and gave them intolerable pain with their stings, especially those which took possession of the neck and hair, from whence they were not easily driven. There are upon the leaves of the mangrove great numbers of small green caterpillars ; their foreheads are thick set with hairs, and they range upon the leaves side by side, like a file of soldiers, to the number of twenty or thirty together ; the hair of their bodies, on touching them, has the quality of a nettle, and give a more accute, though less durable pain. This country abounds with beautiful plants and flowers, and is therefore adapted, to afford great entertainment to the curious in botany. There were found some wild spinach, parsley and sorrel ; but not in any quantity.

The climate is undoubtedly very desirable to live in. In summer the heats are usually moderated by the sea breeze, which sets in early ; and in the winter, the degree of cold is so slight as to occasion but little inconvenience. It is remarked, as a circumstance peculiar to this country, that every part of it, even the most inaccessible and rocky, appears as if, at certain times of the year, it was all on fire. Indeed, in many parts large trees are seen, the trunks and branches of which are evidently rent and demolished by lightning. The ground was so very dry and parched, that poles or pegs could not be driven into it without considerable difficulty.

The

The governor, invariably intent on exploring the country, having formed a party, with unwearied industry, and great toil, traversed an extensive track of ground, which appeared, from such observations as could be made, capable of producing every thing which a happy soil and genial climate can bring forth. The face of the country was such as to promise success, whenever it should be cultivated; for the soil was found to be much richer than as described by Captain Cook; as, instead of sand, they found a deep black mould, which seemed very fit for the production of grain of any kind. But such were the labour and difficulty attending the clearing of the ground, that, incredible as it may appear, it is a known fact, that ten or twelve men have been employed for five whole days in grubbing up a tree; and when this has been effected the timber has only been fit for fire-wood; so that, in consequence of the great labour in clearing the ground, and the weak state of the people, to which may be added the scarcity of tools, most of those brought from England being lost in the woods among the grass, through the carelessness of the convicts, the prospect of future success is not the most promising, till they can so far clear the ground, as to produce a sufficient support for the new settlement: but, however, the richness of the soil will amply repay them, when they can surmount this difficulty.

The timber is very unfit for the purpose of building; the only purpose for which it will answer is fire-wood, and for that it is excellent: but in other respects it is the worst wood that any country or climate can produce; although some of the trees, when standing, appear fit for any use whatever, masts for shipping not excepted. Strange as it may be imagined, most of the wood in this country, though dried ever so well, will not float. Repeated trials have only served to prove, that, immediately on immersion, it sinks to the bottom like a stone. The trees were not of many species. Among others, there was a large one, which

which yielded a gum not unlike that called dragon's blood. In the woods was found a tree, which bore fruit, that in colour and shape resembled a cherry: the juice had an agreeable tartness, though but little flavour. Between the trees the ground is covered with grass, of which there is great abundance, growing in tufts as large as can well be grasped in the hand, which stand very close to each other. In those places where trees are scarce, a variety of flowering shrubs abound, most of them entirely new to an European, and surpassing, in beauty, fragrance, and number, all ever seen in an uncultivated state. Among these, a tall shrub, bearing an elegant white flower, which smells like English may, is particularly delightful, and perfumes the air around to a great distance.

There is a kind of vine, running to a great extent along the ground; the stalk is not so thick as the smallest honeysuckle, nor is the leaf so large as the common bay-leaf, though somewhat similar to it; and the taste is sweet, exactly like the liquorice root of the shops. Of this the convicts and soldiers make an infusion, which is tolerably pleasant, and serves as no bad succedaneum for tea. The surgeon found it to be a good pectoral, and not at all unpleasant.

Free-stone, of an excellent quality, abounds in this country, which was considered as a happy circumstance, as it tended so materially to forward the intended plan of forming the town. The greatest impediment to building was a want of lime-stone, of which no signs had hitherto appeared. Clay, for making bricks, abounding, a considerable quantity of them were burned and ready for use.

In the month of March, 1788, the scurvy prevailed amongst the seamen, marines, and convicts, in a greater degree than when on board the ships, which appeared rather extraordinary, after having been some time on land, and obtaining the advantage of vegetable productions; but this was attributed by the gentlemen of the faculty to the necessity of continuing

ing the same salt diet : however, excepting these, and a few who were troubled with dysenteries, the people in general enjoyed a tolerable state of health.

About the middle of May, a convalescent, who had been sent from the hospital to gather vegetables, was killed by the natives. Soon after this accident a report prevailed, that part of the bones of a man had been found near a fire, at which a party of the natives had been regaling themselves. This report gave rise to a conjecture, that, as this man had been murdered near the spot, those who committed the act had devoured him. It cannot be positively affirmed, that the natives of this place are in general cannibals ; but from this circumstance there is ground to suspect, that if the horrid custom of eating human flesh does not universally prevail, it is sometimes practised : indeed, it was confirmed by the reply of a native to one of the colonists, who, interrogating him on the subject, he acknowledged that one of their chiefs had eaten a man he had slain.

On the 27th of August, the Supply tender arrived from Norfolk Island, whither she had been dispatched by the governor with stores and provisions for the settlement he had formed there : and in the month of October the governor sent the *Sirius* to the Cape of Good Hope, to purchase provisions for the accommodation of the settlement ; whence she returned, and anchored in Sydney Cove on the 8th of May, 1789. She had been absent 219 days, 51 of which she lay in Table Bay, Cape of Good Hope ; so that it is observed by the officer who had commanded the *Sirius*, that although during the voyage, they had fairly gone round the world, they had only been 168 days in describing that circle.

In the beginning of February, 1788, governor Philip signified his intention of sending lieutenant King, of the *Sirius*, with some marines, and convicts, to form a settlement on Norfolk Island. Accordingly, that officer,

cer, having received his commission, appointing him superintendent and commandant of Norfolk Island, embarked for that purpose with twenty-three persons on board the Supply tender, on the 15th. On the 29th of February they made Norfolk Island, at the distance of seven or eight leagues. Lieutenant King, on their approach, landed in the boat with the commander of the Supply, in quest of a place to cast anchor. Rowing along shore, they observed, towards the north-east point of the island, a cluster of high rocks, to which the commander gave the name of Cook's rocks, from that celebrated navigator's having discovered this island, and landed near these rocks, in 1774. After several fruitless attempts, they landed at length on the side of a large rock, which lies close to the shore, at the west end of a small stony beach. This was supposed to be the rock on which Captain Cook landed, as there is no other place on that side of the island where it could have been practicable: But it was found an improper place to land either the people or stores, there being no fresh water near it.

On the 4th of March, the commandant, with his officers, landed again, in order to take a view of the country; and, after ascending a very steep hill, got to the top of the island, which they found to be a plain; but every foot of ground was covered with trees, or large roots of trees, which not only obstructed their passage, but obliged them to cut their way through them. During this excursion, they did not see a leaf of flax, or any kind of herb: the ground, though the soil was both rich and deep, was entirely bare. This appeared very singular, after Captain Cook had observed, that the flax plant was rather more abundant here than he had found it to be in New Zealand. Birds were seen in great number and variety; such as pigeons, parrots, parroquets, doves, &c. They were so remarkably tame, that they were knocked down with sticks. As large pieces of pumice-stone were dispersed in every part of the island, it was imagined that

a crater, or the remains of one, might be found at or near a mountain in the middle of the island; which, in honour of the chancellor of the exchequer, was called Mount Pitt.

At length a place, afterwards called Anson's Bay, having been explored, was found fit for landing. Here, therefore, the commandant was determined to fix; and accordingly, on the 6th of March left the Supply, with two boats, in which were all the persons belonging to the settlement; together with the tents, a part of the provision, and some of the useful tools. These being landed, they began clearing a small piece of ground to erect the tents upon. The colours were hoisted; and, before sun-set, every person and article belonging to the settlement were on shore, and the tents pitched. Soon after landing, they found a very fine rivulet of water, which ran close at the back of the ground where the settlement was fixed. As there were only twelve men, one of whom was seventy-two years old, and another a boy of fifteen, exclusive of the mate and surgeon, the progress of the settlement for some time was very slow.

On the 9th of March, (being Sunday) every person in the settlement assembled in the governor's tent, where he performed divine service; after which his commission from governor Philip was read, appointing lieutenant King superintendent and commandant of this island. The commandant then assured the people in general, that his intention was to forward the king's service to the utmost of his power: he endeavoured to impress on the minds of the convicts his resolution, that those who were idle or dishonest should meet with condign punishment. He informed them what ratio of provisions would be allowed daily; and proposed every encouragement to incite them to industry and good behaviour.

From this time to the middle of the month, the people were employed in clearing away, and turning
up

up the garden ground, which was sown in a rich and deep soil, with different seeds, and afforded a pleasing prospect of success.

In process of time, one of the officers, in an excursion about the island, discovered the flax-plant. As no description had been given of this plant, our colonists had no idea of its being what Captain Cook called the flax-plant of New Zealand. The cliffs and shore near the settlement were covered with it.—The root is bulbous; and the plant, in its general form, bears great resemblance to the iris, except that the leaves are much thicker and larger: the flaxy part is the fibres, which extend the whole length of the leaf: towards the root they are very thick and strong, and diminish in size as they approach the end of the leaf. The flax-plant in its green state is of surprising strength. As Captain Cook had given no description of the method of preparing this plant, our colonists adopted the European method of preparing the flax.

The store-house being finished in the beginning of April, the provisions and stores were conveyed from the commandant's tent, and deposited there. A blight from the south-west destroyed all the plants that were in a thriving state, which, added to the destruction of some Indian corn by the rats, proved very distressing circumstances.

As it was found that no vegetables would thrive at this season on the south side of the mount, it was deemed expedient to turn up the garden ground, and sow it with wheat. The tents were moved, some of the men began to build huts, and the carpenters were employed in the preparation of materials for building an house for the commandant.

The new colonists had reason to fear that the turtle, of which they found great numbers at their first landing, were frightened away from the island, as none had been seen near the beach during the course of a month. They felt the want of this resource, as the turtle proved so salutary to every in-

dividual on the island ; not one of them was free from the scurvy on landing ; and some of the convicts were affected with it in an extreme degree ; but the people in general were soon entirely recovered. They laboured under the dearth of garden vegetables, but found a good substitute in the cabbage-tree, the excellence of which is well known to all who have visited these climes. The rats, which abound here, destroyed the wheat which was sown within the space of three days ; and as the colonists had no cats, and only one dog, and were grievously annoyed by these vermin, the empty casks were converted into traps.

On the 6th of April, several orders were made for the preservation of regularity and decorum, which, though they did not affect matters that deserved corporeal punishment, might prevent such misdemeanours as would render such a step necessary.

Having made these necessary dispositions, the commandant proceeded to give such directions to the people and make such arrangements, as might tend to further the progress of the settlement.

But their operations were frequently retarded by colds ; to which, though the only sickness hitherto experienced, the people were very subject. The workmen, indeed, had been often blinded for several days together by the white sap of a tree, which, getting into their eyes, occasioned an excruciating pain for a considerable time. The best remedy was Florence oil, which being dropped into the eye, destroyed the acrimony of the sap. One man was totally blinded with it, for want of timely application for relief. Two sawyers, the carpenter, and three convicts were poisoned by eating some beans, which resembled the Windsor bean in appearance. They were seized with violent gripings, retchings, and cold sweats. Sweet oil and some other medicines happily afforded them relief ; but they were so weakened as not to be able to work for some days.

The

The people received a fortunate supply of fish on the 9th of May. Pigeons were very numerous on their first landing, and so tame, that they were knocked down with sticks; but afterwards they harboured about the tops of the trees. Many were taken that weighed from three quarters to one pound each.

On the 8th of December all the barley was housed which had been raised on an acre of ground, and was sown in June and July. During its early growth it had a most promising appearance; but when the ear was shot, and nearly filled, some heavy rains in September laid great part of it down, besides a great quantity that was destroyed by rats and quails; so that instead of getting at the least fifty bushels of grain, according to expectation, the whole, when gleaned, yielded no more than ten bushels. The barley, though small in quantity, was very fine, and 116 ears were produced from one grain. Garden vegetables succeeded very well, and cabbages were cut that weighed twenty pounds each. On the 22d some wheat was reaped that had been sown on the 11th of August; the grain was full and fine; but the crop was not so good as expected.

On the 25th of February, 1789, the new settlement sustained a most severe shock from a dreadful hurricane, attended with constant deluges of rain. Pines and oak trees were torn up by the roots; and others, whose roots were too deep in the earth to be torn up, bent their tops nearly to the ground. To add to the horror of the scene, a very large tree fell across the granary, and dashed it to pieces, staving a number of flour casks; but by the activity of the people, the flour, Indian corn, and stores were collected, and lodged in the commandant's house. The products of the gardens were nearly destroyed; for, incredible as it may appear, the violence of the wind blew up cabbages, turnips, and other vegetables, by the roots; but happily the wind at length veered about, the storm subsided, and

and fine weather succeeded this most tremendous hurricane.

On the 7th of May, the wheat, which had before a very fine appearance, was blighted in many places by a small black caterpillar. Many methods were used to extirpate them, but without effect.

On the 13th of March, 1790, governor Philip sent lieutenant-governor Ross to take the command of Norfolk Island; the service rendering it necessary for lieutenant King, who was first appointed commandant, to return to England, in order to give his majesty's ministers such particular information relative to the settlement he had established, as could not be conveyed by letter.

Norfolk Island is situated in the latitude of 29 degrees 0 min. south, and in the longitude of 168 degrees 0 min. east. Its form is nearly oblong, and it contains from twelve to fourteen thousand acres. It is six miles in length, and four in breadth. The face of the country is hilly, and some of the vallies are tolerably large for the size of the island. Many of the hills are very steep, and some few so very perpendicular that they cannot be cultivated; but where such situations are, they will do very well for fuel: on the tops of the hills are some very extensive flats.

Mount Pitt is the only remarkably high hill in the island, and is about one hundred and fifty fathoms high. The cliffs which surround the island are about forty fathoms high, and perpendicular; the basis of the island is a hard firm clay. The whole island is covered with a thick wood, choaked up with a thick underwood. The air is remarkably salubrious; as a proof of it, it is remarked by an officer belonging to the settlement, that he never knew the constitutions either of the human race, or any other animal, more prolific in any part of the world: two children at a birth is no uncommon thing; and elderly women, who have believed themselves long past the period of child-bearing, have repeatedly had as fine healthy children as ever were seen. There is not only a fine rivulet at the back of the settlement

tlement, as before observed, but many streams of water large enough to turn a mill; and all these streams abound with fine eels.

The soil is in general good; but from the sides of the cliffs which surround the coast, to the summit of Mount Pitt, it is excellent: varying from a rich brown mould to a light red earth.

There are five kinds of trees on the island which are good timber, viz. the pine, live oak, a yellow wood, a hard black wood, and a kind of beech. The pine trees are of a large size, many of which are from one hundred and eighty to two hundred and twenty feet in height, and from six to nine feet in diameter. The timber of the pine is very useful in buildings, and is plentiful along the coasts. The live oak, yellow wood, black wood, and beech, are all of a close grain, and a durable wood.

Sydney Bay, on the south side of the island, is where the settlement is made. Landing at this place entirely depends on the wind and the weather. Sometimes there is as good landing as in the Thames for a fortnight or three weeks together; at other times it is impracticable to land for ten or twelve days successively; but it is much oftener good landing than bad. Anson Bay is a small bay with a sandy beach, where landing is in general good with an off-shore wind and moderate weather. Ball Bay is on the south-east side of the island; the beach is of large loose stone. When landing is bad in Sydney Bay, it is very good here: as it is also in Cascade Bay, on the north side of the island.

The spring is visible in August; but the native trees, and many plants in the island, are in a constant state of flowering. The summer is warm, and sometimes the droughts are very great. All the grain and European plants seeded in December. From February to August may be called the rainy season: not that there are any stated times for rains in these months, as it is sometimes very fine weather for a fortnight together; but when the rain does fall, it is in torrents; but thunder
is

is very rare. The winter is very pleasant, and it never freezes.

The proper time for sowing wheat and barley, is from May to August, and is got in in December. That which was sowed produced twenty-five fold. Two bushels of barley, sowed in 1789, produced twenty-four bushels of a sound full grain. The Indian corn produced well; it was, in the general opinion, the best grain to cultivate in any quantity, on account of the little trouble attending its growth and manufacturing for eating. The Rio Janeiro sugar-cane grows very well, and is thriving. Vines and oranges are very thriving; of the former there will be a great quantity in a few years. Potatoes thrive remarkably well, and yield a very great increase. Two crops a year of that article may be got with great ease. Every kind of garden vegetable thrives well, and comes to great perfection.

In February, 1791, great improvements were carrying on at Port Jackson; a considerable town was laid out at Rose Hill, a very pleasant situation; many good buildings were erected, and roads cut. Several acres of land were cleared for corn, and eighty acres for buildings and gardens. But the soil about Rose Hill requires good farmers, and much manure, before plentiful crops can be expected. From the sudden vicissitudes of cold and heat, this country may be supposed to be unhealthy; but four years experience have proved otherwise.

In the beginning of May, the officers and men of the New South Wales corps went into the new barrack at Rose Hill. Those natives who had been most accustomed to live at the settlement, would leave it for several days together, as they found plenty of fish towards the head of the harbour. The buildings at Rose Hill being carried on so far as to form a regular town between Rose Hill and the landing-place in the creek, it was named by the governor Paramatta.

In the course of this year a whale fishery was first introduced on the coast of New South Wales. In the

month of December, several improvements were made at Sydney Cove, and in particular a building was covered in at Paramatta, which was intended as a place of worship until a church could be built.

By that time the settlement of Norfolk island was considerably improved. The wheat harvest was successful, yielding about a thousand bushels of wheat, which were well got in, and thatched in stacks. The lieutenant governor had established some military regulations, and laid down rules for the observance of every person on the island; so that on the 15th of January 1792, things in general wore a promising aspect in this settlement: 260 bushels of Indian corn were gathered in; many acres were in different states of growth, and likely to yield plentiful harvests. The storehouses and granaries were in good repair; and every effort was made to extirpate the vermin with which they were infested. The vines flourished exceedingly, and afforded the colonists the pleasing expectation of a speedy and ample supply of wines. At Norfolk Island a quantity of excellent lime stone was discovered, which forming a very good cement, obviated every inconvenience to which they had been previously subjected in erecting their buildings. This account arrived in 1793.

From dispatches received in 1795 it appears, that great improvements were making at the settlement called Paramatta, which is situated on an elevated spot, in the form of a crescent. A strong redoubt is constructed in that place, where there are barracks for a detachment of the military, which is always on duty there, as well to preserve good order and regularity among the convicts, as a check upon the natives, who, from the distance to Sydney Cove, might be tempted to molest the settlers, were there no armed force to protect them.

Much order and decorum prevailed among the convicts, who were in general more attentive to their business, and respectful to those who are appointed to superintend them, than can be easily imagined. Some

are employed in making bricks and tiles, others in building warehouses, huts, &c.; a great number in clearing the grounds, bringing in timber, and making roads. Others at their different callings, such as smiths, gardeners, cooks, shoemakers, tailors, bakers, attendants on the sick, &c. The hours of work are from sunrise till half past seven, when they breakfast; at half past eight they resume their work till half past eleven, when they are rung to dinner: at two they recommence their labours; and the setting of the sun is the signal that terminates their daily toil, and which is announced by the drum beating a retreat.

In order to encourage the cultivation of gardens, Saturday is appropriated to clear away and cultivate spots for themselves; and those who have been industrious, now find the benefit by having plenty of vegetables, which saves their salt provisions, and enables them to truck with the natives for fish. Independent of this advantage, those who rear the greatest quantities of vegetables and plants, received premiums from the governor, who, at the proper season of the year, distributes seeds among them for that purpose. The women sweep round the huts every morning, and return each man his respective linen, washed and mended, on the Sunday morning.

No person is excused from attending divine worship, which is performed every Sunday morning at eleven o'clock, when all the convicts are obliged to attend in clean linen, and behave in a more orderly and devout manner than would be naturally expected. Indeed, the indefatigable zeal and wise measures pursued by the governor, in the formation of this infant colony, is beyond all praise.

Those convicts whose term of transportation is expired, have lands granted them in the following proportions: Thirty acres to every single man; fifty to the married men, and ten more for every child. They receive provisions and clothing from the public stores for the first eighteen months; the necessary tools and implements of husbandry, with seeds and grain to sow the

the ground the first year. Two sow pigs are also given to each settler, and a pair or two of fowls. On these conditions twenty-seven, at the close of this year, had commenced farming in the neighbourhood of Paramatta; and as there are many industrious people among the settlers, their stock soon began to thrive, and the face of the country to shew evident signs of culture.

From the latest accounts, dated December 21st, 1793, and received the beginning of January, 1797, it appears that the colony at Port Jackson is extended forty miles up the country, and much increased in population, as well as highly improved in cultivation. It is stated in these accounts, that the flourishing condition of this settlement presented the most marked contrast to the opinion which prevailed in England. In Norfolk Island, where the ground is much more fertile than at Port Jackson or Paramatta, the wheat frequently produces an increase of twenty fold; and it is conjectured that future harvests will be more productive.

When the last dispatches came away it was the summer season, and all descriptions of persons were engaged in collecting the harvest, which was most abundant. The crops of all kind of grain were good, of wheat particularly so; it was thought equal to two years consumption; and such in fact, as to obviate in future, the distress the settlement had hitherto experienced from the delay or neglect in forwarding supplies from England. The only scarcity they experienced was of animal food; for, although there is a considerable number of cattle in the colony, yet the proprietors, desirous of increasing their stock, rarely send them to market.

The town of Sydney, the capital of the colony, with the exception of the governor's house, and a few others belonging to the civil and military officers, is still composed of huts; improvements are spoken of, but the principal concern is wisely directed to agriculture. The other settlements are Hawkesbury and Paramatta. The latter, although the more recent establishment, is

in every respect the most promising: it is pleasantly situated on the banks of a river at the head of the harbour called Broken Bay; and the soil is fertile.

The productions of this country are but few; at least we have not been fortunate enough to make any recent discovery: the interior is, however, little known.

As a striking instance of the want of enterprise, or activity, it may be necessary to mention a fact which lately occurred. Eight years since, a bull and six cows strayed from their keeper into the woods: a fear of venturing far amongst the natives, then somewhat hostile, repressed all attempts to regain them; indolence succeeded these fears, and no search was ever instituted. Some time since, an officer's servant, shooting in the woods, between twenty and thirty miles from Sydney, discovered them, and conducted the governor and a party of his friends to the spot, where they found a herd consisting of nearly sixty head of remarkably fine cattle: the bull attacked the party, who, with some difficulty, escaped unhurt. That a neighbourhood of thirty miles by land, presenting no unusual obstacles to an adventurer, should, in the almost starving state of the colony, have remained unexplored for so long a period, is not to be accounted for otherwise, than by the apathy or despondency of the settlers. But as the natives, through the persevering diligence and almost inexhaustible patience of the governor and principal officers, are now more conciliated and familiarized to Europeans than they were at the first planting of the colony, they are much less annoyed by their incursions and depredations, and, of consequence, enjoy much more comfort and tranquillity. In short, it appears from the testimony of several respectable persons, who have transmitted accounts by the latest dispatches, that the colonies are in a very flourishing state; and that, notwithstanding the former opinions of many to the contrary, they will effectually answer every design of their establishment, and prove the

the wisdom and prudence of government, from their apparent advantage to individuals in particular, and the community in general.

GENERAL OBSERVATIONS.

IT has been remarked, by an observer on the spot, of eminent discernment and penetration, that if the colony is intended only as a receptacle for convicts, this place stands unequalled, from the situation, extent, and nature of the country: but that, if taken in a commercial view, its importance will not appear striking, as the New Zealand hemp, of which sanguine expectations were formed, is not a native of the soil: and an adjacent island, where an assurance was entertained of finding it, is without it; consequently, the scheme of being able to assist the East Indies with naval stores, in case of a war, must be rendered abortive, both from the deficiency and quality of the timber growing in this country. It is also given as an opinion, formed on due observation, that, through sufficient numbers, and industry in cultivation, the country would, in the course of a few years, produce grain enough for the support of its new possessors; but to effect this, the present limits must be greatly extended.

To men of small property, contracted desires, and a disposition for retirement, the continent of New South Wales may have its inducements. One of this description, with letters of recommendation, and a sufficient capital to furnish an assortment of tools for agricultural and domestic purposes, possessed also of a few household utensils, a cow, a few sheep, and breeding sows, with proper protection and encouragement, might obtain a comfortable subsistence, and a moderate independence in a course of time. But they who are induced to emigrate thither, are recommended, before they quit England, to provide all their wearing apparel for themselves, family, and servants; their furniture,
tools

tools of every kind, and implements of husbandry, (among which a plough need not be included, the hoe being used) as they will touch at no place where these articles can be purchased to advantage.

If the sheep and hogs be English, it will be the better. With respect to wines, spirits, tobacco, sugar, coffee, tea, rice, and many other articles, they may venture to rely on Teneriffe or Madeira, the Brasils, and Cape of Good Hope. It will not be their interest to draw bills on their voyage out, as the exchange of money will be found invariably against them, and a large discount is also deducted. Drafts on the places they are to touch at, or cash (dollars if possible) will best answer their purpose. Men of desperate fortunes, and the lower classes, can propose to themselves no kind of advantage, unless they can procure a passage as indentured servants, similar to the custom of emigrating to America; for it is absurd to imagine that government will be disposed to maintain them here until they can be settled, and without such support they must eventually perish for want of subsistence.

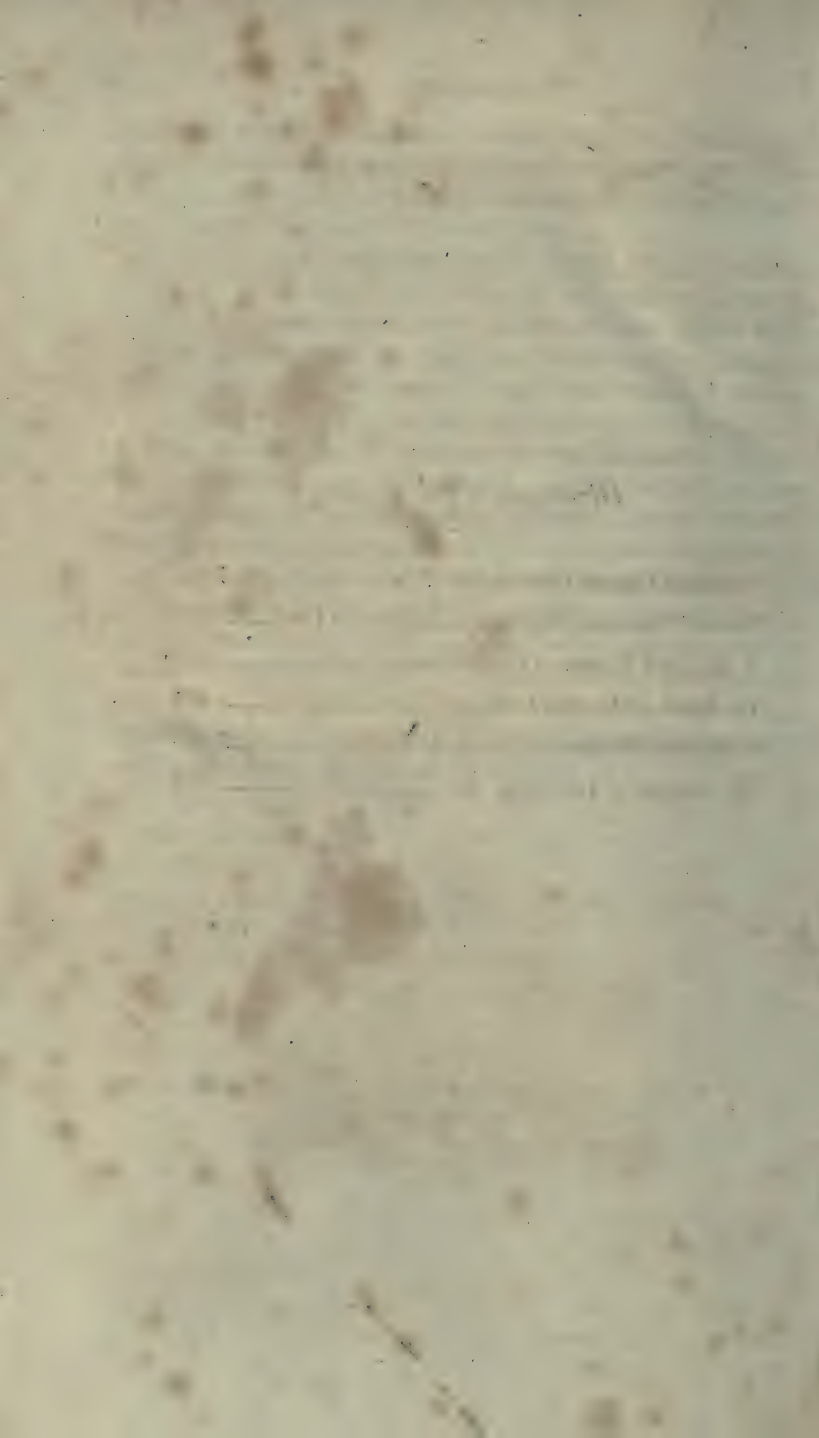
FINIS.

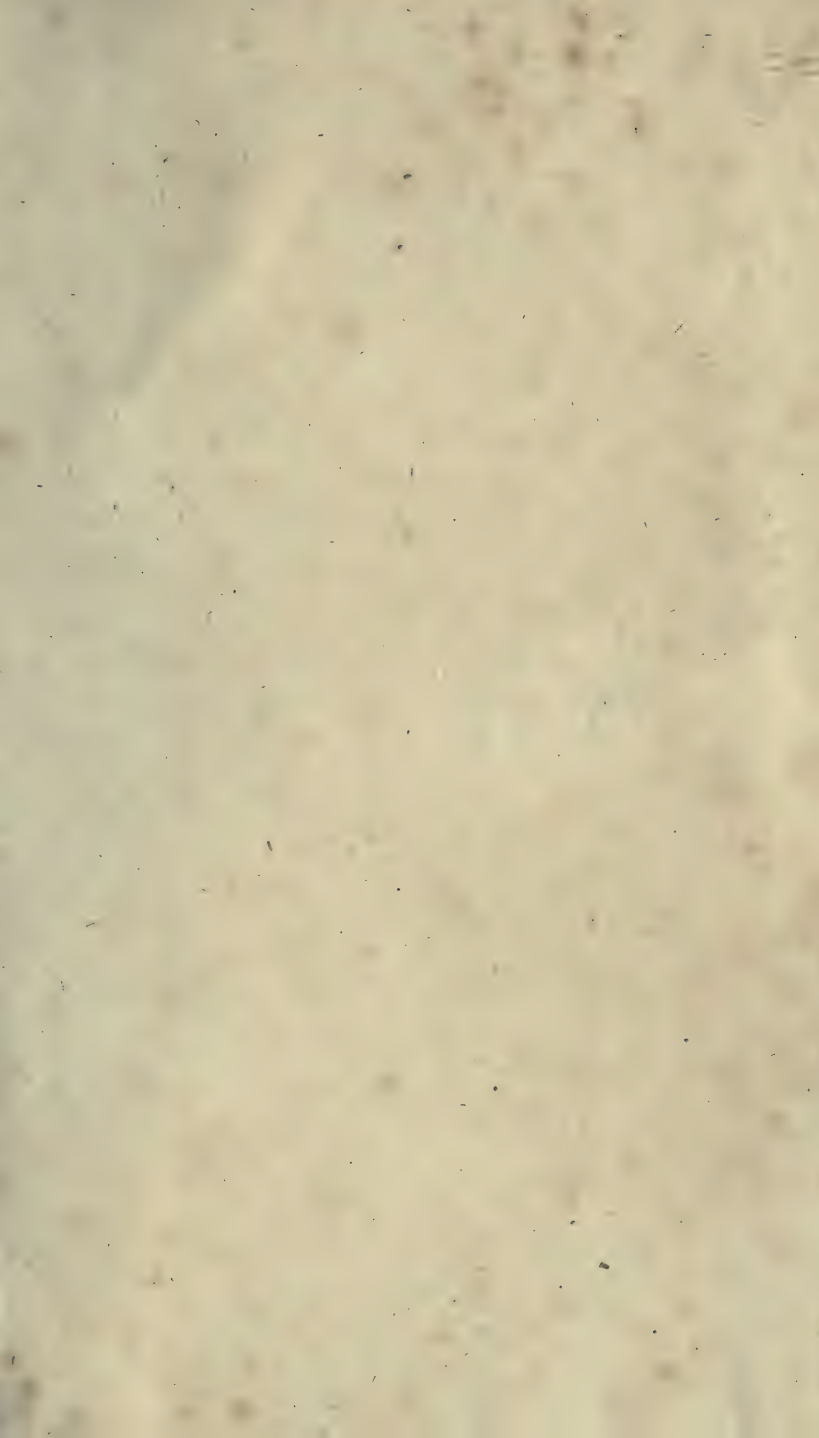
~~~~~  
Manchester: Printed by S. Russell, Deansgate.  
~~~~~

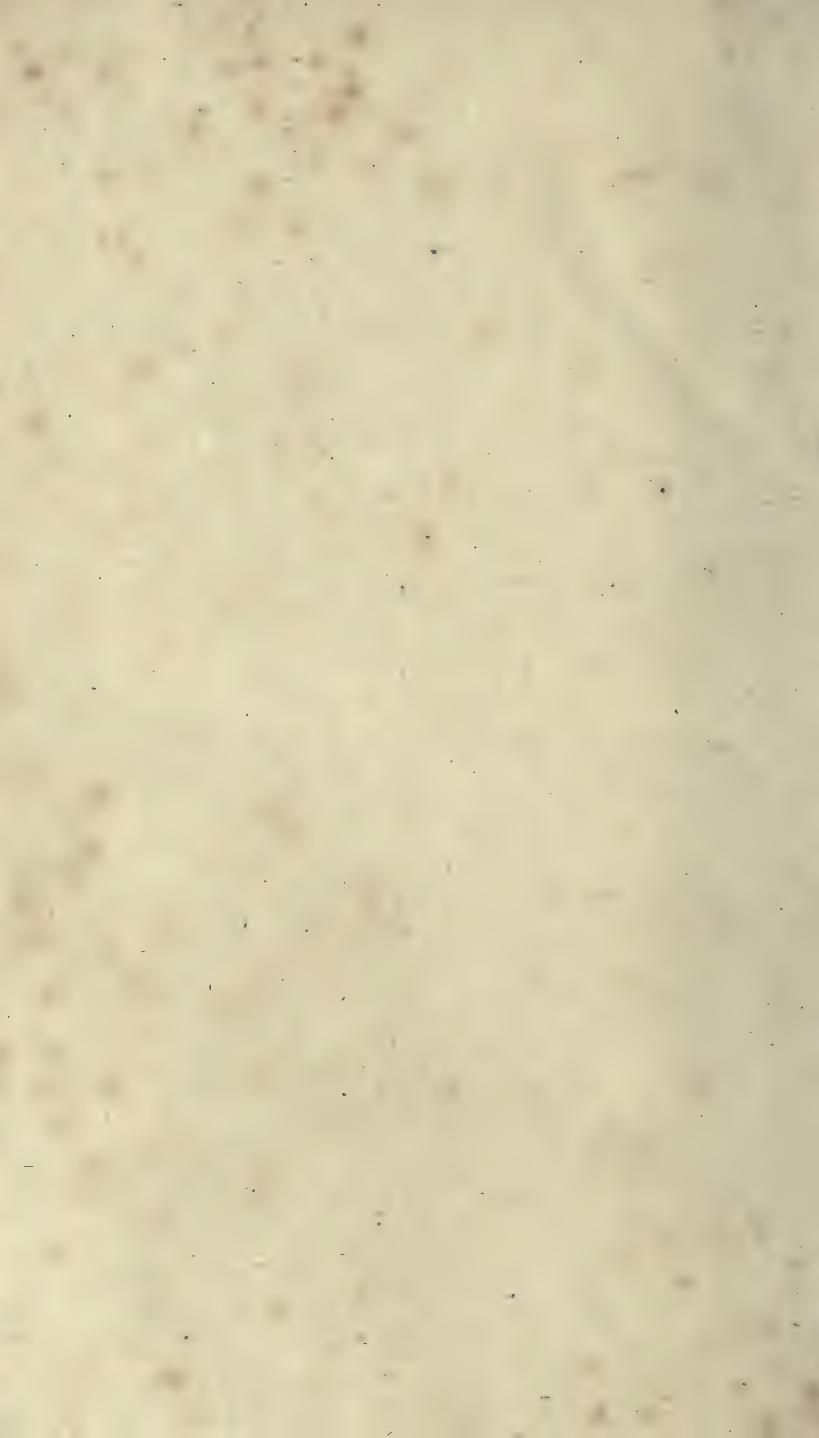
Directions to the Binder.

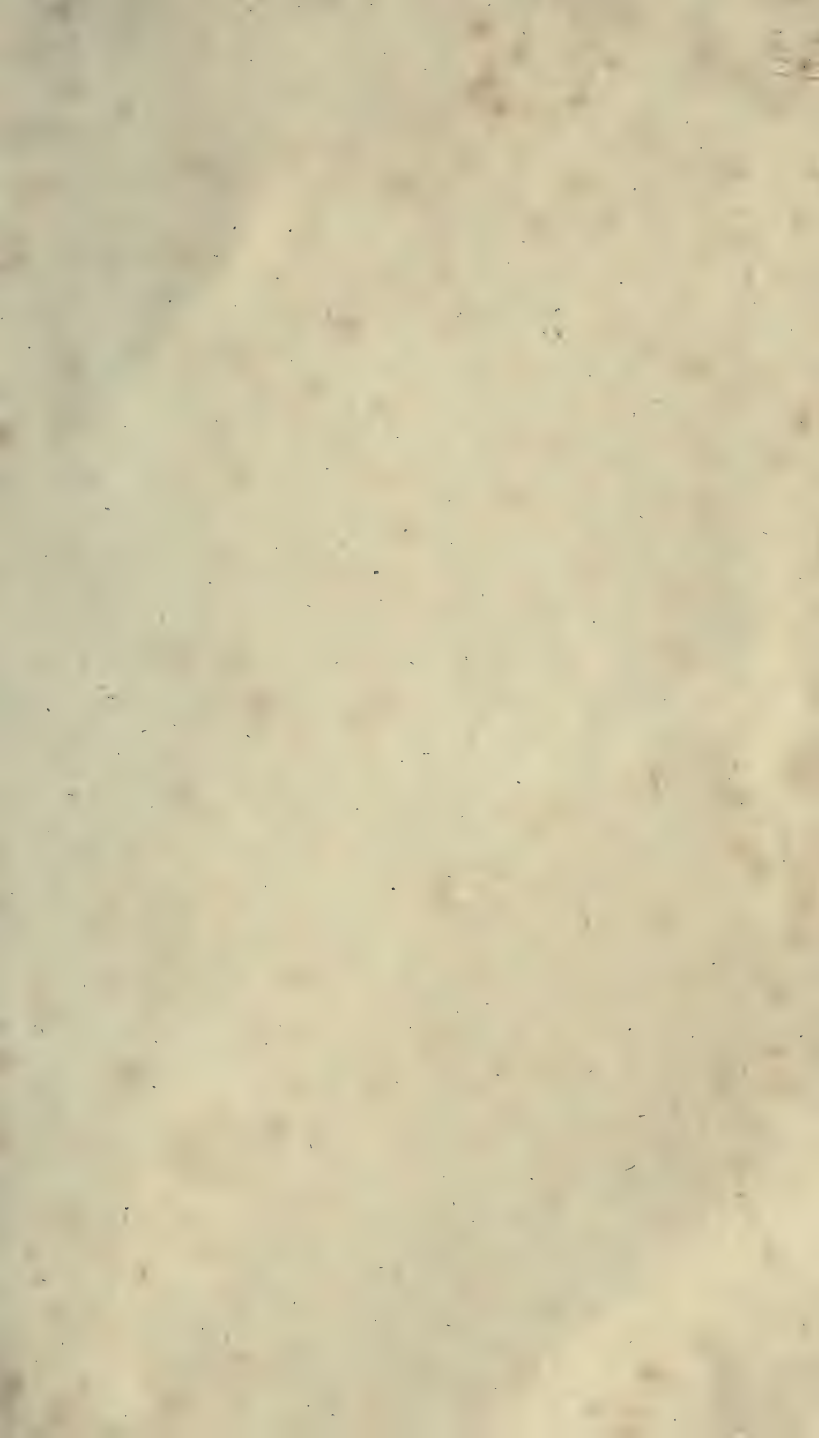
.....

Portrait of Captain Cook to face Title	<i>Page.</i>
View of Christmas Harbour, in Kergulen's Land.....	272
A Man and Woman of Van Dieman's Land.....	326
The Death of Captain Cook.....	461
A Man and Woman of Sandwich Islands.....	480
The Manner of Travelling, &c.....	497











UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY
BERKELEY

Return to desk from which borrowed.

This book is DUE on the last date stamped below.

19 Feb '51 CD

14 Sep '55 HJ

Pet Physics Lib
28 Oct 55 - ew

NOV 22 1975 7 1

REC. CIR. NOV 19 '75

1 Jun '59 LA

LD
J 1959

M319120

G 920

C 63

1806

